I. CAESAR

m

1. No subject

Book number card

C. JULIUS CAESAR'S

COMMENTARIES

ON THE

GALLIC WAR.

WITH ENGLISH NOTES, CRITICAL AND EXPLANATORY,
A LEXICON, INDEXES, ETC.

BY REV. J. A. SPENCER, A.M.,

EDITOR OF "THE NEW TESTAMENT IN GREEK, WITH NOTES ON THE HISTORICAL BOOKS," "ARNOLD'S SERIES OF GREEK AND LATIN BOOKS," ETC. ETC.



NEW YORK:
D. APPLETON & COMPANY, 200 BROADWAY.
PHILADELPHIA:
GEO. S. APPLETON, 148 CHESNUT STREET.
M DCCC XLVIII.

TO THE

HON. GULIAN C. VERPLANCK, LL.D.,

DISTINGUISHED ALIKE FOR EMINENT LEGAL ABILITIES AND SOUND SCHOLARSHIP,
AND FOR PROFOUND ACQUAINTANCE WITH HISTORIC LORE,
BOTH ANCIENT AND MODERN,

This Edition of

ONE OF THE MOST CELEBRATED HISTORIANS OF ANTIQUITY

IS VERY RESPECTFULLY AND GRATEFULLY DEDICATED BY

THE EDITOR.

PREFACE.

THE *text* of the present edition of Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic War is substantially that of Oudendorp. The variations introduced were drawn from a careful comparison of Oudendorp's text with those of Achaintre and Lemaire, Oberlin, Schneider, Giani, &c.; and the Editor felt the less hesitation in adopting this course because of the acknowledged corrupt state of the text.* Hence, wherever a reading appeared to him more in accordance with Caesar's usual style or manner, he has ventured to adopt it in preference to the lection of Oudendorp.

The sources from which the *notes* have been mainly drawn are the following: Oudendorp's large edition of the works of Caesar, with the Notes of D. Vossius, J. Davies, and Sam. Clarke, Stutgard, 1822, 2 vols., 8vo.; Graevius's edition of Caesar's works, with the Notes of Vossius, Davies, and others, Leyden, 1713, 8vo.; Barker's Caesar's Commentaries on the Gallic

* "The text of Caesar's Commentaries is also so corrupt, and has in the later editions been sometimes so unhappily corrected, that I dread the period when I shall have to follow it as the main authority of my narrative, and can no longer look to Niebuhr's sagacity for guidance."—Arnold's *History of Rome*, vol. I., p. 15.

War, with select notes, London, 1831; Commentaries on the Gallic War, edited by Dr. L. Schmitz, with Notes, Edinburgh, 1847; Clarke's Caesar from the Delphin edition; Andrews', Leverett's, and Paterson's editions of the Commentaries on the Gallic War, &c. From these sources principally, added to the frequent perusals of the author with the classes under his charge, it has been the Editor's aim to prepare such notes as would be of service to the young student in entering upon the consecutive perusal of a Latin author. In how far the Editor may have succeeded in carrying out his design, it becomes him not to say; he can only trust that his efforts to illustrate and render attractive a favorite classic may meet with similar indulgence to that which has been bestowed upon his former contributions to the great cause of classical learning.

NEW YORK, *May 1st*, 1848.

LIFE

OF

CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.*

Caius Julius Caesar was the son of Caius Caesar and Aurelia, the daughter of Cotta. He was born in the sixth consulship of Marius, ninety-nine years B. C. When only in his seventeenth year, he obtained the office of High Priest of Jupiter. His marriage with Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna, excited against him the hatred of Sylla, to whose suspicion he had, from his early years, been exposed, in consequence of his aunt Julia being the wife of Marius. To escape assassination, he was obliged to conceal himself, until, by the intercession of the vestal virgins and entreaties of his relations, the tyrant was reluctantly induced to spare his life. That Sylla formed, at an early period, a correct opinion of his talents and ambition, is proved by the answer which he returned to his friends, who reproached him for the meanness of wishing to put a boy to death; "In that *boy*," said he, "I see many Mariuses."

The first military honor which Caesar obtained, was a civic crown, at the siege of Mitylene, when the Roman army was commanded by Thermus, the Praetor. On Sylla's death he returned to Rome, and before he had completed his twenty-third year, accused Dolabella of extortion. Although the prosecution terminated in the acquittal of the defendant, Caesar in that trial gave such proofs of his abilities, as ranked him in the public opinion high among the most distinguished orators. Not having obtained any public office, and wishing to avoid the odium necessarily attendant on an unsuccessful impeachment, he retired to Rhodes to study eloquence under Apollonius Molo, who was a very eminent teacher of rhetoric. Near the island Pharmacusa, on his way to Rhodes, he was taken by pirates, among whom he remained forty days. At the end of that time he purchased his liberty for fifty talents. Soon after obtaining his freedom from the pirates, he procured a ship, pursued them, and, to verify the threat which he expressed when their captive, put them all to death by crucifixion. After his return to Rome, he was, by the vote of the people, appointed a military tribune. He afterwards obtained the offices of Quaestor, Edile, High Priest, Praetor, and Consul. During his Quaestorship, his wife Cornelia, and aunt Julia, the widow of Marius, died; and he delivered a funeral oration from the Rostra in honor of both. He then married Pompeïa, the daughter of Q. Pompeïus, and grand-daughter of Sylla. To gain the favor of the people, when an Edile, he surpassed all his predecessors in the extravagance and magnificence of his shows. To dazzle and captivate the multitude, and to weaken the power of the nobles, was his

---

* The accompanying Life of Caesar is taken principally from Dymock's edition of the works of Julius Caesar.

constant aim. In the pursuit of his favorite plans, he had recourse to means the most wicked and flagitious. But, in spite of his vices,* the agreeableness of his manners and splendor of his talents, added to his martial valor and intrepidity, gained him many admirers. The success of his military enterprises rendered him a favorite with the army, and his profuse bribery secured in his interest the populace of Rome. That his object, from his early years, had been his own aggrandizement on the ruin of his country, is manifest from his having been concerned, first, in the conspiracy of Crassus and Sylla, and, afterwards, in that of Catiline.† The judgment which he gave in the senate, with respect to the punishment of Lentulus, Cethegus, &c., accomplices of Catiline, the conduct of the Roman Equites who guarded the temple where the senate was met, and his being arraigned as an associate of that rebel, before the Quaestor and the senate, sufficiently prove both the public opinion and his guilt. He leagued with these traitors, not to promote their schemes, but by their means to destroy the liberties of his country, and become the unlimited sovereign of Rome.

Caesar divorced Pompeïa, because Clodius had been detected in his house, while she and other matrons were celebrating the rites of *Bona Dea*, from which every male creature was most carefully excluded. Clodius was tried for this crime, and, through bribery, obtained a sentence of acquittal. As Clodius was a man of great influence and popularity, Caesar, although certain of the fact, declined bearing evidence against him, lest it should have, at any future period, been in the smallest degree injurious to his plans of ambition.‡

The senate seem to have been apprehensive of the power and influence of Caesar. By this time he was elected consul, which induced them to decree provinces of little or no importance, woods and roads, to the consuls for that year. This provoked his resentment, and he labored to effect a reconciliation between Pompey and Crassus, which he at last, after great exertion, accomplished. The interest of the former he had keenly supported in the passing of the Manilian law, which conferred extraordinary powers on that commander, and likewise on other occasions, though not without an ultimate view to his own advantage. Whatever power, beyond what was usual, had been assigned to others, served as a precedent for his soliciting the like for himself. With Crassus, a man of prodigious wealth, but of no great personal merit, he had long been in habits of friendship. Of all the Roman citizens, Pompey possessed the greatest power, Crassus the greatest riches, and Caesar the greatest abilities. In this coalition, which was in fact a conspiracy against the liberties of Rome, they solemnly swore that nothing was to be done in the state but by their

* Whilst Caesar was giving tokens of the danger which the aristocracy had to apprehend from his political career, he almost lulled their fears by the unbounded infamy of his personal character. We will not, and cannot repeat the picture which ancient writers, little scrupulous on such points, have drawn of his debaucheries; it will be sufficient to say, that he was stained with numerous adulteries, committed with women of the noblest families; that his profligacies in other points drew upon him general disgrace, even amidst the lax morality of his own contemporaries, and are such that their very flagitiousness has in part saved them from the abhorrence of posterity, because modern writers cannot pollute their pages with the mention of them.—Arnold's *Later Roman Commonwealth*, p. 149.

† Caesar's connection with the conspiracy of Catiline is doubted and even denied by some of the best modern writers. There does not appear to be sufficient evidence to convict him of any direct participation in that sanguinary scheme.

‡ See Arnold's *Later Roman Commonwealth*, pp. 190–192.

common consent. The scandalous combination of these three great men was called the first triumvirate. Of the three, Pompey was the least criminal. He appears to have been duped by the insinuating address of Caesar, in whose consulship he expected to get his acts in Asia ratified. The decree could only gratify his vanity, which was his ruling passion; but the means which he employed to accomplish it were highly criminal. The object of Crassus was to add to his wealth, and to increase his influence in the state, by the power and talents of the other two; and that of Caesar, by occasionally yielding to Pompey's fame, to raise his own, "and crown his mad ambition."

From this period the state was wholly managed by Caesar; and the violence of his proceedings rendered the triumviri objects of just abhorrence to all classes of the community. Cicero, to whom Pompey confessed he had been duped by Caesar, advised him to break off all connection with that intriguing and unprincipled politician; but with him the winning address of Caesar had more influence, who not only preserved their former intimacy, in opposition to the advice of Cicero, but strengthened their union by giving Pompey, in marriage, his daughter Julia, a woman of the most amiable dispositions, and of the most engaging manners. So great was her influence with both her father and husband, that, in spite of the mutual jealousy and aversion which afterwards subsisted between them, she prevented their coming to any rupture as long as she lived. To increase his power in the state, and to command the interest of Piso, who succeeded him in the consulship, he married his daughter Calpurnia. A strong and respectable party, animated by love of their country, then began warmly to oppose the measures of the triumvirate. Caesar, anxious to intimidate them, bribed Vettius, who had formerly preferred an accusation against himself, to declare, that he had been urged by some of the nobles to assassinate Pompey. But this villainy, being detected by the people, was treated with such contempt, that he was glad to drop it; and to prevent discovery, he put Vettius to death in prison. Notwithstanding these acts of enormity, he still retained a very powerful party in the state. Previously to the expiration of his consulship, he obtained from the people, through his agent, the tribune Vatinius, the province of Gallia Cisalpina, and Illyricum, Upper Albania, with three legions for five years; and the senate, at the desire of Caesar, added Gallia Transalpina, and another legion. These legions were gradually increased to thirteen. Some of the succeeding magistrates wished to annul his acts, and to prosecute him for his illegal conduct during his consulship; but, having the tribunes in his interest, a veto was put on all their proceedings.

Caesar set out for Gaul, early in the spring of B. C. 58. Of his conquest of that country, checking the inroads of the Germans, and overrunning part of Britain, the Commentaries on the Gallic War contain a rapid but well-written account. The young reader must not infer, that all his engagements with these nations are fully recorded, or every circumstance of his conduct with regard to them is either minutely or faithfully detailed. Respect for his character as a man, and a consciousness of the injustice of many of his acts, induced him to conceal many particulars, and to hint at, rather than describe, others. His cruelty and injustice in attacking the states in alliance with Rome, called forth merited reprehension in the senate, when it was even proposed, that for his abuse of power in that country, he should be given up to the enemy. But the splendor of his success prevented that motion from passing into a law.* The first seven books of the Commentaries were written by Caesar. To them Hirtius Pansa, at the request of Balbus, added an eighth, which brings down the narrative of Caesar's military operations in Gallia to

* Compare note, p. 74, line 7.

the time when he passed the Rubicon, which formed the commencement of the Civil war.*

The dissembled friendship which had, for some time, existed between Caesar and Pompey, on the death of Julia and Crassus gave place to a personal hatred and open hostility. Neither of these generals could bear an equal, much less a superior. Through the influence of Pompey, the senate had received Caesar's petitions with contemptuous indifference, which was, with him, a good reason for involving his country in all the horrors of intestine bloodshed. Caesar's crossing the Rubicon, the boundary of Gallia Cisalpina, which the laws did not allow him to pass while in command, was an actual declaration of hostilities. Pompey and his friends, taken wholly by surprise at his activity and daring, fled from Italy, and crossed to Greece. In sixty days, Caesar conquered all Italy, entered Rome, and took possession of the treasury, which Pompey, by an unaccountable oversight, had left behind him. Having seized the government money, he left the command of the army in Italy to Antony, and went against Pompey's best troops, which were then in Spain, under Petreius, Afranius and Varro, observing on his quitting the capital, "that he was going to fight an army without a general, and would return to fight a general without an army." He was well received by the inhabitants of all the towns on his road thither, except the people of Marseilles, who refused to admit him within their gates. Unwilling to spend much time in the reduction of that city, he gave the command of the troops who were to attack it by land, to Trebonius, his lieutenant-general, and of the fleet to Decimus Brutus. Having brought the war in Spain to a successful termination, on his return to Rome he compelled the inhabitants of Marseilles, after a long and brave resistance, to surrender. He then prepared to follow Pompey into Greece, conscious that, during his life, he would neither enjoy tranquillity nor security. After several skirmishes, the two armies came to a decisive engagement on the plains of Pharsalia, in which Pompey was completely defeated, and his camp taken. Immediately after that disastrous battle, he, accompanied with only thirty horsemen, hastened to the shores of the Archipelago, and afterwards fled to Egypt, where he was murdered. Caesar, resolved to pursue his enemy into whatever part of the world he might go, followed him into Egypt, which he reached soon after the murder of Pompey. Embracing the interest of Cleopatra, Caesar became attached to her person, and for some time, the character of the conqueror was lost in that of the voluptuary. By her he had a son called Caesario, or Caesarion, who, at the age of eighteen, five years after he had been proclaimed, by his mother and Antony, king of Egypt, Cyprus, and Coelesyria, was put to death by Augustus.

Having placed the crown of Egypt on Cleopatra, with whom he had associated in the kingdom her younger brother Ptolemy, merely to save appearances, he advanced with her up the Nile, and would probably have gone to Ethiopia, had not his soldiers refused to follow him. Roused at last from his indolence and effeminacy by the revolt of Pharnaces, king of Pontus, he marched against that monarch, defeated him, and subdued his country, with

---

* Caesar's "Commentaries," which alone of all his writings have reached posterity, are admirably calculated to answer the purpose for which they were designed, the impressing his readers with the most favorable notions of himself. Although the representations which they contain are a continued picture of his abilities and successes, yet because they are given in a quiet and unpretending style, they have gained credit for truth and impartiality; and critics, in their simplicity, have extolled the modesty of the author, because he speaks of himself in the third person.—Arnold's *Later Roman Commonwealth*, p. 356.

such ease and rapidity, that in writing an account of it to a friend at Rome, he employed only three words, *Veni, vidi, vici.* To Mithridates, from whom he had received so much assistance in the Alexandrian war, the war in Egypt, he gave the kingdom of Bosphorus on Palus Maeotis, the sea of Azoph, and intrusted Domitius with the settlement of other affairs in Asia. To quell the commotions in Italy, he returned to that country, levying great contributions, from the states through which he passed, for the African war. The good fortune of Caesar did not fail him in this expedition; he defeated the republican forces under Scipio, in an engagement near Thapsus, and reduced the kingdom of their ally, Juba, king of Mauritania, to a Roman province. On hearing of Caesar's success, Cato killed himself at Utica. Returning to Rome, Caesar, at the interval of a few days, triumphed four different times, in consequence of his having conquered Gaul, Egypt, Pontus, and Africa.

The plunder of so many countries enabled the conqueror of the world to glut his soldiers with presents, and the citizens with largesses. To dazzle the eyes of the multitude, and to divert the minds of the citizens from the extinction of their liberties, he exhibited shows of uncommon magnificence, and gave feasts of the most unbounded profusion. He also enacted some useful laws, and regulated the Kalendar according to the course of the sun.

Cneius and Sextus, the sons of Pompey, aided by Labienus, having drawn together a powerful army in Spain, Caesar was again obliged to leave Rome, and march against them. They came to a decisive battle at Munda, in which the former two displayed great heroism and generalship. The veterans of Caesar were forced to fly, and it required all his address to bring them again to the charge. Victory at last declared for that general, which put a final period to the war, and left the conqueror in the peaceful possession of the Roman Empire. The eyes of his countrymen were now opened. Though his triumph surpassed, in splendor and magnificence, all that had ever been in Rome, the people, with sorrowful hearts, gazed at the pompous procession, and stood silent. No acclamation followed the car of the conqueror. The splendid exhibition was beheld as the final extinction of Roman independence, and the commencement of degrading slavery. The citizens justly considered Caesar as triumphing, not over the natives of Spain, but over the sons of Pompey, their favorite general, over the nobles of Rome, and over the laws of the commonwealth.

The senate has been blamed for conferring such extravagant honors, and for bestowing such unlimited power on Caesar; but in this they only yielded to the inclination of the conqueror, and merely granted what they had then no power to withhold. They elected him consul every year, and dictator for life; appointed him superintendent of morals, and conferred upon him the title of *imperator* and father of his country. Nor did they stop here. They decreed him an elevated seat in the theatre, a golden chair in the senate-house, and on the tribunal in the forum. To complete their extravagance and impiety, to the man who had destroyed their constitution, and enslaved his fellow-citizens, they voted temples, altars, and priests. The command of the army, disposal of the treasury, and nomination of the magistrates, he considered to be put in his power by the success of his arms, hence the concurrence of the senate in these matters was deemed unnecessary. To decoy the people, with some of those powers he used occasionally to dispense; but only when it suited the object which he had in view. It must not be denied that his conduct, when supreme commander, was marked with great clemency, and that he enacted several salutary laws for the better regulation of the state. He administered justice without partiality, and added to the greatness of the empire by planting Roman colonies beyond seas. But his elevated station, as well as the measures by which it had been obtained, created him enemies; and the chief of the senate, among whom was his most intimate friend Brutus, conspired against his life.

He died in the senate-house, March 15th, B. C. 44, in the fifty-sixth year of his age, pierced by twenty-three wounds, after he had enjoyed the peaceful possession of the empire only five months.

Of Caesar's intrepidity as a soldier, and abilities as a commander, the armies which he defeated, and the countries which he conquered, are sufficient proofs. To the talents of a consummate general, he added those of an elegant historian and a persuasive orator. Much of his commentaries, or journals, of the Gallic and Civil wars, were, it is said, composed on the spot where his battles were fought. The purity and neatness of his style, notwithstanding the rapidity with which he must have written, have not been surpassed by any Roman writer. His narrative is perspicuous, simple, and natural. It is at once chaste and animated. His lucid and picturesque description places the whole scene distinctly before the reader, who accompanies him in all his marches, and is a witness of every engagement. Few passages occur in his writings, which the most illiterate do not understand, and the most polished do not approve. To compose a simple narrative of his campaigns, for the amusement of himself and his friends, seems rather to have been his object, than to give a specimen of his talents as a profound historian, or deep politician. Hence, it were absurd, to expect in the commentaries a finished history. They are mere outlines, which he, perhaps, entertained the hope of seeing filled up, either by himself, or by some other hand.

Besides a few juvenile pieces mentioned by Suetonius, and a collection of apophthegms, Caesar left, at his death, two books on Grammar, and a poem which he called *Iter*, or the Journey. But these, with his letters to the senate and his friends, are now lost. None of his writings now remain, except seven books of the Gallic and three of the Civil war. The eighth book of the Gallic war, as formerly mentioned, is the composition of A. Hirtius Pansa; but it is not known who wrote the accounts of the Alexandrine, African, and Spanish wars.

Of Caesar's talents as an orator, we have the opinion of Cicero and Quintilian. His orations were admired for two qualities, not always united, strength and elegance. Cicero places him among the first orators, and Quintilian asserts he spoke with the same spirit with which he fought. Had not ambition, says that great critic, diverted Caesar from the arts of peace, he would have rivalled the eloquence of Cicero.

a. animos pertinent, important: proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt: qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere quotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, quum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. Eorum una pars, quam Gallos



Digitized by Google

C. JULII CAESARIS

COMMENTARIORUM

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER I.

ARGUMENTUM.

Cap. I. Galliae descriptio. II. Eam invadunt Helvetii. XII. Sed a Caesare duobus proeliis profligantur: XXVIII. et reliquiae in patriam relegantur. XXX. Galli apud Caesarem de Germanorum, qui, duce Ariovisti, Sequanorum agrum insidebant, insolentia conqueruntur. XXXIV. Ille, componendae rei, legatos ad Ariovistum mittit. XXXVII. Verum cum id frustra, copias adversus eum ducit: XXXIX. pavidas quidem primum et trementes: XL. post tamen ipsius hortatu animatas. XLII. Colloquuntur inter se partium duces: XLVI. sed nullo effectu. XLVIII. Proin armis res agitur: LII. et clade accepta, e Galliis profugiunt Germani.

I. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam, qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrona et Sequana dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate Provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant, atque ea, quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, important: proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt: qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere quotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, quum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. Eorum una pars, quam Gallos

obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodano; continetur Garumna flumine, Oceano, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequanis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septemtriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in septemtriones, et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam partem Oceani, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septemtriones.

II. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus et ditissimus fuit Orgetorix. Is, M. Messala et M. Pisone Coss., regni cupiditate inductus, conjurationem nobilitatis fecit et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent: perfacile esse, quum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri. Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci natura Helvetii continentur: una ex parte flumine Rheno, latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; altera ex parte monte Jura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia, lacu Lemanno, et flumine Rhodano, qui Provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus fiebat, ut et minus late vagarentur, et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent: qua de causa homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur. Pro multitudine autem hominum, et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis, angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem millia passuum CCXL, in latitudinem CLXXX patebant.

III. His rebus adducti, et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti, constituerunt ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent, comparare; jumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coëmere; sementes quam maximas facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret; cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt; in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit: in eo itinere persuadet Castico, Catamantaledis filio, Sequano, cujus pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat, et a S. P. R. amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat: itemque Dumnorigi Aeduo, fratri Divitiaci, qui eo

tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur, persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat. Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere, propterea quod ipse suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset: non esse dubium, quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent: se suis copiis, suoque exercitu, illis regna conciliaturum, confirmat. Hac oratione adducti, inter se fidem et jusjurandum dant, et, regno occupato, per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

IV. Ea res ut est Helvetiis per indicium enunciata, moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coëgerunt: damnatum poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. Die constituta causae dictionis, Orgetorix ad judicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum millia decem, undique coëgit, et omnes clientes obaeratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit: per eos, ne causam diceret, se eripuit. Quum civitas, ob eam rem incitata, armis jus suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est: neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

V. Post ejus mortem nihilo minus Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant. Ubi jam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt; frumentum omne, praeter quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut, domum reditionis spe sublata, paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent: trium mensium molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre jubent. Persuadent Rauracis et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis, uti, eodem usi consilio, oppidis suis vicisque exustis, una cum iis proficiscantur: Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant, et in agrum Noricum transierant, Noreiamque oppugnarant, receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.

VI. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent: unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Juram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carri ducerentur; mons autem altissimus impendebat, ut

facile perpauci prohibere possent: alterum per Provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter fines Helvetiorum et Allobrogum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nonnullis locis vado transitur. Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est, proximumque Helvetiorum finibus, Geneva. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros, quod nondum bono animo in Populum Romanum viderentur, existimabant; vel vi coacturos, ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatis, diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant: is dies erat a. d. v. Kal. Aprilis, L. Pisone, A. Gabinio Coss.

VII. Caesari quum id nunciatum esset, eos per Provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci, et, quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad Genevam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una); pontem, qui erat ad Genevam, jubet rescindi. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt, nobilissimos civitatis; cujus legationis Nameius et Verudoctius principem locum obtinebant, qui dicerent, Sibi esse in animo, sine ullo maleficio iter per Provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter haberent nullum: rogare, ut ejus voluntate id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoria tenebat L. Cassium consulem occisum, exercitumque ejus ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub jugum missum, concedendum non putabat: neque homines inimico animo, data facultate per Provinciam itineris faciendi, temperaturos ab injuria et maleficio existimabat. Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites, quos imperaverat, convenirent, legatis respondit, Diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum; si quid vellent, a. d. Idus Aprilis reverterentur.

VIII. Interea ea legione, quam secum habebat, militibusque, qui ex Provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Juram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, millia passuum decem murum, in altitudinem pedum sedecim, fossamque perducit. Eo opere perfecto, praesidia disponit, castella communit, quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere possit. Ubi ea

dies, quam constituerat cum legatis, venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat, Se more et exemplo Populi Romani posse iter ulli per Provinciam dare; et, si vim facere conentur, prohibiturum ostendit. Helvetii, ea spe dejecti, navibus junctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnunquam interdiu, saepius noctu, si perrumpere possent, conati, operis munitione et militum concursu et telis repulsi, hoc conatu destiterunt.

IX. Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua, Sequanis invitis, propter angustias ire non poterant. His quum sua sponte persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt, ut, eo deprecatore, a Sequanis impetrarent. Dumnorix gratia et largitione apud Sequanos plurimum poterat, et Helvetiis erat amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat, et, cupiditate regni adductus, novis rebus studebat, et quam plurimas civitates suo sibi beneficio habere obstrictas volebat. Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequanis impetrat, ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti inter sese dent, perficit: Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant; Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et injuria transeant.

X. Caesari renunciatur, Helvetiis esse in animo per agrum Sequanorum et Aeduorum iter in Santonum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in Provincia. Id si fieret, intelligebat magno cum Provinciae periculo futurum, ut homines bellicosos, Populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitimos haberet. Ob eas causas ei munitioni, quam fecerat, T. Labienum legatum praefecit: ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit, duasque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres, quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit, et, qua proximum iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Centrones et Graioceli et Caturiges, locis superioribus occupatis, itinere exercitum prohibere conantur. Compluribus his proeliis pulsis, ab Ocelo, quod est citerioris Provinciae extremum, in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris Provinciae die septimo pervenit: inde in Allobrogum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusianos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra Provinciam trans Rhodanum primi.

XI. Helvetii jam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant, et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant, eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui, quum se suaque ab iis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium: Ita se omni tempore de Populo Romano meritos esse, ut, paene in conspectu exercitus nostri, agri vastari, liberi eorum in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint. Eodem tempore quo Aedui, Ambarri quoque, necessarii et consanguinei Aeduorum, Caesarem certiorem faciunt, sese, depopulatis agris, non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere: item Allobroges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se ad Caesarem recipiunt, et demonstrant, sibi, praeter agri solum, nihil esse reliqui. Quibus rebus adductus, Caesar non exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis, in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.

XII. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, judicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus junctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est, tres jam copiarum partes Helvetios id flumen traduxisse, quartam vero partem citra flumen Ararim reliquam esse; de tertia vigilia cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus, ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus, magnam eorum partem concidit: reliqui fugae sese mandarunt, atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt. Is pagus appellabatur Tigurinus: nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quatuor pagos divisa est. Hic pagus unus, quum domo exisset, patrum nostrorum memoria L. Cassium consulem interfecerat, et ejus exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita, sive casu, sive consilio Deorum immortalium, quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem Populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit. Qua in re Caesar non solum publicas, sed etiam privatas injurias ultus est, quod ejus soceri L. Pisonis avum, L. Pisonem legatum, Tigurini eodem proelio, quo Cassium, interfecerant.

XIII. Hoc proelio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arari faciendum curat, atque ita

exercitum traducit. Helvetii, repentino ejus adventu commoti, quum id, quod ipsi diebus viginti aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, uno illum die fecisse intelligerent, legatos ad eum mittunt: cujus legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare agit: Si pacem Populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset: sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi Populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus esset, quum ii, qui flumen transissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribueret, aut ipsos despiceret: se ita a patribus majoribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute, quam dolo contenderent, aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret, ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate Populi Romani et internecione excercitus nomen caperet, aut memoriam proderet.

XIV. His Caesar ita respondit: Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret; atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito Populi Romani accidisset: qui si alicujus injuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptum, quod neque commissum a se intelligeret, quare timeret; neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod eo invito, iter per Provinciam per vim tentassent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoriam deponere posset? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur, quodque tam diu se impune tulisse injurias admirarentur, eodem pertinere: consuesse enim deos immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Quum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsides ab iis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae polliceantur, facturos intelligat; et si Aeduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint; item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum iis pacem esse facturum. Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios a majoribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides ac-

cipere, non dare, consuerint: ejus rei Populum Romanum esse testem.

XV. Hoc responso dato, discessit. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent: idem facit Caesar; equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quatuor millium, quem ex omni Provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit, qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti, alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt: et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo proelio sublati Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere, nonnunquam ex novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacessere coeperunt. Caesar suos a proelio continebat, ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis, pabulationibus, populationibusque prohibere. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen, et nostrum primum, non amplius quinis aut senis millibus passuum interesset.

XVI. Interim quotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare: nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septemtrionibus, ut ante dictum, posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat: eo autem frumento, quod flumine Arari navibus subvexerat, propterea minus uti poterat, quod iter ab Arari Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat. Diem ex die ducere Aedui; conferri, comportari, adesse dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit, et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his Divitiaco et Lisco, qui summo magistratu praeerat, (quem Vergobretum appellant Aedui, qui creatur annuus et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem,) graviter eos accusat, quod, quum neque emi, neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab iis non sublevetur; praesertim quum, magna ex parte eorum precibus adductus, bellum susceperit; multo etiam gravius, quod sit destitutus, queritur.

XVII. Tum demum Liscus, oratione Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat; qui privati plus possint,

quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum conferant, quod praestare debeant. Si jam principatum Galliae obtinere non possint, Gallorum, quam Romanorum, imperia perferre satius esse; neque dubitare debere, quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Aeduis libertatem sint erepturi. Ab iisdem nostra consilia, quaeque in castris gerantur, hostibus enunciari: hos a se coërceri non posse: quin etiam, quod necessario rem Caesari enunciarit, intelligere sese, quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diu potuerit, tacuisse.

XVIII. Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Divitiaci fratrem, designari sentiebat: sed, quod pluribus praesentibus eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet: quaerit ex solo ea, quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vera: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidumque rerum novarum: complures annos portoria, reliquaque omnia Aeduorum vectigalia, parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod, illo licente, contra liceri audeat nemo. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse, et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse: magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu semper alere et circum se habere: neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse: atque hujus potentiae causa matrem in Biturigibus homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse: ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere: sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitates collocasse: favere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam affinitatem: odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia ejus deminuta, et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem regni per Helvetios obtinendi venire; imperio Populi Romani non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea, quam habeat, gratia desperare. Reperiebat etiam in quaerendo Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium ejus fugae factum a Dumnorige atque ejus equitibus, (nam equitatu, quem auxilio Caesari Aedui miserant, Dum-

norix praeerat,) eorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

XIX. Quibus rebus cognitis, quum ad has suspiciones certissimae res accederent, quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios traduxisset, quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset, quod ea omnia, non modo injussu suo et civitatis, sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset, quod a magistratu Aeduorum accusaretur; satis esse causae arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere juberet. His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in Populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, justitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam, ne ejus supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet, verebatur. Itaque, priusquam quidquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari jubet; et, quotidianis interpretibus remotis, per C. Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur: simul commonefacit, quae, ipso praesente, in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit: petit atque hortatur, ut sine ejus offensione animi vel ipse de eo, causa cognita, statuat, vel civitatem statuere jubeat.

XX. Divitiacus multis cum lachrymis Caesarem complexus obsecrare coepit, Ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: scire se illa esse vera; nec quenquam ex eo plus, quam se, doloris capere, propterea quod, quum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adolescentiam posset, per se crevisset: quibus opibus ac nervis, non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur: sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, quum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum, non sua voluntate factum: qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur. Haec quum pluribus verbis flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prendit: consolatus rogat, finem orandi faciat: tanti ejus apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et Reipublicae injuriam et suum dolorem ejus voluntati ac precibus condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat; fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat,

ostendit; quae ipse intelligat, quae civitas queratur, proponit: monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet; praeterita se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit.

XXI. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus, hostes sub monte consedisse millia passuum ab ipsius castris octo; qualis esset natura montis, et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent, misit. Renunciatum est, facilem esse. De tertia vigilia T. Labienum, legatum pro praetore, cum duabus legionibus et iis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid sui consilii sit, ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes ierant, ad eos contendit, equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. P. Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur, et in exercitu L. Sullae, et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

XXII. Prima luce, quum summus mons a T. Labieno teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus, aut Labieni, cognitus esset: Considius, equo admisso, ad eum accurrit; dicit montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri; id se ex Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare, ne proelium committeret, nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros exspectabat, proelioque abstinebat. Multo denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit, et montem a suis teneri, et Helvetios castra movisse, et Considium, timore perterritum, quod non vidisset, pro viso sibi renunciasse. Eo die, quo consuerat intervallo, hostes sequitur, et millia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

XXIII. Postridie ejus diei, quod omnino biduum supererat, quum exercitu frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod a Bibracte, oppido Aeduorum longe maximo ac copiosissimo, non amplius millibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei frumentariae prospiciendum existimavit, iter ab Helvetiis avertit, ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos L. Aemilii,

decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nunciatur. Helvetii, seu quod timore perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimarent, eo magis, quod pridie, superioribus locis occupatis, proelium non commovissent; sive eo, quod re frumentaria intercludi posse confiderent; commutato consilio atque itinere converso, nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere coeperunt.

XXIV. Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit, equitatumque, qui sustineret hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quatuor veteranarum, ita, uti supra se in summo jugo duas legiones, quas in Gallia citeriore proxime conscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocaret: ac totum montem hominibus compleri, et interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri, et eum ab his, qui in superiore acie constiterant, muniri jussit. Helvetii, cum omnibus suis carris secuti, impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt: ipsi, confertissima acie rejecto nostro equitatu, phalange facta, sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

XXV. Caesar, primum suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remotis equis, ut, aequato omnium periculo, spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suos, proelium commisit. Milites, e loco superiore pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfregerunt. Ea disjecta, gladiis destrictis in eos impetum fecerunt. Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento, quod, pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, quum ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere, neque, sinistra impedita, satis commode pugnare poterant; multi ut, diu jactato brachio, praeoptarent scutum manu emittere, et nudo corpore pugnare. Tandem, vulneribus defessi, et pedem referre, et, quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eo se recipere coeperunt. Capto monte et succedentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum millibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudebant, et novissimis praesidio erant, ex itinere nostros latere aperto aggressi, circumvenire: et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instare et proelium redintegrare coeperunt. Romani conversa signa bipartito intulerunt: prima ac secunda acies, ut victis ac submotis resisteret; tertia, ut venientes exciperet.

XXVI. Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius quum nostrorum impetus sustinere non possent, alteri se, ut coeperant, in montem receperunt; alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc toto proelio, quum ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros objecerant, et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela conjiciebant, et nonnulli inter carros rotasque mataras ac tragulas subjiciebant, nostrosque vulnerabant. Diu quum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia, atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex eo proelio circiter millia hominum cxxx superfuerunt, eaque tota nocte continenter ierunt: nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso, in fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, quum et propter vulnera militum, et propter sepulturam occisorum, nostri, triduum morati, eos sequi non potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas literas nunciosque misit, ne eos frumento, neve alia re juvarent: qui si juvissent, se eodem loco, quo Helvetios, habiturum. Ipse, triduo intermisso, cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.

XXVII. Helvetii, omnium rerum inopia adducti, legatos de deditione ad eum miserunt. Qui quum eum in itinere convenissent, seque ad pedes projecissent, suppliciterque locuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco, quo tum essent, suum adventum exspectare jussisset, paruerunt. Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur et conferuntur, nocte intermissa, circiter hominum millia vi ejus pagi, qui Verbigenus appellatur, sive timore perterriti, ne, armis traditis, supplicio afficerentur, sive spe salutis inducti, quod, in tanta multitudine dedititiorum, suam fugam aut occultari, aut omnino ignorari posse existimarent, prima nocte ex castris Helvetiorum egressi, ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contenderunt.

XXVIII. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quorum per fines ierant, his, uti conquirerent et reducerent, si sibi purgati esse vellent, imperavit: reductos in hostium numero habuit: reliquos omnes, obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis, in deditionem ac-

cepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti jussit; et quod, omnibus fructibus amissis, domi nihil erat, quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit, ut iis frumenti copiam facerent: ipsos oppida vicosque, quos incenderant, restituere jussit. Id ea maxime ratione fecit, quod noluit eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare; ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transirent, et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boios, petentibus Aeduis, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt, quosque postea in parem juris libertatisque conditionem, atque ipsi erant, receperunt.

XXIX. In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt literis Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem perlatae, quibus in tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum, qui arma ferre possent: et item separatim pueri, senes, mulieresque. Quarum omnium rerum summa erat, capitum Helvetiorum millia CCLXIII, Tulingorum millia XXXVI, Latobrigorum XIV, Rauracorum XXIII, Boiorum XXXII: ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad millia XCII. Summa omnium fuerunt ad millia CCCLXVIII. Eorum, qui domum redierunt, censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus millium C et X.

XXX. Bello Helvetiorum confecto, totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt: Intelligere sese, tametsi, pro veteribus Helvetiorum injuriis Populi Romani, ab iis poenas bello repetisset, tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam Populi Romani accidisse: propterea quod eo consilio, florentissimis rebus, domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent, imperioque potirentur, locumque domicilio ex magna copiâ deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum judicassent, reliquasque civitates stipendiarias haberent. Petierunt, Uti sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere, idque Caesaris voluntate facere, liceret: sese habere quasdam res, quas ex communi consensu ab eo petere vellent. Ea re permissa, diem concilio constituerunt, et jurejurando, ne quis enunciaret,

nisi quibus communi consilio mandatum esset, inter se sanxerunt.

XXXI. Eo concilio dimisso, iidem principes civitatum, qui ante fuerant ad Caesarem, reverterunt, petieruntque, uti sibi secreto in occulto de sua omniumque salute cum eo agere liceret. Ea re impetrata, sese omnes flentes Caesari ad pedes projecerunt: Non minus se id contendere et laborare, ne ea, quae dixissent, enunciarentur, quam uti ea, quae vellent, impetrarent: propterea quod, si enunciatum esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos viderent. Locutus est pro his Divitiacus Aeduus: Galliae totius factiones esse duas: harum alterius principatum tenere Aeduos, alterius Arvernos. Hi quum tantopere de potentatu inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse, uti ab Arvernis Sequanisque Germani mercede arcesserentur. Horum primo circiter millia xv Rhenum transisse: posteaquam agros et cultum et copias Gallorum homines feri ac barbari adamassent, traductos plures: nunc esse in Gallia ad c et xx millium numerum: cum his Aeduos, eorumque clientes semel atque iterum armis contendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsos accepisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amisisse. Quibus proeliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et sua virtute et Populi Romani hospitio atque amicitia plurimum ante in Gallia potuissent, coactos esse Sequanis obsides dare nobilissimos civitatis, et jurejurando civitatem obstringere, sese neque obsides repetituros, neque auxilium a Populo Romano imploraturos, neque recusaturos, quo minus perpetuo sub illorum ditione atque imperio essent. Unum se esse ex omni civitate Aeduorum, qui adduci non potuerit, ut juraret, aut suos liberos obsides daret. Ob eam rem se ex civitate profugisse, et Romam ad senatum venisse, auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque jurejurando neque obsidibus teneretur. Sed pejus victoribus Sequanis, quam Aeduis victis, accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedisset, tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupavisset, et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequanos decedere juberet; propterea quod, paucis mensibus ante, Harudum millia hominum xxiv ad eum venissent, quibus locus ac sedes pararentur. Futurum esse paucis

annis, uti omnes ex Galliae finibus pellerentur, atque omnes Germani Rhenum transirent: neque enim conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum agro; neque hanc consuetudinem victus cum illa comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallorum copias proelio vicerit, quod proelium factum sit ad Magetobriam, superbe et crudeliter imperare, obsides nobilissimi cujusque liberos poscere, et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad voluntatem ejus facta sit: hominem esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium: non posse ejus imperia diutius sustineri: nisi si quid in Caesare Populoque Romano sit auxilii, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, quod Helvetii fecerint, ut domo emigrent; aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remotas a Germanis, petant; fortunamque, quaecunque accidat, experiantur. Haec si enunciata Ariovisto sint, non dubitare, quin de omnibus obsidibus, qui apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sumat. Caesarem vel auctoritate sua atque exercitus, vel recenti victoria, vel nomine Populi Romani deterrere posse, ne major multitudo Germanorum Rhenum traducatur; Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti injuria posse defendere.

XXXII. Hac oratione ab Divitiaco habita, omnes, qui aderant, magno fletu auxilium a Caesare petere coeperunt. Animadvertit Caesar, unos ex omnibus Sequanos nihil earum rerum facere, quas ceteri facerent; sed tristes, capite demisso, terram intueri. Ejus rei causa quae esset miratus ex ipsis quaesiit. Nihil Sequani respondere, sed in eadem tristitia taciti permanere. Quum ab iis saepius quaereret, neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Divitiacus Aeduus respondit: Hoc esse miseriorem gravioremque fortunam Sequanorum, prae reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri, nec auxilium implorare, auderent, absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrerent: propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur; Sequanis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum oppida omnia in potestate ejus essent, omnes cruciatus essent perferendi.

XXXIII. His rebus cognitis, Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit, pollicitusque est, Sibi eam rem curae futuram: magnam se habere spem, et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem injuriis facturum. Hac oratione

habita, concilium dimisit. Et secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur, quare sibi eam rem cogitandam et suscipiendam putaret; in primis, quod Aeduos, fratres consanguineosque saepenumero ab Senatu appellatos, in servitute atque in ditione videbat Germanorum teneri, eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intelligebat: quod, in tanto imperio Populi Romani, turpissimum sibi et Reipublicae esse arbitrabatur. Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire, et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire, Populo Romano periculosum videbat: neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros temperaturos existimabat, quin, quum omnem Galliam occupassent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fecissent, in Provinciam exirent, atque inde in Italiam contenderent; praesertim quum Sequanos a Provincia nostra Rhodanus divideret. Quibus rebus quam maturrime occurrendum putabat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam sumpserat, ut ferendus non videretur.

XXXIV. Quamobrem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret, qui ab eo postularent, uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquio diceret: velle sese de Republica et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere. Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse; si quid ille a se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. Praeterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere, quas Caesar possideret; neque exercitum sine magno commeatu atque emolumento in unum locum contrahere posse: sibi autem mirum videri, quid in sua Gallia, quam bello vicisset, aut Caesari, aut omnino Populo Romano negotii esset.

XXXV. His responsis ad Caesarem relatis, iterum ad eum Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit: Quoniam, tanto suo Populique Romani beneficio affectus, quum in consulatu suo rex atque amicus a Senatu appellatus esset, hanc sibi Populoque Romano gratiam referret, ut in colloquium venire invitatus gravaretur, neque de communi re dicendum sibi et cognoscendum putaret; haec esse, quae ab eo postularet: primum, ne quam multitudinem hominum amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam traduceret: deinde obsides, quos haberet ab Aeduis, redderet; Sequanisque permitteret, ut, quos illi

haberent, voluntate ejus reddere illis liceret; neve Aeduos injuria lacesseret, neve his sociisve eorum bellum inferret. Si id ita fecisset, sibi Populoque Romano perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam cum eo futuram: si non impetraret, sese, quoniam, M. Messala, M. Pisone, Coss., Senatus censuisset, uti, quicunque Galliam provinciam obtineret, quod commodo Reipublicae facere posset, Aeduos caeterosque amicos Populi Romani defenderet, sese Aeduorum injurias non neglecturum.

XXXVI. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Jus esse belli, ut, qui vicissent, iis, quos vicissent, quemadmodum vellent, imperarent: item Populum Romanum victis non ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium, imperare consuesse. Si ipse Populo Romano non praescriberet, quemadmodum suo jure uteretur; non oportere sese a Populo Romano in suo jure impediri. Aeduos sibi, quoniam belli fortunam tentassent, et armis congressi ac superati essent, stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Caesarem injuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret. Aeduis se obsides redditurum non esse, neque iis, neque eorum sociis injuria bellum illaturum, si in eo manerent, quod convenisset, stipendiumque quotannis penderent: si id non fecissent, longe iis fraternum nomen Populi Romani abfuturum. Quod sibi Caesar denunciaret, se Aeduorum injurias non neglecturum; neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse. Quum vellet, congrederetur; intellecturum, quid invicti Germani, exercitatissimi in armis, qui inter annos XIV tectum non subissent, virtute possent.

XXXVII. Haec eodem tempore Caesari mandata referebantur, et legati ab Aeduis et a Treviris veniebant: Aedui questum, quod Harudes, qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur; sese ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisse: Treviri autem, pagos centum Suevorum ad ripas Rheni consedisse, qui Rhenum transire conarentur; iis praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium fratres. Quibus rebus Caesar, vehementer commotus, maturandum sibi existimavit, ne, si nova manus Suevorum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese conjunxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque re frumentaria, quam

celerrime potuit, comparata, magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

XXXVIII. Quum tridui viam processisset, nunciatum est ei, Ariovistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum, contendere, triduique viam a suis finibus profecisse. Id ne accideret, magno opere praecavendum sibi Caesar existimabat: namque omnium rerum, quae ad bellum usui erant, summa erat in eo oppido facultas; idque natura loci sic muniebatur, ut magnam ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem, propterea quod flumen Dubis, ut circino circumductum, paene totum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est non amplius pedum DC, qua flumen intermittit, mons continet magna altitudine, ita ut radices ejus montis ex utraque parte ripae fluminis contingant. Hunc murus circumdatus arcem efficit, et cum oppido conjungit. Huc Caesar magnis diurnis nocturnisque itineribus contendit, occupatoque oppido ibi praesidium collocat.

XXXIX. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeatusque causa moratur, ex percunctatione nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanos, incredibili virtute atque exercitatione in armis esse praedicabant, saepenumero sese cum eis congressos ne vultum quidem atque aciem oculorum ferre potuisse, tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit, ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animosque perturbaret. Hic primum ortus est a tribunis militum, praefectis, reliquisque, qui ex urbe, amicitiae causa, Caesarem secuti, non magnum in re militari usum habebant: quorum alius, alia causa illata, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petebat, ut ejus voluntate discedere liceret: nonnulli, pudore adducti, ut timoris suspicionem vitarent, remanebant. Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum lachrymas tenere poterant: abditi in tabernaculis aut suum fatum querebantur, aut cum familiaribus suis commune periculum miserabantur. Vulgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. Horum vocibus ac timore, paulatim etiam ii, qui magnum in castris usum habebant, milites centurionesque, quique equitatu praeerant, perturbabantur. Qui se ex his minus timidos

existimari volebant, non se hostem vereri, sed angustias itineris, et magnitudinem sylvarum, quae intercederent inter ipsos atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentariam, ut satis commode supportari posset, timere dicebant. Nonnulli etiam Caesari renunciabant, quum castra moveri ac signa ferri jussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites, nec propter timorem signa laturos.

XL. Haec quum animadvertisset, convocato concilio, omniumque ordinum ad id concilium adhibitis centurionibus, vehementer eos incusavit: Primum, quod aut quam in partem, aut quo consilio ducerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent. Ariovistum, se consule, cupidissime Populi Romani amicitiam appetisse; cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum judicaret? Sibi quidem persuaderi, cognitis suis postulatis, atque aequitate conditionum perspecta, eum neque suam, neque Populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur? aut cur de sua virtute, aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent? Factum ejus hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, quum, Cimbris et Teutonis a C. Mario pulsis, non minorem laudem exercitus, quam ipse imperator, meritus videbatur: factum etiam nuper in Italia, servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina, quam a nobis accepissent, sublevarent. Ex quo judicari posset, quantum haberet in se boni constantia; propterea quod, quos aliquamdiu inermos sine causa timuissent, hos postea armatos ac victores superassent. Denique hos esse eosdem, quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi, non solum in suis, sed etiam in illorum finibus, plerumque superarint, qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitu non potuerint. Si quos adversum proelium et fuga Gallorum commoveret, hos, si quaererent, reperire posse, diuturnitate belli defatigatis Gallis, Ariovistum, quum multos menses castris se ac paludibus tenuisset, neque sui potestatem fecisset, desperantes jam de pugna et dispersos subito adortum, magis ratione et consilio, quam virtute, vicisse. Cui rationi contra homines barbaros atque imperitos locus fuisset, hac ne ipsum quidem sperare, nostros exercitus capi posse. Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem, angustiasque itinerum conferrent, facere arroganter, quum

aut de officio imperatoris desperare, aut praescribere viderentur. Haec sibi esse curae; frumentum Sequanos, Leucos, Lingonas subministrare; jamque esse in agris frumenta matura: de itinere, ipsos brevi tempore judicaturos. Quod non fore dicto audientes milites, neque signa laturi dicantur, nihil se ea re commoveri: scire enim, quibuscunque exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, aut, male re gesta, fortunam defuisse; aut, aliquo facinore comperto, avaritiam esse conjunctam. Suam innocentiam perpetua vita, felicitatem Helvetiorum bello, esse perspectam. Itaque se, quod in longiorem diem collaturus esset, repraesentaturum; et proxima nocte de quarta vigilia castra moturum, ut quam primum intelligere posset, utrum apud eos pudor atque officium, an timor valeret. Quod si praeterea nemo sequatur, tamen se cum sola decima legione iturum, de qua non dubitaret; sibique eam praetoriam cohortem futuram. Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue, et propter virtutem confidebat maxime.

XLI. Hac oratione habita, mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentes, summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi innata est; princepsque decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit, quod de se optimum judicium fecisset; seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit. Deinde reliquae legiones per tribunos militum et primorum ordinum centuriones egerunt, uti Caesari satisfacerent: Se neque unquam dubitasse neque timuisse, neque de summa belli suum judicium, sed imperatoris esse, existimavisse. Eorum satisfactione accepta, et itinere exquisito per Divitiacum, quod ex Gallis ei maximam fidem habebat, ut millium amplius quinquaginta circuitu, locis apertis, exercitum duceret, de quarta vigilia, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimo die, quum iter non intermitteret, ab exploratoribus certior factus est, Ariovisti copias a nostris millibus passuum quatuor et viginti abesse.

XLII. Cognito Caesaris adventu, Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit: Quod antea de colloquio postulasset, id per se fieri licere, quoniam propius accessisset; seque id sine periculo facere posse existimare. Non respuit conditionem Caesar: jamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, quum

id, quod antea petenti denegasset, ultro polliceretur; magnamque in spem veniebat, pro suis tantis Populique Romani in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis postulatis, fore, uti pertinacia desisteret. Dies colloquio dictus est, ex eo die quintus. Interim, quum saepe ultro citroque legati inter eos mitterentur, Ariovistus postulavit, Ne quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar adduceret: vereri se, ne per insidias ab eo circumveniretur: uterque cum equitatu veniret: alia ratione se non esse venturum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium, interposita causa, tolli volebat, neque salutem suam Gallorum equitatu committere audebat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis equitibus detractis, eo legionarios milites legionis decimae, cui quam maxime confidebat, imponere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus facto esset, haberet. Quod quum fieret, non irridicule quidam ex militibus decimae legionis dixit: Plus, quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem ei facere; pollicitum, se in cohortis praetoriae loco decimam legionem habiturum; nunc, ad equum rescribere.

XLIII. Planities erat magna, et in ea tumulus terrenus satis grandis. Hic locus aequo fere spatio ab castris utrisque aberat. Eo, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venerunt. Legionem Caesar, quam equis devexerat, passibus ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equites Ariovisti pari intervallo constiterunt. Ariovistus, ex equis ut colloquerentur, et, praeter se, denos ut ad colloquium adducerent, postulavit. Ubi eo ventum est, Caesar, initio orationis, sua Senatusque in eum beneficia commemoravit; Quod rex appellatus esset a Senatu, quod amicus, quod munera amplissima missa; quam rem et paucis contigisse, et pro magnis hominum officiis consuesse tribui docebat: illum, quum neque aditum neque causam postulandi justam haberet, beneficio ac liberalitate sua ac Senatus ea praemia consecutum. Docebat etiam, Quam veteres quamque justae causae necessitudinis ipsis cum Aeduis intercederent; quae Senatus consulta, quoties, quamque honorifica in eos facta essent: ut omni tempore totius Galliae principatum Aedui tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam appetissent: Populi Romani hanc esse consuetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil deperdere, sed gratia, dignitate, honore auctiores velit esse:

quod vero ad amicitiam Populi Romani attulissent, id iis eripi, quis pati posset? Postulavit deinde eadem, quae legatis in mandatis dederat; Ne aut Aeduis, aut eorum sociis, bellum inferret; obsides redderet: si nullam partem Germanorum domum remittere posset, at ne quos amplius Rhenum transire pateretur.

XLIV. Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris pauca respondit; de suis virtutibus multa praedicavit: Transisse Rhenum sese non sua sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum a Gallis; non sine magna spe magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse; sedes habere in Gallia, ab ipsis concessas; obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capere jure belli, quod victores victis imponere consuerint; non sese Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse; omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse, ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno proelio fusas ac superatas esse; si iterum experiri velint, iterum paratum sese decertare; si pace uti velint, iniquum esse, de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad id tempus pependerint. Amicitiam Populi Romani sibi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento esse oportere: idque se ea spe petisse. Si per Populum Romanum stipendium remittatur, et dedititii subtrahantur, non minus libenter sese recusaturum Populi Romani amicitiam, quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam transducat, id se sui muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae, causa facere; ejus rei testimonium esse, quod, nisi rogatus, non venerit, et quod bellum non intulerit, sed defenderit. Se prius in Galliam venisse, quam Populum Romanum. Nunquam ante hoc tempus exercitum Populi Romani Galliae provinciae fines egressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cur in suas possessiones veniret? Provinciam suam esse hanc Galliam, sicuti illam nostram. Ut ipsi concedi non oporteret, si in nostros fines impetum faceret: sic item nos esse iniquos, quod in suo jure se interpellaremus. Quod fratres a Senatu Aeduos appellatos diceret, non se tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum, ut non sciret, neque bello Allobrogum proximo Aeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsos in his contentionibus, quas Aedui secum et cum Sequanis habuissent, auxilio Populi Romani usos esse. Debere se suspicari,

simulata Caesarem amicitia, quod exercitum in Gallia habeat, sui opprimendi causa habere. Qui nisi decedat, atque exercitum deducat ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amico, sed pro hoste habiturum: quod si eum interfecerit, multis sese nobilibus principibusque Populi Romani gratum esse facturum: id se ab ipsis per eorum nuncios compertum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam ejus morte redimere posset. Quod si decessisset, ac liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradidisset, magno se illum praemio remuneraturum; et, quaecunque bella geri vellet, sine ullo ejus labore et periculo confecturum.

XLV. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non posset, et neque suam neque Populi Romani consuetudinem pati, uti optime meritos socios desereret; neque se judicare Galliam potius esse Ariovisti, quam Populi Romani. Bello superatos esse Arvernos et Rutenos ab Q. Fabio Maximo, quibus Populus Romanus ignovisset; neque in provinciam redegisset, neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari oporteret, Populi Romani justissimum esse in Gallia imperium: si judicium Senatus servari oporteret, liberam debere esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legibus uti voluisset.

XLVI. Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nunciatum est, equites Ariovisti propius tumulum accedere, et ad nostros adequitare; lapides telaque in nostros conjicere. Caesar loquendi finem fecit; seque ad suos recepit; suisque imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes rejicerent. Nam, etsi sine ullo periculo legionis delectae cum equitatu proelium fore videbat, tamen committendum non putabat, ut, pulsis hostibus, dici posset, eos ab se per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Posteaquam in vulgus militum elatum est, qua arrogantia in colloquio Ariovistus usus, omni Gallia Romanis interdixisset, impetumque in nostros ejus equites fecissent; eaque res colloquium ut diremisset, multo major alacritas studiumque pugnandi majus exercitu injectum est.

XLVII. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit, Velle se de his rebus, quae inter eos agi coeptae, neque perfectae essent, agere cum eo: uti aut iterum colloquio diem

constitueret; aut, si id minus vellet, ex suis legatis aliquem ad se mitteret. Colloquendi Caesari causa visa non est; et eo magis, quod pridie ejus diei Germani retineri non poterant, quin in nostros tela conjicerent. Legatum ex suis sese magno cum periculo ad eum missurum et hominibus feris objecturum existimabat. Commodissimum visum est, C. Valerium Procillum, C. Valerii Caburi filium, summa virtute et humanitate adolescentem (cujus pater a C. Valerio Flacco civitate donatus erat) et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, qua multa jam Ariovistus longinqua consuetudine utebatur, et quod in eo peccandi Germanis causa non esset, ad eum mittere, et M. Mettium, qui hospitio Ariovisti usus erat. His mandavit, ut, quae diceret Ariovistus, cognoscerent et ad se referrent. Quos quum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitu suo praesente, conclamavit: Quid ad se venirent? An speculandi causa? Conantes dicere prohibuit, et in catenas conjecit.

XLVIII. Eodem die castra promovit, et millibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris sub monte consedit. Postridie ejus diei praeter castra Caesaris suas copias transduxit, et millibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit, eo consilio, uti frumento commeatuque, qui ex Sequanis et Aeduis supportaretur, Caesarem intercluderet. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset. Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit; equestri proelio quotidie contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae, quo se Germani exercuerant. Equitum millia erant sex; totidem numero pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi; quos ex omni copia singuli singulos, suae salutis causa, delegerant. Cum his in proeliis versabantur, ad hos se equites recipiebant: hi, si quid erat durius, concurrebant: si qui, graviore vulnere accepto, equo deciderat, circumsistebant: si quo erat longius prodeundum, aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas, ut, jubis equorum sublevati, cursum adaequarent.

XLIX. Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani consederant, circiter passus sexcentos ab eis, castris

idoneum locum delegit; acieque triplici instructa, ad eum locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire jussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos, uti dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero XVI millia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quae copiae nostros perterrerent et munitione prohiberent. Nihilo secius Caesar, ut ante constituerat, duas acies hostem propulsare; tertiam opus perficere jussit. Munitis castris, duas ibi legiones reliquit, et partem auxiliorum: quatuor reliquas in castra majora reduxit.

L. Proximo die, instituto suo, Caesar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit; paulumque a majoribus progressus, aciem instruxit, hostibusque pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quae castra minora oppugnaret, misit: acriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus, multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus, in castra reduxit. Quum ex captivis quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret, hanc reperiebat causam: quod apud Germanos ea consuetudo esset, ut matres familiae eorum sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent, utrum proelium committi ex usu esset, nec ne: eas ita dicere: Non esse fas Germanos superare, si ante novam lunam proelio contendissent.

LI. Postridie ejus diei Caesar praesidio utrisque castris, quod satis esse visum est, reliquit; omnes alarios in conspectu hostium pro castris minoribus constituit, quod minus multitudine militum legionariorum pro hostium numero valebat, ut ad speciem alariis uteretur. Ipse, triplici instructa acie, usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessario Germani suas copias castris eduxerunt, generatimque constituerunt, paribusque intervallis, Harudes, Marcomannos, Triboccos, Vangiones, Nemetes, Sedusios, Suevos; omnemque aciem suam rhedis et carris circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fuga relinqueretur. Eo mulieres imposuerunt, quae in proelium proficiscentes milites passis manibus flentes implorabant, ne se in servitutem Romanis traderent.

LII. Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et quaes-

THE CAMPS OF CAESAR AND ARIOVISTUS.



A. *Caesar's Camp.* B. *Camp of Ariovistus.* C. *First and second Battalions of Caesar under arms.* D. *Third Battalion defending the Camp.* E. 1600 *infantry in readiness, with all the cavalry of Ariovistus.*

torem praefecit, uti eos testes suae quisque virtutis haberet. Ipse a dextro cornu, quod eam partem minime firmam hostium esse animum adverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostri acriter in hostes, signo dato, impetum fecerunt: itaque hostes repente celeriterque procurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes conjiciendi non daretur. Rejectis pilis, cominus gladiis pugnatum est: at Germani, celeriter ex consuetudine sua phalange facta, impetus gladiorum exceperunt. Reperti sunt complures nostri milites, qui in phalangas insilirent, et scuta manibus revellerent et desuper vulnerarent. Quum hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitudine suorum nostram aciem premebant. Id quum animadvertisset P. Crassus adolescens, qui equitatu praeerat, quod expeditior erat, quam hi qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.

LIII. Ita proelium restitutum est; atque omnes hostes terga verterunt, neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad flumen Rhenum millia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinquaginta pervenerint. Ibi perpauci, aut viribus confisi transnatare contenderunt, aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem repererunt. In his fuit Ariovistus, qui, naviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus, ea profugit: reliquos omnes consecuti equites nostri interfecerunt. Duae fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueva natione, quam ab domo secum eduxerat; altera Norica, regis Vocionis soror, quam in Gallia duxerat, a fratre missam: utraeque in ea fuga perierunt. Duae filiae harum, altera occisa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Procillus, quum a custodibus in fuga trinis catenis vinctus traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem, hostes equitatu persequentem, incidit. Quae quidem res Caesari non minorem, quam ipsa victoria, voluptatem attulit; quod hominem honestissimum provinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, ereptum e manibus hostium, sibi restitutum videbat; neque ejus calamitate de tanta voluptate et gratulatione quidquam fortuna diminuerat. Is, se praesente, de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat, utrum igni statim necaretur, an in aliud tempus reservaretur: sortium beneficio se esse incolumem. Item M. Mettius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

LIV. Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nunciato, Suevi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt: quos Ubii, qui proximi Rhenum incolunt, perterritos insecuti, magnum ex his numerum occiderunt. Caesar, una aestate duobus maximis bellis confectis, maturius paulo, quam tempus anni postulabat, in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit: hibernis Labienum praeposuit: ipse in citeriorem Galliam, ad conventus agendos, profectus est.

C. JULII CAESARIS

COMMENTARIORUM

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER II.

ARGUMENTUM.

Cap. I. Belgae omnes contra Populum Romanum conjurant: III. exceptis Remis, V. Caesar contra eos exercitum Axonam flumen transducit. VII. Bibracti oppido, VIII. atque item Q. Titurio legato, a Belgis oppugnatis, subsidia mittit. X. Illi, frustra istis oppugnationibus tentatis, ad tuendos suos quisque fines, copias partiuntur. XII. Caesar discedentes insecutus, Suessiones, XIII. Bellovacos, XV. et Ambianos in deditionem accepit. XVI. Nervios, fortiter se defendentes, debellat. XXIX. Item Aduaticos.

I. Quum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia in hibernis, ita uti supra demonstravimus, crebri ad eum rumores afferebantur, literisque item Labieni certior fiebat, omnes Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus, contra Populum Romanum conjurare, obsidesque inter se dare: conjurandi has esse causas: primum, quod vererentur, ne, omni pacata Gallia, ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur: deinde, quod ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitarentur, partim qui, ut Germanos diutius in Gallia versari noluerant, ita Populi Romani exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere in Gallia moleste ferebant; partim qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis imperiis studebant: ab nonnullis etiam, quod in Gallia a potentioribus atque his, qui ad conducendos homines facultates habebant, vulgo regna occupabantur, qui minus facile eam rem in imperio nostro consequi poterant.

II. Iis nunciis literisque commotus Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas conscripsit; et inita aestate, in interiorem Galliam qui deduceret, Q. Pedium legatum misit. Ipse, quum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet, ad exercitum venit; dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea, quae apud eos gerantur, cognoscant; seque de his rebus certiorem faciant. Hi constanter omnes nunciaverunt manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conduci. Tum vero dubitandum non existimavit, quin ad eos [duodecimo die] proficisceretur. Re frumentaria provisa, castra movet, diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

III. Eo quum de improviso, celeriusque omni opinione venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum legatos Iccium et Antebrogium, primos civitatis, miserunt, qui dicerent, Se suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem Populi Romani permittere; neque se cum reliquis Belgis consensisse, neque contra Populum Romanum omnino conjurasse: paratosque esse et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere, et frumento caeterisque rebus juvare: reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse: Germanosque, qui cis Rhenum incolunt, sese cum his conjunxisse, tantumque esse eorum omnium furorem, ut, ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eodem jure et eisdem legibus utantur, unum imperium, unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant, deterrere potuerint, quin cum his consentirent.

IV. Quum ab his quaereret, quae civitates, quantaeque in armis essent, et quid in bello possent, sic reperiebat: plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis; Rhenumque antiquitus traductos, propter loci fertilitatem ibi consedisse, Gallosque, qui ea loca incolerent, expulisse; solosque esse, qui, patrum nostrorum memoria, omni Gallia vexata, Teutones Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingredi prohibuerint. Qua ex re fieri, uti earum rerum memoria magnam sibi auctoritatem, magnosque spiritus in re militari sumerent. De numero eorum omnia se habere explorata Remi dicebant, propterea quod propinquitatibus affinitatibusque conjuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem in communi Belgarum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognoverint. Plurimum inter eos Bellovacos et

virtute et auctoritate et hominum numero valere: hos posse conficere armata millia centum: pollicitos ex eo numero electa millia LX, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulare. Suessiones suos esse finitimos; latissimos feracissimosque agros possidere: apud eos fuisse regem nostra etiam memoria Divitiacum, totius Galliae potentissimum, qui quum magnae partis harum regionum, tum etiam Britanniae, imperium obtinuerit: nunc esse regem Galbam: ad hunc, propter justitiam prudentiamque, summam totius belli omnium voluntate deferri: oppida habere numero XII; polliceri millia armata quinquaginta: totidem Nervios, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habeantur, longissimeque absint: XV millia Atrebates: Ambianos X millia: Morinos XXV millia: Menapios IX millia: Caletos X millia: Velocasses et Veromanduos totidem: Aduatucos XIX millia: Condrusos, Eburones, Caeraesos, Paemanos, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad XL millia.

V. Caesar, Remos cohortatus, liberaliterque oratione prosecutus, omnem senatum ad se convenire, principumque liberos obsides ad se adduci jussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Divitiacum Aeduum magno opere cohortatus, docet, quanto opere rei publicae communisque salutis intersit, manus hostium distineri, ne cum tanta multitudine uno tempore confligendum sit. Id fieri posse, si suas copias Aedui in fines Bellovacorum introduxerint, et eorum agros populari coeperint. His mandatis, eum ab se dimittit. Postquam omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas ad se venire vidit, neque jam longe abesse ab his, quos miserat, exploratoribus, et ab Remis cognovit, flumen Axonam, quod est in extremis Remorum finibus, exercitum traducere maturavit, atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat, et post eum quae essent tuta ab hostibus reddebat, et commeatus ab Remis, reliquisque civitatibus, ut sine periculo ad eum portari posset, efficiebat. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit; et in altera parte fluminis Q. Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus relinquit: castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vallo, fossaque duodeviginti pedum munire jubet.

VI. Ab his castris oppidum Remorum, nomine Bibrax, aberat millia passuum VIII. Id ex itinere magno impetu Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegre eo die sustentatum est. Gallorum eadem, atque Belgarum, oppugnatio est haec. Ubi, circumjecta multitudine hominum totis moenibus, undique lapides in murum jaci coepti sunt, murusque defensoribus nudatus est; testudine facta, portas succedunt, murumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fiebat: nam, quum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conjicerent, in muro consistendi potestas erat nulli. Quum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius Remus, summa nobilitate et gratia inter suos, qui tum oppido praeerat, unus ex his, qui legati de pace ad Caesarem venerant, nuncios ad eum mittit, Nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse.

VII. Eo de media nocte Caesar, iisdem ducibus usus, qui nuncii ab Iccio venerant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios, et funditores Baleares subsidio oppidanis mittit: quorum adventu et Remis, cum spe defensionis, studium propugnandi accessit, et hostibus eadem de causa spes potiundi oppidi discessit. Itaque, paulisper apud oppidum morati, agrosque Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis aedificiisque, quos adire poterant, incensis, ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contenderunt; et ab millibus passuum minus II castra posuerunt: quae castra, ut fumo atque ignibus significabatur, amplius millibus passuum VIII in latitudinem patebant.

VIII. Caesar primo, et propter multitudinem hostium, et propter eximiam opinionem virtutis, proelio supersedere statuit; quotidie tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtute posset, et quid nostri auderent, sollicitationibus periclitabatur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiores intellexit, loco pro castris ad aciem instruendam natura opportuno atque idoneo; (quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex planitie editus, tantum adversus in latitudinem patebat, quantum loci acies instructa occupare poterat, atque ex utraque parte lateris dejectus habebat, et frontem leniter fastigatus paulatim ad planitiem redibat) ab utroque latere ejus collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum CD; et ad extremas fossas castella constituit, ibique tormenta collocavit, ne, quum aciem instruxisset, hostes, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab

lateribus pugnantes suos circumvenire possent. Hoc facto, duabus legionibus, quas proxime conscripserat, in castris relictis, ut, si qua opus esset, subsidio duci possent, reliquas sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant.

IX. Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent, hostes exspectabant: nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos aggrederentur, parati in armis erant. Interim proelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, secundiore equitum nostrorum proelio, Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. Ibi vadis repertis, partem suarum copiarum transducere conati sunt; eo consilio, ut, si possent, castellum, cui praeerat Q. Titurius legatus, expugnarent, pontemque interscinderent; si minus potuissent, agros Remorum popularentur, qui magno nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatuque nostros prohiberent.

X. Caesar, certior factus ab Titurio, omnem equitatum et levis armaturae Numidas, funditores, sagittariosque pontem traducit atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi, magnum eorum numerum occiderunt. Per eorum corpora reliquos audacissime transire conantes, multitudine telorum repulerunt; primos, qui transierant, equitatu circumventos, interfecerunt. Hostes, ubi et de expugnando oppido, et de flumine transeundo, spem se fefellisse intellexerunt, neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi pugnandi causa viderunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere coepit, concilio convocato, constituerunt, optimum esse domum suam quemque reverti; ut, quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenirent; et potius in suis, quam in alienis finibus decertarent; et domesticis copiis rei frumentariae uterentur. Ad eam sententiam, cum reliquis causis, haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiacum atque Aeduos finibus Bellovacorum appropinquare cognoverant. His persuaderi, ut diutius morarentur, neque suis auxilium ferrent, non poterat.

XI. Ea re constituta, secunda vigilia magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris egressi, nullo certo ordine neque imperio, quum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt, ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per speculatores cognita, insidias veritus, quod, qua de causa discederent, nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Prima luce, confirmata re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum, qui novissimum agmen moraretur, praemisit. His Q. Pedium, et L. Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praefecit. T. Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi jussit. Hi, novissimos adorti et multa millia passuum prosecuti, magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt, quum ab extremo agmine, ad quos ventum erat, consisterent, fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent; prioresque (quod abesse a periculo viderentur, neque ulla necessitate neque imperio continerentur,) exaudito clamore, perturbatis ordinibus, omnes in fuga sibi praesidium ponerent. Ita sine ullo periculo tantam eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt, quantum fuit diei spatium; sub occasumque solis destiterunt, seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

XII. Postridie ejus diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit, et magno itinere confecto ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, quod vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae, murique altitudinem, paucis defendentibus, expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis, vineas agere, quaeque ad oppugnandum usui erant, comparare coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere jacto, turribusque constitutis, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti, legatos ad Caesarem de deditione mittunt; et, petentibus Remis, ut conservarentur, impetrant.

XIII. Caesar, obsidibus acceptis, primis civitatis atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in deditionem Suessiones accepit, exercitumque in Bellovacos duxit. Qui quum se suaque omnia in oppidum

Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum exercitu circiter millia passuum quinque abesset, omnes majores natu, ex oppido egressi, manus ad Caesarem tendere et voce significare coeperunt, sese in ejus fidem ac potestatem venire, neque contra Populum Romanum armis contendere. Item, quum ad oppidum accessisset, castraque ibi poneret, pueri mulieresque ex muro passis manibus suo more pacem a Romanis petierunt.

XIV. Pro his Divitiacus (nam post discessum Belgarum, dimissis Aeduorum copiis, ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Aeduae fuisse: impulsos a suis principibus, qui dicerent, Aeduos, a Caesare in servitutem redactos, omnes indignitates contumeliasque perferre, et ab Aeduis defecisse, et Populo Romano bellum intulisse: qui hujus consilii principes fuissent, quod intelligerent quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacos, sed etiam pro his Aeduos, ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur. Quod si fecerit, Aeduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificaturum: quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint.

XV. Caesar honoris Divitiaci atque Aeduorum causa, Sese eos in fidem recepturum et conservaturum, dixit: sed, quod erat civitas magna inter Belgas auctoritate, atque hominum multitudine praestabat, DC obsides poposcit. His traditis, omnibusque armis ex oppido collatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui se suaque omnia sine mora dediderunt. Eorum fines Nervii attingebant: quorum de natura moribusque Caesar quum quaereret, sic reperiebat: Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus: nihil pati vini, reliquarumque rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium, inferri, quod his rebus relanguescere animos et remitti virtutem existimarent: esse homines feros, magnaeque virtutis: increpitare atque incusare reliquos Belgas, qui se Populo Romano dedidissent, patriamque virtutem projecissent: confirmare, sese neque legatos missuros, neque ullam conditionem pacis accepturos.

XVI. Quum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveniebat ex captivis, Sabim flumen ab castris suis non amplius millia passuum decem abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios

consedisse, adventumque ibi Romanorum exspectare una cum Atrebatibus et Veromanduis, finitimis suis: (nam his utrisque persuaserant, uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur) exspectari etiam ab his Aduatucorum copias, atque esse in itinere: mulieres, quique per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur, in eum locum conjecisse, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

XVII. His rebus cognitis, exploratores centurionesque praemittit, qui locum castris idoneum deligant. Quumque ex dedititiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesarem secuti una iter facerent: quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspecta, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt, atque iis demonstrarunt, inter singulas legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercedere, neque esse quidquam negotii, quum prima legio in castra venisset, reliquaeque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri: qua pulsa, impedimentisque direptis, futurum, ut reliquae contra consistere non auderent. Adjuvabat etiam eorum consilium, qui rem deferebant, quod Nervii antiquitus, quum equitatu nihil possent, (neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed, quidquid possunt, pedestribus valent copiis,) quo facilius finitimorum equitatum, si praedandi causa ad eos venisset, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis, crebris in latitudinem ramis et rubis sentibusque interjectis, effecerant, ut instar muri hae sepes munimenta praeberent; quo non modo intrari, sed ne perspici quidem posset. His rebus quum iter agminis nostri impediretur, non omittendum sibi consilium Nervii aestimaverunt.

XVIII. Loci natura erat haec, quem locum nostri castris delegerant. Collis, ab summo aequaliter declivis, ad flumen Sabim, quod supra nominavimus, vergebat. Ab eo flumine pari acclivitate collis nascebatur, adversus huic et contrarius, passus circiter ducentos, infima apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris, ut non facile introrsus perspici posset. Intra eas silvas, hostes in occulto sese continebant: in aperto loco secundum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo pedum circiter trium.

XIX. Caesar, equitatu praemisso, subsequebatur omnibus

copiis: sed ratio ordoque agminis aliter se habebat, ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam, quod ad hostes appropinquabat, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducebat: post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocarat: inde duae legiones, quae proxime conscriptae erant, totum agmen claudebant, praesidioque impedimentis erant. Equites nostri, cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi, cum hostium equitatu proelium commiserunt. Quum se illi identidem in silvas ad suos reciperent, ac rursus ex silva in nostros impetum facerent, neque nostri longius, quam quem ad finem porrecta ac loca aperta pertinebant, cedentes insequi auderent: interim legiones sex, quae primae venerant, opere dimenso, castra munire coeperunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitus ab his, qui in silvis abditi latebant, visa sunt, (quod tempus inter eos committendi proelii convenerat) ita, ut intra silvas aciem ordinesque constituerant, atque ipsi sese confirmaverant, subito omnibus copiis provolaverunt, impetumque in nostros equites fecerunt. His facile pulsis ac proturbatis, incredibili celeritate ad flumen decucurrerunt, ut paene uno tempore et ad silvas et in flumine et jam in manibus nostris hostes viderentur. Eadem autem celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra atque eos, qui in opere occupati erant, contenderunt.

XX. Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum proponendum, quod erat insigne, quum ad arma concurri oporteret: signum tuba dandum: ab opere revocandi milites: qui paulo longius, aggeris petendi causa, processerant, arcessendi: acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum: quarum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas et successus et incursus hostium impediebat. His difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, scientia atque usus militum, quod superioribus proeliis exercitati, quid fieri oporteret, non minus commode ipsi sibi praescribere, quam ab aliis doceri poterant; et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere, nisi munitis castris, vetuerat. Hi, propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium, nihil jam Caesaris imperium spectabant; sed per se, quae videbantur, administrabant.

XXI. Caesar, necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites, quam in partem fors obtulit, decucurrit et ad legionem

decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione cohortatus, quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent, neu perturbarentur animo, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant, quam quo telum adjici posset, proelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causa profectus, pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas, hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induendas, scutisque tegmenta detrahenda, tempus defuerit. Quam quisque in partem ab opere casu devenit, quaeque prima signa conspexit, ad haec constitit, ne, in quaerendis suis, pugnandi tempus dimitteret.

XXII. Instructo exercitu magis ut loci natura, dejectusque collis, et necessitas temporis, quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, quum, diversis legionibus, aliae alia in parte hostibus resisterent, sepibusque densissimis, ut ante demonstravimus, interjectis, prospectus impediretur: neque certa subsidia collocari, neque quid in quaque parte opus esset provideri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. Itaque, in tanta rerum iniquitate, fortunae quoque eventus varii sequebantur.

XXIII. Legionis nonae et decimae milites, ut in sinistra parte acie constiterant, pilis emissis, cursu ac lassitudine exanimatos vulneribusque confectos Atrebates (nam his ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen compulerunt; et transire conantes insecuti gladiis magnam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsi transire flumen non dubitaverunt; et, in locum iniquum progressi, rursus regressos ac resistentes hostes redintegrato proelio in fugam dederunt. Item alia in parte diversae duae legiones, undecima et octava, profligatis Veromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore in ipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur. At tum totis fere a fronte et ab sinistra parte nudatis castris, quum in dextro cornu legio duodecima, et, non magno ab ea intervallo, septima constitisset, omnes Nervii confertissimo agmine, duce Boduognato, qui summam imperii tenebat, ad eum locum contenderunt: quorum pars aperto latere legiones circumvenire, pars summum castrorum locum petere, coepit.

XXIV. Eodem tempore equites nostri, levisque armaturae pedites, qui cum iis una fuerant, quos primo hostium impetu pulsos dixeram, quum se in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrebant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petebant: et calones, qui ab decumana porta ac summo jugo collis nostros victores flumen transisse conspexerant, praedandi causa egressi, quum respexissent et hostes in nostris castris versari vidissent, praecipites fugae sese mandabant. Simul eorum, qui cum impedimentis veniebant, clamor fremitusque oriebatur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti ferebantur. Quibus omnibus rebus permoti equites Treviri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singularis, qui, auxilii causa ab civitate missi, ad Caesarem venerant, quum multitudine hostium castra nostra compleri, legiones premi et paene circumventas teneri, calones, equites, funditores, Numidas, diversos dissipatosque, in omnes partes fugere vidissent, desperatis nostris rebus, domum contenderunt: Romanos pulsos superatosque, castris impedimentisque eorum hostes potitos, civitati renunciaverunt.

XXV. Caesar, ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri, signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento; quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis, signiferoque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis, aut occisis, in his primopilo, P. Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto, ut jam se sustinere non posset, reliquos esse tardiores, et nonnullos ab novissimis desertos proelio excedere ac tela vitare; hostes neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntes intermittere, et ab utroque latere instare; et rem esse in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse subsidium, quod submitti posset: scuto ab novissimis uni militi detracto, quod ipse eo sine scuto venerat, in primam aciem processit, centurionibusque nominatim appellatis, reliquos cohortatus milites, signa inferre et manipulos laxare jussit, quo facilius gladiis uti possent. Cujus adventu spe illata militibus, ac redintegrato animo, quum pro se quisque in conspectu imperatoris, etiam in extremis suis rebus, operam navare cuperent, paulum hostium impetus tardatus est.

XXVI. Caesar, quum septimam legionem, quae juxta constiterat, item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum monuit, ut paulatim sese legiones conjungerent, et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto, quum alius alii subsidium ferrent, neque timerent, ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare coeperunt. Interim milites legionum duarum, quae in novissimo agmine praesidio impedimentis fuerant, proelio nunciato, cursu incitato, in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur. Et T. Labienus, castris hostium potitus, et ex loco superiore, quae res in nostris castris gererentur, conspicatus, decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit. Qui, quum ex equitum et calonum fuga, quo in loco res esset, quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt.

XXVII. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio est facta, ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubuissent, scutis innixi, proelium redintegrarent; tum calones, perterritos hostes conspicati, etiam inermes armatis occurrerent; equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugae virtute delerent, omnibus in locis pugnae se legionariis militibus praeferrent. At hostes, etiam in extrema spe salutis, tantam virtutem praestiterunt, ut, quum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi jacentibus insisterent, atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent; his dejectis et coacervatis cadaveribus, qui superessent, ut ex tumulo, tela in nostros conjicerent et pila intercepta remitterent: ut non nequidquam tantae virtutis homines judicari deberet ausos esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum: quae facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo redegerat.

XXVIII. Hoc proelio facto, et prope ad internecionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto, majores natu, quos una cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuaria ac paludes collectos dixeramus, hac pugna nunciata, quum victoribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tutum arbitrarentur, omnium, qui supererant, consensu legatos ad Caesarem miserunt, seque ei dediderunt; et, in commemoranda civitatis calamitate, ex DC ad III senatores, ex hominum millibus LX vix ad D, qui arma ferre possent, sese redactos esse dixerunt. Quos

Caesar, ut in miseros ac supplices usus misericordia videretur, diligentissime conservavit; suisque finibus atque oppidis uti jussit, et finitimis imperavit, ut ab injuria et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.

XXIX. Aduatuci, de quibus supra scripsimus, quum omnibus copiis auxilio Nerviis venirent, hac pugna nunciata, ex itinere domum reverterunt; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis, sua omnia in unum oppidum, egregie natura munitum, contulerunt. Quod quum ex omnibus in circuitu partibus altissimas rupes despectusque haberet, una ex parte leniter acclivis aditus, in latitudinem non amplius cc pedum, relinquebatur: quem locum duplici altissimo muro munierant; tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacutas trabes in muro collocarant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prognati; qui, quum iter in Provinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, iis impedimentis, quae secum agere ac portare non poterant, citra flumen Rhenum depositis, custodiae ex suis ac praesidio sex millia hominum una reliquerunt. Hi, post eorum obitum, multos annos a finitimis exagitati, quum alias bellum inferrent, alias illatum defenderent, consensu eorum omnium pace facta, hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt.

XXX. Ac, primo adventu exercitus nostri crebras ex oppido excursiones faciebant, parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendebant: postea, vallo pedum XII, in circuitu XV millium, crebrisque castellis circummuniti, oppido sese continebant. Ubi, vineis actis, aggere exstructo, turrim procul constitui viderunt, primum irridere ex muro, atque increpitare vocibus, quo tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio institueretur? quibusnam manibus, aut quibus viribus, praesertim homines tantulae staturae (nam plerumque hominibus Gallis, prae magnitudine corporum suorum, brevitas nostra contemptui est) tanti oneris turrim in muros sese collocare confiderent?

XXXI. Ubi vero moveri et appropinquare moenibus viderunt, nova atque inusitata specie commoti, legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui, ad hunc modum locuti: Non se existimare, Romanos sine ope divina bellum gerere, qui tantae altitudinis machinationes tanta celeritate promovere [et ex propinquitate pugnare] possent: se suaque omnia eorum potestati permittere, dixerunt. Unum petere, ac deprecari: si

forte, pro sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, statuisset, Aduatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret: sibi omnes fere finitimos esse inimicos ac suae virtuti invidere; a quibus se defendere, traditis armis, non possent: sibi praestare, si in eum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortunam a Populo Romano pati, quam ab his per cruciatum interfici, inter quos dominari consuessent.

XXXII. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Se magis consuetudine sua, quam merito eorum, civitatem conservaturum, si prius, quam murum aries attigisset, se dedidissent; sed deditionis nullam esse conditionem, nisi armis traditis: se id, quod in Nerviis fecisset, facturum, finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam dedititiis Populi Romani injuriam inferrent. Renunciata ad suos, quae imperarentur, facere dixerunt. Armorum magna multitudine de muro in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, jacta, sic ut prope summam muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi armorum adaequarent; et tamen circiter parte tertia, ut postea perspectum est, celata atque in oppido retentà, portis patefactis, eo die pace sunt usi.

XXXIII. Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque ex oppido exire jussit, ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus injuriam acciperent. Illi, ante inito, ut intellectum est, consilio, quod, deditione facta, nostros praesidia deducturos, aut denique indiligentius servaturos crediderant, partim cum his, quae retinuerant et celaverant, armis, partim scutis ex cortice factis, aut viminibus intextis, quae subito, ut temporis exiguitas postulabat, pellibus induxerant, tertia vigilia, qua minime arduus ad nostras munitiones ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis repente ex oppido eruptionem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, ignibus significatione facta, ex proximis castellis eo concursum est, pugnatumque ab hostibus ita acriter, ut a viris fortibus, in extrema spe salutis, iniquo loco, contra eos, qui ex vallo turribusque tela jacerent, pugnari debuit, quum in una virtute omnis spes salutis consisteret. Occisis ad hominum millibus quatuor, reliqui in oppidum rejecti sunt. Prostridie ejus diei, refractis portis, quum jam defenderet nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris, sectionem ejus oppidi universam Caesar vendidit. Ab his, qui emerant, capitum numerus ad eum relatus est millium LIII.

XXXIV. Eodem tempore a P. Crasso, quem cum legione una miserat ad Venetos, Unellos, Osismios, Curiosolitas, Sesuvios, Aulercos, Rhedones, quae sunt maritimae civitates, oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnes eas civitates in ditionem potestatemque Populi Romani esse redactas.

XXXV. His rebus gestis, omni Gallia pacata, tanta hujus belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est, uti ab his nationibus, quae trans Rhenum incolerent, mitterentur legati ad Caesarem, quae se obsides daturas, imperata facturas, pollicerentur: quas legationes Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properabat, inita proxima aestate, ad se reverti jussit. Ipse in Carnutes, Andes, Turonesque, quae civitates propinquae his locis erant ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus in hiberna deductis, in Italiam profectus est; ob easque res, ex literis Caesaris, dies xv supplicatio decreta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.

C. JULII CAESARIS

COMMENTARIORUM

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER III.

ARGUMENTUM.

CAP. I. Ser. Galba legatus quasdam inter Alpes et Rhodanum sitas gentes, secundis aliquot proeliis, subigit. II. Sedunos Veragrosque rebellantes gravi clade affligit. VII. Eodem tempore et rebellant Veneti, Unelli, Curiosolitaeque, et alii ad oceanum in Celtica populi. XII. Caesar, diu frustra terrestri bello lacessitis Venetis, XIV. tandem navali eos superat. XVII. Dum interea etiam legati, Q. Titurius cum Unellis: XX. P. Crassus cum Aquitaniae compluribus populis, feliciter bellum gerunt. XXVIII. Caesar, Morinos Menapiosque aggressus, ob anni tempus exercitum reducit.

I. Quum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Serv. Galbam cum legione duodecima et parte equitatus, in Nantuates, Veragros, Sedunosque misit, qui ab finibus Allobrogum, et lacu Lemanno, et flumine Rhodano ad summas Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit, quod iter per Alpes, quo magno cum periculo magnisque cum portoriis mercatores ire consuerant, patefieri volebat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitraretur, uti in eis locis legionem, hiemandi causa, collocaret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis, castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis, missis ad eum undique legatis, obsidibusque datis, et pace facta, constituit cohortes duas in Nantuatibus collocare, et ipse cum reliquis ejus legionis cohortibus in vico Veragrorum, qui appellatur Octodurus, hiemare: qui vicus, positus in valle, non magna adjecta planitie, altissimis montibus undique continetur. Quum hic in duas

partes flumine divideretur, alteram partem ejus vici Gallis concessit; alteram, vacuam ab illis relictam, cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vallo fossaque munivit.

II. Quum dies hibernorum complures transissent, frumentumque eo comportari jussisset, subito per exploratores certior factus est, ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discessisse, montesque, qui impenderent, a maxima multitudine Sedunorum et Veragrorum teneri. Id aliquot de causis acciderat, ut subito Galli belli renovandi legionisque opprimendae consilium caperent: primum, quod legionem, neque eam plenissimam, detractis cohortibus duabus, et compluribus singillatim, qui, commeatus petendi causa missi erant, absentibus, propter paucitatem despiciebant: tum etiam, quod propter iniquitatem loci, quum ipsi ex montibus in vallem decurrerent et tela conjicerent, ne primum quidem posse impetum suum sustineri existimabant. Accedebat, quod suos ab se liberos abstractos obsidum nomine dolebant; et Romanos, non solum itinerum causa, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis, culmina Alpium occupare conari, et ea loca finitimae provinciae adjungere, sibi persuasum habebant.

III. His nunciis acceptis, Galba, quum neque opus hibernorum munitionesque plene essent perfectae, neque de frumento reliquoque commeatu satis esset provisum, quod, deditione facta obsidibusque acceptis, nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter convocato, sententias exquirere coepit. Quo in consilio, quum tantum repentini periculi praeter opinionem accidisset, ac jam omnia fere superiora loca multitudine armatorum completa conspicerentur, neque subsidio veniri, neque commeatus supportari interclusis itineribus possent, prope jam desperata salute, nonnullae hujusmodi sententiae dicebantur, ut, impedimentis relictis, eruptione facta, iisdem itineribus, quibus eo pervenissent, ad salutem contenderent. Majori tamen parti placuit, hoc reservato ad extremum consilio, interim rei eventum experiri, et castra defendere.

IV. Brevi spatio interjecto, vix ut his rebus, quas constituissent, collocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur, hostes ex omnibus partibus, signo dato, decurrere, lapides gaesaque in vallum conjicere: nostri primo integris viribus

fortiter repugnare, neque ullum frustra telum ex loco superiore mittere: ut quaeque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurrere et auxilium ferre: sed hoc superari, quod diuturnitate pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant: quarum rerum a nostris, propter paucitatem, fieri nihil poterat; ac non modo defesso ex pugna excedendi, sed ne saucio quidem ejus loci, ubi constiterat, relinquendi, ac sui recipiendi facultas dabatur.

V. Quum jam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur, ac non solum vires sed etiam tela nostris deficerent, atque hostes acrius instarent, languidioribusque nostris, vallum scindere et fossas complere coepissent, resque esset jam ad extremum perducta casum, P. Sextius Baculus, primipili centurio, quem Nervico proelio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item C. Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam accurrunt, atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si, eruptione facta, extremum auxilium experirentur. Itaque, convocatis centurionibus, celeriter milites certiores facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium, ac tantummodo tela missa exciperent, seque ex labore reficerent: post, dato signo, ex castris erumperent, atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponerent.

VI. Quod jussi sunt, faciunt; ac subito omnibus portis eruptione facta, neque cognoscendi quid fieret, neque sui colligendi, hostibus facultatem relinquunt. Ita commutata fortuna, eos, qui in spem potiendorum castrorum venerant, undique circumventos interficiunt; et ex hominum millibus amplius triginta, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat, plus tertia parte interfecta, reliquos perterritos in fugam conjiciunt, ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere patiuntur. Sic, omnibus hostium copiis fusis, armisque exutis, se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. Quo proelio facto, quod saepius fortunam tentare Galba nolebat, atque alio sese in hiberna consilio venisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rebus viderat, maxime frumenti commeatusque inopia permotus, postero die omnibus ejus vici aedificiis incensis, in Provinciam reverti contendit: ac, nullo hoste prohibente, aut iter demorante, incolumem legionem in Nantuates, inde in Allobrogas perduxit, ibique hiemavit.

VII. His rebus gestis, quum omnibus de causis Caesar pacatam Galliam existimaret, superatis Belgis, expulsis Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedunis, atque ita inita hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes adire, et regiones cognoscere volebat, subitum bellum in Gallia coortum est. Ejus belli haec fuit causa: P. Crassus adolescens cum legione septima proximus mare Oceanum in Andibus hiemarat. Is, quod in his locis inopia frumenti erat, praefectos, tribunosque militum complures in finitimas civitates frumenti commeatusque petendi causa dimisit: quo in numero erat T. Terrasidius, missus in Unellos; M. Trebius Gallus, in Curiosolitas; Q. Velanius, cum T. Silio, in Venetos.

VIII. Hujus civitatis est longe amplissima auctoritas omnis orae maritimae regionum earum, quod et naves habent Veneti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt; et scientia atque usu nauticarum rerum reliquos antecedunt, et in magno impetu maris atque aperto, paucis portibus interjectis, quos tenent ipsi, omnes fere, qui eo mari uti consuerunt, habent vectigales. Ab iis fuit initium retinendi Silii atque Velanii, quod per eos suos se obsides, quos Crasso dedissent, recuperaturos existimabant. Horum auctoritate finitimi adducti, (ut sunt Gallorum subita et repentina consilia,) eadem de causa Trebium, Terrasidiumque retinent; et, celeriter missis legatis, per suos principes inter se conjurant, nihil, nisi communi consilio, acturos, eundemque omnis fortunae exitum esse laturos: reliquasque civitates sollicitant, ut in ea libertate, quam a majoribus acceperant, permanere, quam Romanorum servitutem perferre mallent. Omni ora maritima celeriter ad suam sententiam perducta, communem legationem ad P. Crassum mittunt, Si velit suos recipere, obsides sibi remittat.

IX. Quibus de rebus Caesar ab Crasso certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, naves interim longas aedificari in flumine Ligeri, quod influit in oceanum, remiges ex Provincia institui, nautas gubernatoresque comparari jubet. His rebus celeriter administratis, ipse, quum primum per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Veneti, reliquaeque item civitates, cognito Caesaris adventu, simul quod, quantum in

se facinus admisissent, intelligebant, (legatos, quod nomen apud omnes nationes sanctum inviolatumque semper fuisset, retentos ab se et in vincula conjectos) pro magnitudine periculi bellum parare, et maxime ea, quae ad usum navium pertinent, providere instituunt; hoc majore spe, quod multum natura loci confidebant. Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuariis, navigationem impeditam propter inscientiam locorum paucitatemque portuum sciebant: neque nostros exercitus propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud se morari posse, confidebant: ac jam, ut omnia contra opinionem acciderent, tamen se plurimum navibus posse: Romanos neque ullam facultatem habere navium, neque eorum locorum, ubi bellum gesturi essent, vada, portus, insulasque novisse: ac longe aliam esse navigationem in concluso mari, atque in vastissimo atque apertissimo Oceano, perspiciebant. His initis consiliis, oppida muniunt, frumenta ex agris in oppida comportant; naves in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum bellum gesturum constabat, quam plurimas possunt, cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osismios, Lexovios, Nannetes, Ambiliatos, Morinos, Diablintes, Menapios adsciscunt: auxilia ex Britannia, quae contra eas regiones posita est, arcessunt.

X. Erant hae difficultates belli gerendi, quas supra ostendimus; sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitabant: injuriae retentorum equitum Romanorum; rebellio facta post deditionem; defectio datis obsidibus; tot civitatum conjuratio; in primis, ne, hac parte neglecta, reliquae nationes idem sibi licere arbitrarentur. Itaque quum intelligeret, omnes fere Gallos novis rebus studere, et ad bellum mobiliter celeriterque excitari; omnes autem homines natura libertati studere, et conditionem servitutis odisse, prius quam plures civitates conspirarent, partiendum sibi ac latius distribuendum exercitum putavit.

XI. Itaque T. Labienum legatum in Treviros, qui proximi Rheno flumini sunt, cum equitatu mittit. Huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat, atque in officio contineat; Germanosque, qui auxilio a Belgis arcessiti dicebantur, si per vim navibus flumen transire conentur, prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis duodecim et magno numero equitatus in Aquitaniam proficisci jubet, ne ex his nationibus

auxilia in Galliam mittantur, ac tantae nationes conjungantur. Q. Titurium Sabinum legatum cum legionibus tribus in Unellos, Curiosolitas, Lexoviosque mittit, qui eam manum distinendam curet. D. Brutum adolescentem classi Gallicisque navibus, quas ex Pictonibus et Santonis reliquisque pacatis regionibus convenire jusserat, praeficit; et, quum primum possit, in Venetos proficisci jubet. Ipse eo pedestribus copiis contendit.

XII. Erant ejusmodi fere situs oppidorum, ut, posita extremis lingulis promontoriisque, neque pedibus aditum haberent, quum ex alto se aestus incitavisset, quod bis accidit semper horarum XXIV spatio; neque navibus, quod, rursus minuente aestu, naves in vadis afflictarentur. Ita utraque re oppidorum oppugnatio impediebatur; ac, si quando magnitudine operis forte superati, extruso mari aggere ac molibus, atque his ferme oppidi moenibus adaequatis, suis fortunis desperare coeperant, magno numero navium appulso, cujus rei summam facultatem habebant, sua deportabant omnia, seque in proxima oppida recipiebant. Ibi se rursus iisdem opportunitatibus loci defendebant. Haec eo facilius magnam partem aestatis faciebant, quod nostrae naves tempestatibus detinebantur, summaque erat vasto atque aperto mari, magnis aestibus, raris ac prope nullis portibus, difficultas navigandi.

XIII. Namque ipsorum naves ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant. Carinae aliquanto planiores, quam nostrarum navium, quo facilius vada ac decessum aestus excipere possent: prorae admodum erectae, atque item puppes ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatae; naves totae factae ex robore, ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perferendam: transtra pedalibus in latitudinem trabibus confixa clavis ferreis, digiti pollicis crassitudine: anchorae, pro funibus, ferreis catenis revinctae: pelles pro velis, alutaeque tenuiter confectae: hae sive propter lini inopiam, atque ejus usus inscientiam, sive eo, quod est magis verisimile, quod tantas tempestates Oceani, tantosque impetus ventorum sustineri, ac tanta onera navium regi velis non satis commode posse arbitrabantur. Cum his navibus nostrae classi ejusmodi congressus erat, ut una celeritate et pulsu remorum praestaret; reliqua, pro loci natura, pro vi tempestatum, illis

essent aptiora et accommodatiora: neque enim his nostrae rostro nocere poterant; (tanta in eis erat firmitudo): neque propter altitudinem facile telum adjiciebatur; et eadem de causa minus commode scopulis continebantur. Accedebat, ut, quum saevire ventus coepisset, et se vento dedissent, et tempestatem ferrent facilius, et in vadis consisterent tutius, et, ab aestu derelictae, nihil saxa et cautes timerent: quarum rerum omnium nostris navibus casus erant extimescendi.

XIV. Compluribus expugnatis oppidis, Caesar, ubi intellexit frustra tantum laborem sumi, neque hostium fugam captis oppidis reprimi, neque his noceri posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convenit, ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter ccxx naves eorum paratissimae, atque omni genere armorum ornatissimae, profectae ex portu, nostris adversae constiterunt: neque satis Bruto, qui classi praeerat, vel tribunis militum centurionibusque, quibus singulae naves erant attributae, constabat quid agerent, aut quam rationem pugnae insisterent. Rostro enim noceri non posse cognoverant; turribus autem excitatis, tamen has altitudo puppium ex barbaris navibus superabat, ut neque ex inferiore loco satis commode tela adjici possent, et missa ab Gallis gravius acciderent. Una erat magno usui res praeparata a nostris, falces praeacutae, insertae affixaeque longuriis, non absimili forma muralium falcium. His quum funes, qui antennas ad malos destinabant, comprehensi adductique erant, navigio remis incitato, praerumpebantur. Quibus abscissis, antennae necessario concidebant, ut, quum omnis Gallicis navibus spes in velis armamentisque consisteret, his ereptis, omnis usus navium uno tempore eriperetur. Reliquum erat certamen positum in virtute, qua nostri milites facile superabant, atque eo magis, quod in conspectu Caesaris atque omnis exercitus res gerebatur, ut nullum paulo fortius factum latere posset: omnes enim colles ac loca superiora, unde erat propinquus despectus in mare, ab exercitu tenebantur.

XV. Dejectis, ut diximus, antennis, quum singulas binae ac ternae naves circumsteterant, milites summa vi transcendere in hostium naves contendebant. Quod postquam barbari fieri animadverterunt, expugnatis compluribus navibus, quum ei rei nullum reperiretur auxilium, fuga salutem petere con-

tenderunt; ac jam conversis in eam partem navibus, quo ventus ferebat, tanta subito malacia ac tranquillitas exstitit, ut se ex loco movere non possent. Quae quidem res ad negotium conficiendum maxime fuit opportuna: nam singulas nostri consectati expugnaverunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numero, noctis interventu, ad terram pervenerint, quum ab hora fere quarta usque ad solis occasum pugnaretur.

XVI. Quo proelio bellum Venetorum totiusque orae maritimae confectum est. Nam, quum omnis juventus, omnes etiam gravioris aetatis, in quibus aliquid consilii aut dignitatis fuit, eo convenerant; tum, navium quod ubique fuerat, unum in locum coëgerant: quibus amissis, reliqui, neque quo se reciperent, neque quemadmodum oppida defenderent, habebant. Itaque se suaque omnia Caesari dediderunt. In quos eo gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quo diligentius in reliquum tempus a barbaris jus legatorum conservaretur. Itaque, omni senatu necato, reliquos sub corona vendidit.

XVII. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Q. Titurius Sabinus cum iis copiis, quas a Caesare acceperat, in fines Unellorum pervenit. His praeerat Viridovix, ac summam imperii tenebat earum omnium civitatum, quae defecerant, ex quibus exercitum magnasque copias coëgerat. Atque his paucis diebus Aulerci Eburovices, Lexoviique, senatu suo interfecto, quod auctores belli esse nolebant, portas clauserunt, seque cum Viridovice conjunxerunt; magnaque praeterea multitudo undique ex Gallia perditorum hominum latronumque convenerant, quos spes praedandi studiumque bellandi ab agricultura et quotidiano labore revocabat. Sabinus idoneo omnibus rebus loco castris sese tenebat, quum Viridovix contra eum duum millium spatio consedisset, quotidieque productis copiis pugnandi potestatem faceret, ut jam non solum hostibus in contemptionem Sabinus veniret, sed etiam nostrorum militum vocibus nonnihil carperetur: tantamque opinionem timoris praebuit, ut jam ad vallum castrorum hostes accedere auderent. Id ea de causa faciebat, quod cum tanta multitudine hostium, praesertim eo absente, qui summam imperii teneret, nisi aequo loco, aut opportunitate aliqua data, legato dimicandum non existimabat.

XVIII. Hac confirmata opinione timoris, idoneum quen-

dam hominem et callidum delegit, Gallum, ex his quos auxilii causa secum habebat. Huic magnis praemiis pollicitationibusque persuadet, uti ad hostes transeat; et, quid fieri velit, edocet. Qui, ubi pro perfuga ad eos venit, timorem Romanorum proponit; quibus angustiis ipse Caesar a Venetis prematur, docet: neque longius abesse, quin proxima nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum educat, et ad Caesarem auxilii ferendi causa proficiscatur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclamant omnes, occasionem negotii bene gerendi amittendam non esse, ad castra iri oportere. Multae res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur: superiorum dierum Sabini cunctatio; perfugae confirmatio; inopia cibariorum, cui rei parum diligenter ab iis erat provisum; spes Venetici belli; et quod fere libenter homines id, quod volunt, credunt. His rebus adducti, non prius Viridovicem reliquosque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quam ab his sit concessum, arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. Qua re concessa, laeti, ut explorata victoria, sarmentis virgultisque collectis, quibus fossas Romanorum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

XIX. Locus erat castrorum editus, et paulatim ab imo acclivis, circiter passus mille. Huc magno cursu contenderunt, ut quam minimum spatii ad se colligendos armandosque Romanis daretur, exanimatique pervenerunt. Sabinus, suos hortatus, cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea, quae ferebant, onera, subito duabus portis eruptionem fieri jubet. Factum est opportunitate loci, hostium inscientia ac defatigatione, virtute militum, superiorum pugnarum exercitatione, ut ne unum quidem nostrorum impetum ferrent, ac statim terga verterent. Quos impeditos integris viribus milites nostri consecuti, magnum numerum eorum occiderunt; reliquos equites consectati, paucos, qui ex fuga evaserant, reliquerunt. Sic uno tempore, et de navali pugna Sabinus, et de Sabini victoria Caesar certior factus: civitatesque omnes se statim Titurio dediderunt. Nam, ut ad bella suscipienda Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus, sic mollis ac minime resistens ad calamitates perferendas mens eorum est.

XX. Eodem fere tempore, P. Crassus, quum in Aquitaniam pervenisset, quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regionum latitudine et multitudine hominum ex tertia parte Galliae est

aestimanda, quum intelligeret, in his locis sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucis ante annis L. Valerius Praeconinus legatus, exercitu pulso, interfectus esset, atque unde L. Mallius proconsul, impedimentis amissis, profugisset, non mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intelligebat. Itaque, re frumentaria provisa, auxiliis equitatuque comparato, multis praeterea viris fortibus Tolosa, Carcasone et Narbone, quae sunt civitates Galliae Provinciae, finitimae his regionibus, nominatim evocatis, in Sotiatum fines exercitum introduxit. Cujus adventu cognito, Sotiates, magnis copiis coactis equitatuque, quo plurimum valebant, in itinere agmen nostrum adorti, primum equestre proelium commiserunt: deinde, equitatu suo pulso, atque insequentibus nostris, subito pedestres copias, quas in convalle in insidiis collocaverant, ostenderunt. Hi, nostros disjectos adorti, proelium renovarunt.

XXI. Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, quum Sotiates superioribus victoriis freti, in sua virtute totius Aquitaniae salutem positam putarent; nostri autem, quid sine imperatore et sine reliquis legionibus, adolescentulo duce, efficere possent, perspici cuperent: tamen confecti vulneribus hostes terga vertere. Quorum magno numero interfecto, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sotiatum oppugnare coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus, vineas turresque egit. Illi, alias eruptione tentata, alias cuniculis ad aggerem vineasque actis, (cujus rei sunt longe peritissimi Aquitani, propterea quod multis locis apud eos aerariae secturae sunt), ubi diligentia nostrorum nihil his rebus profici posse intellexerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittunt, seque in deditionem ut recipiat, petunt. Qua re impetrata, arma tradere jussi, faciunt.

XXII. Atque in ea re omnium nostrorum intentis animis, alia ex parte oppidi Adcantuannus, qui summam imperii tenebat, cum sexcentis devotis, quos illi Soldurios appellant, (quorum haec est conditio, uti omnibus in vita commodis una cum his fruantur, quorum se amicitiae dediderint; si quid iis per vim accidat, aut eundem casum una ferant, aut sibi mortem consciscant: neque adhuc hominum memoria repertus est quisquam, qui, eo interfecto, cujus se amicitiae devovisset, mori recusaret), cum iis Adcantuannus eruptionem facere conatus, clamore ab ea parte munitionis sublato, quum ad

arma milites concurrissent, vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum, tamen uti eadem deditionis conditione uteretur, a Crasso impetravit.

XXIII. Armis obsidibusque acceptis, Crassus in fines Vocatium et Tarusatium profectus est. Tum vero barbari commoti, quod oppidum, et natura loci et manu munitum, paucis diebus, quibus eo ventum erat, expugnatum cognoverant, legatos quoquoversus dimittere, conjurare, obsides inter se dare, copias parare coeperunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitates legati, quae sunt citerioris Hispaniae, finitimae Aquitaniae: inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur. Quorum adventu magna cum auctoritate et magna cum hominum multitudine bellum gerere conantur. Duces vero ii deliguntur, qui una cum Q. Sertorio omnes annos fuerant, summamque scientiam rei militaris habere existimabantur. Hi, consuetudine Populi Romani, loca capere, castra munire, commeatibus nostros intercludere instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suas copias propter exiguitatem non facile diduci; hostem et vagari, et vias obsidere, et castris satis praesidii relinquere; ob eam causam minus commode frumentum commeatumque sibi supportari; in dies hostium numerum augeri; non cunctandum existimavit, quin pugna decertaret. Hac re ad consilium delata, ubi omnes idem sentire intellexit, posterum diem pugnae constituit.

XXIV. Prima luce, productis omnibus copiis, duplici acie instituta, auxiliis in mediam aciem conjectis, quid hostes consilii caperent, exspectabat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinem, et veterem belli gloriam, paucitatemque nostrorum, se tuto dimicaturos existimabant, tamen tutius esse arbitrabantur, obsessis viis, commeatu intercluso, sine ullo vulnere victoria potiri: et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariae Romani sese recipere coepissent, impeditos in agmine et sub sarcinis, inferiores animo, adoriri cogitabant. Hoc consilio probato ab ducibus, productis Romanorum copiis, sese castris tenebant. Hac re perspecta, Crassus, quum sua cunctatione atque opinione timidiores hostes, nostros milites alacriores ad pugnandum effecissent, atque omnium voces audirentur, exspectari diutius non oportere, quin ad castra iretur, cohortatus suos, omnibus cupientibus, ad hostium castra contendit.

XXV. Ibi quum alii fossas complerent, alii multis telis conjectis defensores vallo munitionibusque depellerent, auxiliaresque, quibus ad pugnam non multum Crassus confidebat, lapidibus telisque subministrandis, et ad aggerem cespitibus comportandis, speciem atque opinionem pugnantium praeberent, quum item ab hostibus constanter ac non timide pugnaretur, telaque ex loco superiore missa non frustra acciderent; equites, circumitis hostium castris, Crasso renunciaverunt, Non eadem esse diligentia ab decumana porta castra munita, facilemque aditum habere.

XXVI. Crassus, equitum praefectos cohortatus, ut magnis praemiis pollicitationibusque suos excitarent, quid fieri velit, ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperatum, eductis quatuor cohortibus, quae, praesidio castris relictae, intritae ab labore erant, et, longiore itinere circumductis, ne ex hostium castris conspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad eas, quas diximus, munitiones pervenerunt; atque, his prorutis, prius in hostium castris constiterunt, quam plane ab iis videri, aut, quid rei gereretur, cognosci posset. Tum vero, clamore ab ea parte audito, nostri redintegratis viribus, quod plerumque in spe victoriae accidere consuevit, acrius impugnare coeperunt. Hostes undique circumventi, desperatis omnibus rebus, se per munitiones dejicere, et fuga salutem petere contenderunt. Quos equitatus apertissimis campis consectatus, ex millium quinquaginta numero, quae ex Aquitania Cantabrisque convenisse constabat, vix quarta parte relicta, multa nocte se in castra recepit.

XXVII. Hac audita pugna, maxima pars Aquitaniae sese Crasso dedidit, obsidesque ultro misit: quo in numero fuerunt Tarbelli, Bigerriones, Preciani, Vocates, Tarusates, Elusates, Garites, Ausci, Garumni, Sibuzates, Cocosates. Paucae ultimae nationes, anni tempore confisae, quod hiems suberat, hoc facere neglexerunt.

XXVIII. Eodem fere tempore Caesar, etsi prope exacta jam aestas erat, tamen, quod, omni Gallia pacata, Morini Menapiique supererant, qui in armis essent, neque ad eum unquam legatos de pace misissent, arbitratus id bellum celeriter confici posse, eo exercitum adduxit: qui longe alia ratione, ac reliqui Galli, bellum agere instituerunt. Nam

quod intelligebant, maximas nationes, quae proelio contendissent, pulsas superatasque esse, continentesque silvas ac paludes habebant, eo se suaque omnia contulerunt. Ad quarum initium silvarum quum Caesar pervenisset, castraque munire instituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subito ex omnibus partibus silvae evolaverunt, et in nostros impetum fecerunt. Nostri celeriter arma ceperunt, eosque in silvas repulerunt; et, compluribus interfectis, longius impeditioribus locis secuti, paucos ex suis deperdiderunt.

XXIX. Reliquis deinceps diebus, Caesar silvas caedere instituit; et, ne quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocabat, et pro vallo ad utrumque latus exstruebat. Incredibili celeritate magno spatio paucis diebus confecto, quum jam pecus atque extrema impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, ipsi densiores silvas peterent, ejusmodi tempestates sunt consecutae, uti opus necessario intermitteretur; et, continuatione imbrium, diutius sub pellibus milites contineri non possent. Itaque, vastatis omnibus eorum agris, vicis aedificiisque incensis, Caesar exercitum reduxit; et in Aulercis Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatibus, quae proxime bellum fecerant, in hibernis collocavit.

C. JULII CAESARIS

COMMENTARIORUM

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER IV.

ARGUMENTUM.

CAP. I. Usipetes et Tenchtheri Germani, metu Suevorum, novas sibi sedes in Galliis quaerunt: IV. Menapiosque finibus expellunt. VI. Inde ad Eburones et Condrusos translati, a Caesare, XII. quamvis primum equestri pugna superiores, XV. post tamen castris exuuntur: ac reliquiae ad Sigambros trans Rhenum se recipiunt. XVII. Caesar fabricato ponte, XVIII. Rhenum transit; Sigambros ulciscitur: XIX. Ubios liberat. XXI. Inde in Galliam reversus, XXIII. e Morinis in Britanniam trajicit: XXIV. atque aegre in terram exposito exercitu, XXVII. incolas in deditionem accipit. XXX. Qui tamen, quod afflictam tempestate Romanam classem, equitatumque abesse, viderent, animati rebellant. XXXV. Sed denuo subacti, XXXVI. obsides tradunt; Caesarque in Galliam redit.

I. EA, quae secuta est, hieme, qui fuit annus Cn. Pompeio, M. Crasso Coss., Usipetes Germani, et item Tenchtheri, magna cum multitudine hominum, flumen Rhenum transierunt, non longe a mari, quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quod, ab Suevis complures annos exagitati, bello premebantur, et agricultura prohibebantur. Suevorum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. Hi centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula millia armatorum bellandi causa ex finibus educunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserint, se atque illos alunt. Hi rursus in vicem anno post in armis sunt; illi domi remanent. Sic neque agricultura, nec ratio atque usus belli, intermittitur. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est, neque longius

anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causa licet. Neque multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in venationibus: quae res, et cibi genere, et quotidiana exercitatione, et libertate vitae, quod, a pueris nullo officio aut disciplina assuefacti, nihil omnino contra voluntatem faciant, et vires alit, et immani corporum magnitudine homines efficit. Atque in eam se consuetudinem adduxerunt, ut locis frigidissimis, neque vestitus, praeter pelles, habeant quidquam (quarum propter exiguitatem, magna est corporis pars aperta), et laventur in fluminibus.

II. Mercatoribus est ad eos aditus, magis eo, ut quae bello ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo ullam rem ad se importari desiderent: quin etiam jumentis, quibus maxime Gallia delectatur, quaeque impenso parant pretio, Germani importatis non utuntur: sed, quae sunt apud eos nata, prava atque deformia, haec quotidiana exercitatione, summi ut sint laboris, efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis desiliunt, ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere vestigio assuefaciunt; ad quos se celeriter, quum usus est, recipiunt: neque eorum moribus turpius quidquam aut inertius habetur, quam ephippiis uti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum, quamvis pauci, adire audent. Vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt, quod ea re ad laborem ferendum remollescere homines atque effeminari arbitrantur.

III. Publice maximam putant esse laudem, quam latissime a suis finibus vacare agros: hac re significari, magnum numerum civitatium suam vim sustinere non posse. Itaque una ex parte a Suevis circiter millia passuum DC agri vacare dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succedunt Ubii, quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, ut est captus Germanorum, et paulo, quam sunt ejusdem generis, etiam caeteris humaniores, propterea quod Rhenum attingunt, multumque ad eos mercatores ventitant, et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti. Hos quum Suevi, multis saepe bellis experti, propter amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis, finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt, ac multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt.

IV. In eadem causa fuerunt Usipetes et Tenchtheri, quos supra diximus, qui complures annos Suevorum vim sustinue-

runt; ad extremum tamen, agris expulsi, et multis Germaniae locis triennium vagati, ad Rhenum pervenerunt: quas regiones Menapii incolebant, et ad utramque ripam fluminis agros, aedificia, vicosque habebant; sed tantae multitudinis aditu perterriti, ex his aedificiis, quae trans flumen habuerant, demigraverant; et, cis Rhenum dispositis praesidiis, Germanos transire prohibebant. Illi, omnia experti, quum neque vi contendere propter inopiam navium, neque clam transire propter custodias Menapiorum possent, reverti se in suas sedes regionesque simulaverunt; et tridui viam progressi, rursus reverterunt, atque omni hoc itinere una nocte equitatu confecto, inscios inopinantesque Menapios oppresserunt, qui, de Germanorum discessu per exploratores certiores facti, sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant. His interfectis, navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum, quae citra Rhenum quieta in suis sedibus erat, certior fieret, flumen transierunt, atque omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis, reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt.

V. His de rebus Caesar certior factus, et infirmitatem Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles, et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his committendum existimavit. Est autem hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, uti et viatores, etiam invitos, consistere cogant; et, quod quisque eorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit, quaerant, et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumsistat, quibusque ex regionibus veniant, quasque ibi res cognoverint, pronunciare cogant. His rumoribus atque auditionibus permoti, de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum eos e vestigio poenitere necesse est, quum incertis rumoribus serviant, et plerique ad voluntatem eorum ficta respondeant.

VI. Qua consuetudine cognita, Caesar, ne graviori bello occurreret, maturius, quam consuerat, ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo quum venisset, ea, quae fore suspicatus erat, facta cognovit; missas legationes a nonnullis civitatibus ad Germanos, invitatosque eos, uti ab Rheno discederent; omniaque, quae postulassent, ab se fore parata. Qua spe adducti Germani latius jam vagabantur, et in fines Eburonum et Condrusorum qui sunt Trevirorum clientes, pervenerant.

Principibus Galliae evocatis, Caesar ea, quae cognoverat, dissimulanda sibi existimavit, eorumque animis permulsis et confirmatis, equitatuque imperato, bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit.

VII. Re frumentaria comparata, equitibusque delectis, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat. A quibus quum paucorum dierum iter abesset, legati ab his venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio: Germanos neque priores Populo Romano bellum inferre, neque tamen recusare, si lacessantur, quin armis contendant; quod Germanorum consuetudo haec sit a majoribus tradita, quicunque bellum inferant, resistere, neque deprecari: hoc tamen dicere, venisse invitos, ejectos domo. Si suam gratiam Romani velint, posse eis utiles esse amicos: vel sibi agros attribuant, vel patiantur eos tenere, quos armis possederint. Sese unis Suevis concedere, quibus ne dii quidem immortales pares esse possint: reliquum quidem in terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint.

VIII. Ad haec Caesar, quae visum est, respondit; sed exitus fuit orationis: Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Gallia remanerent: neque verum esse, qui suos fines tueri non potuerint, alienos occupare: neque ullos in Gallia vacare agros, qui dari, tantae praesertim multitudini, sine injuria possint. Sed licere, si velint, in Ubiorum finibus considere, quorum sint legati apud se, et de Suevorum injuriis querantur, et a se auxilium petant: hoc se ab Ubiis impetraturum.

IX. Legati haec se ad suos relaturos dixerunt; et, re deliberata, post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversuros: interea, ne propius se castra moveret, petierunt. Ne id quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse dixit: cognoverat enim, magnam partem equitatus ab iis aliquot diebus ante praedandi frumentandique causa ad Ambivaritos trans Mosam missam. Hos exspectari equites, atque ejus rei causa moram interponi, arbitrabatur.

X. Mosa profluit ex monte Vosego, qui est in finibus Lingonum, et, parte quadam ex Rheno recepta, quae appellatur Vahalis, insulam efficit Batavorum; neque longius ab eo millibus passuum LXXX in Oceanum transit. Rhenus autem

oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incolunt, et longo spatio per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiorum, Sequanorum, Mediomatricorum, Tribucorum, Trevirorum citatus fertur; et, ubi Oceano appropinquat, in plures diffluit partes, multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quarum pars magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt, qui piscibus atque ovis avium vivere existimantur; multisque capitibus in Oceanum influit.

XI. Caesar quum ab hoste non amplius passuum XII millibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur: qui, in itinere congressi, magnopere, Ne longius progrederetur, orabant. Quum id non impetrassent, petebant, Uti ad eos equites, qui agmen antecessissent, praemitteret, eosque pugna prohiberet; sibique uti potestatem faceret in Ubios legatos mittendi: quorum si principes ac senatus sibi jurejurando fidem fecissent, ea conditione, quae a Caesare ferretur, se usuros ostendebant: ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eodem illo pertinere arbitrabatur, ut, tridui mora interposita, equites eorum, qui abessent, reverterentur: tamen sese non longius millibus passuum quatuor aquationis causa processurum eo die dixit: huc postero die quam frequentissimi convenirent, ut de eorum postulatis cognosceret. Interim ad praefectos, qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant, mittit, qui nunciarent, ne hostes proelio lacesserent: et, si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinerent, quoad ipse cum exercitu propius accessisset.

XII. At hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, quorum erat quinque millium numerus, quum ipsi non amplius DCCC equites haberent, quod ii, qui frumentandi causa ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod legati eorum paulo ante a Caesare discesserant, atque is dies induciis erat ab eis petitus, impetu facto, celeriter nostros perturbaverunt. Rursus resistentibus nostris, consuetudine sua ad pedes desiluerunt, suffossisque equis, compluribusque nostris dejectis, reliquos in fugam conjecerunt, atque ita perterritos egerunt, ut non prius fuga desisterent, quam in conspectum agminis nostri venissent. In eo proelio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quatuor et septuaginta; in his vir fortissimus Piso, Aquitanus, amplissimo genere natus, cujus avus in civitate sua regnum obtinuerat,

amicus ab senatu nostro appellatus. Hic, quum fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit: ipse equo vulnerato dejectus, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit. Quum circumventus, multis vulneribus acceptis, cecidisset, atque id frater, qui jam proelio excesserat, procul animum advertisset, incitato equo se hostibus obtulit, atque interfectus est.

XIII. Hoc facto proelio, Caesar neque jam sibi legatos audiendos, neque conditiones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab his, qui per dolum atque insidias, petita pace, ultro bellum intulissent: exspectare vero, dum hostium copiae augerentur equitatusque reverteretur, summae dementiae esse judicabat: et, cognita Gallorum infirmitate, quantum jam apud eos hostes uno proelio auctoritatis essent consecuti, sentiebat: quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dandum existimabat. His constitutis rebus, et consilio cum legatis et quaestore communicato, ne quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportunissima res accidit, quod postridie ejus diei mane, eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani, frequentes, omnibus principibus majoribusque natu adhibitis, ad eum in castra venerunt; simul, ut dicebatur, sui purgandi causa, quod contra, atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent, proelium pridie commisissent; simul ut, si quid possent, de induciis fallendo impetrarent. Quos sibi Caesar oblatos gavisus, illos retineri jussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit, equitatumque, quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi jussit.

XIV. Acie triplici instructa, et celeriter VIII millium itinere confecto, prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam, quid ageretur, Germani sentire possent. Qui, omnibus rebus subito perterriti, et celeritate adventus nostri, et discessu suorum, neque consilii habendi, neque arma capiendi spatio dato, perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem educere, an castra defendere, an fuga salutem petere, praestaret. Quorum timor quum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri, pristini diei perfidia incitati, in castra irruperunt. Quo loco, qui celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris restiterunt, atque inter carros impedimentaque proelium commiserunt: at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quos consectandos Caesar equitatum misit.

XV. Germani, post tergum clamore audito, quum suos interfici viderent, armis abjectis, signisque militaribus relictis, se ex castris ejecerunt; et, quum ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni pervenissent, reliqua fuga desperata, magno numero interfecto, reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt; atque ibi timore, lassitudine, vi fluminis oppressi perierunt. Nostri ad unum omnes incolumes, perpaucis vulneratis, ex tanti belli timore, quum hostium numerus capitum CDXXX millium fuisset, se in castra receperunt. Caesar his, quos in castris retinuerat, discedendi potestatem fecit: illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum veriti, quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertatem concessit.

XVI. Germanico bello confecto, multis de causis Caesar statuit, sibi Rhenum esse transeundum: quarum illa fuit justissima, quod, quum videret Germanos tam facile impelli ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit, quum intelligerent, et posse et audere Populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire. Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tenchtherorum, quam supra commemoravi praedandi frumentandique causa Mosam transisse, neque proelio interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sigambrorum receperat, seque cum iis conjunxerat. Ad quos quum Caesar nuncios misisset, qui postularent, Eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dederent, responderunt: Populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire: si, se invito, Germanos in Galliam transire, non aequum existimaret, cur sui quidquam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet? Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis ad Caesarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant, magnopere orabant, Ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suevis premerentur; vel, si id facere occupationibus Reipublicae prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret: id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum: tantum esse nomen atque opinionem ejus exercitus, Ariovisto pulso, et hoc novissimo proelio facto, etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione et amicitia Populi Romani tuti esse possint. Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

XVII. Caesar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum

transire decreverat; sed navibus transire neque satis tutum esse arbitrabatur, neque suae, neque Populi Romani dignitatis esse statuebat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis proponebatur propter latitudinem, rapiditatem, altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id sibi contendendum, aut aliter non transducendum exercitum existimabat. Rationem igitur pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sesquipedalia, paulum ab imo praeacuta, dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis, intervallo pedum duorum inter se jungebat. Haec quum machinationibus immissa in flumen defixerat, fistucisque adegerat, non sublicae modo directa ad perpendiculum, sed prona ac fastigata, ut secundum naturam fluminis procumberent: iis item contraria bina, ad eundem modum juncta, intervallo pedum quadragenum, ab inferiore parte, contra vim atque impetum fluminis conversa statuebat. Haec utraque insuper bipedalibus trabibus immissis, quantum eorum tignorum junctura distabat, binis utrinque fibulis ab extrema parte, distinebantur: quibus disclusis, atque in contrariam partem revinctis, tanta erat operis firmitudo, atque ea rerum natura, ut, quo major vis aquae se incitavisset, hoc arctius illigata tenerentur. Haec directa materie injecta contexebantur, et longuriis cratibusque consternebantur: ac nihilo secius sublicae et ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique agebantur, quae pro pariete subjectae, et cum omni opere conjunctae, vim fluminis exciperent: et aliae item supra pontem mediocri spatio, ut, si arborum trunci, sive naves, dejiciendi operis essent a barbaris missae, his defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur, neu ponti nocerent.

XVIII. Diebus decem, quibus materia coepta erat comportari, omni opere effecto, exercitus transducitur. Caesar, ad utramque partem pontis firmo praesidio relicto, in fines Sigambrorum contendit. Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, quibus pacem atque amicitiam petentibus liberaliter respondit, obsidesque ad se adduci jubet. At Sigambri, ex eo tempore quo pons institui coeptus est, fuga comparata, hortantibus iis, quos ex Tenchtheris atque Usipetibus apud se habebant, finibus suis excesserant, suaque omnia exportaverant, seque in solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant.

XIX. Caesar, paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus, om-

nibus vicis aedificiisque incensis, frumentisque succisis, se in fines Ubiorum recepit; atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suevis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit: Suevos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri comperissent, more suo concilio habito, nuncios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos, uxores, suaque omnia in silvas deponerent, atque omnes, qui arma ferre possent, unum in locum convenirent: hunc esse delectum medium fere regionum earum, quas Suevi obtinerent: hic Romanorum adventum exspectare, atque ibi decertare constituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus his rebus confectis, quarum rerum causa traducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germanis metum injiceret, ut Sigambros ulcisceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret, diebus omnino X et VIII trans Rhenum consumptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus, se in Galliam recepit, pontemque rescidit.

XX. Exigua parte aestatis reliqua, Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Galli ad septemtriones vergit, maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis, hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intelligebat: et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset: quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adiit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quidquam, praeter oram maritimam, atque eas regiones, quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque, evocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli haberent, aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad majorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire poterat.

XXI. Ad haec cognoscenda, prius quam periculum faceret, idoneum esse arbitratus, C. Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit. Huic mandat, uti, exploratis omnibus rebus, ad se quam primum revertatur: ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trajectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus, et quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum fecerat,

classem jubet convenire. Interim, consilio ejus cognito, et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus ejus insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides dare, atque imperio Populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus hortatusque, ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum remittit; et cum his una Commium, quem ipse, Atrebatibus superatis, regem ibi constituerat, cujus et virtutem et consilium probabat, et quem sibi fidelem arbitrabatur, cujusque auctoritas in iis regionibus magni habebatur, mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit, adeat civitates, horteturque, ut Populi Romani fidem sequantur; seque celeriter eo venturum nunciet. Volusenus, perspectis regionibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit, qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur; quaeque ibi perspexisset, renunciat.

XXII. Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti bellum Populo Romano fecissent, seque ea, quae imperasset, facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi satis opportune Caesar accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat, neque belli gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat, neque has tantularum rerum occupationes sibi Britanniae anteponendas judicabat, magnum his obsidum numerum imperat. Quibus adductis, eos in fidem recepit. Navibus circiter LXXX onerariis coactis contractisque, quod satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quidquid praeterea navium longarum habebat, quaestori, legatis, praefectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant XVIII onerariae naves, quae ex eo loco ab millibus passuum VIII vento tenebantur, quo minus in eundem portum pervenire possent. Has equitibus distribuit; reliquum exercitum Q. Titurio Sabino et L. Aurunculeio Cottae legatis, in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, deducendum dedit. P. Sulpicium Rufum legatum, cum eo praesidio, quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere jussit.

XXIII. His constitutis rebus, nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem, tertia fere vigilia solvit, equitesque in

ulteriorem portum progredi, et naves conscendere, et se sequi jussit: a quibus quum paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse hora diei circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit, atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cujus loci haec erat natura: adeo montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adjici posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum arbitratus locum, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in anchoris exspectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quae ex Voluseno cognovisset, et quae fieri vellet, ostendit, monuitque (ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae res postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent), ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo et sublatis anchoris, circiter millia passuum VII ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

XXIV. At barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, praemisso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti, nostros navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves propter magnitudinem, nisi in alto, constitui non poterant; militibus autem ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi armorum onere oppressis, simul et de navibus desiliendum, et in fluctibus consistendum, et cum hostibus erat pugnandum: quum illi aut ex arido, aut paululum in aquam progressi, omnibus membris expediti, notissimis locis audacter tela conjicerent, et equos insuefactos incitarent. Quibus rebus nostri perterriti, atque hujus omnino generis pugnae imperiti, non eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consueverant, nitebantur.

XXV. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris inusitatior, et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus, et remis incitari, et ad latus apertum hostium constitui, atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis, hostes propelli ac submoveri jussit: quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam et navium figura, et remorum motu, et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti barbari constiterunt, ac paulum modo pedem retulerunt.

Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret: Desilite, inquit, commilitones, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe meum Reipublicae atque imperatori officium praestitero. Hoc quum magna voce dixisset, ex navi se projecit, atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri, cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt: hos item alii ex proximis navibus quum conspexissent, subsecuti hostibus appropinquarunt.

XXVI. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter; nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare, neque firmiter insistere, neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscunque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magnopere perturbabantur. Hostes vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur: plures paucos circumsistebant: alii ab latere aperto in universos tela conjiciebant. Quod quum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri jussit, et quos laborantes conspexerat, iis subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consecutis, in hostes impetum fecerunt, atque eos in fugam dederunt; neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

XXVII. Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt: Obsides daturos, quaeque imperasset sese facturos, polliciti sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, quum ad eos oratoris modo imperatoris mandata perferret, comprehenderant, atque in vincula conjecerant: tum, proelio facto, remiserunt, et in petenda pace ejus rei culpam in multitudinem contulerunt, et propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur, petiverunt. Caesar questus quod, quum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiae dixit, obsidesque imperavit: quorum illi partem statim

dederunt, partem, ex longinquioribus locis arcessitam, paucis diebus sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agros jusserunt: principesque undique convenire, et se civitatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.

XXVIII. His rebus pace confirmata, post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves XVIII, de quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae quum appropinquarent Britanniae, et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant profectae, referrentur; aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno sui cum periculo dejicerentur: quae tamen, anchoris jactis, quum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum provectae continentem petierunt.

XXIX. Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena; qui dies maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit: nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat, quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus complebat; et onerarias, quae ad anchoras erant deligatae, tempestas afflictabat; neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi, aut auxiliandi dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis, reliquae quum essent, funibus, anchoris, reliquisque armamentis amissis, ad navigandum inutiles, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est: neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent; et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas eas usui sunt; et, quod omnibus constabat, hiemare in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

XXX. Quibus rebus cognitis, principes Britanniae, qui post proelium factum ad ea, quae jusserat Caesar, facienda convenerant, inter se collocuti, quum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intelligerent, et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellione facta, frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere, et rem in hiemem producere, quod, iis superatis aut reditu interclusis, neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant.

XXXI. Itaque, rursus conjuratione facta, paulatim ex castris discedere, ac suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum, et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id quod accidit suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat: nam et frumentum ex agris quotidie in castra conferebat, et, quae gravissime afflictae erant naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur, et quae ad eas res erant usui, ex continenti comportari jubebat. Itaque, quum id summo studio a militibus administraretur, duodecim navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit.

XXXII. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, quum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari renunciaverunt, pulverem majorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar, id quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, cohortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci, duas ex reliquis in stationem succedere, reliquas armari, et confestim sese subsequi jussit. Quum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi, atque aegre sustinere, et conferta legione ex omnibus partibus tela conjici, animadvertit. Nam quod, omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento, pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes, huc nostros esse venturos, noctu in silvis delituerant: tum dispersos, depositis armis, in metendo occupatos subito adorti, paucis interfectis, reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant: simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

XXXIII. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae: primo per omnes partes perequitant, et tela conjiciunt, atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu rotarum ordines plerumque perturbant; et quum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverint, ex essedis desiliunt, et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt, atque ita currus collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in

proeliis praestant, ac tantum usu quotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt, uti in declivi ac praecipiti loco incitatos equos sustinere, et brevi moderari ac flectere, et per temonem percurrere, et in jugo insistere, et inde se in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

XXXIV. Quibus rebus, perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae, tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit: namque ejus adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto, ad lacessendum et ad committendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus, suo se loco continuit, et brevi tempore intermisso, in castra legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis, qui erant in agris reliqui, discesserunt. Secutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent, et hostem a pugna prohiberent. Interim barbari nuncios in omnes partes dimiserunt, paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedicaverunt, et quanta praedae faciendae, atque in perpetuum sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna multitudine peditatus equitatusque coacta, ad castra venerunt.

XXXV. Caesar, etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent; tamen nactus equites circiter triginta, quos Commius Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est, secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso proelio, diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt, ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto spatio secuti, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt; deinde, omnibus longe lateque afflictis incensisque, se in castra receperunt.

XXXVI. Eodem die legati, ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace, venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem antea imperaverat, duplicavit, eosque in continentem adduci jussit, quod, propinqua die aequinoctii, infirmis navibus, hiemi navigationem subjiciendam non existimabat. Ipse, idoneam tempestatem nactus, paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit, quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex his onerariae duae eosdem, quos reliquae, portus capere non potuerunt, et paulo infra delatae sunt.

XXXVII. Quibus ex navibus quum essent expositi milites circiter ccc, atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos Caesar, in Britanniam proficiscens, pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti, primo non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt, ac, si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere jusserunt. Quum illi orbe facto sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter millia VI convenerunt. Qua re nunciata, Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt, atque amplius horis quatuor fortissime pugnaverunt, et, paucis vulneribus acceptis, complures ex iis occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abjectis armis terga verterunt, magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

XXXVIII. Caesar postero die T. Labienum legatum cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui quum propter siccitates paludum, quo se reciperent, non haberent, quo perfugio superiore anno fuerant usi, omnes fere in potestatem Labieni venerunt. At Q. Titurius et L. Cotta legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt; reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus gestis, ex literis Caesaris dierum XX supplicatio a senatu decreta est.

C. JULII CAESARIS

COMMENTARIORUM

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER V.

ARGUMENTUM.

Cap. I. Caesar grandem in Gallis per legatos instrui classem jubet. Ipse in Illyricum profectus, Pirustas cohibet. II. In Galliam reversus, turbisque Trevirorum compositis, VIII. in Britanniam trajicit. IX. Cum insulanis citra ultraque Tamesin bella gerit. XXIII. Quibus confectis, in Galliam reductas legiones, in varias partes distribuit. XXVI. Plerique Galli deficiunt; primique Eburones, duce Ambiorige, castra Titurii legati adoriuntur; ac desperata expugnatione, XXXII. dolo ipsum cum omnibus copiis circumveniunt. XXXVIII. Victor Ambiorix, junctis Nerviis, castra Q. Ciceronis obsidet. XLIX. Obsidione, ob adventum Caesaris, soluta, totus ejus exercitus profligatur. LIV. Senones nihilominus et Treveri res novas moliuntur. LVIII. Sed interfecto Indutiomaro, res paullum pacatae.

I. Lucio Domitio, Ap. Claudio Coss., discedens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuerat, legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefecerat, uti, quam plurimas possent, hieme naves aedificandas, veteresque reficiendas curarent. Earum modum formamque demonstrat. Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulo facit humiliores, quam quibus in nostro mari uti consuevimus; atque id eo magis, quod propter crebras commutationes aestuum minus magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat: ad onera et ad multitudinem jumentorum transportandam paulo latiores, quam quibus in reliquis utimur maribus. Has omnes actuarias imperat fieri; quam ad rem multum humilitas adjuvat. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naves, ex Hispania apportari jubet. Ipse, conven-

tibus Galliae citerioris peractis, in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo quum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat, certumque in locum convenire jubet. Qua re nunciata, Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant, Nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de injuriis satisfacere. Accepta oratione eorum, Caesar obsides imperat, eosque ad certam diem adduci jubet: nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. His ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aestiment, poenamque constituant.

II. His confectis rebus, conventibusque peractis, in citeriorem Galliam revertitur, atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo quum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis, singulari militum studio, in summa omnium rerum inopia, circiter DC ejus generis, cujus supra demonstravimus, naves, et longas XXVIII invenit instructas, neque multum abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possent. Collaudatis militibus, atque iis qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit ostendit, atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire jubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam transmissum esse cognoverat, circiter millium passuum XXX a continenti. Huic rei quod satis esse visum est militum, reliquit: ipse cum legionibus expeditis IV, et equitibus DCCC in fines Trevirorum proficiscitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant, neque imperio parebant, Germanosque Transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

III. Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu valet, magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut supra demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomarus et Cingetorix: ex quibus alter, simul atque de Caesaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit; se suosque omnes in officio futuros, neque ab amicitia Populi Romani defecturos, confirmavit; quaeque in Treviris gererentur, ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere, iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Trevirorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum

parare instituit. Sed postea quam nonnulli principes ex ea civitate, et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti, et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti, ad Caesarem venerunt, et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent: Indutiomarus veritus, ne ab omnibus desereretur, legatos ad Caesarem mittit; Sese idcirco ab suis discedere, atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam laberetur. Itaque esse civitatem in sua potestate, seque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, et suas civitatisque fortunas ejus fidei permissurum.

IV. Caesar, etsi intelligebat qua de causa ea dicerentur, quaeque eum res ab instituto consilio deterreret, tamen, ne aestatem in Treviris consumere cogeretur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire jussit. His adductis, in iis filio, propinquisque ejus omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consolatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, uti in officio permaneret: nihilo tamen secius, principibus Trevirorum ad se convocatis, hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit: quod quum merito ejus ab se fieri intelligebat tum magni interesse arbitrabatur, ejus auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valere, cujus tam egregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indutiomarus, suam gratiam inter suos minui; et, qui jam ante inimico in nos animo fuisset, multo gravius hoc dolore exarsit.

V. His rebus constitutis, Caesar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit, XL naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestate rejectas, cursum tenere non potuisse, atque eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse: reliquas paratas ad navigandum, atque omnibus rebus instructas invenit. Eodem totius Galliae equitatus convenit, numero millium quatuor, principesque omnibus ex civitatibus: ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere decreverat; quod, quum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur.

VI. Erat una cum caeteris Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo a nobis antea dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis con-

stituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod jam in concilio Aeduorum Dumnorix dixerat, Sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri: quod dictum Aedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo precibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur; partim, quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret; partim, quod religionibus sese diceret impediri. Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi adempta, principes Galliae sollicitare, sevocare singulos, hortarique coepit, uti in continenti remanerent; metu territare, Non sine causa fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur: id esse consilium Caesaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam transductos necaret: fidem reliquis interponere, jusjurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Haec a compluribus ad Caesarem deferebantur.

VII. Qua re cognita, Caesar, quod tantum civitati Aeduae dignitatis tribuerat, coërcendum atque deterrendum, quibuscunque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat; quod longius ejus amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum ne quid sibi ac Reipublicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter xxv in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impediebat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilo tamen secius omnia ejus consilia cognosceret: tandem, idoneam nactus tempestatem, milites equitesque conscendere in naves jubet. At, omnium impeditis animis, Dumnorix cum equitibus Aeduorum a castris, insciente Caesare, domum discedere coepit. Qua re nunciata, Caesar, intermissa profectione, atque omnibus rebus postpositis, magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit, retrahique imperat: si vim faciat, neque pareat, interfici jubet: nihil hunc, se absente, pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille enim revocatus resistere, ac se manu defendere, suorumque fidem implorare coepit, saepe clamitans, Liberum se, liberaeque civitatis esse. Illi, ut erat imperatum,

circumsistunt hominem, atque interficiunt: at Aedui equites ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

VIII. His rebus gestis, Labieno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum millibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur, et rem frumentariam provideret, quaeque in Gallia gererentur cognosceret, consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum, quem in continenti relinquebat, solis occasu naves solvit, et leni Africo provectus, media circiter nocte vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit, et longius delatus aestu, orta luce, sub sinistra Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus, aestus commutationem secutus, remis contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis, non intermisso remigandi labore, longarum navium cursum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore: neque in eo loco hostis est visus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis comperit, quum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine navium perterritae, (quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius DCCC uno erant visae tempore,) a litore discesserant, ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

IX. Caesar, exposito exercitu, et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus X ad mare relictis, et equitibus CCC, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit, eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore molli atque aperto deligatas ad anchoram relinquebat; et praesidio navibus Q. Atrium praefecit. Ipse, noctu progressus millia passuum circiter XII, hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi, equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi, ex loco superiore nostros prohibere, et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu, se in silvas abdiderunt, locum nacti egregie et natura et opere munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbatur, causa, jam ante praeparaverant: nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitus erant praeclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant, nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis VII, testudine facta, et aggere ad

munitiones adjecto, locum ceperunt, eosque ex silvis expulerunt, paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod, magna parte diei consumpta, munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat.

X. Postridie ejus diei mane tripartito milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, quum jam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Q. Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nunciarent, Superiore nocte, maxima coorta tempestate, prope omnes naves afflictas, atque in litore ejectas esse; quod neque anchorae, funesque subsisterent, neque nautae gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent: itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

XI. His rebus cognitis, Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari, atque itinere desistere jubet: ipse ad naves revertitur: eadem fere, quae ex nunciis literisque cognoverat, coram perspicit, sic ut, amissis circiter XL navibus, reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros delegit, et ex continenti alios arcessiri jubet; Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, iis legionibus quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnes naves subduci, et cum castris una munitione conjungi. In his rebus circiter dies decem consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus, castrisque egregie munitis, easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus reliquit: ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo quum venisset, majores jam undique in eum locum copiae Britannorum convenerant, summa imperii bellique administrandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno, cujus fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter millia passuum LXXX. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant: sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

XII. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos in insula ipsa memoria proditum dicunt: maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causa ex Belgis transierant;

qui omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt, et bello illato ibi remanserunt, atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo, creberrimaque aedificia, fere Gallicis consimilia: pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere, aut taleis ferreis, ad certum pondus examinatis, pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum; sed ejus exigua est copia: aere utuntur importato. Materia cujusque generis, ut in Gallia, est, praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem, et gallinam, et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causa. Loca sunt temperatiora, quam in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.

XIII. Insula natura triquetra, cujus unum latus est contra Galliam. Hujus lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appelluntur, ad orientem solem; inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc latus tenet circiter millia passuum D. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem: qua ex parte est Hibernia, dimidio minor, ut aestimatur, quam Britannia; sed pari spatio transmissus, atque ex Gallia, est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula, quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores objectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt, dies continuos XXX sub bruma esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse, quam in continente, noctes videbamus. Hujus est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, DCC millium. Tertium est contra septemtriones, cui parti nulla est objecta terra; sed ejus angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat: huic millia passuum DCCC in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum millium passuum.

XIV. Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis; neque multum a Gallica differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt, pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiore sunt in pugna adspectu: capilloque sunt promisso, atque omni parte corpo-

ris rasa, praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se communes, et maxime fratres cum fratribus, parentesque cum liberis; sed, si qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est.

XV. Equites hostium essedariique acriter proelio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint, atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint: sed, compluribus interfectis, cupidius insecuti, nonnullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi, intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum, subito se ex silvis ejecerunt; impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt: duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare, atque his primis legionum duarum, quum hae, perexiguo intermisso loci spatio inter se, constitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris, per medios audacissime perruperunt, seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Q. Laberius Durus, tribunus militum, interficitur. Illi, pluribus submissis cohortibus, repelluntur.

XVI. Toto hoc in genere pugnae, quum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est, nostros, propter gravitatem armaturae, quod neque insequi cedentes possent, neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad hujus generis hostem; equites autem magno cum periculo proelio dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam consulto plerumque cederent; et, quum paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent, et pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc, ut nunquam conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur, stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentes defatigatis succederent.

XVII. Postero die, procul a castris hostes in collibus constiterunt, rarique se ostendere, et lenius quam pridie nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie, quum Caesar pabulandi causa tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum C. Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex

omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic, uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri, acriter in eos impetu facto, repulerunt; neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, quum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt: magnoque eorum numero interfecto, neque sui colligendi, neque consistendi, aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fuga protinus, quae undique convenerant, auxilia discesserunt: neque post id tempus unquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

XVIII. Caesar, cognito consilio eorum, ad flumen Tamesin in fines Cassivellauni, exercitum duxit; quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo quum venisset, animadvertit, ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas: ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita; ejusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque, Caesar, praemisso equitatu, confestim legiones subsequi jussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, quum capite solo ex aqua exstarent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent, ripasque dimitterent, ac se fugae mandarent.

XIX. Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentionis, dimissis amplioribus copiis, millibus circiter quatuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat, paululumque ex via excedebat, locisque impeditis atque silvestribus sese occultabat, atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat; et, quum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causa se in agros effunderet, omnibus viis notis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat, et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis confligebat, atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum in agris vastandis, incendiisque faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

XX. Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex qua Mandubratius adolescens, Caesaris

fidem secutus, ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, (cujus pater Imanuentius in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat, interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno; ipse fuga mortem vitaverat) legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, pollicenturque, sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos: petunt, ut Mandubratium ab injuria Cassivellauni defendat, atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsides XL, frumentumque exercitui, Mandubratiumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentaque miserunt.

XXI. Trinobantibus defensis, atque ob omni militum injuria prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiaci, Ancalites, Bibroci, Cassi, legationibus missis sese Caesari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit, non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse, silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. (Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, quum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitandae causa convenire consuerunt.) Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus: locum reperit egregie natura atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes, paulisper morati, militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt, seseque alia ex parte oppidi ejecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

XXII. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quatuor reges praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segonax, nuncios mittit, atque his imperat, uti, coactis omnibus copiis, castra navalia de improviso adoriantur atque oppugnent. Ii quum ad castra venissent, nostri, eruptione facta, multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige, suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus, hoc proelio nunciato, tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per Atrebatem Commium de deditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, quum statuisset hiemem in continenti propter repentinos Galliae motus agere, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intelligeret, obsides imperat; et quid in annos singulos vectigalis Populo Romano Britannia penderet, constituit:

interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubratio, neu Trinobantibus bellum faciat.

XXIII. Obsidibus acceptis, exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat, et nonnullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero, tot navigationibus, neque hoc, neque superiore anno, ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret, desideraretur: at ex iis, quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, prioris commeatus expositis militibus, et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero LX, perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae fere omnes rejicerentur. Quas quum aliquandiu Caesar frustra exspectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites collocavit, ac summa tranquillitate consecuta, secunda inita quum solvisset vigilia, prima luce terram attigit, omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

XXIV. Subductis navibus, concilioque Gallorum Samarobrivae peracto, quod eo anno frumentum in Gallia propter siccitates angustius provenerat, coactus est aliter, ac superioribus annis, exercitum in hibernis collocare, legionesque in plures civitates distribuere: ex quibus unam in Morinos ducendam C. Fabio legato dedit; alteram in Nervios, Q. Ciceroni; tertiam in Essuos, L. Roscio; quartam in Remis cum T. Labieno in confinio Trevirorum hiemare jussit; tres in Belgio collocavit: his M. Crassum, quaestorem, et L. Munatium Plancum, et C. Trebonium legatos praefecit. Unam legionem, quam proxime trans Padum conscripserat, et cohortes quinque in Eburones, quorum pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorigis et Cativolci erant, misit. His militibus Q. Titurium Sabinum et L. Aurunculeium Cottam, legatos, praeesse jussit. Ad hunc modum distributis legionibus, facillime inopiae frumentariae sese mederi posse existimavit; atque harum tamen omnium legionum hiberna (praeter eam, quam L. Roscio in pacatissimam et quietissimam partem ducendam dederat) millibus passuum centum continebantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiones collocasset, munitaque hiberna cognovisset, in Gallia morari constituit.

XXV. Erat in Carnutibus summo loco natus Tasgetius, cujus majores in sua civitate regnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar, pro ejus virtute atque in se benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulari ejus opera fuerat usus, majorum locum restituerat. Tertium jam hunc annum regnantem inimici palam, multis etiam ex civitate auctoribus, eum interfecerunt. Defertur ea res ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plures pertinebat, ne civitas eorum impulsu deficeret, L. Plancum cum legione ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes proficisci jubet, ibique hiemare; quorumque opera cognoverit Tasgetium interfectum, hos comprehensos ad se mittere. Interim ab omnibus legatis quaestoribusque, quibus legiones tradiderat, certior factus est, in hiberna perventum, locumque hibernis esse munitum.

XXVI. Diebus circiter xv, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentini tumultus ac defectionis ortum est ab Ambiorige et Cativolco: qui quum ad fines regni sui Sabino Cottaeque praesto fuissent, frumentumque in hiberna comportavissent, Indutiomari Treviri nunciis impulsi, suos concitaverunt, subitoque oppressis lignatoribus, magna manu castra oppugnatum venerunt. Quum celeriter nostri arma cepissent, vallumque adscendissent, atque una ex parte Hispanis equitibus emissis, equestri proelio superiores fuissent, desperata re, hostes suos ab oppugnatione reduxerunt. Tum suo more conclamaverunt, uti aliqui ex nostris ad colloquium prodirent; Habere sese, quae de re communi dicere vellent, quibus rebus controversias minui posse sperarent.

XXVII. Mittitur ad eos colloquendi causa C. Arpineius, eques Romanus, familiaris Q. Titurii, et Q. Junius ex Hispania quidam, qui jam ante missu Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitare consueverat: apud quos Ambiorix ad hunc modum locutus est: Sese, pro Caesaris in se beneficiis, plurimum ei confiteri debere, quod ejus opera stipendio liberatus esset, quod Aduatucis finitimis suis pendere consuesset, quodque ei et filius et fratris filius ab Caesare remissi essent, quos Aduatuci, obsidum numero missos, apud se in servitute et catenis tenuissent: neque id, quod fecerit de oppugnatione castrorum, aut judicio aut voluntate sua fecisse, sed coactu civitatis; suaque esse ejusmodi imperia, ut non minus haberet juris in

se multitudo, quam ipse in multitudinem. Civitati porro hanc fuisse belli causam, quod repentinae Gallorum conjurationi resistere non potuerit: id se facile ex humilitate sua probare posse, quod non adeo sit imperitus rerum, ut suis copiis Populum Romanum se superare posse confidat: sed esse Galliae commune consilium; omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio alterae legioni subsidio venire posset: non facile Gallos Gallis negare potuisse, praesertim quum de recuperanda communi libertate consilium initum videretur. Quibus quoniam pro pietate satisfecerit, habere se nunc rationem officii pro beneficiis Caesaris; monere, orare Titurium pro hospitio, ut suae ac militum saluti consulat: magnam manum Germanorum conductam Rhenum transisse; hanc affore biduo. Ipsorum esse consilium, velintne prius, quam finitimi sentiant, eductos ex hibernis milites aut ad Ciceronem aut ad Labienum deducere, quorum alter millia passuum circiter L, alter paulo amplius ab his absit. Illud se polliceri, et jurejurando confirmare, tutum iter per fines suos daturum; quod quum faciat, et civitati sese consulere, quod hibernis levetur, et Caesari pro ejus meritis gratiam referre. Hac oratione habita, discedit Ambiorix.

XXVIII. Arpineius et Junius, quae audierint, ad legatos deferunt. Illi, repentina re perturbati, etsi ab hoste ea dicebantur, non tamen negligenda existimabant: maximeque hac re permovebantur, quod civitatem ignobilem atque humilem Eburonum sua sponte Populo Romano bellum facere ausam, vix erat credendum. Itaque ad consilium rem deferunt, magnaque inter eos exsistit controversia. L. Aurunculeius compluresque tribuni militum et primorum ordinum centuriones, Nihil temere agendum, neque ex hibernis injussu Caesaris discedendum, existimabant: Quantasvis magnas etiam copias Germanorum sustineri posse munitis hibernis, docebant: Rem esse testimonio, quod primum hostium impetum, multis ultro vulneribus illatis, fortissime sustinuerint: re frumentaria non premi: interea et ex proximis hibernis, et a Caesare, conventura subsidia: postremo, Quid esse levius aut turpius, quam, auctore hoste, de summis rebus capere consilium?

XXIX. Contra ea Titurius, Sero facturos, clamitabat, quum majores hostium manus, adjunctis Germanis, convenissent, aut quum aliquid calamitatis in proximis hibernis esset acceptum: brevem consulendi esse occasionem: Caesarem arbitrari profectum in Italiam: neque aliter Carnutes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse capturos; neque Eburones, si ille adesset, tanta cum contemptione nostri ad castra venturos esse: non hostem auctorem, sed rem spectare; subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germanis dolori Ariovisti mortem et superiores nostras victorias; ardere Galliam, tot contumeliis acceptis sub Populi Romani imperium redactam, superiore gloria rei militaris exstincta. Postremo, Quis hoc sibi persuaderet, sine certa re Ambiorigem ad ejusmodi consilium descendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: si nil sit durius, nullo periculo ad proximam legionem perventuros; si Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentiat, unam esse in celeritate positam salutem. Cottae quidem, atque eorum qui dissentirent consilium, quem haberet exitum? In quo si non praesens periculum, at certe longinqua obsidione fames esset pertimescenda.

XXX. Hac in utramque partem disputatione habita, quum a Cotta, primisque ordinibus, acriter resisteretur, Vincite, inquit, si ita vultis, Sabinus; et id clariore voce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret: Neque is sum, inquit, qui gravissime ex vobis mortis periculo terrear: hi sapient, et si gravius quid acciderit, abs te rationem reposcent: qui, si per te liceat, perendino die cum proximis hibernis conjuncti, communem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant, nec rejecti et relegati longe ab caeteris aut ferro aut fame intereant.

XXXI. Consurgitur ex consilio; comprehendunt utrumque et orant, Ne sua dissensione et pertinacia rem in summum periculum deducant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, si modo unum omnes sentiant ac probent; contra in dissensione nullam se salutem perspicere. Res disputatione ad mediam noctem perducitur. Tandem dat Cotta permotus manus; superat sententia Sabini. Pronunciatur, prima luce ituros: consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, quum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid secum portare posset, quid ex instrumento hibernorum relinquere

cogeretur. Omnia excogitantur, quare nec sine periculo maneatur, et languore militum et vigiliis periculum augeatur. Prima luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ut, quibus esset persuasum, non ab hoste, sed ab homine amicissimo Ambiorige consilium datum, longissimo agmine maximisque impedimentis.

XXXII. At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremitu vigiliisque de profectione eorum senserunt, collocatis insidiis bipartito in silvis opportuno atque occulto loco, a millibus passuum circiter duobus, Romanorum adventum exspectabant: et, quum se major pars agminis in magnam convallem demisisset, ex utraque parte ejus vallis subito se ostenderunt, novissimosque premere, et primos prohibere adscensu, atque iniquissimo nostris loco proelium committere coeperunt.

XXXIII. Tum demum Titurius, ut qui nihil ante providisset, trepidare, concursare, cohortesque disponere; haec tamen ipsa timide, atque ut eum omnia deficere viderentur: quod plerumque iis accidere consuevit, qui in ipso negotio consilium capere coguntur. At Cotta, qui cogitasset haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectionis auctor non fuisset, nulla in re communi saluti deerat; et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus, imperatoris; et in pugna, militis officia praestabat. Quumque propter longitudinem agminis minus facile per se omnia obire, et quid quoque loco faciendum esset, providere possent, jusserunt pronunciare, ut impedimenta relinquerent, atque in orbem consisterent. Quod consilium etsi in ejusmodi casu reprehendendum non est, tamen incommode accidit: nam et nostris militibus spem minuit, et hostes ad pugnam alacriores effecit, quod non sine summo timore et desperatione id factum videbatur. Praeterea accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgo milites ab signis discederent; quae quisque eorum carissima haberet, ab impedimentis petere atque abripere properaret; clamore ac fletu omnia complerentur.

XXXIV. At barbaris consilium non defuit: nam duces eorum tota acie pronunciari jusserunt, Ne quis ab loco discederet: illorum esse praedam, atque illis reservari, quaecunque Romani reliquissent: proinde omnia in victoria posita existimarent. Erant et virtute et numero pugnando pares

nostri, tamen etsi ab duce et a fortuna deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtute ponebant, et, quoties quaeque cohors procurreret, ab ea parte magnus hostium numerus cadebat. Qua re animadversa, Ambiorix pronunciari jubet, ut procul tela conjiciant, neu propius accedant; et quam in partem Romani impetum fecerint, cedant: levitate armorum, et quotidiana exercitatione nihil iis noceri posse: rursus se ad signa recipientes insequantur.

XXXV. Quo praecepto ab iis diligentissime observato, quum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fecerat, hostes velocissime refugiebant. Interim eam partem nudari necesse erat, et ab latere aperto tela recipi. Rursus, quum in eum locum, unde erant progressi, reverti coeperant, et ab iis qui cesserant, et ab iis qui proximi steterant, circumveniebantur; sin autem locum tenere vellent, nec virtuti locus relinquebatur, neque ab tanta multitudine conjecta tela conferti vitare poterant. Tamen tot incommodis conflictati, multis vulneribus acceptis, resistebant; et magna parte diei consumpta, quum a prima luce ad horam octavam pugnaretur, nihil, quod ipsis esset indignum, committebant. Tum T. Balventio, qui superiore anno primum pilum duxerat, viro forti et magnae auctoritatis, utrumque femur tragula transjicitur: Q. Lucanius ejusdem ordinis, fortissime pugnans, dum circumvento filio subvenit, interficitur: L. Cotta, legatus, omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans, in adversum os funda vulneratur.

XXXVI. His rebus permotus Q. Titurius, quum procul Ambiorigem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interpretem suum, Cn. Pompeium, ad eum mittit, rogatum, Ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellatus respondit: Si velit secum colloqui, licere; sperare a multitudine impetrari posse, quod ad militum salutem pertineat; ipsi vero nihil nocitum iri, inque eam rem se suam fidem interponere. Ille cum Cotta saucio communicat, Si videatur, pugna ut excedant; et cum Ambiorige una colloquantur: sperare, ab eo de sua ac militum salute impetrare posse. Cotta se ad armatum hostem iturum negat, atque in eo constitit.

XXXVII. Sabinus, quos in praesentia tribunos militum circum se habebat, et primorum ordinum centuriones, se

sequi jubet; et quum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, jussus arma abjicere, imperatum facit, suisque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Interim, dum de conditionibus inter se agunt, longiorque consulto ab Ambiorige instituitur sermo, paulatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vero suo more victoriam conclamant, atque ululatum tollunt, impetuque in nostros facto, ordines perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pugnans interficitur cum maxima parte militum: reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant egressi: ex quibus L. Petrosidius aquilifer, quum magna multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum projecit, ipse pro castris fortissime pugnans occiditur. Illi aegre ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent: noctu ad unum omnes, desperata salute, se ipsi interficiunt. Pauci, ex proelio elapsi, incertis itineribus per silvas ad T. Labienum legatum in hiberna perveniunt, atque eum de rebus gestis certiorem faciunt.

XXXVIII. Hac victoria sublatus Ambiorix, statim cum equitatu in Aduatucos, qui erant ejus regno finitimi, proficiscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit, peditatumque se subsequi jubet. Re demonstrata, Aduatucisque concitatis, postero die in Nervios pervenit, hortaturque; Ne sui in perpetuum liberandi, atque ulciscendi Romanos, pro iis quas acceperint injuriis, occasionem dimittant: interfectos esse legatos duo, magnamque partem exercitus interisse demonstrat; nihil esse negotii, subito oppressam legionem, quae cum Cicerone hiemet, interfici; se ad eam rem profitetur adjutorem. Facile hac oratione Nerviis persuadet.

XXXIX. Itaque, confestim dimissis nunciis ad Centrones, Grudios, Levacos, Pleumoxios, Geidunos, qui omnes sub eorum imperio sunt, quam maximas manus possunt, cogunt; et de improviso ad Ciceronis hiberna advolant, nondum ad eum fama de Titurii morte perlata. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nonnulli milites, qui lignationis munitionisque causa in silvas discessissent, repentino equitum adventu interciperentur. His circumventis, magna manu Eburones, Nervii, Aduatuci, atque horum omnium socii et clientes, legionem oppugnare incipiunt: nostri celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. Aegre is dies sustentatur, quod omnem spem hostes in celeritate ponebant,

atque hanc adepti victoriam, in perpetuum se fore victores confidebant.

XL. Mittuntur ad Caesarem confestim a Cicerone literae, magnis propositis praemiis, si pertulissent. Obsessis omnibus viis, missi intercipiuntur. Noctu ex ea materia, quam munitionis causa comportaverant, turres admodum cxx excitantur incredibili celeritate: quae deesse operi videbantur, perficiuntur. Hostes postero die, multo majoribus copiis coactis, castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Ab nostris eadem ratione, qua pridie, resistitur: hoc idem deinceps reliquis fit diebus. Nulla pars nocturni temporis ad laborem intermittitur: non aegris, non vulneratis, facultas quietis datur: quaecunque ad proximi diei oppugnationem opus sunt, noctu comparantur: multae praeustae sudes, magnus muralium pilorum numerus instituitur; turres contabulantur; pinnae, loricaeque ex cratibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicero, quum tenuissima valetudine esset, ne nocturnum quidem sibi tempus ad quietem relinquebat, ut ultro militum concursu ac vocibus sibi parcere cogeretur.

XLI. Tunc duces principesque Nerviorum, qui aliquem sermonis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerone habebant, colloqui sese velle dicunt. Facta potestate, eadem, quae Ambiorix cum Titurio egerat, commemorant: Omnem esse in armis Galliam: Germanos Rhenum transisse: Caesaris reliquorumque hiberna oppugnari. Addunt etiam de Sabini morte. Ambiorigem ostentant fidei faciundae causa: Errare eos, dicunt, si quidquam ab his praesidii sperent, qui suis rebus diffidant; sese tamen hoc esse in Ciceronem Populumque Romanum animo, ut nihil nisi hiberna recusent, atque hanc inveterascere consuetudinem nolint: licere illis incolumibus per se ex hibernis discedere, et, quascunque in partes velint, sine metu proficisci. Cicero ad haec unum modo respondit: Non esse consuetudinem Populi Romani, ullam accipere ab hoste armato conditionem: si ab armis discedere velint, se adjutore utantur, legatosque ad Caesarem mittant: sperare, pro ejus justitia, quae petierint, impetraturos.

XLII. Ab hac spe repulsi Nervii, vallo pedum xi et fossa pedum xv hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiorum annorum consuetudine a nostris cognoverant; et, quosdam de exercitu

nacti captivos, ab his docebantur: sed, nulla ferramentorum copia, quae sunt ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis cespitem circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire cogebantur. Qua quidem ex re hominum multitudo cognosci potuit: nam minus horis tribus millium decem in circuitu munitionem perfecerunt: reliquisque diebus turres ad altitudinem valli, falces, testudinesque, quas iidem captivi docuerant, parare ac facere coeperunt.

XLIII. Septimo oppugnationis die, maximo coorto vento, ferventes fusili ex argilla glandes fundis, et fervefacta jacula in casas, quae more Gallico stramentis erant tectae, jacere coeperunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehenderunt, et venti magnitudine in omnem castrorum locum distulerunt. Hostes, maximo clamore insecuti, quasi parta jam atque explorata victoria, turres testudinesque agere, et scalis vallum ascendere coeperunt. At tanta militum virtus atque ea praesentia animi fuit, ut, quum undique flamma torrerentur, maximaque telorum multitudine premerentur, suaque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortunas conflagrare intelligerent, non modo demigrandi causa de vallo decederet nemo, sed paene ne respiceret quidem quisquam; ac tum omnes acerrime fortissimeque pugnarent. Hic dies nostris longe gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut eo die maximus hostium numerus vulneraretur atque interficeretur; ut se sub ipso vallo constipaverant, recessumque primis ultimi non dabant. Paulum quidem intermissa flamma, et quodam loco turri adacta et contingente vallum, tertiae cohortis centuriones ex eo, quo stabant, loco recesserunt, suosque omnes removerunt; nutu vocibusque hostes, si introire vellent, vocare coeperunt, quorum progredi ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus conjectis deturbati, turrisque succensa est.

XLIV. Erant in ea legione fortissimi viri centuriones, qui jam primis ordinibus appropinquarent, T. Pulfio et L. Varenus. Hi perpetuas inter se controversias habebant, quinam anteferretur; omnibusque annis de loco summis simultatibus contendebant. Ex iis Pulfio, quum acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, Quid dubitas, inquit, Varene? aut quem locum probandae virtutis tuae spectas? hic, hic dies de nostris controversiis judicabit. Haec quum dixisset, procedit extra mu-

nitiones, quaque pars hostium confertissima visa est, in eam irrumpit. Ne Varenus quidem tum vallo sese continet, sed omnium veritus existimationem subsequitur. Mediocri spatio relicto, Pulfio pilum in hostes mittit, atque unum ex multitudine procurrentem transjicit, quo percusso et exanimato, hunc scutis protegunt hostes, in illum universi tela conjiciunt, neque dant regrediendi facultatem. Transfigitur scutum Pulfioni, et verutum in balteo defigitur. Avertit hic casus vaginam, et gladium educere conanti dextram moratur manum: impeditum hostes circumsistunt. Succurrit inimicus illi Varenus, et laboranti subvenit. Ad hunc se confestim a Pulfione omnis multitudo convertit; illum veruto transfixum arbitrantur. Occursat ocius gladio, cominusque rem gerit Varenus, atque, uno interfecto, reliquos paulum propellit: dum cupidius instat, in locum dejectus inferiorem concidit. Huic rursus circumvento fert subsidium Pulfio, atque ambo incolumes, compluribus interfectis, summa cum laude sese intra munitiones recipiunt. Sic fortuna in contentione et certamine utrumque versavit, ut alter alteri inimicus auxilio salutique esset, neque dijudicari posset, uter utri virtute anteferendus videretur.

XLV. Quanto erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppugnatio, et maxime quod, magna parte militum confecta vulneribus, res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat, tanto crebriores literae nunciique ad Caesarem mittebantur: quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrorum militum cum cruciatu necabatur. Erat unus intus Nervius, nomine Vertico, loco natus honesto, qui a prima obsidione ad Ciceronem perfugerat, suamque ei fidem praestiterat. Hic servo spe libertatis magnisque persuadet praemiis, ut literas ad Caesarem deferat. Has ille in jaculo illigatas effert, et Gallus inter Gallos sine ulla suspicione versatus, ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eo de periculis Ciceronis legionisque cognoscitur.

XLVI. Caesar, acceptis literis hora circiter undecima diei, statim nuncium in Bellovacos ad M. Crassum quaestorem mittit, cujus hiberna aberant ab eo millia passuum xxv. Jubet media nocte legionem proficisci, celeriterque ad se venire. Exiit cum nuncio Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium legatum mittit, ut in Atrebatium fines legionem adducat, qua

sibi iter faciendum sciebat. Scribit Labieno, si Reipublicae commodo facere posset, cum legione ad fines Nerviorum veniat: reliquam partem exercitus, quod paulo aberat longius, non putat exspectandam; equites circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis cogit.

XLVII. Hora circiter tertia ab antecursoribus de Crassi adventu certior factus, eo die millia passuum viginti progreditur. Crassum Samarobrivae praeficit, legionemque ei attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsides civitatum, literas publicas, frumentumque omne, quod eo tolerandae hiemis causa devexerat, relinquebat. Fabius, ut imperatum erat, non ita multum moratus, in itinere cum legione occurrit. Labienus, interitu Sabini et caede cohortium cognita, quum omnes ad eum Trevirorum copiae venissent, veritus, ne, si ex hibernis fugae similem profectionem fecisset, hostium impetum sustinere non posset, praesertim quos recenti victoria efferri sciret, literas Caesari remittit, quanto cum periculo legionem ex hibernis educturus esset: rem gestam in Eburonibus perscribit: docet, omnes equitatus peditatusque copias Trevirorum tria millia passuum longe ab suis castris consedisse.

XLVIII. Caesar, consilio ejus probato, etsi, opinione trium legionum dejectus, ad duas redierat, tamen unum communis salutis auxilium in celeritate ponebat. Venit magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit, quae apud Ciceronem gerantur, quantoque in periculo res sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnis praemiis persuadet, uti ad Ciceronem epistolam deferat. Hanc Graecis conscriptam literis mittit, ne, intercepta epistola, nostra ab hostibus consilia cognoscantur. Si adire non possit, monet, ut tragulam cum epistola ad amentum deligata intra munitiones castrorum abjiciat. In literis scribit, Se cum legionibus profectum celeriter affore: hortatur ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus, periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, tragulam mittit. Haec casu ad turrim adhaesit, neque ab nostris biduo animadversa, tertio die a quodam milite conspicitur: dempta ad Ciceronem defertur. Ille perlectam in conventu militum recitat, maximaque omnes laetitia afficit. Tum fumi incendiorum procul videbantur: quae res omnem dubitationem adventus legionum expulit.

XLIX. Galli, re cognita per exploratores, obsidionem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus copiis contendunt; eae erant armatorum circiter millia LX. Cicero, data facultate, Gallum ab eodem Verticone, quem supra demonstravimus, repetit, qui literas ad Caesarem referat: hunc admonet, iter caute diligenterque faciat: perscribit in literis, Hostes ab se discessisse, omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus literis circiter media nocte allatis, Caesar suos facit certiores, eosque ad dimicandum animo confirmat: postero die, luce prima, movet castra, et circiter millia passuum quatuor progressus, trans vallem magnam et rivum, multitudinem hostium conspicatur. Erat magni periculi res, cum tantis copiis iniquo loco dimicare. Tum, quoniam liberatum obsidione Ciceronem sciebat, eoque omnino remittendum de celeritate existimabat, consedit, et, quam aequissimo potest loco, castra communit. Atque haec, etsi erant exigua per se, vix hominum millium VII, praesertim nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis viarum, quam maxime potest, contrahit, eo consilio, ut in summam contemptionem hostibus veniat. Interim, speculatoribus in omnes partes dimissis, explorat, quo commodissimo itinere vallem transire possit.

L. Eo die, parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis, utrique sese suo loco continent: Galli, quod ampliores copias, quae nondum convenerant, exspectabant; Caesar, si forte timoris simulatione hostes in suum locum elicere posset, ut citra vallem pro castris proelio contenderet; si id efficere non posset, ut, exploratis itineribus, minore cum periculo vallem rivumque transiret. Prima luce hostium equitatus ad castra accedit, proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar consulto equites cedere, seque in castra recipere jubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore vallo muniri, portasque obstrui, atque in his administrandis rebus quam maxime concursari, et cum simulatione timoris agi jubet.

LI. Quibus omnibus rebus hostes invitati copias transducunt, aciemque iniquo loco constituunt; nostris vero etiam de vallo deductis, propius accedunt, et tela intra munitionem ex omnibus partibus conjiciunt; praeconibusque circum missis, pronunciari jubent: Seu quis Gallus seu Romanus velit ante horam tertiam ad se transire, sine periculo licere; post id

tempus non fore potestatem: ac sic nostros contempserunt, ut, obstructis in speciem portis singulis ordinibus cespitum, quod ea non posse introrumpere videbantur, alii vallum manu scindere, alii fossas complere inciperent. Tum Caesar, omnibus portis eruptione facta, equitatuque emisso, celeriter hostes dat in fugam, sic, uti omnino pugnandi causa resisteret nemo; magnumque ex iis numerum occidit, atque omnes armis exuit.

LII. Longius prosequi veritus, quod silvae paludesque intercedebant, neque etiam parvulo detrimento illorum locum relinqui videbat, omnibus suis incolumibus copiis, eadem die ad Ciceronem pervenit. Institutas turres, testudines, munitionesque hostium admiratur: producta legione cognoscit, non decimum quemque esse relictum militem sine vulnere. Ex his omnibus judicat rebus, quanto cum periculo et quanta cum virtute sint res administratae: Ciceronem pro ejus merito legionemque collaudat: centuriones singillatim tribunosque militum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtutem testimonio Ciceronis cognoverat. De casu Sabini et Cottae certius ex captivis cognoscit. Postero die, concione habita, rem gestam proponit: milites consolatur et confirmat: quod detrimentum culpa et temeritate legati sit acceptum, hoc aequiore animo ferendum docet, quod, beneficio deorum immortalium et virtute eorum expiato incommodo, neque hostibus diutina laetatio, neque ipsis longior dolor relinquatur.

LIII. Interim ad Labienum per Remos incredibili celeritate de victoria Caesaris fama perfertur, ut, quum ab hibernis Ciceronis abesset millia passuum circiter LX, eoque post horam nonam diei Caesar pervenisset, ante mediam noctem ad portas castrorum clamor oriretur, quo clamore significatio victoriae gratulatioque ab Remis Labieno fieret. Hac fama ad Treviros perlata, Indutiomarus, qui postero die castra Labieni oppugnare decreverat, noctu profugit, copiasque omnes in Treviros reducit. Caesar Fabium cum legione in sua remittit hiberna, ipse cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrivam trinis hibernis hiemare constituit; et, quod tanti motus Galliae exstiterant, totam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manere decrevit. Nam illo incommodo de Sabini morte

perlato, omnes fere Galliae civitates de bello consultabant, nuncios legationesque in omnes partes dimittebant, et, quid reliqui consilii caperent, atque unde initium belli fieret, explorabant, nocturnaque in locis desertis concilia habebant. Neque ullum fere totius hiemis tempus sine sollicitudine Caesaris intercessit, quin aliquem de conciliis ac motu Gallorum nuncium acciperet. In his ab L. Roscio legato, quem legioni XIII praefecerat, certior est factus, Magnas Gallorum copias earum civitatum, quae Armoricae appellantur, oppugnandi sui causa convenisse: neque longius millia passuum VIII ab hibernis suis abfuisse; sed nuncio allato de victoria Caesaris, discessisse, adeo, ut fugae similis discessus videretur.

LIV. At Caesar, principibus cujusque civitatis ad se evocatis, alias territando, quum se scire, quae fierent, denunciaret, alias cohortando, magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est civitas in primis firma, et magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar apud eos regem constituerat, (cujus frater Moritasgus, adventu in Galliam Caesaris, cujusque majores regnum obtinuerant,) interficere publico consilio conati, quum ille praesensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fines insecuti, regno domoque expulerunt; et, missis ad Caesarem satisfaciendi causa legatis, quum is omnem ad se senatum venire jussisset, dicto audientes non fuerunt. Tantum apud homines barbaros valuit, esse repertos aliquos principes belli inferendi, tantamque omnibus voluntatum commutationem attulit, ut, praeter Aeduos et Remos, quos praecipuo semper honore Caesar habuit, alteros pro vetere ac perpetua erga Populum Romanum fide, alteros pro recentibus Gallici belli officiis, nulla fere civitas fuerit non suspecta nobis. Idque adeo haud scio mirandumne sit, quum compluribus aliis de causis, tum maxime, quod, qui virtute belli omnibus gentibus praeferebantur, tantum se ejus opinionis deperdidisse, ut a Populo Romano imperia perferrent, gravissime dolebant.

LV. Treviri vero atque Indutiomarus totius hiemis nullum tempus intermiserunt, quin trans Rhenum legatos mitterent, civitates sollicitarent, pecunias pollicerentur, magna parte exercitus nostri interfecta, multo minorem superesse dicerent

partem. Neque tamen ulli civitati Germanorum persuaderi potuit, ut Rhenum transiret, quum se bis expertos dicerent, Ariovisti bello et Tenchtherorum transitu, non esse amplius fortunam tentandam. Hac spe lapsus Indutiomarus, nihilominus copias cogere, exercere, a finitimis equos parare, exsules damnatosque tota Gallia magnis praemiis ad se allicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi jam iis rebus in Gallia auctoritatem comparaverat, ut undique ad eum legationes concurrerent, gratiam atque amicitiam publice privatimque peterent.

LVI. Ubi intellexit ultro ad se veniri, altera ex parte Senones Carnutesque conscientia facinoris instigari; altera Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romanis parare, neque sibi voluntariorum copias defore, si ex finibus suis progredi coepisset; armatum concilium indicit, (hoc more Gallorum est initium belli,) quo, lege communi, omnes puberes armati convenire consuerunt; qui ex iis novissimus venit, in conspectu multitudinis omnibus cruciatibus affectus necatur. In eo concilio Cingetorigem, alterius principem factionis, generum suum, (quem supra demonstravimus, Caesaris secutum fidem, ab eo non discessisse,) hostem judicat, bonaque ejus publicat. His rebus confectis, in concilio pronunciat, arcessitum se a Senonibus et Carnutibus, aliisque compluribus Galliae civitatibus, huc iter facturum per fines Remorum, eorumque agros populaturum, ac prius, quam id faciat, Labieni castra oppugnaturum: quae fieri velit, praecipit.

LVII. Labienus, quum et loci natura et manu munitissimis castris sese teneret, de suo ac legionis periculo nihil timebat; ne quam occasionem rei bene gerendae dimitteret, cogitabat. Itaque a Cingetorige atque ejus propinquis oratione Indutiomari cognita, quam in concilio habuerat, nuncios mittit ad finitimas civitates, equitesque undique convocat: iis certum diem conveniendi dicit. Interim prope quotidie cum omni equitatu Indutiomarus sub castris ejus vagabatur, alias ut situm castrorum cognosceret, alias colloquendi aut territandi causa: equites plerumque omnes tela intra vallum conjiciebant. Labienus suos intra munitiones continebat, timorisque opinionem, quibuscunque poterat rebus, augebat.

LVIII. Quum majore in dies contemptione Indutiomarus ad castra accederet, nocte una, intromissis equitibus omnium

finitimarum civitatum, quos arcessendos curaverat, tanta diligentia omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuit, ut nulla ratione ea res enunciari, aut ad Treviros perferri posset. Interim ex consuetudine quotidiana Indutiomarus ad castra accedit, atque ibi magnam partem diei consumit; equites tela conjiciunt, et magna cum contumelia verborum nostros ad pugnam evocant. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, ubi visum est, sub vesperum dispersi ac dissipati discedunt. Subito Labienus duabus portis omnem equitatum emittit; praecipit atque interdicit, proterritis hostibus atque in fugam conjectis, (quod fore, sicut accidit, videbat,) unum omnes petant Indutiomarum; neu quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum viderit, quod mora reliquorum spatium effugere nactum illum nolebat: magna proponit iis, qui occiderint, praemia: submittit cohortes equitibus subsidio. Comprobat hominis consilium fortuna; et, quum unum omnes peterent, in ipso fluminis vado deprehensus Indutiomarus interficitur, caputque ejus refertur in castra: redeuntes equites, quos possunt, consectantur atque occidunt. Hac re cognita, omnes Eburonum et Nerviorum, quae convenerant, copiae discedunt; pauloque habuit post id factum Caesar quietiorem Galliam.

C. JULII CAESARIS

COMMENTARIORUM

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER VI.

ARGUMENTUM.

CAP. I. Caesar majorem Galliae motum praevidens, copias adauget. II. Subitoque subactis Nerviis, IV. et Senonibus ac Carnutibus in deditionem acceptis, VI. Menapios debellat: VIII. atque interea Treviros T. Labienus. IX. Caesar secundum Rhenum transit. XI. Instituta per occasionem Germanorum cum Gallis collatione, primo descripti horum mores consuetudinesque. XXIX. Caesar ad Eburones, frustra tentatis Suevis, convertitur. XXXV. At dum per eorum agros late vagatur, Sigambri, non sine caede Romanorum, castra adoriuntur: XLI. Iis tamen non expugnatis, domum revertuntur, XLIV. et Caesar, vastatis Eburonum agris, concilioque peracto, in Italiam, ad agendos conventus, proficiscitur.

I. MULTIS de causis Caesar, majorem Galliae motum exspectans, per M. Silanum, C. Antistium Reginum, T. Sextium, legatos, dilectum habere instituit: simul ab Cn. Pompeio proconsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperio Reipublicae causa maneret, quos ex Cisalpina Gallia consulis sacramento rogavisset, ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci juberet: magni interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opinionem Galliae existimans, tantas videri Italiae facultates, ut, si quid esset in bello detrimenti acceptum, non modo id brevi tempore sarciri, sed etiam majoribus adaugeri copiis posset. Quod quum Pompeius et Reipublicae et amicitiae tribuisset, celeriter confecto per suos dilectu, tribus ante exactam hiemem et constitutis et adductis legionibus, duplicatoque earum cohortium numero, quas cum Q. Titurio

amiserat, et celeritate et copiis docuit, quid Populi Romani disciplina atque opes possent.

II. Interfecto Indutiomaro, ut docuimus, ad ejus propinquos a Treviris imperium defertur. Illi finitimos Germanos sollicitare, et pecuniam polliceri non desistunt: quum ab proximis impetrare non possent, ulteriores tentant. Inventis nonnullis civitatibus, jurejurando inter se confirmant, obsidibusque de pecunia cavent: Ambiorigem sibi societate et foedere adjungunt. Quibus rebus cognitis, Caesar, quum undique bellum parari videret, Nervios, Aduatucos, Menapios, adjunctis Cisrhenanis omnibus Germanis, esse in armis, Senones ad imperatum non venire, et cum Carnutibus finitimisque civitatibus consilia communicare, a Treviris Germanos crebris legationibus sollicitari; maturius sibi de bello cogitandum putavit.

III. Itaque nondum hieme confecta, proximis IV legionibus coactis, de improviso in fines Nerviorum contendit; et, prius quam illi aut convenire aut profugere possent, magno pecoris atque hominum numero capto, atque ea praeda militibus concessa, vastatisque agris, in deditionem venire atque obsides sibi dare coëgit. Eo celeriter confecto negotio, rursus legiones in hiberna reduxit. Concilio Galliae primo vere, uti instituerat, indicto, quum reliqui, praeter Senones, Carnutes, Trevirosque venissent, initium belli ac defectionis hoc esse arbitratus, ut omnia postponere videretur, concilium Lutetiam Parisiorum transfert. Confines erant hi Senonibus, civitatemque patrum memoria conjunxerant; sed ab hoc concilio abfuisse existimabantur. Hac re pro suggestu pronunciata, eodem die cum legionibus in Senones proficiscitur, magnisque itineribus eo pervenit.

IV. Cognito ejus adventu, Acco, qui princeps ejus consilii fuerat, jubet in oppida multitudinem convenire: conantibus, prius quam id effici posset, adesse Romanos nunciatur: necessario sententia desistunt, legatosque deprecandi causa ad Caesarem mittunt: adeunt per Aeduos, quorum antiquitus erat in fide civitas. Libenter Caesar petentibus Aeduis dat veniam, excusationemque accipit; quod aestivum tempus instantis belli, non quaestionis esse arbitrabatur. Obsidibus imperatis centum, hos Aeduis custodiendos tradit. Eodem

Carnutes legatos obsidesque mittunt, usi deprecatoribus Remis, quorum erant in clientela: eadem ferunt responsa. Peragit concilium Caesar, equitesque imperat civitatibus.

V. Hac parte Galliae pacata, totus et mente et animo in bellum Trevirorum et Ambiorigis insistit. Cavarinum cum equitatu Senonum secum proficisci jubet, ne quis aut ex hujus iracundia, aut ex eo, quod meruerat, odio civitatis, motus exsistat. His rebus constitutis, quod pro explorato habebat, Ambiorigem proelio non esse concertaturum, reliqua ejus consilia animo circumspiciebat. Erant Menapii propinqui Eburonum finibus, perpetuis paludibus silvisque muniti, qui uni ex Gallia de pace ad Caesarem legatos nunquam miserant. Cum iis esse hospitium Ambiorigi sciebat: item per Treviros venisse Germanis in amicitiam, cognoverat. Haec prius illi detrahenda auxilia existimabat, quam ipsum bello lacesseret; ne, desperata salute, aut se in Menapios abderet, aut cum Transrhenanis congredi cogeretur. Hoc inito consilio, totius exercitus impedimenta ad Labienum in Treviros mittit, duasque legiones ad eum proficisci jubet: ipse cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. Illi, nulla coacta manu, loci praesidio freti, in silvas paludesque confugiunt, suaque eodem conferunt.

VI. Caesar, partitis copiis cum C. Fabio legato, et M. Crasso quaestore, celeriterque effectis pontibus, adit tripartito, aedificia vicosque incendit, magno pecoris atque hominum numero potitur. Quibus rebus coacti Menapii, legatos ad eum, pacis petendae causa, mittunt. Ille, obsidibus acceptis, hostium se habiturum numero confirmat, si aut Ambiorigem, aut ejus legatos, finibus suis recepissent. His confirmatis rebus, Commium Atrebatem cum equitatu, custodis loco, in Menapiis relinquit; ipse in Treviros proficiscitur.

VII. Dum haec a Caesare geruntur, Treviri, magnis coactis peditatus equitatusque copiis, Labienum cum una legione, quae in eorum finibus hiemabat, adoriri parabant: jamque ab eo non longius bidui via aberant, quum duas venisse legiones missu Caesaris cognoscunt. Positis castris a millibus passuum xv, auxilia Germanorum exspectare constituunt. Labienus, hostium cognito consilio, sperans temeritate eorum fore aliquam dimicandi facultatem, praesidio

cohortium v impedimentis relicto, cum xxv cohortibus magnoque equitatu contra hostem proficiscitur, et, mille passuum intermisso spatio, castra communit. Erat inter Labienum atque hostem difficili transitu flumen, ripisque praeruptis: hoc neque ipse transire habebat in animo, neque hostes transituros existimabat. Augebatur auxiliorum quotidie spes. Loquitur in consilio palam, Quoniam Germani appropinquare dicantur, sese suas exercitusque fortunas in dubium non devocaturum, et postero die prima luce castra moturum. Celeriter haec ad hostes deferuntur, ut ex magno Gallorum equitatus numero nonnullos Gallicis rebus favere natura cogebat. Labienus noctu, tribunis militum primisque ordinibus coactis, quid sui sit consilii, proponit, et quo facilius hostibus timoris det suspicionem, majore strepitu et tumultu, quam Populi Romani fert consuetudo, castra moveri jubet. His rebus fugae similem profectionem efficit. Haec quoque per exploratores ante lucem, in tanta propinquitate castrorum, ad hostes deferuntur.

VIII. Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiones processerat, quum Galli, cohortati inter se, Ne speratam praedam ex manibus dimitterent; longum esse, perterritis Romanis, Germanorum auxilium exspectare; neque suam pati dignitatem, ut tantis copiis tam exiguam manum, praesertim fugientem atque impeditam, adoriri non audeant; flumen transire, et iniquo loco proelium committere non dubitant. Quae fore suspicatus Labienus, ut omnes citra flumen eliceret, eadem usus simulatione itineris, placide progrediebatur. Tum, praemissis paulum impedimentis, atque in tumulo quodam collocatis: Habetis, inquit, milites, quam petistis, facultatem: hostem impedito atque iniquo loco tenetis: praestate eandem nobis ducibus virtutem, quam saepenumero imperatori praestitistis: adesse eum, et haec coram cernere, existimate. Simul signa ad hostem converti aciemque dirigi jubet: et paucis turmis praesidio ad impedimenta dimissis, reliquos equites ad latera disponit. Celeriter nostri, clamore sublato, pila in hostes immittunt. Illi, ubi praeter spem, quos fugere credebant, infestis signis ad se ire viderunt, impetum modo ferre non potuerunt, ac primo concursu in fugam conjecti, proximas silvas petiverunt: quos Labienus equitatu consecta-

tus, magno numero interfecto, compluribus captis, paucis post diebus civitatem recepit: nam Germani, qui auxilio veniebant, percepta Trevirorum fuga, sese domum contulerunt. Cum iis propinqui Indutiomari, qui defectionis auctores fuerant, comitati eos, ex civitate excessere. Cingetorigi, quem ab initio permansisse in officio demonstravimus, principatus atque imperium est traditum.

IX. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Treviros venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit: quarum erat altera, quod auxilia contra se Treviris miserant; altera, ne Ambiorix ad eos receptum haberet. His constitutis rebus, paulum supra eum locum, quo ante exercitum transduxerat, facere pontem instituit. Nota atque instituta ratione, magno militum studio, paucis diebus opus efficitur. Firmo in Treviris praesidio ad pontem relicto, ne quis ab iis subito motus oriretur, reliquas copias equitatumque transducit. Ubii, qui ante obsides dederant, atque in deditionem venerant, purgandi sui causa ad eum legatos mittunt, qui doceant, Neque ex sua civitate auxilia in Treviros missa, neque ab se fidem laesam: petunt atque orant, Ut sibi parcat, ne communi odio Germanorum innocentes pro nocentibus poenas pendant: si amplius obsidum velit, dare pollicentur. Cognita, Caesar, causa, reperit, ab Suevis auxilia missa esse, Ubiorum satisfactionem accepit, aditus viasque in Suevos perquirit.

X. Interim paucis post diebus fit ab Ubiis certior, Suevos omnes unum in locum copias cogere, atque iis nationibus, quae sub eorum sint imperio, denunciare, uti auxilia peditatus equitatusque mittant. His cognitis rebus, rem frumentariam providet, castris idoneum locum deligit, Ubiis imperat, ut pecora deducant, suaque omnia ex agris in oppida conferant, sperans, barbaros atque imperitos homines, inopia cibariorum afflictos, ad iniquam pugnandi conditionem posse deduci: mandat, ut crebros exploratores in Suevos mittant, quaeque apud eos gerantur, cognoscant. Illi imperata faciunt, et paucis diebus intermissis referunt, Suevos omnes, posteaquam certiores nuncii de exercitu Romanorum venerint, cum omnibus suis sociorumque copiis, quas coëgissent, penitus ad extremos fines sese recepisse: silvam esse ibi infinita magnitudine, quae appellatur Bacenis: hanc longe introrsus per-

tinere, et, pro nativo muro objectam, Cheruscos ab Suevis, Suevos ab Cheruscis, injuriis incursionibusque prohibere: ad ejus initium silvae Suevos adventum Romanorum exspectare constituisse.

XI. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, non alienum esse videtur, de Galliae Germaniaeque moribus, et quo differant eae nationes inter sese, proponere. In Gallia non solum in omnibus civitatibus, atque in omnibus pagis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiones sunt: earumque factionum principes sunt, qui summam auctoritatem eorum judicio habere existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium judiciumque summa omnium rerum consiliorumque redeat. Idque ejus rei causa antiquitus institutum videtur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiorem auxilii egeret: suos enim quisque opprimi et circumveniri non patitur, neque, aliter si faciant, ullam inter suos habent auctoritatem. Haec eadem ratio est in summa totius Galliae: namque omnes civitates in partes divisae sunt duas.

XII. Quum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui, alterius Sequani. Hi quum per se minus valerent, quod summa auctoritas antiquitus erat in Aeduis, magnaeque eorum erant clientelae, Germanos atque Ariovistum sibi adjunxerant, eosque ad se magnis jacturis pollicitationibusque perduxerant. Proeliis vero compluribus factis secundis, atque omni nobilitate Aeduorum interfecta, tantum potentia antecesserant, ut magnam partem clientium ab Aeduis ad se transducerent, obsidesque ab iis principum filios acciperent, et publice jurare cogerent, nihil se contra Sequanos consilii inituros; et partem finitimi agri, per vim occupatam, possiderent, Galliaeque totius principatum obtinerent. Qua necessitate adductus Divitiacus, auxilii petendi causa Romam ad Senatum profectus, infecta re redierat. Adventu Caesaris facta commutatione rerum, obsidibus Aeduis redditis, veteribus clientelis restitutis, novis per Caesarem comparatis (quod hi, qui se ad eorum amicitiam aggregaverant, meliore conditione atque aequiore imperio se uti videbant,) reliquis rebus eorum, gratia, dignitateque amplificata, Sequani principatum dimiserant. In eorum locum Remi successerant: quos quod adaequare apud Caesarem gratia

intelligebatur, ii, qui propter veteres inimicitias nullo modo cum Aeduis conjungi poterant, se Remis in clientelam dicabant. Hos illi diligenter tuebantur. Ita et novam et repente collectam auctoritatem tenebant. Eo tum statu res erat, ut longe principes haberentur Aedui, secundum locum dignitatis Remi obtinerent.

XIII. In omni Gallia eorum hominum, qui aliquo sunt numero atque honore, genera sunt duo: nam plebes paene servorum habetur loco, quae per se nihil audet, et nullo adhibetur consilio. Plerique, quum aut aere alieno, aut magnitudine tributorum, aut injuria potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant nobilibus: in hos eadem omnia sunt jura, quae dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus generibus alterum est Druidum, alterum Equitum. Illi rebus divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur. Ad hos magnus adolescentium numerus disciplinae causa concurrit, magnoque ii sunt apud eos honore. Nam fere de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt; et, si quod est admissum facinus, si caedes facta, si de haereditate, si de finibus controversia est, iidem decernunt; praemia poenasque constituunt: si qui aut privatus aut publicus eorum decreto non stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Haec poena apud eos est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, ii numero impiorum ac sceleratorum habentur; iis omnes decedunt, aditum eorum sermonemque defugiunt, ne quid ex contagione incommodi accipiant: neque iis petentibus jus redditur, neque honos ullus communicatur. His autem omnibus Druidibus praeest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo, si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit: aut si sunt plures pares, suffragio Druidum deligitur, nonnunquam etiam armis de principatu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regio totius Galliae media habetur, considunt in loco consecrato. Huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt, eorumque judiciis decretisque parent. Disciplina in Britannia reperta, atque inde in Galliam translata esse existimatur: et nunc, qui diligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt, plerumque illo discendi causa proficiscuntur.

XIV. Druides a bello abesse consuerunt, neque tributa

una cum reliquis pendunt; militiae vacationem omniumque rerum habent immunitatem. Tantis excitati praemiis, et sua sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt, et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ediscere dicuntur: itaque annos nonnulli vicenos in disciplina permanent. Neque fas esse existimant ea literis mandare, quum in reliquis fere rebus publicis, privatisque rationibus, Graecis utantur literis. Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur; quod neque in vulgum disciplinam efferri velint, neque eos, qui discant, literis confisos, minus memoriae studere: quod fere plerisque accidit, ut praesidio literarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant. In primis hoc volunt persuadere, non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios; atque hoc maxime ad virtutem excitari putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa praeterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de Deorum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant, et juventuti transdunt.

XV. Alterum genus est Equitum. Hi, quum est usus, atque aliquod bellum incidit, (quod ante Caesaris adventum fere quotannis accidere solebat, uti aut ipsi injurias inferrent, aut illatas propulsarent,) omnes in bello versantur: atque eorum ut quisque est genere copiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se ambactos clientesque habent. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque noverunt.

XVI. Natio est omnium Gallorum admodum dedita religionibus; atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis, quique in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut pro victimis homines immolant, aut se immolaturos vovent, administrisque ad ea sacrificia Druidibus utuntur; quod, pro vita hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse aliter Deorum immortalium numen placari arbitrantur: publiceque ejusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia. Alii immani magnitudine simulacra habent, quorum contexta viminibus membra vivis hominibus complent, quibus succensis, circumventi flamma exanimantur homines. Supplicia eorum, qui in furto, aut in latrocinio, aut aliqua noxa sint comprehensi, gratiora Diis immortalibus esse arbitrantur: sed, quum ejus generis copia deficit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.

XVII. Deum maxime Mercurium colunt. Hujus sunt plurima simulacra: hunc omnium inventorem artium ferunt, hunc viarum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestus pecuniae mercaturasque habere vim maximam arbitrantur. Post hunc, Apollinem, et Martem, et Jovem, et Minervam. De his eandem fere, quam reliquae gentes, habent opinionem: Apollinem morbos depellere; Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia transdere; Jovem imperium coelestium tenere; Martem bella regere. Huic, quum proelio dimicare constituerunt, ea, quae bello ceperint, plerumque devovent; quae superaverint, animalia capta immolant: reliquas res in unum locum conferunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstructos tumulos locis consecratis conspicari licet: neque saepe accidit, ut, neglecta quispiam religione, aut capta apud se occultare, aut posita tollere auderet; gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciatu constitutum est.

XVIII. Galli se omnes ab Dite patre prognatos praedicant; idque ab Druidibus proditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis non numero dierum, sed noctium, finiunt: dies natales, et mensium et annorum initia sic observant, ut noctem dies subsequatur. In reliquis vitae institutis, hoc fere ab reliquis differunt, quod suos liberos, nisi quum adoleverint, ut munus militiae sustinere possint, palam ad se adire non patiuntur; filiumque puerili aetate in publico, in conspectu patris, assistere, turpe ducunt.

XIX. Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoribus dotis nomine acceperunt, tantas ex suis bonis, aestimatione facta, cum dotibus communicant. Hujus omnis pecuniae conjunctim ratio habetur, fructusque servantur: uter eorum vita superarit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum pervenit. Viri in uxores, sicut in liberos, vitae necisque habent potestatem: et quum pater familiae, illustriori loco natus, decessit, ejus propinqui conveniunt, et, de morte si res in suspicionem venit, de uxoribus in servilem modum quaestionem habent; et, si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciatas interficiunt. Funera sunt pro cultu Gallorum magnifica et sumptuosa; omniaque, quae vivis cordi fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia: ac paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et clientes, quos ab iis

dilectos esse constabat, justis funeribus confectis, una cremabantur.

XX. Quae civitates commodius suam rempublicam administrare existimantur, habent legibus sanctum, si quis quid de republica a finitimis rumore ac fama acceperit, uti ad magistratum deferat; neve cum quo alio communicet; quod saepe homines temerarios atque imperitos falsis rumoribus terreri, et ad facinus impelli, et de summis rebus consilium capere cognitum est. Magistratus, quae visa sunt, occultant; quaeque esse ex usu judicaverint, multitudini produnt: de republica, nisi per concilium, loqui non conceditur.

XXI. Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt: nam neque Druides habent, qui rebus divinis praesint; neque sacrificiis student. Deorum numero eos solos ducunt, quos cernunt, et quorum aperte opibus juvantur, Solem, et Vulcanum, et Lunam: reliquos ne fama quidem acceperunt. Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit: ab parvulis labori ac duritiae student. Qui diutissime impuberes permanserunt, maximam inter suos ferunt laudem: hoc ali staturam, ali hoc vires, nervosque confirmari, putant. Intra annum vero vicesimum feminae notitiam habuisse, in turpissimis habent rebus: cujus rei nulla est occultatio, quod et promiscue in fluminibus perluuntur, et pellibus aut parvis rhenonum tegumentis utuntur, magna corporis parte nuda.

XXII. Agriculturae non student; majorque pars victus eorum in lacte, caseo, carne consistit: neque quisquam agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios; sed magistratus ac principes in annos singulos gentibus cognationibusque hominum, qui una coïerunt, quantum, et quo loco visum est, agri attribuunt, atque anno post alio transire cogunt. Ejus rei multas afferunt causas; ne, assidua consuetudine capti, studium belli gerundi agricultura commutent; ne latos fines parare studeant, potentioresque humiliores possessionibus expellant; ne accuratius, ad frigora atque aestus vitandos, aedificent; ne qua oriatur pecuniae cupiditas, qua ex re factiones dissensionesque nascuntur; ut animi aequitate plebem contineant, quum suas quisque opes cum potentissimis aequari videat.

XXIII. Civitatibus maxima laus est, quam latissimas cir-

cum se vastatis finibus solitudines habere. Hoc proprium virtutis existimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedere, neque quenquam prope audere consistere: simul hoc se fore tutiores arbitrantur, repentinae incursionis timore sublato. Quum bellum civitas aut illatum defendit, aut infert, magistratus, qui ei bello praesint, ut vitae necisque habeant potestatem, deliguntur. In pace nullus communis est magistratus; sed principes regionum atque pagorum inter suos jus dicunt, controversiasque minuunt. Latrocinia nullam habent infamiam, quae extra fines cujusque civitatis fiunt; atque ea juventutis exercendae ac desidiae minuendae causa fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in concilio dixit Se ducem fore; qui sequi velint, profiteantur: consurgunt ii, qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur; atque ab multitudine collaudantur: qui ex iis secuti non sunt, in desertorum ac proditorum numero ducuntur, omniumque iis rerum postea fides derogatur. Hospites violare, fas non putant: qui, quaque de causa, ad eos venerint, ab injuria prohibent, sanctosque habent; iis omnium domus patent, victusque communicatur.

XXIV. Ac fuit antea tempus, quum Germanos Galli virtute superarent, ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima sunt, Germaniae loca circum Hercyniam silvam, (quam Eratostheni et quibusdam Graecis fama notam esse video, quam illi Orcyniam appellant,) Volcae Tectosages occupaverunt, atque ibi consederunt. Quae gens ad hoc tempus iis sedibus sese continet, summamque habet justitiae et bellicae laudis opinionem: nunc quoque in eadem inopia, egestate, patientia, qua Germani, permanent; eodem victu et cultu corporis utuntur; Gallis autem Provinciae propinquitas, et transmarinarum rerum notitia, multa ad copiam atque usus largitur. Paulatim assuefacti superari, multisque victi proeliis, ne se quidem ipsi cum illis virtute comparant.

XXV. Hujus Hercyniae silvae, quae supra demonstrata est, latitudo novem dierum iter expedito patet: non enim aliter finiri potest, neque mensuras itinerum noverunt. Oritur ab Helvetiorum, et Nemetum, et Rauracorum finibus, rectaque fluminis Danubii regione pertinet ad fines Dacorum

et Anartium: hinc se flectit sinistrorsus, diversis ab flumine regionibus, multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit: neque quisquam est hujus Germaniae, qui se aut adisse ad initium ejus silvae dicat, quum dierum iter LX processerit, aut, quo ex loco oriatur, acceperit. Multa in ea genera ferarum nasci constat, quae reliquis in locis visa non sint: ex quibus, quae maxime differant ab caeteris, et memoriae prodenda videantur, haec sunt.

XXVI. Est bos cervi figura, cujus a media fronte inter aures unum cornu exsistit, excelsius magisque directum his, quae nobis nota sunt, cornibus. Ab ejus summo, sicut palmae, rami quam late diffunduntur. Eadem est feminae marisque natura, eadem forma magnitudoque cornuum.

XXVII. Sunt item, quae appellantur Alces. Harum est consimilis capris figura, et varietas pellium; sed magnitudine paulo antecedunt, mutilaeque sunt cornibus, et crura sine nodis articulisque habent; neque quietis causa procumbunt: neque, si quo afflictae casu conciderint, erigere sese aut sublevare possunt. His sunt arbores pro cubilibus: ad eas se applicant, atque ita, paulum modo reclinatae, quietem capiunt: quarum ex vestigiis quum est animadversum a venatoribus, quo se recipere consuerint, omnes eo loco aut a radicibus subruunt aut accidunt arbores tantum, ut summa species earum stantium relinquatur. Huc quum se consuetudine reclinaverint, infirmas arbores pondere affligunt, atque una ipsae concidunt.

XXVIII. Tertium est genus eorum, qui Uri appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo infra elephantos; specie, et colore, et figura tauri. Magna vis est eorum, et magna velocitas: neque homini, neque ferae, quam conspexerint, parcunt. Hos studiose foveis captos interficiunt. Hoc se labore durant homines adolescentes, atque hoc genere venationis exercent; et, qui plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relatis in publicum cornibus, quae sint testimonio, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuescere ad homines et mansuefieri, ne parvuli quidem excepti, possunt. Amplitudo cornuum, et figura, et species, multum a nostrorum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiose conquisita ab labris argento circumcludunt, atque in amplissimis epulis pro poculis utuntur.

XXIX. Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores comperit, Suevos sese in silvas recepisse, inopiam frumenti veritus, quod, ut supra demonstravimus, minime omnes Germani agriculturae student, constituit non progredi longius; sed, ne omnino metum reditus sui barbaris tolleret, atque ut eorum auxilia tardaret, reducto exercitu, partem ultimam pontis, quae ripas Ubiorum contingebat, in longitudinem pedum CC rescindit; atque in extremo ponte turrim tabulatorum quatuor constituit, praesidiumque cohortium XII pontis tuendi causa ponit, magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat. Ei loco praesidioque C. Volcatium Tullum adolescentem praefecit. Ipse, quum maturescere frumenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus, [per Arduennam silvam, quae est totius Galliae maxima, atque ab ripis Rheni finibusque Trevirorum ad Nervios pertinet, millibusque amplius D in longitudinem patet,] L. Minucium Basilum cum omni equitatu praemittit, si quid celeritate itineris atque opportunitate temporis proficere possit: monet, ut ignes fieri in castris prohibeat, ne qua ejus adventus procul significatio fiat: sese confestim subsequi dicit.

XXX. Basilus, ut imperatum est, facit: celeriter contraque omnium opinionem confecto itinere, multos in agris inopinantes deprehendit; eorum indicio ad ipsum Ambiorigem contendit, quo in loco cum paucis equitibus esse dicebatur. Multum, quum in omnibus rebus, tum in re militari potest fortuna. Nam sicut magno accidit casu, ut in ipsum incautum atque etiam imparatum incideret, priusque ejus adventus ab hominibus videretur, quam fama ac nunciis afferretur; sic magnae fuit fortunae, omni militari instrumento, quod circum se habebat, erepto, rhedis equisque comprehensis, ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hoc eo factum est, quod, aedificio circumdato silva, (ut sunt fere domicilia Gallorum, qui, vitandi aestus causa, plerumque silvarum ac fluminum petunt propinquitates,) comites familiaresque ejus angusto in loco paulisper equitum nostrorum vim sustinuerunt. His pugnantibus, illum in equum quidam ex suis intulit: fugientem silvae texerunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum, et ad vitandum, multum fortuna valuit.

XXXI. Ambiorix copias suas judicione non conduxerit,

quod proelio dimicandum non existimarit, an tempore exclusus, et repentino equitum adventu prohibitus fuerit, quum reliquum exercitum subsequi crederet, dubium est: sed certe, clam dimissis per agros nunciis, sibi quemque consulere jussit: quorum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentes paludes profugit; qui proximi Oceanum fuerunt, his insulis sese occultaverunt, quas aestus efficere consuerunt: multi, ex suis finibus egressi, se suaque omnia alienissimis crediderunt. Cativolcus, rex dimidiae partis Eburonum, qui una cum Ambiorige consilium inierat, aetate jam confectus, quum laborem aut belli aut fugae ferre non posset, omnibus precibus detestatus Ambiorigem, qui ejus consilii auctor fuisset, taxo, cujus magna in Gallia Germaniaque copia est, se exanimavit.

XXXII. Segni Condrusique, ex gente et numero Germanorum qui sunt inter Eburones Trevirosque, legatos ad Caesarem miserunt oratum, Ne se in hostium numero duceret, neve omnium Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum, unam esse causam judicaret: nihil se de bello cogitasse, nulla Ambiorigi auxilia misisse. Caesar, explorata re quaestione captivorum, si qui ad eos Eburones ex fuga convenissent, ut ad se reducerentur, imperavit: si ita fecissent, fines eorum se violaturum negavit. Tum copiis in tres partes distributis, impedimenta omnium legionum Aduatucam contulit. Id castelli nomen est. Hoc fere est in mediis Eburonum finibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculeius hiemandi causa consederant. Hunc cum reliquis rebus locum probabat, tum quod superioris anni munitiones integrae manebant, ut militum laborem sublevaret. Praesidio impedimentis legionem decimam quartam reliquit, unam ex iis tribus, quas proxime conscriptas ex Italia transduxerat. Ei legioni castrisque Q. Tullium Ciceronem praefecit, ducentosque equites attribuit.

XXXIII. Partito exercitu, T. Labienum cum legionibus tribus ad Oceanum versus in eas partes, quae Menapios attingunt, proficisci jubet: C. Trebonium cum pari legionum numero ad eam regionem, quae Aduatucis adjacet, depopulandam mittit: ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flumen Scaldim, quod influit in Mosam, extremasque Arduennae partes ire constituit, quo cum paucis equitibus profectum Ambiorigem

audiebat. Discedens, post diem septimum sese reversurum, confirmat: quam ad diem ei legioni, quae in praesidio relinquebatur, frumentum deberi sciebat. Labienum Treboniumque hortatur, si Reipublicae commodo facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur; ut, rursus communicato consilio, exploratisque hostium rationibus, aliud belli initium capere possent.

XXXIV. Erat, ut supra demonstravimus, manus certa nulla, non oppidum, non praesidium, quod se armis defenderet; sed in omnes partes dispersa multitudo. Ubi cuique aut vallis abdita, aut locus silvestris, aut palus impedita, spem praesidii aut salutis aliquam offerebat, consederat. Haec loca vicinitatibus erant nota; magnamque res diligentiam requirebat, non in summa exercitus tuenda, (nullum enim poterat universis, ab perterritis ac dispersis, periculum accidere,) sed in singulis militibus conservandis; quae tamen ex parte res ad salutem exercitus pertinebat. Nam et praedae cupiditas multos longius evocabat, et silvae incertis occultisque itineribus confertos adire prohibebant. Si negotium confici, stirpemque hominum sceleratorum interfici vellet, dimittendae plures manus, diducendique erant milites: si continere ad signa manipulos vellet, ut instituta ratio et consuetudo exercitus Romani postulabat, locus ipse erat praesidio barbaris, neque ex occulto insidiandi et dispersos circumveniendi singulis deerat audacia. At in ejusmodi difficultatibus, quantum diligentia provideri poterat, providebatur; ut potius in nocendo aliquid omitteretur, etsi omnium animi ad ulciscendum ardebant, quam cum aliquo detrimento militum noceretur. Caesar ad finitimas civitates nuncios dimittit: omnes ad se evocat spe praedae, ad diripiendos Eburones, ut potius in silvis Gallorum vita, quam legionarius miles, periclitetur; simul ut, magna multitudine circumfusa, pro tali facinore, stirps ac nomen civitatis tollatur. Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

XXXV. Haec in omnibus Eburonum partibus gerebantur, diesque appetebat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta legionemque reverti constituerat. Hic, quantum in bello fortuna possit, et quantos afferat casus, cognosci potuit. Dissipatis ac perterritis hostibus, ut demonstravimus, manus

erat nulla, quae parvam modo causam timoris afferret. Trans Rhenum ad Germanos pervenit fama, diripi Eburones, atque ultro omnes ad praedam evocari. Cogunt equitum duo millia Sigambri, qui sunt proximi Rheno, a quibus receptos ex fuga Tenchtheros atque Usipetes supra docuimus: transeunt Rhenum navibus ratibusque, xxx millibus passuum infra eum locum, ubi pons erat perfectus, praesidiumque ab Caesare relictum: primos Eburonum fines adeunt; multos ex fuga dispersos excipiunt; magno pecoris numero, cujus sunt cupidissimi barbari, potiuntur. Invitati praeda, longius procedunt. Non hos palus, in bello latrociniisque natos, non silvae morantur: quibus in locis sit Caesar, ex captivis quaerunt; profectum longius reperiunt, omnemque exercitum discessisse cognoscunt. Atque unus ex captivis: Quid vos, inquit, hanc miseram ac tenuem sectamini praedam, quibus licet jam esse fortunatissimis? Tribus horis Aduatucam venire potestis: huc omnes suas fortunas exercitus Romanorum contulit: praesidii tantum est, ut ne murus quidem cingi possit, neque quisquam egredi extra munitiones audeat. Oblata spe, Germani, quam nacti erant praedam, in occulto relinquunt; ipsi Aduatucam contendunt, usi eodem duce, cujus haec indicio cognoverant.

XXXVI. Cicero, qui per omnes superiores dies praeceptis Caesaris summa diligentia milites in castris continuisset, ac ne calonem quidem quenquam extra munitionem egredi passus esset, septimo die diffidens, de numero dierum Caesarem fidem servaturum, quod longius eum progressum audiebat, neque ulla de ejus reditu fama afferebatur; simul eorum permotus vocibus, qui illius patientiam pene obsessionem appellabant, siquidem ex castris egredi non liceret; nullum ejusmodi casum exspectans, quo, novem oppositis legionibus maximoque equitatu, dispersis ac pene deletis hostibus, in millibus passuum III offendi posset; quinque cohortes frumentatum in proximas segetes misit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat. Complures erant in castris ex legionibus aegri relicti; ex quibus, qui hoc spatio dierum convaluerant, circiter CCC sub vexillo una mittuntur: magna praeterea multitudo calonum, magna vis jumentorum, quae in castris subsederat, facta potestate, sequitur.

XXXVII. Hoc ipso tempore et casu Germani equites interveniunt, protinusque eodem illo, quo venerant, cursu ab decumana porta in castra irrumpere conantur: nec prius sunt visi, objectis ab ea parte silvis, quam castris appropinquarent, usque eo, ut, qui sub vallo tenderent mercatores, recipiendi sui facultatem non haberent. Inopinantes nostri re nova perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in statione sustinet. Circumfunduntur ex reliquis hostes partibus, si quem aditum reperire possent. Aegre nostri portas tuentur, reliquos aditus locus ipse per se munitioque defendit. Totis trepidatur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultus quaerit: neque quo signa ferantur, neque quam in partem quisque conveniat, provident. Alius capta jam castra pronunciat; alius, deleto exercitu atque imperatore, victores barbaros venisse contendit: plerique novas sibi ex loco religiones fingunt; Cottaeque et Titurii calamitatem, qui in eodem occiderint castello, ante oculos ponunt. Tali timore omnibus perterritis, confirmatur opinio barbaris, ut ex captivo audierant, nullum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nituntur, seque ipsi adhortantur, ne tantam fortunam ex manibus dimittant.

XXXVIII. Erat aeger in praesidio relictus P. Sextius Baculus, qui primum pilum ad Caesarem duxerat, cujus mentionem superioribus proeliis fecimus, ac diem jam quintum cibo caruerat. Hic, diffisus suae atque omnium saluti, inermis ex tabernaculo prodit: videt imminere hostes, atque in summo esse rem discrimine: capit arma a proximis, atque in porta consistit. Consequuntur hunc centuriones ejus cohortis, quae in statione erat: paulisper una proelium sustinent. Relinquit animus Sextium, gravibus acceptis vulneribus: aegre, per manus tractus, servatur. Hoc spatio interposito, reliqui sese confirmant tantum, ut in munitionibus consistere audeant, speciemque defensorum praebeant.

XXXIX. Interim confecta frumentatione, milites nostri clamorem exaudiunt: praecurrunt equites, quanto res sit in periculo, cognoscunt. Hic vero nulla munitio est, quae perterritos recipiat: modo conscripti, atque usus militaris imperiti, ad tribunum militum centurionesque ora convertunt: quid ab his praecipiatur, exspectant. Nemo est tam fortis,

quin rei novitate perturbetur. Barbari, signa procul conspicati, oppugnatione desistunt: redisse primo legiones credunt, quas longius discessisse ex captivis cognoverant: postea, despecta paucitate, ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

XL. Calones in proximum tumulum procurrunt. Hinc celeriter dejecti, se in signa manipulosque conjiciunt: eo magis timidos perterrent milites. Alii, cuneo facto, ut celeriter perrumpant, censent, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra; et, si pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquos servari posse confidunt: alii, ut in jugo consistant, atque eundem omnes ferant casum. Hoc veteres non probant milites, quos sub vexillo una profectos docuimus. Itaque inter se cohortati, duce C. Trebonio, equite Romano, qui eis erat praepositus, per medios hostes perrumpunt, incolumesque ad unum omnes in castra perveniunt. Hos subsecuti calones equitesque eodem impetu, militum virtute servantur. At ii, qui in jugo constiterant, nullo etiam nunc usu rei militaris percepto, neque in eo, quod probaverant, consilio permanere, ut se loco superiore defenderent, neque eam, quam profuisse aliis vim celeritatemque viderant, imitari potuerunt; sed, se in castra recipere conati, iniquum in locum demiserant. Centuriones, quorum nonnulli ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legionum virtutis causa in superiores erant ordines hujus legionis transducti, ne ante partam rei militaris laudem amitterent, fortissime pugnantes conciderunt. Militum pars, horum virtute submotis hostibus, praeter spem incolumis in castra pervenit; pars a barbaris circumventa periit.

XLI. Germani, desperata expugnatione castrorum, quod nostros jam constitisse in munitionibus videbant, cum ea praeda, quam in silvis deposuerant, trans Rhenum sese receperunt. Ac tantus fuit, etiam post discessum hostium, terror, ut ea nocte, quum C. Volusenus missus cum equitatu ad castra venisset, fidem non faceret, adesse cum incolumi Caesarem exercitu. Sic omnium animos timor praeoccupaverat, ut, paene alienata mente, deletis omnibus copiis equitatum se ex fuga recepisse dicerent; neque, incolumi exercitu, Germanos castra oppugnaturos fuisse contenderent. Quem timorem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

XLII. Reversus ille, eventus belli non ignorans, unum, quod cohortes ex statione et praesidio essent emissae, questus, ne minimo quidem casu locum relinqui debuisse, multum fortunam in repentino hostium adventu potuisse judicavit; multo etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipso vallo portisque castrorum barbaros avertissent. Quarum omnium rerum maxime admirandum videbatur, quod Germani, qui eo consilio Rhenum transierant, ut Ambiorigis fines depopularentur, ad castra Romanorum delati, optatissimum Ambiorigi beneficium obtulerant.

XLIII. Caesar, rursus ad vexandos hostes profectus, magno coacto numero ex finitimis civitatibus, in omnes partes dimittit. Omnes vici atque omnia aedificia, quae quisque conspexerat, incendebantur: praeda ex omnibus locis agebatur: frumenta non solum a tanta multitudine jumentorum atque hominum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque imbribus procubuerant; ut, si qui etiam in praesentia se occultassent, tamen iis, deducto exercitu, rerum omnium inopia pereundum videretur. Ac saepe in eum locum ventum est, tanto in omnes partes diviso equitatu, ut modo visum ab se Ambiorigem in fuga captivi, nec plane etiam abisse ex conspectu contenderent, ut, spe consequendi illata, atque infinito labore suscepto, qui se summam a Caesare gratiam inituros putarent, paene naturam studio vincerent, semperque paulum ad summam felicitatem defuisse videretur, atque ille latebris, aut saltibus se eriperet, et noctu occultatus alias regiones partesque peteret, non majore equitum praesidio, quam quatuor, quibus solis vitam suam committere audebat.

XLIV. Tali modo vastatis regionibus, exercitum Caesar duarum cohortium damno Durocortorum Remorum reducit, concilioque in eum locum Galliae indicto, de conjuratione Senonum et Carnutum quaestionem habere instituit; et de Accone, qui princeps ejus consilii fuerat, graviore sententia pronunciata, more majorum supplicium sumpsit. Nonnulli, judicium veriti, profugerunt: quibus quum aqua atque igni interdixisset, II legiones ad fines Trevirorum, II in Lingonibus, VI reliquas in Senonum finibus Agendici in hibernis collocavit; frumentoque exercitu proviso, ut instituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

C. JULII CAESARIS

COMMENTARIORUM

DE BELLO GALLICO

LIBER VII.

ARGUMENTUM.

Cap. I. Multae Gallorum gentes de recuperanda libertate conspirant: IV. ducemque eligunt Vercingetorigem Aeduum. VIII. Caesar de improviso Arvernos invadit. X. Boiis subsidio adest. XI. Vellaunodunum, Genabum, XII. et Noviodunum oppida occupat. XV. Galli firmis minus Biturigum oppidis incensis, Avarico, quod obsidebat Caesar, praesidium injiciunt. XX. Interea Vercingetorix, proditionis apud suos insimulatus, se purgat. XXII. Avaricum, aliquamdiu probe defensum, XXVIII. vi expugnatur. XXXII. Aeduorum turbae Caesarem a bello avocant. XXXIV. Iis compositis, ad Gergoviam cum exercitu proficiscitur. XXXVII. Dum ad eam bellum gerit, iterum in Aeduis turbae. XLVI. Romani trinis ad Gergoviam hostium castris occupatis, XLVII. avidius oppidum invadentes, LI. magna cum clade repelluntur. LIII. Desperata expugnatione, in Aeduos castra movet Caesar. LVIII. Labienus, re prospere apud Parisios gesta, LXII. se ipsi conjungit. LXIII. Omnes Galli, (perpaucis exceptis) exemplo Aeduorum deficiunt. LXVI. In Sequanos iter facientem Caesarem, duce Vercingetorige, aggressi caeduntur, LXVIII. Ille ad Alesiam usque insecutus oppidum ipsosque circumvallat. LXXV. Galli, convocatis auxiliis, socios obsidione liberare conati, LXXXVIII. prorsus profligantur. LXXXIX. Alesia et Vercingetorix deduntur: item Aedui, et plures alii.

I. Quieta Gallia, Caesar, ut constituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos proficiscitur. Ibi cognoscit de P. Clodii caede: de Senatusque consulto certior factus, ut omnes juniores Italiae conjurarent, dilectum tota Provincia habere instituit. Eae res in Galliam Transalpinam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsi et affingunt rumoribus Galli, quod res poscere

videbatur, Retineri urbano motu Caesarem, neque in tantis dissensionibus ad exercitum venire posse. Hac impulsi occasione, qui jam ante se Populi Romani imperio subjectos dolerent, liberius atque audacius de bello consilia inire incipiunt. Indictis inter se principes Galliae conciliis silvestribus ac remotis locis queruntur de Acconis morte: hunc casum ad ipsos recidere posse demonstrant: miserantur communem Galliae fortunam: omnibus pollicitationibus ac praemiis deposcunt, qui belli initium faciant, et sui capitis periculo Galliam in libertatem vindicent. Ejus in primis rationem habendam dicunt, priusquam eorum clandestina consilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitu intercludatur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiones, absente imperatore, audeant ex hibernis egredi; neque imperator sine praesidio ad legiones pervenire possit; postremo in acie praestare interfici, quam non veterem belli gloriam libertatemque, quam a majoribus acceperint, recuperare.

II. His rebus agitatis, profitentur Carnutes, Se nullum periculum communis salutis causa recusare; principesque ex omnibus bellum facturos pollicentur; et, quoniam in praesentia obsidibus cavere inter se non possint, ne res efferatur, ut jurejurando ac fide sanciatur, petunt, collatis militaribus signis, (quo more eorum gravissimae caerimoniae continentur,) ne, facto initio belli, ab reliquis deserantur. Tum, collaudatis Carnutibus, dato jurejurando ab omnibus, qui aderant, tempore ejus rei constituto, ab concilio disceditur.

III. Ubi ea dies venit, Carnutes, Cotuato et Conetoduno ducibus, desperatis hominibus, Genabum dato signo concurrunt; civesque Romanos, qui negotiandi causa ibi constiterant, in his C. Fusium Citam, honestum equitem Romanum, qui rei frumentariae jussu Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt, bonaque eorum diripiunt. Celeriter ad omnes Galliae civitates fama perfertur; (nam, ubi major atque illustrior incidit res, clamore per agros regionesque significant; hunc alii deinceps excipiunt, et proximis tradunt; ut tum accidit:) nam, quae Genabi oriente sole gesta essent, ante primam confectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernorum audita sunt: quod spatium est millium circiter CLX.

IV. Simili ratione ibi Vercingetorix, Celtilli filius, Arver-

nus, summae potentiae adolescens, (cujus pater principatum Galliae totius obtinuerat, et ob eam causam, quod regnum appetebat, ab civitate erat interfectus,) convocatis suis clientibus, facile eos incendit. Cognito ejus consilio, ad arma concurritur: ab Gobanitione, patruo suo, reliquisque principibus, qui hanc tentandam fortunam non existimabant, expellitur ex oppido Gergovia: non destitit tamen, atque in agris habet dilectum egentium ac perditorum. Hac coacta manu, quoscunque adit ex civitate, ad suam sententiam perducit: hortatur, ut communis libertatis causa arma capiant: magnisque coactis copiis, adversarios suos, a quibus paulo ante erat ejectus, expellit ex civitate. Rex ab suis appellatur: dimittit quoquoversus legationes: obtestatur, ut in fide maneant. Celeriter sibi Senones, Parisios, Pictones, Cadurcos, Turones, Aulercos, Lemovices, Andes, reliquosque omnes, qui Oceanum attingunt, adjungit: omnium consensu ad eum defertur imperium. Qua oblata potestate, omnibus his civitatibus obsides imperat, certum numerum militum ad se celeriter adduci jubet: armorum quantum quaeque civitas domi, quodque ante tempus efficiat, constituit; in primis equitatui studet: summae diligentiae summam imperii severitatem addit: magnitudine supplicii dubitantes cogit; nam, majore commisso delicto, igni atque omnibus tormentis necat; leviore de causa, auribus desectis, aut singulis effossis oculis, domum remittit, ut sint reliquis documento, et magnitudine poenae perterreant alios.

V. His suppliciis celeriter coacto exercitu, Lucterium Cadurcum, summae hominem audaciae, cum parte copiarum in Rutenos mittit: ipse in Bituriges proficiscitur. Ejus adventu Bituriges ad Aeduos, quorum erant in fide, legatos mittunt subsidium rogatum, quo facilius hostium copias sustinere possint. Aedui de consilio legatorum, quos Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, copias equitatus peditatusque subsidio Biturigibus mittunt. Qui quum ad flumen Ligerim venissent, quod Bituriges ab Aeduis dividit, paucos dies ibi morati, neque flumen transire ausi, domum revertuntur, legatisque nostris renunciant, Se Biturigum perfidiam veritos revertisse, quibus id consilii fuisse cognoverint, ut, si flumen transissent, una ex parte ipsi, altera Arverni se circumsisterent. Id eane

de causa, quam legatis pronunciarunt, an perfidia adducti fecerint, quod nihil nobis constat, non videtur pro certo esse ponendum. Bituriges, eorum discessu, statim se cum Arvernis conjungunt.

VI. His rebus in Italiam Caesari nunciatis, quum jam ille urbanas res virtute Cn. Pompeii commodiorem in statum pervenisse intelligeret, in Transalpinam Galliam profectus est. Eo quum venisset, magna difficultate afficiebatur, qua ratione ad exercitum pervenire posset: nam si legiones in Provinciam arcesseret, se absente in itinere proelio dimicaturas intelligebat; si ipse ad exercitum contenderet, ne iis quidem, qui eo tempore pacati viderentur, suam salutem recte committi videbat.

VII. Interim Lucterius Cadurcus, in Rutenos missus, eam civitatem Arvernis conciliat. Progressus in Nitiobriges et Gabalos, ab utrisque obsides accipit, et magna coacta manu, in Provinciam Narbonem versus eruptionem facere contendit. Qua re nunciata, Caesar omnibus consiliis antevertendum existimavit, ut Narbonem proficisceretur. Eo quum venisset, timentes confirmat, praesidia in Rutenis provincialibus, Volcis Arecomicis, Tolosatibus, circumque Narbonem, quae loca hostibus erant finitima, constituit: partem copiarum ex Provincia, supplementumque, quod ex Italia adduxerat, in Helvios, qui fines Arvernorum contingunt, convenire jubet.

VIII. His rebus comparatis, represso jam Lucterio et remoto, quod intrare intra praesidia periculosum putabat, in Helvios proficiscitur: etsi mons Cevenna, qui Arvernos ab Helviis discludit, durissimo tempore anni, altissima nive iter impediebat; tamen discussa nive VI in altitudinem pedum, atque ita viis patefactis, summo militum labore ad fines Arvernorum pervenit. Quibus oppressis inopinantibus, quod se Cevenna, ut muro, munitos existimabant, ac ne singulari quidem unquam homini eo tempore anni semitae patuerant; equitibus imperat, ut, quam latissime possent, vagentur, et quam maximum hostibus terrorem inferant. Celeriter haec fama ac nunciis ad Vercingetorigem perferuntur: quem perterriti omnes Arverni circumsistunt atque obsecrant, Ut suis fortunis consulat, neu se ab hostibus diripi patiatur; praesertim quum videat omne ad se bellum translatum. Quo-

rum ille precibus permotus, castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernos versus.

IX. At Caesar, biduum in iis locis moratus, quod haec de Vercingetorige usu ventura opinione praeceperat, per causam supplementi equitatusque cogendi ab exercitu discedit; Brutum adolescentem iis copiis praeficit; hunc monet, ut in omnes partes equites quam latissime pervagentur: daturum se operam, ne longius triduo ab castris absit. His constitutis rebus, suis inopinantibus, quam maximis potest itineribus, Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus recentem equitatum, quem multis ante diebus eo praemiserat, neque diurno neque nocturno itinere intermisso, per fines Aeduorum in Lingones contendit, ubi II legiones hiemabant; ut, si quid etiam de sua salute ab Aeduis iniretur consilii, celeritate praecurreret. Eo quum pervenisset, ad reliquas legiones mittit, priusque in unum locum omnes cogit, quam de ejus adventu Arvernis nunciari posset. Hac re cognita, Vercingetorix rursus in Bituriges exercitum reducit; atque inde profectus Gergoviam, Boiorum oppidum, quos ibi Helvetico proelio victos Caesar collocaverat, Aeduisque attribuerat, oppugnare instituit.

X. Magnam haec res Caesari difficultatem ad consilium capiendum afferebat: si reliquam partem hiemis uno in loco legiones contineret, ne, stipendiariis Aeduorum expugnatis, cuncta Gallia deficeret, quod nullum amicis in eo praesidium videret positum esse; sin maturius ex hibernis educeret, ne ab re frumentaria duris subvectionibus laboraret. Praestare visum est tamen omnes difficultates perpeti, quam, tanta contumelia accepta, omnium suorum voluntates alienare. Itaque cohortatus Aeduos de supportando commeatu, praemittit ad Boios, qui de suo adventu doceant, hortenturque, ut in fide maneant, atque hostium impetum magno animo sustineant. Duabus Agendici legionibus atque impedimentis totius exercitus relictis, ad Boios proficiscitur.

XI. Altero die quum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodunum venisset, ne quem post se hostem relinqueret, quo expeditiore re frumentaria uteretur, oppugnare instituit, idque biduo circumvallavit: tertio die missis ex oppido legatis de deditione, arma proferri, jumenta produci, DC obsides dari jubet. Ea qui conficeret, C. Trebonium legatum relinquit:

ipse, ut quamprimum iter faceret, Genabum Carnutum proficiscitur, qui tum primum allato nuncio de oppugnatione Vellaunoduni, quum longius eam rem ductum iri existimarent, praesidium Genabi tuendi causa, quod eo mitterent, comparabant. Huc biduo pervenit: castris ante oppidum positis, diei tempore exclusus, in posterum oppugnationem differt, quaeque ad eam rem usui sint, militibus imperat: et, quod oppidum Genabum pons fluminis Ligeris continebat, veritus, ne noctu ex oppido profugerent, duas legiones in armis excubare jubet. Genabenses, paulo ante mediam noctem silentio ex oppido egressi, flumen transire coeperunt. Qua re per exploratores nunciata, Caesar legiones, quas expeditas esse jusserat, portis incensis, intromittit, atque oppido potitur, perpaucis ex hostium numero desideratis, quin cuncti vivi caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitudini fugam intercluserant. Oppidum diripit atque incendit; praedam militibus donat, exercitum Ligerim transducit, atque in Biturigum fines pervenit.

XII. Vercingetorix, ubi de Caesaris adventu cognovit, oppugnatione desistit, atque obviam Caesari proficiscitur. Ille oppidum [Biturigum, positum in via,] Noviodunum oppugnare instituerat. Quo ex oppido quum legati ad eum venissent, oratum, ut sibi ignosceret, suaeque vitae consuleret; ut celeritate reliquas res conficeret, qua pleraque erat consecutus, arma proferri, equos produci, obsides dari jubet. Parte jam obsidum tradita, quum reliqua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis militibus intromissis, qui arma jumentaque conquirerent, equitatus hostium procul visus est, qui agmen Vercingetorigis antecesserat. Quem simul atque oppidani conspexerunt, atque in spem auxilii venerunt, clamore sublato arma capere, portas claudere, murum complere coeperunt. Centuriones in oppido, quum ex significatione Gallorum novi aliquid ab his iniri consilii intellexissent, gladiis districtis portas occupaverunt, suosque omnes incolumes receperunt.

XIII. Caesar ex castris equitatum educi jubet, proeliumque equestre committit: laborantibus jam suis Germanos equites circiter CD submittit, quos ab initio secum habere instituerat. Eorum impetum Galli sustinere non potuerunt, atque in fugam conjecti, multis amissis, sese ad agmen rece-

perunt: quibus profligatis, rursus oppidani perterriti comprehensos eos, quorum opera plebem concitatam existimabant, ad Caesarem perduxerunt, seseque ei dediderunt. Quibus rebus confectis, Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat maximum munitissimumque in finibus Biturigum, atque agri fertilissima regione, profectus est; quod, eo oppido recepto, civitatem Biturigum se in potestatem redacturum confidebat.

XIV. Vercingetorix, tot continuis incommodis Vellaunoduni, Genabi, Novioduni acceptis, suos ad concilium convocat. Docet, Longe alia ratione esse bellum gerendum, atque antea sit gestum: omnibus modis huic rei studendum, ut pabulatione et commeatu Romani prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equitatu ipsi abundent, et quod anni tempore subleventur: pabulum secari non posse; necessario dispersos hostes ex aedificiis petere: hos omnes quotidie ab equitibus deleri posse. Praeterea salutis causa rei familiaris commoda negligenda; vicos atque aedificia incendi oportere hoc spatio, a Boia quoquoversus, quo pabulandi causa adire posse videantur. Harum ipsis rerum copiam suppetere, quod, quorum in finibus bellum geratur, eorum opibus subleventur: Romanos aut inopiam non laturos, aut magno cum periculo longius a castris progressuros: neque interesse, ipsosne interficiant, impedimentisne exuant, quibus amissis, bellum geri non possit. Praeterea oppida incendi oportere, quae non munitione et loci natura ab omni sint periculo tuta; neu suis sint ad detrectandam militiam receptacula, neu Romanis proposita ad copiam commeatus praedamque tollendam. Haec si gravia aut acerba videantur, multo illa gravius aestimare debere, liberos, conjuges in servitutem abstrahi, ipsos interfici; quae sit necesse accidere victis.

XV. Omnium consensu hac sententia probata, uno die amplius xx urbes Biturigum incenduntur. Hoc idem fit in reliquis civitatibus. In omnibus partibus incendia conspiciuntur: quae etsi magno cum dolore omnes ferebant, tamen hoc sibi solatii proponebant, quod se, prope explorata victoria, celeriter amissa recuperaturos confidebant. Deliberatur de Avarico in communi concilio, incendi placeret, an defendi. Procumbunt omnibus Gallis ad pedes Bituriges, Ne pulcherrimam prope totius Galliae urbem, quae et prae-

sidio et ornamento sit civitati, suis manibus succendere cogerentur: facile se loci natura defensuros dicunt, quod, prope ex omnibus partibus flumine et palude circumdata, unum habeat et perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia, dissuadente primo Vercingetorige, post concedente, et precibus ipsorum, et misericordia vulgi. Defensores oppido idonei deliguntur.

XVI. Vercingetorix minoribus Caesarem itineribus subsequitur, et locum castris deligit, paludibus silvisque munitum, ab Avarico longe millia passuum XVI. Ibi per certos exploratores in singula diei tempora, quae ad Avaricum agerentur, cognoscebat, et, quid fieri vellet, imperabat: omnes nostras pabulationes frumentationesque observabat, dispersosque, quum longius necessario procederent, adoriebatur, magnoque incommodo afficiebat: etsi, quantum ratione provideri poterat, ab nostris occurrebatur, ut incertis temporibus diversisque itineribus iretur.

XVII. Castris ad eam partem oppidi positis, Caesar, quae intermissa a flumine et a palude aditum, ut supra diximus, angustum habebat, aggerem apparare, vineas agere, turres duas constituere coepit: nam circumvallare loci natura prohibebat. De re frumentaria Boios atque Aeduos adhortari non destitit: quorum alteri, quod nullo studio agebant, non multum adjuvabant; alteri non magnis facultatibus, quod civitas erat exigua et infirma, celeriter, quod habuerunt, consumpserunt. Summa difficultate rei frumentariae affecto exercitu, tenuitate Boiorum, indiligentia Aeduorum, incendiis aedificiorum, usque eo, ut complures dies milites frumento caruerint, et, pecore e longinquioribus vicis adacto, extremam famem sustentarent, nulla tamen vox est ab iis audita, Populi Romani majestate et superioribus victoriis indigna. Quin etiam Caesar, quum in opere singulas legiones appellaret, et, si acerbius inopiam ferrent, se dimissurum oppugnationem diceret; universi ab eo, Ne id faceret, petebant: Sic se complures annos illo imperante meruisse, ut nullam ignominiam acciperent, nunquam infecta re discederent: hoc se ignominiae laturos loco, si inceptam oppugnationem reliquissent: praestare omnes perferre acerbitates, quam non civibus Romanis, qui Genabi perfidia Gallorum interissent, parenta-

rent. Haec eadem centurionibus tribunisque militum mandabant, ut per eos ad Caesarem deferrentur.

XVIII. Quum jam muro turres appropinquassent, ex captivis Caesar cognovit, Vercingetorigem consumpto pabulo castra movisse propius Avaricum, atque ipsum cum equitatu expeditisque, qui inter equites proeliari consuessent, insidiarum causa eo profectum, quo nostros postero die pabulatum venturos arbitraretur. Quibus rebus cognitis, media nocte silentio profectus, ad hostium castra mane pervenit. Illi, celeriter per exploratores adventu Caesaris cognito, carros impedimentaque sua in artiores silvas abdiderunt, copias omnes in loco aperto atque edito instruxerunt. Qua re nunciata, Caesar celeriter sarcinas conferri, arma expediri jussit.

XIX. Collis erat leniter ab infimo acclivis: hunc ex omnibus fere partibus palus difficilis atque impedita cingebat, non latior pedibus L. Hoc se colle, interruptis pontibus, Galli fiducia loci continebant, generatimque distributi in civitates, omnia vada ac saltus ejus paludis certis custodiis obtinebant, sic animo parati, ut, si eam paludem Romani perrumpere conarentur, haesitantes premerent ex loco superiore: ut, qui propinquitatem loci videret, paratos prope aequo Marte ad dimicandum existimaret; qui iniquitatem conditionis perspiceret, inani simulatione sese ostentare cognosceret. Indignantes milites Caesar, quod conspectum suum hostes ferre possent, tantulo spatio interjecto, et signum proelii exposcentes, edocet, Quanto detrimento, et quot virorum fortium morte necesse sit constare victoriam: quos quum sic animo paratos videat, ut nullum pro sua laude periculum recusent, summae se iniquitatis condemnari debere, nisi eorum vitam sua salute habeat cariorem. Sic milites consolatus, eodem die reducit in castra; reliqua, quae ad oppugnationem oppidi pertinebant, administrare instituit.

XX. Vercingetorix, quum ad suos redisset, proditionis insimulatus, quod castra propius Romanos movisset, quod cum omni equitatu discessisset, quod sine imperio tantas copias reliquisset, quod ejus discessu Romani tanta opportunitate et celeritate venissent; non haec omnia fortuito aut sine consilio accidere potuisse; regnum illum Galliae malle Caesaris con-

cessu quam ipsorum habere beneficio; tali modo accusatus, ad haec respondit: Quod castra movisset, factum inopia pabuli, etiam ipsis hortantibus: quod propius Romanos accessisset, persuasum loci opportunitate, qui se ipsum munitione defenderet: equitum vero operam neque in loco palustri desiderari debuisse, et illic fuisse utilem, quo sint profecti: summam imperii se consulto nulli discedentem tradidisse, ne is multitudinis studio ad dimicandum impelleretur; cui rei propter animi mollitiem studere omnes videret, quod diutius laborem ferre non possent. Romani si casu intervenerint, fortunae; si alicujus indicio vocati, huic habendam gratiam, quod et paucitatem eorum ex loco superiore cognoscere, et virtutem despicere potuerint; qui, dimicare non ausi, turpiter se in castra receperint. Imperium se a Caesare per proditionem nullum desiderare, quod habere victoria posset, quae jam esset sibi ac omnibus Gallis explorata: quin etiam ipsis remittere, si sibi magis honorem tribuere, quam ab se salutem accipere videantur. Haec ut intelligatis, inquit, sincere a me pronunciari; audite Romanos milites. Producit servos, quos in pabulatione paucis ante diebus exceperat, et fame vinculisque excruciaverat. Hi, jam ante edocti, quae interrogati pronunciarent, Milites se esse legionarios dicunt: fame et inopia adductos clam ex castris exisse, si quid frumenti aut pecoris in agris reperire possent: simili omnem exercitum inopia premi: nec jam vires sufficere cuiquam, nec ferre operis laborem posse: itaque statuisse imperatorem, si nihil in oppugnatione oppidi profecisset, triduo exercitum deducere. Haec, inquit, a me, Vercingetorix, beneficia habetis, quem proditionis insimulatis; cujus opera sine vestro sanguine tantum exercitum victorem fame paene consumptum videtis; quem, turpiter se ex hac fuga recipientem, ne qua civitas suis finibus recipiat, a me provisum est.

XXI. Conclamat omnis multitudo, et suo more armis concrepat; quod facere in eo consuerunt, cujus orationem approbant: Summum esse Vercingetorigem ducem, nec de ejus fide dubitandum; nec majore ratione bellum administrari posse. Statuunt, ut decem millia hominum delecta ex omnibus copiis in oppidum submittantur: nec solis Biturigibus communem salutem committendam censent; quod penes

eos, si id oppidum retinuissent, summam victoriae constare intelligebant.

XXII. Singulari militum nostrorum virtuti consilia cujusque modi Gallorum occurrebant, ut est summae genus solertiae, atque ad omnia imitanda atque efficienda, quae ab quoque tradantur, aptissimum. Nam et laqueis falces avertebant, quas quum destinaverant, tormentis introrsus reducebant; et aggerem cuniculis subtrahebant, eo scientius, quod apud eos magnae sunt ferrariae, atque omne genus cuniculorum notum atque usitatum est. Totum autem murum ex omni parte turribus contabulaverant, atque has coriis intexerant. Tum crebris diurnis nocturnisque eruptionibus aut aggeri ignem inferebant, aut milites occupatos in opere adoriebantur; et nostrarum turrium altitudinem, quantum has quotidianus agger expresserat, commissis suarum turrium malis, adaequabant; et apertos cuniculos praeusta ac praeacuta materia, et pice fervefacta, et maximi ponderis saxis morabantur, moenibusque appropinquare prohibebant.

XXIII. Muris autem omnibus Gallicis haec fere forma est. Trabes directae, perpetuae in longitudinem, paribus intervallis distantes inter se binos pedes, in solo collocantur: hae revinciuntur introrsus, et multo aggere vestiuntur. Ea autem, quae diximus, intervalla grandibus in fronte saxis effarciuntur. His collocatis et coagmentatis, alius insuper ordo adjicitur, ut idem illud intervallum servetur, neque inter se contingant trabes, sed paribus intermissae spatiis, singulae, singulis saxis interjectis, arte contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus contexitur, dum justa muri altitudo expleatur. Hoc quum in speciem varietatemque opus deforme non est, alternis trabibus ac saxis, quae rectis lineis suos ordines servant; tum, ad utilitatem et defensionem urbium, summam habet opportunitatem; quod et ab incendio lapis, et ab ariete materia defendit, quae, perpetuis trabibus pedes quadragenos plerumque introrsus revincta, neque perrumpi neque distrahi potest.

XXIV. Iis tot rebus impedita oppugnatione, milites, quum toto tempore frigore et assiduis imbribus tardarentur, tamen continenti labore omnia haec superaverunt, et diebus XXV aggerem, latum pedes CCCXXX, altum pedes LXXX, exstrux-

erunt. Quum is murum hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus consuetudine excubaret, militesque cohortaretur, ne quod omnino tempus ab opere intermitteretur; paulo ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum, fumare aggerem, quem cuniculo hostes succenderant: eodemque tempore toto muro clamore sublato, duabus portis ab utroque latere turrium eruptio fiebat. Alii faces atque aridam materiem de muro in aggerem eminus jaciebant, picem alii reliquasque res, quibus ignis excitari potest, fundebant; ut, quo primum occurreretur, aut cui rei ferretur auxilium, vix ratio iniri posset. Tamen, quod instituto Caesaris duae semper legiones pro castris excubabant, pluresque partitis temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut alii eruptionibus resisterent, alii turres reducerent, aggeremque interscinderent, omnis vero ex castris multitudo ad restinguendum concurreret.

XXV. Quum in omnibus locis, consumpta jam reliqua parte noctis, pugnaretur, semperque hostibus spes victoriae redintegraretur, eo magis, quod deustos pluteos turrium videbant, nec facile adire apertos ad auxiliandum animadvertebant; semperque ipsi recentes defessis succederent, omnemque Galliae salutem in illo vestigio temporis positam arbitrarentur; accidit, inspectantibus nobis, quod, dignum memoria visum, praetermittendum non existimavimus. Quidam ante portam oppidi Gallus, qui per manus sevi ac picis traditas glebas in ignem e regione turris projiciebat, scorpione ab latere dextro trajectus exanimatusque concidit. Hunc ex proximis unus jacentem transgressus, eodem illo munere fungebatur: eadem ratione ictu scorpionis exanimato altero, successit tertius, et tertio quartus; nec prius ille est a propugnatoribus vacuus relictus locus, quam, restincto aggere, atque omni parte submotis hostibus, finis est pugnandi factus.

XXVI. Omnia experti Galli, quod res nulla successerat, postero die consilium ceperunt ex oppido profugere, hortante et jubente Vercingetorige. Id, silentio noctis conati, non magna jactura suorum sese effecturos sperabant; propterea quod neque longe ab oppido castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palus perpetua, quae intercedebat, Romanos ad insequendum tardabat. Jamque hoc facere noctu apparabant, quum

matres familiae repente in publicum procurrerunt, flentesque, projectae ad pedes suorum, omnibus precibus petierunt, ne se et communes liberos hostibus ad supplicium dederent, quos ad capiendam fugam naturae et virium infirmitas impediret. Ubi eos in sententia perstare viderunt, quod plerumque in summo periculo timor misericordiam non recipit, conclamare, et significare de fuga Romanis coeperunt. Quo timore perterriti Galli, ne ab equitatu Romanorum viae praeoccuparentur, consilio destiterunt.

XXVII. Postero die Caesar, promota turri, directisque operibus, quae facere instituerat, magno coorto imbri, non inutilem hanc ad capiendum consilium tempestatem arbitratus, quod paulo incautius custodias in muro dispositas videbat, suos quoque languidius in opere versari jussit, et, quid fieri vellet, ostendit. Legiones intra vineas in occulto expeditas cohortatur, ut aliquando pro tantis laboribus fructum victoriae perciperent: his, qui primi murum ascendissent, praemia proposuit, militibusque signum dedit. Illi subito ex omnibus partibus evolaverunt, murumque celeriter compleverunt.

XXVIII. Hostes, re nova perterriti, muro turribusque dejecti, in foro ac locis patentioribus cuneatim constiterunt, hoc animo, ut, si qua ex parte obviam contra veniretur, acie instructa depugnarent. Ubi neminem in aequum locum sese demittere, sed toto undique muro circumfundi viderunt, veriti, ne omnino spes fugae tolleretur, abjectis armis, ultimas oppidi partes continenti impetu petiverunt: parsque ibi, quum angusto portarum exitu se ipsi premerent, a militibus; pars, jam egressa portis, ab equitibus est interfecta: nec fuit quisquam, qui praedae studeret. Sic et Genabensi caede et labore operis incitati, non aetate confectis, non mulieribus, non infantibus pepercerunt. Denique ex omni eo numero, qui fuit circiter XL millium, vix DCCC, qui primo clamore audito se ex oppido ejecerant, incolumes ad Vercingetorigem pervenerunt. Quos ille, multa jam nocte, silentio ex fuga excepit, (veritus, ne qua in castris ex eorum concursu et misericordia vulgi seditio oriretur,) ut, procul in via dispositis familiaribus suis principibusque civitatum, disparandos, deducendosque ad suos curaret, quae cuique civitati pars castrorum ab initio obvenerat.

XXIX. Postero die concilio convocato, consolatus cohorta-

tusque est, Ne se admodum animo demitterent, neve perturbarentur incommodo: non virtute neque in acie vicisse Romanos, sed artificio quodam et scientia oppugnationis, cujus rei fuerint ipsi imperiti: errare, si qui in bello omnes secundos rerum proventus exspectent: sibi nunquam placuisse, Avaricum defendi, cujus rei testes ipsos haberet; sed factum imprudentia Biturigum, et nimia obsequentia reliquorum, uti hoc incommodum acciperetur: id tamen se celeriter majoribus commodis sanaturum. Nam quae ab reliquis Gallis civitates dissentirent, has sua diligentia adjuncturum, atque unum consilium totius Galliae effecturum, cujus consensu ne orbis quidem terrarum possit obsistere: idque se prope jam effectum habere. Interea aequum esse, ab iis communis salutis causa impetrari, ut castra munire instituerent, quo facilius repentinos hostium impetus sustinere possent.

XXX. Fuit haec oratio non ingrata Gallis, maxime, quod ipse animo non defecerat, tanto accepto incommodo, neque se in occultum abdiderat, et conspectum multitudinis fugerat: plusque animo providere et praesentire existimabatur, quod, re integra, primo incendendum Avaricum, post deserendum censuerat. Itaque ut reliquorum imperatorum res adversae auctoritatem minuunt; sic hujus ex contrario dignitas, incommodo accepto, in dies augebatur: simul in spem veniebant ejus affirmatione, de reliquis adjungendis civitatibus; primumque eo tempore Galli castra munire instituerunt, et sic sunt animo consternati homines insueti laboris, ut omnia, quae imperarentur, sibi patienda et perferenda existimarent.

XXXI. Nec minus, quam est pollicitus, Vercingetorix animo laborabat ut reliquas civitates adjungeret; atque earum principes donis pollicitationibusque alliciebat. Huic rei idoneos homines deligebat, quorum quisque aut oratione subdola, aut amicitia facillime capi posset. Qui Avarico expugnato refugerant, armandos vestiendosque curat. Simul, ut diminutae copiae redintegrarentur, imperat certum numerum militum civitatibus, quem, et quam ante diem in castra adduci velit; saggitariosque omnes, quorum erat permagnus in Gallia numerus, conquiri et ad se mitti jubet. His rebus celeriter id, quod Avarici deperierat, expletur. Interim

Teutomatus, Olloviconis filius, rex Nitiobrigum, cujus pater ab Senatu nostro amicus erat appellatus, cum magno equitum suorum numero, et quos ex Aquitania conduxerat, ad eum pervenit.

XXXII. Caesar, Avarici complures dies commoratus, summamque ibi copiam frumenti et reliqui commeatus nactus, exercitum ex labore atque inopia refecit. Jam prope hieme confecta, quum ipso anni tempore ad gerendum bellum vocaretur, et ad hostem proficisci constituisset, sive eum ex paludibus silvisque elicere, sive obsidione premere posset; legati ad eum principes Aeduorum veniunt oratum, Ut maxime necessario tempore civitati subveniat: summo esse in periculo rem; quod, quum singuli magistratus antiquitus creari, atque regiam potestatem annuam obtinere consuessent, duo magistratum gerant, et se uterque eorum legibus creatum esse dicat. Horum esse alterum Convictolitanem, florentem et illustrem adolescentem; alterum Cotum, antiquissima familia natum, atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et magnae cognationis; cujus frater Valetiacus proximo anno eundem magistratum gesserit: civitatem omnem esse in armis, divisum senatum, divisum populum, suas cujusque eorum clientelas. Quod si diutius alatur controversia, fore, uti pars cum parte civitatis confligat: id ne accidat, positum in ejus diligentia atque auctoritate.

XXXIII. Caesar, etsi a bello atque hoste discedere detrimentosum esse existimabat, tamen, non ignorans, quanta ex dissensionibus incommoda oriri consuessent, ne tanta et tam conjuncta Populo Romano civitas, quam ipse semper aluisset, omnibusque rebus ornasset, ad vim atque ad arma descenderet, atque ea pars, quae minus sibi confideret, auxilia a Vercingetorige arcesseret, huic rei praevertendum existimavit; et quod legibus Aeduorum iis, qui summum magistratum obtinerent, excedere ex finibus non liceret, ne quid de jure aut de legibus eorum diminuisse videretur, ipse in Aeduos proficisci statuit, senatumque omnem, et quos inter controversia esset, ad se Decetiam evocavit. Quum prope omnis civitas eo convenisset, docereturque, paucis clam vocatis, alio loco, alio tempore, atque oportuerit, fratrem a fratre renunciatum; quum leges duo ex una familia, vivo utroque, non solum

magistratus creari vetarent, sed etiam in senatu esse prohiberent; Cotum imperium deponere coëgit; Convictolitanem, qui per sacerdotes, more civitatis, intromissis magistratibus, esset creatus, potestatem obtinere jussit.

XXXIV. Hoc decreto interposito, cohortatus Aeduos, ut controversiarum ac dissensionum obliviscerentur, atque, omnibus omissis his rebus, huic bello servirent, eaque, quae meruissent, praemia ab se, devicta Gallia, exspectarent, equitatumque omnem, et peditum millia x sibi celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiis rei frumentariae causa disponeret, exercitum in duas partes divisit; IV legiones in Senones Parisiosque Labieno ducendas dedit; VI ipse in Arvernos ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flumen Elavèr duxit; equitatus partem illi attribuit, partem sibi reliquit. Qua re cognita, Vercingetorix, omnibus interruptis ejus fluminis pontibus, ab altera Elaveris parte iter facere coepit.

XXXV. Quum uterque utrique esset exercitus in conspectu, fereque e regione castris castra poneret, dispositis exploratoribus, necubi effecto ponte Romani copias traducerent, erat in magnis Caesari difficultatibus res, ne majorem aestatis partem flumine impediretur; quod non fere ante autumnum Elaver vado transiri solet. Itaque, ne id accideret, silvestri loco castris positis, e regione unius eorum pontium, quos Vercingetorix rescindendos curaverat, postero die cum II legionibus in occulto restitit; reliquas copias cum omnibus impedimentis, ut consueverat, misit, captis quibusdam cohortibus, uti numerus legionum constare videretur. His, quam longissime possent, progredi jussis, quum jam ex diei tempore conjecturam caperet, in castra perventum, iisdem sublicis, quarum pars inferior integra remanebat, pontem reficere coepit. Celeriter effecto opere, legionibusque traductis, et loco castris idoneo delecto, reliquas copias revocavit. Vercingetorix, re cognita, ne contra suam voluntatem dimicare cogeretur, magnis itineribus antecessit.

XXXVI. Caesar ex eo loco quintis castris Gergoviam pervenit; equestrique proelio eo die levi facto, perspecto urbis situ, quae, posita in altissimo monte, omnes aditus difficiles habebat, de expugnatione desperavit; de obsessione non prius agendum constituit, quam rem frumentariam expedisset. At

Vercingetorix, castris prope oppidum in monte positis, mediocribus circum se intervallis separatim singularum civitatum copias collocaverat; atque omnibus ejus jugi collibus occupatis, qua despici poterat, horribilem speciem praebebat: principesque earum civitatum, quos sibi ad consilium capiendum delegerat, prima luce quotidie ad se jubebat convenire, seu quid communicandum, seu quid administrandum videretur: neque ullum fere diem intermittebat, quin equestri proelio, interjectis sagittariis, quid in quoque esset animi ac virtutis suorum, periclitaretur. Erat e regione oppidi collis sub ipsis radicibus montis egregie munitus, atque ex omni parte circumcisus; (quem si tenerent nostri, et aquae magna parte et pabulatione libera prohibituri hostes videbantur; sed is locus praesidio ab iis non nimis firmo tenebatur:) tamen silentio noctis Caesar, ex castris egressus, prius quam subsidio ex oppido veniri posset, dejecto praesidio potitus loco, duas ibi legiones collocavit, fossamque duplicem duodenum pedum a majoribus castris ad minora perduxit, ut tuto ab repentino hostium incursu etiam singuli commeare possent.

XXXVII. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitanis Aeduus, cui magistratum adjudicatum a Caesare demonstravimus, sollicitatus ab Arvernis pecunia, cum quibusdam adolescentibus colloquitur, quorum erat princeps Litavicus, atque ejus fratres, amplissima familia nati adolescentes. Cum iis praemium communicat, hortaturque eos, Ut se liberos, et imperio natos meminerint: unam esse Aeduorum civitatem, quae certissimam Galliae victoriam distineat; ejus auctoritate reliquas contineri; qua traducta, locum consistendi Romanis in Gallia non fore: esse nonnullo se Caesaris beneficio affectum, sic tamen, ut justissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plus communi libertati tribuere: cur enim potius Aedui de suo jure et de legibus ad Caesarem disceptatorem, quam Romani ad Aeduos, veniant? Celeriter adolescentibus et oratione magistratus et praemio deductis, quum se vel principes ejus consilii fore profiterentur, ratio perficiendi quaerebatur, quod civitatem temere ad suscipiendum bellum adduci posse non confidebant. Placuit, uti Litavicus decem illis millibus, quae Caesari ad bellum mitterentur, praeficeretur, atque ea ducenda curaret, fratresque

ejus ad Caesarem praecurrerent. Reliqua, qua ratione agi placeat, constituunt.

XXXVIII. Litavicus, accepto exercitu, quum millia passuum circiter xxx ab Gergovia abesset, convocatis subito militibus, lacrymans, Quo proficiscimur, inquit, milites? Omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interiit: principes civitatis Eporedorix et Viridomarus, insimulati proditionis, ab Romanis indicta causa interfecti sunt. Haec ab iis cognoscite, qui ex ipsa caede fugerunt: nam ego, fratribus atque omnibus propinquis meis interfectis, dolore prohibeor, quae gesta sunt, pronunciare. Producuntur ii, quos ille edocuerat, quae dici vellet; atque eadem, quae Litavicus pronunciaverat, multitudini exponunt: Omnes equites Aeduorum interfectos, quod collocuti cum Arvernis dicerentur; ipsos se inter multitudinem militum occultasse, atque ex media caede profugisse. Conclamant Aedui, et Litavicum, ut sibi consulat, obsecrant. Quasi vero, inquit ille, consilii sit res, ac non necesse sit nobis Gergoviam contendere, et cum Arvernis nosmet conjungere. An dubitamus, quin, nefario facinore admisso, Romani jam ad nos interficiendos concurrant? Proinde, si quid est in nobis animi, persequamur eorum mortem, qui indignissime interierunt, atque hos latrones interficiamus. Ostendit cives Romanos, qui ejus praesidii fiducia una erant. Continuo magnum numerum frumenti commeatusque diripit, ipsos crudeliter excruciatos interficit: nuncios tota civitate Aeduorum dimittit, eodem mendacio de caede equitum et principum permovet: hortatur, ut simili ratione, atque ipse fecerit, suas injurias persequantur.

XXXIX. Eporedorix Aeduus, summo loco natus adolescens, et summae domi potentiae, et una Viridomarus, pari aetate et gratia, sed genere dispari, quem Caesar, sibi ab Divitiaco traditum, ex humili loco ad summam dignitatem perduxerat, in equitum numero convenerant, nominatim ab eo evocati. His erat inter se de principatu contentio, et in illa magistratuum controversia alter pro Convictolitane, alter pro Coto summis opibus pugnaverant. Ex iis Eporedorix, cognito Litavici consilio, media fere nocte rem ad Caesarem defert; orat, Ne patiatur civitatem pravis adolescentium consiliis ab amicitia Populi Romani deficere; quod

futurum provideat, si se tot hominum millia cum hostibus conjunxerint, quorum salutem neque propinqui negligere, neque civitas levi momento aestimare posset.

XL. Magna affectus sollicitudine hoc nuncio Caesar, quod semper Aeduorum civitati praecipue indulserat, nulla interposita dubitatione, legiones expeditas quatuor equitatumque omnem ex castris educit: nec fuit spatium tali tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod res posita in celeritate videbatur. C. Fabium legatum cum legionibus II castris praesidio relinquit. Fratres Litavici quum comprehendi jussisset, paulo ante reperit ad hostes profugisse. Adhortatus milites, Ne necessario tempore itineris labore permoveantur; cupidissimis omnibus, progressus millia passuum XXV, agmen Aeduorum conspicatus, immisso equitatu, iter eorum moratur atque impedit, interdicitque omnibus, ne quemquam interficiant. Eporedorigem et Viridomarum, quos illi interfectos existimabant, inter equites versari suosque appellare jubet. Iis cognitis, et Litavici fraude perspecta, Aedui manus tendere, et deditionem significare, et, projectis armis, mortem deprecari incipiunt. Litavicus cum suis clientibus, quibus nefas more Gallorum est, etiam in extrema fortuna, deserere patronos, Gergoviam profugit.

XLI. Caesar, nunciis ad civitatem Aeduorum missis, qui suo beneficio conservatos docerent, quos jure belli interficere potuisset, tribusque horis noctis exercitui ad quietem datis, castra ad Gergoviam movit. Medio fere itinere equites, a Fabio missi, quanto res in periculo fuerit, exponunt; summis copiis castra oppugnata demonstrant, quum crebro integri defessis succederent, nostrosque, assiduo labore defatigarent, quibus propter magnitudinem castrorum perpetuo esset eisdem in vallo permanendum; multitudine sagittarum, atque omni genere telorum multos vulneratos; ad haec sustinenda magno usui fuisse tormenta; Fabium, discessu eorum, duabus relictis portis, obstruere caeteras, pluteosque vallo addere, et se in posterum diem similem ad casum parare. His rebus cognitis, Caesar, summo studio militum ante ortum solis in castra pervenit.

XLII. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Aedui, primis nunciis a Litavico acceptis, nullum sibi ad cognoscendum

spatium relinquunt. Impellit alios avaritia, alios iracundia et temeritas, quae maxime illi hominum generi est innata, ut levem auditionem habeant pro re comperta. Bona civium Romanorum diripiunt, caedes faciunt, in servitutem abstrahunt. Adjuvat rem proclinatam Convictolitanis, plebemque ad furorem impellit, ut, facinore admisso, ad sanitatem pudeat reverti. M. Aristium tribunum militum, iter ad legionem facientem, data fide ex oppido Cabillono educunt: idem facere cogunt eos, qui negotiandi causa ibi constiterant. Hos continuo in itinere adorti, omnibus impedimentis exuunt; repugnantes diem noctemque obsident; multis utrimque interfectis, majorem multitudinem ad arma concitant.

XLIII. Interim nuncio allato, omnes eorum milites in potestate Caesaris teneri, concurrunt ad Aristium: nihil publico factum consilio demonstrant: quaestionem de bonis direptis decernunt: fratrumque bona publicant: legatos ad Caesarem sui purgandi gratia mittunt. Haec faciunt recuperandorum suorum causa: sed contaminati facinore, et capti compendio ex direptis bonis, quod ea res ad multos pertinebat, et timore poenae exterriti, consilia clam de bello inire incipiunt, civitatesque reliquas legationibus sollicitant. Quae tametsi Caesar intelligebat, tamen, quam mitissime potest, legatos appellat: Nihil se propter inscientiam levitatemque vulgi gravius de civitate judicare, neque de sua in Aeduos benevolentia deminuere. Ipse, majorem Galliae motum exspectans, ne ab omnibus civitatibus circumsisteretur, consilia inibat, quemadmodum ab Gergovia discederet, ac rursus omnem exercitum contraheret; ne profectio, nata ab timore defectionis, similis fugae videretur.

XLIV. Haec cogitanti accidere visa est facultas bene gerendae rei. Nam quum minora in castra operis perspiciendi causa venisset, animadvertit collem, qui ab hostibus tenebatur, nudatum hominibus, qui superioribus diebus vix prae multitudine cerni poterat. Admiratus quaerit ex perfugis causam, quorum magnus ad eum quotidie numerus confluebat. Constabat inter omnes, quod jam ipse Caesar per exploratores cognoverat, dorsum esse ejus jugi prope aequum, sed hac silvestre et angustum, qua esset aditus ad alteram oppidi partem: huic loco vehementer illos timere, nec jam

aliter sentire, uno colle ab Romanis occupato, si alterum amisissent, quin paene circumvallati atque omni exitu et pabulatione interclusi viderentur: ad hunc muniendum locum omnes a Vercingetorige evocatos.

XLV. Hac re cognita, Caesar mittit complures equitum turmas eo de media nocte: iis imperat, ut paulo tumultuosius omnibus in locis pervagarentur. Prima luce magnum numerum impedimentorum ex castris detrahi, mulionesque cum cassidibus, equitum specie ac simulatione, collibus circumvehi jubet. His paucos addit equites, qui latius ostentationis causa vagarentur. Longo circuitu easdem omnes jubet petere regiones. Haec procul ex oppido videbantur, ut erat a Gergovia despectus in castra; neque tanto spatio, certi quid esset, explorari poterat. Legionem unam eodem jugo mittit, et paulum progressam inferiore constituit loco, silvisque occultat. Augetur Gallis suspicio, atque omnes illo ad munitionem copiae traducuntur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar conspicatus, tectis insignibus suorum, occultatisque signis militaribus, raros milites, ne ex oppido animadverterentur, ex majoribus castris in minora traducit; legatisque, quos singulis legionibus praefecerat, quid fieri velit, ostendit: in primis monet, ut contineant milites, ne studio pugnandi, aut spe praedae, longius progrediantur: quid iniquitas loci habeat incommodi, proponit: hoc una celeritate posse vitari: occasionis esse rem, non proelii. His rebus expositis, signum dat, et ab dextera parte alio ascensu eodem tempore Aeduos mittit.

XLVI. Oppidi murus ab planitie atque initio ascensus, recta regione, si nullus amfractus intercederet, MCC passus aberat. Quidquid huic circuitus ad molliendum clivum accesserat, id spatium itineris augebat. At medio fere colle in longitudinem, ut natura montis ferebat, ex grandibus saxis sex pedum murum, qui nostrorum impetum tardaret, praeduxerant Galli, atque, inferiore omni spatio vacuo relicto, superiorem partem collis usque ad murum oppidi densissimis castris compleverant. Milites, dato signo, celeriter ad munitionem perveniunt, eamque transgressi, trinis castris potiuntur. Ac tanta fuit in capiendis castris celeritas, ut Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrigum, subito in tabernaculo oppressus, ut meridie

conquieverat, superiore corporis parte nudata, vulnerato equo, vix se ex manibus praedantium militum eriperet.

XLVII. Consecutus id, quod animo proposuerat, Caesar receptui cani jussit; legionisque decimae, qua tum erat comitatus, signa consistere. At reliquarum milites legionum, non exaudito tubae sono, quod satis magna valles intercedebat, tamen ab tribunis militum legatisque, ut erat a Caesare praeceptum, retinebantur: sed elati spe celeris victoriae, et hostium fuga, superiorumque temporum secundis proeliis, nihil adeo arduum sibi existimabant, quod non virtute consequi possent; neque prius finem sequendi fecerunt, quam muro oppidi portisque appropinquarent. Tum vero ex omnibus urbis partibus orto clamore, qui longius aberant, repentino tumultu perterriti, quum hostem intra portas esse existimarent, sese ex oppido ejecerunt. Matres familiae de muro vestem argentumque jactabant, et pectoris fine prominentes, passis manibus obtestabantur Romanos, ut sibi parcerent, neu, sicut Avarici fecissent, ne mulieribus quidem atque infantibus abstinerent. Nonnullae, de muris per manus demissae, sese militibus tradebant. L. Fabius, centurio legionis VIII, quem inter suos eo die dixisse constabat, Excitari se Avaricensibus praemiis, neque commissurum ut prius quisquam murum ascenderet, tres suos nactus manipulares, atque ab iis sublevatus, murum ascendit. Eos ipse rursus singulos exceptans, in murum extulit.

XLVIII. Interim ii, qui ad alteram partem oppidi, ut supra demonstravimus, munitionis causa, convenerant, primo exaudito clamore, inde etiam crebris nunciis incitati, oppidum a Romanis teneri, praemissis equitibus, magno concursu eo contenderunt. Eorum ut quisque primus venerat, sub muro consistebat, suorumque pugnantium numerum augebat. Quorum quum magna multitudo convenisset, matres familiae, quae paulo ante Romanis de muro manus tendebant, suos obtestari, et more Gallico passum capillum ostentare, liberosque in conspectum proferre coeperunt. Erat Romanis nec loco, nec numero, aequa contentio: simul et cursu et spatio pugnae defatigati, non facile recentes atque integros sustinebant.

XLIX. Caesar, quum iniquo loco pugnari, hostiumque

augeri copias videret, praemetuens suis, ad T. Sextium legatum, quem minoribus castris praesidio reliquerat, mittit, ut cohortes ex castris celeriter educeret, et sub infimo colle ab dextro latere hostium constitueret: ut, si nostros depulsos loco vidisset, quo minus libere hostes insequerentur, terreret. Ipse paulum ex eo loco cum legione progressus, ubi constiterat, eventum pugnae exspectabat.

L. Quum acerrime cominus pugnaretur, hostes loco et numero, nostri virtute confiderent; subito sunt Aedui visi, ab latere nostris aperto, quos Caesar ab dextra parte alio ascensu, manus distinendae causa, miserat. Hi similitudine armorum vehementer nostros perterruerunt: ac, tametsi dextris humeris exsertis animadvertebantur, quod insigne pacatum esse consuerat, tamen id ipsum sui fallendi causa milites ab hostibus factum existimabant. Eodem tempore L. Fabius centurio, quique una murum ascenderant, circumventi atque interfecti de muro praecipitantur. M. Petreius, ejusdem legionis centurio, quum portas excidere conatus esset, a multitudine oppressus, ac sibi desperans, multis jam vulneribus acceptis, manipularibus suis, qui illum secuti erant: Quoniam, inquit, me una vobiscum servare non possum, vestrae quidem certe saluti prospiciam, quos cupiditate gloriae adductus in periculum deduxi. Vos, data facultate, vobis consulite. Simul in medios hostes irrupit, duobusque interfectis, reliquos a porta paulum submovit. Conantibus auxiliari suis, Frustra, inquit, meae vitae subvenire conamini, quèm jam sanguis viresque deficiunt. Proinde hinc abite, dum est facultas, vosque ad legionem recipite. Ita pugnans, post paulum concidit, ac suis saluti fuit.

LI. Nostri, quum undique premerentur, XLVI centurionibus amissis, dejecti sunt loco: sed intolerantius Gallos insequentes legio X tardavit, quae pro subsidio paulo aequiore loco constiterat. Hanc rursus XIII legionis cohortes exceperunt, quae, ex castris minoribus eductae, cum T. Sextio legato ceperant locum superiorem. Legiones, ubi primum planitiem attigerunt, infestis contra hostes signis constiterunt. Vercingetorix ab radicibus collis suos intra munitiones reduxit. Eo die milites sunt paulo minus DCC desiderati.

LII. Postero die Caesar, concione advocata, temeritatem

cupiditatemque militum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsi judicavissent, quo procedendum, aut quid agendum videretur, neque signo recipiendi dato constitissent, neque ab tribunis militum legatisque retineri potuissent: exposito, quid iniquitas loci posset, quid ipse ad Avaricum sensisset, quum, sine duce et sine equitatu deprehensis hostibus, exploratam victoriam dimisisset, ne parvum modo detrimentum in contentione propter iniquitatem loci accideret. Quanto opere eorum animi magnitudinem admiraretur, quos non castrorum munitiones, non altitudo montis, non murus oppidi tardare potuisset; tanto opere licentiam arrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plus se, quam imperatorem, de victoria atque exitu rerum sentire existimarent: nec minus se in milite modestiam et continentiam, quam virtutem atque animi magnitudinem desiderare.

LIII. Hac habita concione, et ad extremum confirmatis militibus, Ne ob hanc causam animo permoverentur, neu, quod iniquitas loci attulisset, id virtuti hostium tribuerent; eadem de profectione cogitans, quae ante senserat, legiones ex castris eduxit, aciemque idoneo loco constituit. Quum Vercingetorix nihilominus in aequum locum descenderet, levi facto equestri proelio, atque eo secundo, in castra exercitum reduxit. Quum hoc idem postero die fecisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentationem minuendam militumque animos confirmandos factum existimans, in Aeduos castra movit. Ne tum quidem insecutis hostibus, tertio die ad flumen Elaver pontem refecit, atque exercitum traduxit.

LIV. Ibi a Viridomaro atque Eporedorige Aeduis appellatus, discit, cum omni equitatu Litavicum ad sollicitandos Aeduos profectum: opus esse et ipsos praecedere ad confirmandam civitatem. Etsi multis jam rebus perfidiam Aeduorum Caesar perspectam habebat, atque horum discessu admaturari defectionem civitatis existimabat; tamen retinendos eos non censuit, ne aut inferre injuriam videretur, aut dare timoris aliquam suspicionem. Discedentibus his breviter sua in Aeduos merita exponit: Quos et quam humiles accepisset, compulsos in oppida, multatos agris, omnibus ereptis copiis, imposito stipendio, obsidibus summa cum contumelia extortis; et quam in fortunam, quamque in amplitu-

dinem deduxisset, ut non solum in pristinum statum redissent, sed omnium temporum dignitatem et gratiam antecessisse viderentur. His datis mandatis, eos ab se dimisit.

LV. Noviodunum erat oppidum Aeduorum, ad ripas Ligeris opportuno loco positum: huc Caesar omnes obsides Galliae, frumentum, pecuniam publicam, suorum atque exercitus impedimentorum magnam partem contulerat: huc magnum numerum equorum, hujus belli causa, in Italia atque Hispania coëmptum, miserat. Eo quum Eporedorix Viridomarusque venissent, et de statu civitatis cognovissent, Litavicum Bibracte ab Aeduis receptum, quod est oppidum apud eos maximae auctoritatis, Convictolitanem magistratum magnamque partem Senatus ad eum convenisse, legatos ad Vercingetorigem de pace et amicitia concilianda publice missos; non praetermittendum tantum commodum existimaverunt. Itaque, interfectis Novioduni custodibus, quique eo negotiandi aut itineris causa convenerant, pecuniam atque equos inter se partiti sunt; obsides civitatum Bibracte ad magistratum deducendos curaverunt; oppidum, quod ab se teneri non posse judicabant, ne cui esset usui Romanis, incenderunt; frumenti quod subito potuerunt, navibus avexerunt, reliquum flumine atque incendio corruperunt; ipsi ex finitimis regionibus copias cogere, praesidia custodiasque ad ripas Ligeris disponere, equitatumque omnibus locis, injiciendi timoris causa, ostentare coeperunt, si ab re frumentaria Romanos excludere, aut adductos inopia ex provincia expellere possent. Quam ad spem multum eos adjuvabat, quod Liger ex nivibus creverat, ut omnino vado non posse transiri videretur.

LVI. Quibus rebus cognitis, Caesar maturandum sibi censuit, si esset in perficiendis pontibus periclitandum, ut prius, quam essent majores eo coactae copiae, dimicaret. Nam ut commutato consilio iter in Provinciam converteret, (id nemo tunc quidem necessario faciundum existimabat,) quum infamia atque indignitas rei, et oppositus mons Cevenna, viarumque difficultas impediebat, tum maxime, quod abjuncto Labieno, atque iis legionibus, quas una miserat, vehementer timebat. Itaque, admodum magnis diurnis nocturnisque itineribus confectis, contra omnium opinionem ad Ligerim

pervenit; vadoque per equites invento, pro rei necessitate opportuno, ut brachia modo atque humeri ad sustinenda arma liberi ab aqua esse possent, disposito equitatu, qui vim fluminis refringeret, atque hostibus primo aspectu perturbatis, incolumem exercitum traduxit: frumentumque in agris et copiam pecoris nactus, repleto iis rebus exercitu, iter in Senones facere instituit.

LVII. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labienus eo supplemento, quod nuper ex Italia venerat, relicto Agendici, ut esset impedimentis praesidio, cum IV legionibus Lutetiam proficiscitur. Id est oppidum Parisiorum, positum in insula fluminis Sequanae. Cujus adventu ab hostibus cognito, magnae ex finitimis civitatibus copiae convenerunt. Summa imperii traditur Camulogeno Aulerco, qui, prope confectus aetate, tamen propter singularem scientiam rei militaris ad eum est honorem evocatus. Is quum animadvertisset, perpetuam esse paludem, quae influeret in Sequanam, atque illum omnem locum magnopere impediret, hic consedit, nostrosque transitu prohibere instituit.

LVIII. Labienus primo vineas agere, cratibus atque aggere paludem explere, atque iter munire conabatur. Postquam id difficilius confieri animadvertit, silentio e castris tertia vigilia egressus, eodem, quo venerat, itinere Melodunum pervenit. Id est oppidum Senonum, in insula Sequanae positum, ut paulo ante Lutetiam diximus. Deprehensis navibus circiter L, celeriterque conjunctis, atque eo militibus impositis, et rei novitate perterritis oppidanis, quorum magna pars erat ad bellum evocata, sine contentione oppido potitur. Refecto ponte, quem superioribus diebus hostes resciderant, exercitum traducit, et secundo flumine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. Hostes, re cognita ab iis, qui a Meloduno profugerant, Lutetiam incendunt, pontesque ejus oppidi rescindi jubent: ipsi profecti a palude, in ripis Sequanae, e regione Lutetiae, contra Labieni castra considunt.

LIX. Jam Caesar a Gergovia discessisse audiebatur: jam de Aeduorum defectione et secundo Galliae motu rumores afferebantur, Gallique in colloquiis, interclusum itinere et Ligeri Caesarem, inopia frumenti coactum, in Provinciam contendisse confirmabant. Bellovaci autem, defectione Aedu-

orum cognita, qui ante erant per se infideles, manus cogere atque aperte bellum parare coeperunt. Tum Labienus, tanta rerum commutatione, longe aliud sibi capiendum consilium, atque antea senserat, intelligebat: neque jam, ut aliquid acquireret, proelioque hostes lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum Agendicum reduceret, cogitabat. Namque altera ex parte Bellovaci, quae civitas in Gallia maximam habet opinionem virtutis, instabant; alteram Camulogenus parato atque instructo exercitu tenebat: tum legiones, a praesidio atque impedimentis interclusas, maximum flumen distinebat. Tantis subito difficultatibus objectis, ab animi virtute auxilium petendum videbat.

LX. Itaque sub vesperum consilio convocato, cohortatus, ut ea, quae imperasset, diligenter industrieque administrarent, naves, quas a Meloduno deduxerat, singulas equitibus Romanis attribuit, et prima confecta vigilia, IV millia passuum secundo flumine progredi silentio, ibique se exspectare jubet. Quinque cohortes, quas minime firmas ad dimicandum esse existimabat, castris praesidio relinquit: V ejusdem legionis reliquas de media nocte cum omnibus impedimentis adverso flumine magno tumultu proficisci imperat. Conquirit etiam lintres. Has, magno sonitu remorum incitatas, in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulo, silentio egressus cum tribus legionibus eum locum petit, quo naves appelli jusserat.

LXI. Eo quum esset ventum, exploratores hostium, ut omni fluminis parte erant dispositi, inopinantes, quod magna subito erat coorta tempestas, ab nostris opprimuntur: exercitus equitatusque, equitibus Romanis administrantibus, quos ei negotio praefecerat, celeriter transmittitur. Uno fere tempore sub lucem hostibus nunciatur, in castris Romanorum praeter consuetudinem tumultuari, et magnum ire agmen adverso flumine, sonitumque remorum in eadem parte exaudiri, et paulo infra milites navibus transportari. Quibus rebus auditis, quod existimabant, tribus locis transire legiones, atque omnes, perturbatos defectione Aeduorum, fugam parare, suas quoque copias in tres partes distribuerunt. Nam, et praesidio e regione castrorum relicto, et parva manu Metiosedum versus missa, quae tantum progrederetur, quantum

naves processissent, reliquas copias contra Labienum duxerunt.

LXII. Prima luce et nostri omnes erant transportati, et hostium acies cernebatur. Labienus, milites cohortatus, Ut suae pristinae virtutis et tot secundissimorum proeliorum memoriam retinerent, atque ipsum Caesarem, cujus ductu saepenumero hostes superassent, praesentem adesse existimarent, dat signum proelii. Primo concursu ab dextro cornu, ubi septima legio constiterat, hostes pelluntur, atque in fugam conjiciuntur: ab sinistro, quem locum duodecima legio tenebat, quum primi ordines hostium transfixi pilis concidissent, tamen acerrime reliqui resistebant, nec dabat suspicionem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suis aderat, atque eos cohortabatur. At, incerto etiam nunc exitu victoriae, quum septimae legionis tribunis esset nunciatum, quae in sinistro cornu gererentur, post tergum hostium legionem ostenderunt, signaque intulerunt. Ne eo quidem tempore quisquam loco cessit, sed circumventi omnes interfectique sunt. Eandem fortunam tulit Camulogenus. At ii, qui praesidio contra castra Labieni erant relicti, quum proelium commissum audissent, subsidio suis ierunt, collemque ceperunt, neque nostrorum militum victorum impetum sustinere potuerunt. Sic, cum suis fugientibus permixti, quos non silvae montesque texerunt, ab equitatu sunt interfecti. Hoc negotio confecto, Labienus revertitur Agendicum, ubi impedimenta totius exercitus relicta erant. Inde cum omnibus copiis ad Caesarem pervenit.

LXIII. Defectione Aeduorum cognita, bellum augetur. Legationes in omnes partes circummittuntur: quantum gratia, auctoritate, pecunia valent, ad sollicitandas civitates nituntur. Nacti obsides, quos Caesar apud eos deposuerat, horum supplicio dubitantes territant. Petunt a Vercingetorige Aedui, ad se veniat, rationesque belli gerendi communicet. Re impetrata contendunt, ut ipsis summa imperii tradatur: et, re in controversiam deducta, totius Galliae concilium Bibracte indicitur. Eodem conveniunt undique frequentes. Multitudinis suffragiis res permittitur: ad unum omnes Vercingetorigem probant imperatorem. Ab hoc concilio Remi, Lingones, Treviri abfuerunt: illi, quod amicitiam Romanorum

sequebantur; Treviri, quod aberant longius, et ab Germanis premebantur: quae fuit causa, quare toto abessent bello, et neutris auxilia mitterent. Magno dolore Aedui ferunt, se dejectos principatu; queruntur fortunae commutationem, et Caesaris indulgentiam in se requirunt; neque tamen, suscepto bello, suum consilium ab reliquis separare audent. Inviti summae spei adolescentes, Eporedorix et Viridomarus, Vercingetorigi parent.

LXIV. Ille imperat reliquis civitatibus obsides: denique ei rei constituit diem: huc omnes equites, XV millia numero, celeriter convenire jubet; Peditatu, quem ante habuerit, se fore contentum dicit: neque fortunam tentaturum, aut in acie dimicaturum; sed, quoniam abundet equitatu, perfacile esse factu, frumentationibus pabulationibusque Romanos prohibere: aequo modo animo sua ipsi frumenta corrumpant, aedificiaque incendant, qua rei familiaris jactura perpetuum imperium libertatemque se consequi videant. His constitutis rebus, Aeduis Segusianisque, qui sunt finitimi Provinciae, X millia peditum imperat: huc addit equites DCCC. His praefecit fratrem Eporedorigis, bellumque inferre Allobrogibus jubet. Altera ex parte Gabalos proximosque pagos Arvernorum in Helvios, item Rutenos Cadurcosque ad fines Volcarum Arecomicorum depopulandos mittit. Nihilominus clandestinis nunciis legationibusque Allobrogas sollicitat, quorum mentes nondum ab superiore bello resedisse sperabat. Horum principibus pecunias, civitati autem imperium totius Provinciae pollicetur.

LXV. Ad hos omnes casus provisa erant praesidia cohortium duarum et viginti, quae ex ipsa coacta Provincia ab L. Caesare legato ad omnes partes opponebantur. Helvii, sua sponte cum finitimis proelio congressi, pelluntur, et C. Valerio Donotauro, Caburi filio, principe civitatis, compluribusque aliis interfectis, intra oppida murosque compelluntur. Allobroges, crebris ad Rhodanum dispositis praesidiis, magna cum cura et diligentia suos fines tuentur. Caesar, quod hostes equitatu superiores esse intelligebat, et, interclusis omnibus itineribus, nulla re ex Provincia atque Italia sublevari poterat, trans Rhenum in Germaniam mittit ad eas civitates, quas superioribus annis pacaverat, equitesque ab his arcessit

et levis armaturae pedites, qui inter eos proeliari consueverant. Eorum adventu, quod minus idoneis equis utebantur, a tribunis militum reliquisque, sed et Equitibus Romanis atque evocatis, equos sumit, Germanisque distribuit.

LXVI. Interea, dum haec geruntur, hostium copiae ex Arvernis, equitesque, qui toti Galliae erant imperati, conveniunt. Magno horum coacto numero, quum Caesar in Sequanos per extremos Lingonum fines iter faceret, quo facilius subsidium Provinciae ferri posset, circiter millia passuum x ab Romanis trinis castris Vercingetorix consedit; convocatisque ad concilium praefectis equitum, Venisse tempus victoriae demonstrat: fugere in Provinciam Romanos, Galliaque excedere: id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam libertatem satis esse; ad reliqui temporis pacem atque otium parum profici: majoribus enim coactis copiis reversuros, neque finem belli facturos. Proinde agmine impeditos adoriantur. Si pedites suis auxilium ferant, atque in eo morentur, iter confici non posse; si, (id quod magis futurum confidat,) relictis impedimentis, suae saluti consulant, et usu rerum necessariarum et dignitate spoliatum iri. Nam de equitibus hostium, quin nemo eorum progredi modo extra agmen audeat, ne ipsos quidem debere dubitare. Id quo majore faciant animo, copias se omnes pro castris habiturum, et terrori hostibus futurum. Conclamant equites Sanctissimo jurejurando confirmari oportere, ne tecto recipiatur, ne ad liberos, ne ad parentes, ne ad uxorem aditum habeat, qui non bis per hostium agmen perequitarit.

LXVII. Probata re, atque omnibus ad jusjurandum adactis, postero die in tres partes distributo equitatu, duae se acies ab duobus lateribus ostendunt: una a primo agmine iter impedire coepit. Qua re nunciata, Caesar suum quoque equitatum, tripartito divisum, ire contra hostem jubet. Pugnatur una tunc omnibus in partibus: consistit agmen: impedimenta inter legiones recipiuntur. Si qua in parte nostri laborare aut gravius premi videbantur, eo signa inferri Caesar aciemque converti jubebat: quae res et hostes ad insequendum tardabat, et nostros spe auxilii confirmabat. Tandem Germani ab dextro latere, summum jugum nacti, hostes loco depellunt; fugientes usque ad flumen, ubi Vercingetorix cum

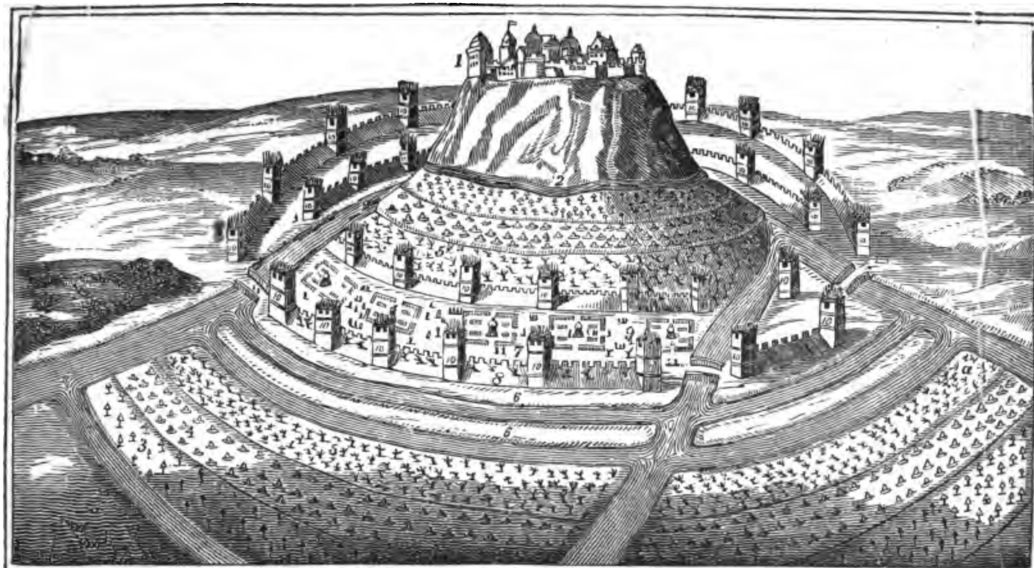
pedestribus copiis consederat, persequuntur, compluresque interficiunt. Qua re animadversa, reliqui, ne circumvenirentur, veriti, se fugae mandant. Omnibus locis fit caedes: tres nobilissimi Aedui capti ad Caesarem perducuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, qui controversiam cum Convictolitane proximis comitiis habuerat; et Cavarillus, qui post defectionem Litavici pedestribus copiis praefuerat; et Eporedorix, quo duce ante adventum Caesaris Aedui cum Sequanis bello contenderant.

LXVIII. Fugato omni equitatu, Vercingetorix copias suas, ut pro castris collocaverat, reduxit; protinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiorum, iter facere coepit; celeriterque impedimenta ex castris educi, et se subsequi jussit. Caesar, impedimentis in proximum collem deductis, duabusque legionibus praesidio relictis, secutus, quantum diei tempus est passum, circiter tribus millibus hostium ex novissimo agmine interfectis, altero die ad Alesiam castra fecit. Perspecto urbis situ, perterritisque hostibus, quod equitatu, quo maxime confidebant, erant pulsi, adhortatus ad laborem milites, Alesiam circumvallare instituit.

LXIX. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summo, admodum edito loco, ut, nisi obsidione, expugnari non posse videretur. Cujus collis radices duo duabus ex partibus flumina subluebant. Ante id oppidum planities circiter millia passuum III in longitudinem patebat: reliquis ex omnibus partibus colles, mediocri interjecto spatio, pari altitudinis fastigio, oppidum cingebant. Sub muro, quae pars collis ad orientem Solem spectabat, hunc omnem locum copiae Gallorum compleverant, fossamque et maceriam sex in altitudinem pedum praeduxerant. Ejus munitionis, quae ab Romanis instituebatur, circuitus XI millium passuum tenebat. Castra opportunis locis erant posita, ibique castella XXIII facta; quibus in castellis interdiu stationes disponebantur, ne qua subito irruptio fieret: haec eadem noctu excubitoribus ac firmis praesidiis tenebantur.

LXX. Opere instituto, fit equestre proelium in ea planitie, quam intermissam collibus III millia passuum in longitudinem patere supra demonstravimus. Summa vi ab utrisque contenditur. Laborantibus nostris Caesar Germanos submittit,

ALESIA.



1. *Alesia, situated on a high hill.* 2. *Ditch made by Caesar under the hill.* 3. *Stimuli.* 4. *Lilia.* 5. *Cippi.* a. *Pits covered with bushes.* 6. *Two ditches, fifteen feet broad.* 7. *Rampart and battlements.* 8. *Stakes in the form of a stag's horns.* 9. *Redoubts.* 10. *Towers.*

legionesque pro castris constituit, ne qua subito irruptio ab hostium peditatu fiat. Praesidio legionum addito, nostris animus augetur: hostes, in fugam conjecti, se ipsi multitudine impediunt, atque angustioribus portis relictis coarctantur. Tum Germani acrius usque ad munitiones sequuntur. Fit magna caedes. Nonnulli, relictis equis, fossam transire et maceriam transcendere conantur. Paulum legiones Caesar, quas pro vallo constituerat, promoveri jubet. Non minus, qui intra munitiones erant, Galli perturbantur: veniri ad se confestim existimantes, ad arma conclamant: nonnulli perterriti in oppidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorix jubet portas claudi, ne castra nudentur. Multis interfectis, compluribus equis captis, Germani sese recipiunt.

LXXI. Vercingetorix, priusquam munitiones ab Romanis perficiantur, consilium capit, omnem ab se equitatum noctu dimittere. Discedentibus mandat, ut suam quisque eorum civitatem adeat, omnesque, qui per aetatem arma ferre possint, ad bellum cogant: sua in illos merita proponit; obtestaturque, ut suae salutis rationem habeant, neu se, de communi libertate optime meritum, in cruciatum hostibus dedant: quod si indiligentiores fuerint, millia hominum delecta LXXX una secum interitura demonstrat: ratione inita, frumentum se exigue dierum XXX habere, sed paulo etiam longius tolerare posse parcendo. His datis mandatis, qua erat nostrum opus intermissum, secunda vigilia silentio equitatum dimittit: frumentum omne ad se ferri jubet; capitis poenam iis, qui non paruerint, constituit: pecus, cujus magna erat ab Mandubiis compulsa copia, viritim distribuit; frumentum parce et paulatim metiri instituit; copias omnes, quas pro oppido collocaverat, in oppidum recipit. His rationibus auxilia Galliae exspectare et bellum administrare parat.

LXXII. Quibus rebus ex perfugis et captivis cognitis, Caesar haec genera munitionis instituit. Fossam pedum XX directis lateribus duxit, ut ejus solum tantundem pateret, quantum summa labra distabant. Reliquas omnes munitiones ab ea fossa passus CD reduxit: id hoc consilio, (quoniam tantum esset necessario spatium complexus, nec facile totum opus militum corona cingeretur,) ne de improviso aut noctu ad munitiones hostium multitudo advolaret; aut interdiu tela

in nostros, operi destinatos, conjicere possent. Hoc intermisso spatio, duas fossas, xv pedes latas, eadem altitudine perduxit: quarum interiorem, campestribus ac demissis locis, aqua ex flumine derivata complevit. Post eas aggerem ac vallum xii pedum exstruxit. Huic loricam pinnasque adjecit, grandibus cervis eminentibus ad commissuras pluteorum atque aggeris, qui ascensum hostium tardarent; et turres toto opere circumdedit, quae pedes LXXX inter se distarent.

LXXIII. Erat eodem tempore et materiari, et frumentari, et tantas munitiones fieri, necesse, diminutis nostris copiis, quae longius ab castris progrediebantur: ac nonnunquam opera nostra Galli tentare, atque eruptionem ex oppido pluribus portis summa vi facere conabantur. Quare ad haec rursus opera addendum Caesar putavit, quo minore numero militum munitiones defendi possent. Itaque truncis arborum haud admodum firmis ramis abscissis, atque horum delibratis atque praeacutis cacuminibus, perpetuae fossae, quinos pedes altae, ducebantur. Huc illi stipites demissi, et ab infimo revincti, ne revelli possent, ab ramis eminebant. Quini erant ordines, conjuncti inter se atque implicati; quo qui intraverant, se ipsi acutissimis vallis induebant. Hos cippos appellabant. Ante hos, obliquis ordinibus in quincuncem dispositis, scrobes trium in altitudinem pedum fodiebantur, paulatim angustiore ad infimum fastigio. Huc teretes stipites, feminis crassitudine, ab summo praeacuti et praeusti, demittebantur ita, ut non amplius digitis iv ex terra eminerent: simul, confirmandi et stabiliendi causa, singuli ab infimo solo pedes terra exculcabantur: reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandas insidias viminibus ac virgultis integebatur. Hujus generis octoni ordines ducti, ternos inter se pedes distabant. Id ex similitudine floris lilium appellabant. Ante haec taleae, pedem longae, ferreis hamis infixis, totae in terram infodiebantur, mediocribusque intermissis spatiis, omnibus locis disserebantur, quos stimulos nominabant.

LXXIV. His rebus perfectis, regiones secutus quam potuit aequissimas, pro loci natura, xiv millia passuum complexus, pares ejusdem generis munitiones, diversas, ab his, contra exteriorem hostem perfecit, ut ne magna quidem multitudine, si ita accidat ejus discessu, munitionum praesidia circum-

fundi possent: neu cum periculo ex castris egredi cogantur, dierum xxx pabulum frumentumque habere omnes convectum jubet.

LXXV. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Galli, concilio principum indicto, non omnes, qui arma ferre possent, ut censuit Vercingetorix, convocandos statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique civitati imperandum; ne, tanta multitudine confusa, nec moderari, nec discernere suos nec frumentandi rationem habere possent. Imperant Aeduis, atque eorum clientibus, Segusianis, Ambivaretis, Aulercis Brannovicibus, Brannoviis, millia xxxv; parem numerum Arvernis, adjunctis Eleutetis Cadurcis, Gabalis, Velaunis, qui sub imperio Arvernorum esse consuerunt; Senonibus, Sequanis, Biturigibus, Santonis, Rutenis, Carnutibus duodena millia; Bellovacis x; totidem Lemovicibus; octona Pictonibus, et Turonis, et Parisiis, et Helviis; Suessionibus, Ambianis, Mediomatricis, Petrocoriis, Nerviis, Morinis, Nitiobrigibus quina millia; Aulercis Cenomanis totidem; Atrebatibus iv; Bellocassis, Lexoviis, Aulercis Eburonibus terna; Rauracis et Boiis xxx; universis civitatibus, quae Oceanum attingunt, quaeque eorum consuetudine Armoricae appellantur, (quo sunt in numero Curiosolites, Rhedones, Ambibari, Caletes, Osismii, Lemovices, Veneti, Unelli,) sex. Ex his Bellovaci suum numerum non contulerunt, quod se suo nomine atque arbitrio cum Romanis bellum gesturos dicerent, neque cujusquam imperio obtemperaturos: rogati tamen a Commio, pro ejus hospitio, ii millia miserunt.

LXXVI. Hujus opera Commii, ita ut antea demonstravimus, fideli atque utili superioribus annis erat usus in Britannia Caesar: quibus ille pro meritis civitatem ejus immunem esse jusserat, jura legesque reddiderat, atque ipsi Morinos attribuerat. Tanta tamen universae Galliae consensio fuit libertatis vindicandae, et pristinae belli laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiis, neque amicitiae memoria moverentur; omnesque et animo et opibus in id bellum incumberent, coactis equitum viii millibus, et peditum circiter ccxl. Haec in Aeduorum finibus recensebantur, numerusque inibatur: praefecti constituebantur: Commio Atrebati, Viridomaro et Eporedorigi Aeduis, Vergasillauno Arverno, consobrino Vercin-

getorigis, summa imperii traditur. His delecti ex civitatibus attribuuntur, quorum consilio bellum administraretur. Omnes alacres et fiduciae pleni ad Alesiam proficiscuntur: neque erat omnium quisquam, qui aspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustineri posse arbitraretur; praesertim ancipiti proelio, quum ex oppido eruptione pugnaretur, foris tantae copiae equitatus peditatusque cernerentur.

LXXVII. At ii, qui Alesiae obsidebantur, praeterita die, qua suorum auxilia exspectaverant, consumpto omni frumento, inscii, quid in Aeduis gereretur, concilio coacto, de exitu fortunarum suarum consultabant. Apud quos variis dictis sententiis, quarum pars deditionem, pars, dum vires suppeterent, eruptionem censebant, non praetereunda videtur oratio Critognati, propter ejus singularem ac nefariam crudelitatem. Hic, summo in Arvernis ortus loco, et magnae habitus auctoritatis, Nihil, inquit, de eorum sententia dicturus sum, qui turpissimam servitutem deditionis nomine appellant; neque hos habendos civium loco, neque ad concilium adhibendos censeo. Cum iis mihi res sit, qui eruptionem probant: quorum in consilio, omnium vestrum consensu, pristinae residere virtutis memoria videtur. Animi est ista mollities, non virtus, inopiam paulisper ferre non posse. Qui se ultro morti offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam qui dolorem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probarem, (nam apud me tantum dignitas potest,) si nullam, praeterquam vitae nostrae, jacturam fieri viderem; sed in consilio capiendo omnem Galliam respiciamus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitavimus. Quid, hominum millibus LXXX uno loco interfectis, propinquis consanguineisque nostris animi fore existimatis, si pene in ipsis cadaveribus proelio decertare cogentur? Nolite hos vestro auxilio spoliare, qui vestrae salutis causa suum periculum neglexerint; nec stultitia ac temeritate vestra, aut imbecillitate animi, omnem Galliam prosternere et perpetuae servituti addicere. An, quod ad diem non venerint, de eorum fide constantiaque dubitatis? Quid ergo? Romanos in illis ulterioribus munitionibus animine causa quotidie exerceri putatis? Si illorum nunciis confirmari non potestis, omni aditu praesepto; iis utimini testibus, appropinquare eorum adventum, cujus rei timore exterriti, diem noctemque in opere

versantur. Quid ergo mei consilii est? Facere, quod nostri majores, nequaquam pari bello Cimbrorum Teutonumque, fecerunt; qui in oppida compulsi, ac simili inopia subacti, eorum corporibus, qui aetate inutiles ad bellum videbantur, vitam toleraverunt, neque se hostibus tradiderunt. Cujus rei si exemplum non haberemus, tamen libertatis causa institui, et posteris prodi, pulcherrimum judicarem. Nam quid illi simile bello fuit? Depopulata Gallia, Cimbri, magnaque illata calamitate, finibus quidem nostris aliquando excesserunt, atque alias terras petierunt; jura, leges, agros, libertatem nobis reliquerunt: Romani vero quid petunt aliud, aut quid volunt, nisi invidia adducti, quos fama nobiles potentesque bello cognoverunt, horum in agris civitatibusque considere, atque his aeternam injungere servitutem? neque enim unquam alia conditione bella gesserunt. Quod si ea, quae in longinquis nationibus geruntur, ignoratis; respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in Provinciam redacta, jure et legibus commutatis, securibus subjecta, perpetua premitur servitute.

LXXVIII. Sententiis dictis constituunt, ut, qui valetudine aut aetate inutiles sint bello, oppido excedant; atque omnia prius experiantur, quam ad Critognati sententiam descendant: illo tamen potius utendum consilio, si res cogat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut deditionis aut pacis subeundam conditionem. Mandubii, qui eos oppido receperant, cum liberis atque uxoribus exire coguntur. Hi, quum ad munitiones Romanorum accessissent, flentes omnibus precibus orabant, ut se, in servitutem receptos, cibo juvarent. At Caesar, dispositis in vallo custodiis, recipi prohibebat.

LXXIX. Interea Commius, et reliqui duces, quibus summa imperii permissa erat, cum omnibus copiis ad Alesiam perveniunt, et colle exteriore occupato, non longius M passibus ab nostris munitionibus considunt. Postero die equitatu ex castris educto, omnem eam planitiem, quam in longitudinem III millia passuum patere demonstravimus, complent, pedestresque copias paulum ab eo loco abditas in locis superioribus constituunt. Erat ex oppido Alesia despectus in campum. Concurritur, his auxiliis visis: fit gratulatio inter eos, atque omnium animi ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque, productis copiis, ante oppidum considunt, et proximam fossam

cratibus integunt, atque aggere explent, seque ad eruptionem atque omnes casus comparant.

LXXX. Caesar, omni exercitu ad utramque partem munitionum disposito, ut, si usus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et noverit, equitatum ex castris educi et proelium committi jubet. Erat ex omnibus castris, quae summum undique jugum tenebant, despectus; atque omnium militum intenti animi pugnae eventum exspectabant. Galli inter equites raros sagittarios expeditosque levis armaturae interjecerant, qui suis cedentibus auxilio succurrerent, et nostrorum equitum impetum sustinerent. Ab his complures de improviso vulnerati proelio excedebant. Quum suos pugnae superiores esse Galli confiderent, et nostros premi multitudine viderent; ex omnibus partibus et ii, qui munitionibus continebantur, et ii, qui ad auxilium convenerant, clamore et ululatu suorum animos confirmabant. Quod in conspectu omnium res gerebatur, neque recte ac turpiter factum celari poterat; utrosque et laudis cupiditas, et timor ignominiae ad virtutem excitabant. Quum a meridie prope ad solis occasum dubia victoria pugnaretur, Germani una in parte confertis turmis in hostes impetum fecerunt, eosque propulerunt: quibus in fugam conjectis, sagittarii circumventi interfectique sunt. Item ex reliquis partibus nostri, cedentes usque ad castra insecuti, sui colligendi facultatem non dederunt. At ii, qui ab Alesia processerant, moesti, prope victoria desperata, se in oppidum receperunt.

LXXXI. Uno die intermisso, Galli, atque hoc spatio magno cratium, scalarum, harpagonum numero effecto, media nocte silentio ex castris egressi, ad campestres munitiones accedunt. Subito clamore sublato, qua significatione, qui in oppido obsidebantur, de suo adventu cognoscere possent, crates projicere, fundis, sagittis, lapidibus nostros de vallo deturbare, reliquaque, quae ad oppugnationem pertinent, administrare. Eodem tempore, clamore exaudito, dat tuba signum suis Vercingetorix, atque ex oppido educit. Nostri, ut superioribus diebus suus cuique erat locus definitus, ad munitiones accedunt: fundis, librilibus, sudibusque, quas in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallos perterrent. Prospectu tenebris adempto, multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur; complura

tormentis tela conjiciuntur. At M. Antonius et C. Trebonius, legati, quibus eae partes ad defendendum obvenerant, qua ex parte nostros premi intellexerant, iis auxilio ex ulterioribus castellis deductos submittebant.

LXXXII. Dum longius ab munitione aberant Galli, plus multitudine telorum proficiebant: posteaquam propius successerunt, aut se ipsi stimulis inopinantes induebant, aut in scrobes delapsi transfodiebantur, aut ex vallo et turribus transjecti pilis muralibus interibant. Multis undique vulneribus acceptis, nulla munitione perrupta, quum lux appeteret, veriti, ne ab latere aperto ex superioribus castris eruptione circumvenirentur, se ad suos receperunt. At interiores, dum ea, quae a Vercingetorige ad eruptionem preparaverant, proferunt, priores fossas explent; diutius in iis rebus administrandis morati, prius suos discessisse cognoverunt, quam munitionibus appropinquarent. Ita, re infecta, in oppidum reverterunt.

LXXXIII. Bis magno cum detrimento repulsi Galli, quid agant, consulunt: locorum peritos adhibent: ab his superiorum castrorum situs munitionesque cognoscunt. Erat a septentrionibus collis, quem propter magnitudinem circuitus opere circumplecti non potuerant nostri, necessarioque pene iniquo loco, et leniter declivi, castra fecerant. Haec C. Antistius Reginus, et C. Caninius Rebilus, legati, cum duabus legionibus obtinebant. Cognitis per exploratores regionibus, duces hostium LX millia ex omni numero deligunt earum civitatum, quae maximam virtutis opinionem habebant; quid, quoque pacto agi placeat, occulte inter se constituunt; adeundi tempus definiunt, quum meridies esse videatur. Iis copiis Vergasillaunum Arvernum, unum ex quatuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castris prima vigilia egressus, prope confecto sub lucem itinere, post montem se occultavit, militesque ex nocturno labore sese reficere jussit. Quum jam meridies appropinquare videretur, ad ea castra, quae supra demonstravimus, contendit: eodemque tempore equitatus ad campestres munitiones accedere, et reliquae copiae sese pro castris ostendere coeperunt.

LXXXIV. Vercingetorix, ex arce Alesiae suos conspica-

tus, ex oppido egreditur; a castris longurios, musculos, falces, reliquaque, quae eruptionis causa paraverat, profert. Pugnatur uno tempore omnibus locis acriter, atque omnia tentantur. Qua minime visa pars firma est, huc concurritur. Romanorum manus tantis munitionibus distinetur, nec facile pluribus locis occurrit. Multum ad terrendos nostros valuit clamor, qui post tergum pugnantibus exstitit, quod suum periculum in aliena vident virtute consistere: omnia enim plerumque, quae absunt, vehementius hominum mentes perturbant.

LXXXV. Caesar idoneum locum nactus, quid quaque in parte geratur, cognoscit, laborantibus auxilium submittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrit, unum illud esse tempus, quo maxime contendi conveniat. Galli, nisi perfregerint munitiones, de omni salute desperant: Romani, si rem obtinuerint, finem omnium laborum exspectant. Maxime ad superiores munitiones laboratur, quo Vergasillaunum missum demonstravimus. Exiguum loci ad declivitatem fastigium magnum habet momentum. Alii tela conjiciunt; alii, testudine facta, subeunt; defatigatis invicem integri succedunt. Agger, ab universis in munitionem conjectus, et ascensum dat Gallis, et ea, quae in terram occultaverant Romani, contegit: nec jam arma nostris, nec vires suppetunt.

LXXXVI. His rebus cognitis, Caesar Labienum cum cohortibus VI subsidio laborantibus mittit: imperat, si sustinere non possit, deductis cohortibus eruptione pugnet; id, nisi necessario, ne faciat. Ipse adit reliquos; cohortatur, ne labori succumbant; omnium superiorum dimicationum fructum in eo die atque hora docet consistere. Interiores, desperatis campestribus locis propter magnitudinem munitionum, loca praerupta ex ascensu tentant: huc ea, quae paraverant, conferunt: multitudine telorum ex turribus propugnantes deturbant: aggere et cratibus fossas explent, aditus expediunt: falcibus vallum ac loricam rescindunt.

LXXXVII. Caesar mittit primo Brutum adolescentem cum cohortibus VI, post, cum aliis VII, C. Fabium legatum: postremo ipse, quum vehementius pugnaretur, integros subsidio adducit. Restituto proelio, ac repulsis hostibus, eo, quo Labienum miserat, contendit; cohortes IV ex proximo castello educit; equitum se partem sequi, partem circumire

exteriores munitiones, et ab tergo hostes adoriri jubet. Labienus, postquam neque aggeres neque fossae vim hostium sustinere poterant, coactis undequadraginta cohortibus, quas ex proximis praesidiis deductas fors obtulit, Caesarem per nuncios facit certiorem, quid faciendum existimet.

LXXXVIII. Accelerat Caesar, ut proelio intersit. Ejus adventu ex colore vestitus cognito, (quo insigni in proeliis uti consueverat,) turmisque equitum et cohortibus visis, quas se sequi jusserat, ut de locis superioribus haec declivia et devexa cernebantur, hostes proelium committunt. Utrimque clamore sublato, excipit rursus ex vallo atque omnibus munitionibus clamor. Nostri, omissis pilis, gladiis rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equitatus cernitur: cohortes aliae appropinquant: hostes terga vertunt: fugientibus equites occurrunt: fit magna caedes. Sedulius, dux et princeps Lemovicum, occiditur: Vergasillaunus Arvernus vivus in fuga comprehenditur: signa militaria LXXIV ad Caesarem referuntur: pauci ex tanto numero se incolumes in castra recipiunt. Conspicati ex oppido caedem et fugam suorum, desperata salute, copias a munitionibus reducunt. Fit protinus, hac re audita, ex castris Gallorum fuga. Quod nisi crebris subsidiis ac totius diei labore milites fuissent defessi, omnes hostium copiae deleri potuissent. De media nocte missus equitatus novissimum agmen consequitur: magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur: reliqui ex fuga in civitates discedunt.

LXXXIX. Postero die Vercingetorix, concilio convocato, Id se bellum suscepisse non suarum necessitatum, sed communis libertatis causa, demonstrat: et, quoniam sit fortunae cedendum, ad utramque rem se illis offerre, seu morte sua Romanis satisfacere, seu vivum tradere velint. Mittuntur de his rebus ad Caesarem legati. Jubet arma tradi, principes produci. Ipse in munitione pro castris consedit: eo duces producuntur: Vercingetorix deditur, arma projiciuntur. Reservatis Aeduis atque Arvernis, si per eos civitates recuperare posset, ex reliquis captivis toto exercitu capita singula praedae nomine distribuit.

XC. His rebus confectis, in Aeduos proficiscitur; civitatem recipit. Eo legati ab Arvernis missi, quae imperaret, se facturos pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum.

Legiones in hiberna mittit: captivorum circiter xx millia Aeduis Arvernisque reddit: T. Labienum cum ii legionibus et equitatu in Sequanos proficisci jubet: huic M. Sempronium Rutilum attribuit: C. Fabium et L. Minucium Basilum, cum ii legionibus in Remis collocat, ne quam a finitimis Bellovacis calamitatem accipiant. C. Antistium Reginum in Ambivaretos, T. Sextium in Bituriges, C. Caninium Rebilum in Rutenos cum singulis legionibus mittit. Q. Tullium Ciceronem et P. Sulpicium Cabilloni et Matiscone in Aeduis ad Ararim, rei frumentariae causa, collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemare constituit. His rebus literis Caesaris cognitis Romae, dierum xx supplicatio indicitur.

NOTES.

NOTES.

C. Julii Caesaris Commentarii, &c. By the term *Commentarii* is meant the narrations or daily memoranda of events, such as a person would be apt to make in a Diary or Journal, where he would write rapidly and concisely, giving more attention to the recording of facts than to beauty of style or exactness of arrangement. The Greeks call works of this kind *ὑπομνήματα*, *ὑπομνηματισμοί*, and *ἀπομνημονεύματα*, (see Strabo, 4, p. 177,) because this kind of composition seeks only to preserve the memory of events, (= *Mémoires.*) Cicero, (*in Bruto*, c. 75,) speaking of Caesar's Commentarii, says, "*nudi sunt, recti et venusti, omni ornatu orationis, tanquam veste, detracto.*" The student cannot fail to be struck with the fact of Caesar's remarkable capabilities as a writer, since, under so many disadvantages, he has composed a work of the highest order of historical composition, a work abounding in beauties of style, clearness of narrative, and graphic power of description.

BOOK FIRST.

SYNOPSIS.

Caesar had allotted to him the provinces of Cisalpine Gaul and Illyricum for five years, with an army of three legions. This was done tumultuously and irregularly by the people, notwithstanding the disposal of such commands was vested by the law in the senate alone. The senate, however, probably to remove Caesar from Rome, and occupy him as much as possible in foreign service, added to his government the province of Transalpine Gaul, and voted him another legion. Early in the spring of the year A. U. C. 695, (B. C. 58,) he set out from Rome to commence his long career of conquests in Gaul. (Arnold's *Later Rom. Commonwealth*, pp. 197, 198.)

He was informed that the Helvetii had long been concerting measures for the conquest of all Gaul, and that they were now on the point of carrying that purpose into execution. By negotiation he gained time to collect such a force as he deemed sufficient to cope with theirs; and after fighting two battles, in which a great part of the Swiss nation perished, he sent back the remnant of that people to their native country.

On the termination of the Helvetian war, complaints were addressed to Caesar

by some of the Roman allies, that Ariovistus, a German king, had made inroads upon their territories, and had even fixed his headquarters there. After vainly endeavoring to treat with this leader, Caesar marched against him. The Roman army were terror-struck by the reports they heard of the stature, prowess, and fierceness of the Germans; but the general restored courage to his troops by an animating address to their officers. Subsequently, he had a conference with Ariovistus, but to no pacific effect; and the two parties having come to an engagement, the Germans were routed with great slaughter, at a distance of fifty miles from the Rhine, over which river very few escaped, Ariovistus himself having reached the farther bank in a small boat, which he found accidentally moored on the shore.

Page

13 **1. Gallia est omnis.** Caesar refers to that part of Gaul which had not yet been subdued by the Romans. The southern part of the country had become a Roman province as early as the year B. C. 120, and is usually designated by Caesar as *provincia*, or *provincia nostra*. Hence, in the division here given, the Allobroges, the province in Transalpine Gaul, and Cisalpine Gaul are not included, though they were usually comprehended in the general term *Gallia.*—*Partes tres.* Oudendorp, in his edition, gives *partes tris*, from the ancient MSS. For this form of the accus. from adjectives and nouns making *ium* in the gen. pl., see Z. § 68 and *Note;* A. and S. § 85, Exc. 1, and § 114, Note.

2. Belgae. These, in the time of Caesar, were divided into sixteen tribes, (*populi.*) They were of German origin, and the most warlike of the Gauls. See Anthon's *Class. Dicty.* p. 538.—*Aliam*, used here in the sense of *alteram.*—*Qui ipsorum*, etc. Construe, (*ii*) *qui ipsorum lingua appellantur Celtae, nostra* (*lingua*) *Galli*, (*incolunt*) *tertiam* (*partem.*) See A. and S. § 206, (3.)

3. Celtae. This term, among ancient authors, comprised Spain, Gaul, and other nations. More rarely it signified Gaul only, and the whole of Gaul. Consult Anthon's *Class. Dicty.* p. 537; Michelet's *History of France*, Bk. I. chap. 1.

4. Differunt. The difference does not seem to have been material.

4, 5. Garumna .... Matrona et Sequana. The modern names are *the Garonne, Marne*, and *Seine*. Garumna is nomin. to *dividit*, which governs *Gallos* in the accus. Matrona et Sequana have *dividunt Gallos* understood.

6. Cultu .... humanitate. The former refers to the care given in providing the comforts and elegancies of life; the latter to the intellectual cultivation and refinement resulting from the study of the best writers. See Ramsh. 297, 643. Consult Justin, xliii. 4.

7. Provinciae, i. e. the Roman province in Transalpine Gaul. The vicinity of Marseilles (a Greek colony) had no doubt a humanizing and polishing effect upon the neighboring inhabitants.—*Minime saepe*, "least often," i. e. *very seldom.*

10. Bellum gerunt. See Ramsh. 145.

12. Proeliis. This word refers to the battle generally, the animated

Page

contest of the many, including the evolutions and manœuvres practised 13
by each party. *Bellum* and *proelium* are sometimes used indiscriminately. See Crombie, p. 85; Ramsh. 145, 838.

13. Eos, i. e. Germanes.—*Prohibent,* with the ablat. See Z. § 468.

14. Eorum. The reference is to *hi omnes* preceding, i. e. the Belgae, Aquitani, and Galli. Many supply *finium Galliae.* Schmitz says, "*eorum* is here used with a colloquial carelessness, instead of *una pars earum trium partium.*"

1. Continetur, "is bounded." 14

2. Attingit .... ab, "it extends .... on the side of," &c.

4. Extremis finibus. Spoken with reference to Rome, meaning the part most distant from Italy, or the northern boundary of Gallia Propria, inhabited by the Celtae or Galli.

7. Eam partem Oceani, i. e., the southern shore of the bay of Biscay, which washes the northern coast of Spain

8. Ad, "at, or next to."

11. Coss. = *consulibus,* abl. absol. The date was B. C. 61, i. e. three years before Caesar's arrival in Gaul.

12. Civitati, i. e. *the people* in general. See Crombie, p. 19; Ramsh. 206.

13. Exirent. Subjunc., with *ut* after verb *persuadeo.* See Z. § 615; A. and S. § 273, 2.

14. Esse perfacile, &c. = "telling them that it would be an easy thing," &c. The infin. is used in this manner in the *oratio obliqua,* after all verbs implying *to say, tell,* &c. See A. and S. § 270, Rem. 2, and § 273, 3.

15. Potiri takes *ablat.* and *gen.* See Z. §§ 465, 466; Crombie, p. 308. *Potiri imperio* = "obtain the government."—*Id .... persuasit.* Construe, *persuasit id eis facilius hoc* = "he persuaded them to take this course the more easily on this account."

16. Una ex parte, scil. *continentur.*

18. Altera, used for *secunda,* as is common in divisions; see page 13, lines 1, 2; *unam, aliam* (= *alteram*) *tertiam.*—*Sequanos;* see Historical and Geographical Index.

19. Lacu Lemanno, now called the lake of Geneva, in Switzerland.

20. Fiebat, "it happened." See Z. § 502; A. and S. § 145, II. 2.

21. Minus late, i. e. less than they could have desired.

22. Inferre bellum. See Ramsh. 145

23. Pro multitudine hominum, "in proportion to their population," or "the number of inhabitants." See cap. 29.

25. Qui, scil. *fines.* qui .... patebant, "which extended."—*Millia,* (in MSS. and early editions, *milia,*) a substantive in accus. pl. See Z. § 395; A. and S. § 236.—CCXL. .... CLXXX., i. e. *ducenta et quadraginta .... centum et octoginta.* Ph. Cluverius observes that these distances are incorrect, being very considerably too much.

Page

14 **28. Ea**, governed by *comparare.*—*Quae .... pertinerent*, "which might be requisite for their setting out."

29. Carrorum. The *carrus* or *carrum* was a vehicle peculiar to the Germans and Gauls. On the form and nature of the construction, see Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 217.—*Quam* is used to strengthen the superlative. See Z. § 108. So in the next clause

31. Proximis civitatibus, that is, with the neighboring states or communities of Gaul.

33. Lege, i. e. *actu, ac foedere solemni;* "they fix by law the time of their departure for the third year."

34. Ad eas res conficiendas. The repetition of these words (see line 32) is objected to by Oudendorp, Ciacconius, and other critics, and it would seem not without reason. The answer which Davies gives is, that the Commentaries are not, and were not meant to be regarded as, finished compositions. "*Eas res* (says Dr. Schmitz) here refers to all the before-mentioned points: the embassy he undertook himself, (*sibi;*) but the other matters he intrusted to the care of others."

35. Persuadet takes the dative, (see Z. § 407;) the object or accus. follows, line 38, *ut regnum .... occuparet.*

36. Regnum .... principatum. The former (according to Ramsh., 535) signifies "autocracy, regal dignity, government;" principatus = "supreme place, precedence." (See note, p. 15, line 1.) It seems from this and other passages, that the sovereign authority was not hereditary in Gaul; it was probably conferred on the man who was most highly esteemed for justice, bravery, and other popular qualities.

37. a S. P. R. = *a senatu populi Romani.* Oudendorp and others read *a S. P. Q. R.* = *a senatu populoque Romano.* The being styled "friend" (*amicus*) was esteemed a high honor, and source of protection and advantage to the recipient.

15 **1. Principatum in civitate obtinebat.** See cap. 16; Et Lisco, qui summo magistratu praeerat, quem Vergobretum appellant Aedui, qui creatur annuus, et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem. He is said *principatum obtinere*, who is the leader of his countrymen, but without the name of *king*. Lactant, *Div. Inst.* 1, 13. "Primis Uranus eminere inter caeteros potentia coeperit, et principatum habere, non regnum." See also Caes. *Bell. Gall.* VII. 4; Cujus pater principatum Galliae totius obtinuerat, et ob eam causam, quod regnum appetebat, ab civitate erat interfectus. Yet Sulpicius Severus, *Hist. Sacr.* 1, 26, relates that Tholas obtained the *regnum*, and Jairus the *principatus*, though both had the same power, so that these words are sometimes confounded. (Davies.)

3. Perfacile, &c. Construe, *probat illis perficere conata esse perfacile factu* = "Orgetorix demonstrates to them that the accomplishment of their designs would be very easily effected;" more literally, "that it was a thing very easy to be done."

4. Imperium, "properly, the command, which demands implicit obedience; the command, as of an army, &c., i. e. highest authority; su-

preme authority, which unites with supreme power irresistible will." 15
(Ramsh. 535.)

5. Non esse dubium, quin. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 85, 86.—*Totius Galliae*, i. e. *omnium Gallorum;* or it may be explained by the ellipsis of *populorum*. "*Plurimum possent* is construed with a partitive gen. in the same manner that *potentissimi essent* would have been." (Andrews.)

6. Copiis. The term here signifies *resources*, including wealth and influence.

7. Adducti, i. e. Casticus, Dumnorix, and Orgetorix, each of whom was in hopes, by this confederation, to obtain regal power over his own countrymen.

8. Tres .... populos, that is, the Sequani, Helvetii, and Aedui.

9. Potiri, governs genit. and ablat. See Z. §§ 465, 466; Crombie, p. 308. See Note, p. 14, line 15.

10. Sperant. The order is, *et sperant sese posse per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos potiri totius Galliae.* On the construction *sperant sese posse*, see A. and S. § 268, Rem. 3.

11. Ea res, in reference to the intrigues of Orgetorix to obtain regal power.—*Ut*, according to Oudendorp, is found only in the more recent MSS. Perhaps we should read *ea re*, omitting *est*.—*Moribus* = *legibus*, "laws."

12. Coëgerunt. That is, they declared that he must appear in court and make his defence in chains, for he seems to have been left at liberty until the day of his trial. (Schmitz.)

13. Damnatum, &c. Construe, *oportebat poenam, ut cremaretur igni, sequi (eum) damnatum.*—*Poenam.* According to Vossius, this kind of punishment was, among the Gauls and the Germans, inflicted on the declared enemies of the state, or on those who entertained hostile thoughts. So, at the close of this book, we read about C. Val. Procillus: Is, se praesente, de se ter sortibus consultum aiebat, utrum igni statim necaretur, an in aliud tempus reservaretur. For Ariovistus wished to punish him as a spy. Such were also, by the Roman laws, regarded as the enemies of the state; hence Polyaenus, 8, p. 571, Νόμου Ῥωμαίων κελεύοντος πολεμίων κατασκόπους ἀναιρεῖσθαι. Even among the Romans, as we learn from the book *De Bell. Hisp.* a slave was burnt alive, because he had murdered his master. And in this punishment Vossius discerns the same analogy; for, as he who aims at sovereign power is an enemy of the commonwealth, so he is an enemy to a private family who kills its master. In the same way, those Greeks who had voluntarily joined the Persians, were, on the conclusion of the war, by a public decree, decimated and immolated to the gods, as we learn from Diod. S. *Bibl.* 11, p. 3. —*Sequi* = according to Giani, *subire*.—*die constituta*, ablat. of time.

14. Causae, gen., depending on *dictionis*, which is governed by *die*. The term *dictio causae* was the term applied to the defence of the accused, to his explaining the cause of his conduct.—*Judicium* refers to the legal investigation of the case.

Page

15 **15. Familiam.** The word here denotes his vassals, dependants, or slaves, who were occupied in agricultural affairs, and the collection of his revenue. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Gk. and Rom. Antiq.* p. 429. —*Ad*, "about."

16. Clientes. Caesar here speaks *more Romano.*—*Obaeratos*, "debtors," who were obliged to serve their creditors until the debt was discharged. The word is hence equivalent to *vassals.*

18. Se eripuit = "he escaped;" he succeeded in escaping a trial at that time.

20. Neque abest . . . . quin. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 85, 86.

23. Id. See A. and S. § 207, Rem. 22.

24. Conantur. From this it appears that the Helvetii must have had other reasons for wanting to quit their country, beside the mere desire of Orgetorix. (Schmitz.)—*Ut e finibus suis exeant.* These words are not properly needed. They serve simply to explain what is referred to by *id quod.*

27. Privata aedificia, the houses which stood apart from towns and villages, i. e. country houses or residences.—*Praeter quod.* Some read *praeterquam quod*, which is here equivalent. *Praeter quod*, however, is more elegant, *id* being omitted.

28. Portaturi. The future act. part. often denotes intention or purpose. See Z. § 639.—*Domum*, as here, is sometimes used in the accus. after a verbal noun. So Cicero, *reditus Romam.* See A. and S. § 237, Rem. 4.

30. Mensium. Oudendorp reads *mensum.* See Z. § 66, (*b.*)—*Molita cibaria*, "ground corn *or* meal," which is fit for making into bread. The Greek version gives *ἄλφιτα.*

32. Cum iis, for *secum.*

34. Noricum was a country of ancient Illyricum, and extended from the Danube to the Alps.

35. Socios. See A. and S. § 230, Rem. 2.

36. Quibus itineribus. The repetition of the noun to which the relative refers, is probably an imitation of legal phraseology, such as it occurred in laws, senatus consulta, and the like, and is found in all the classical writers, though most frequently in Caesar. (Schmitz.)

38. Vix qua. Supply *parte*, *via*, or *regione.* Qua vix = ut ea, (with *parte*, &c.,) and has the subjunctive (*ducerentur*) following. Davies reads *quo vix.*

16 **1. Prohibere possent,** "could prevent a passage."—*Provinciam.* See note, p. 13, line 7.

3. Allobrogum. The Allobroges had first been conquered by Fabius surnamed Allobrogicus, B. C. 121; and about two years previous to Caesar's entrance into Gaul, (i. e. B. C. 61,) the praetor C. Pomptinius had again brought them into subjection. Consult Michelet's *History of France*, vol. I. p. 40.

4. Is . . . . transitur, "is fordable in several places."

6. Pertinet, "extends, reaches over," &c.

7. Allobrogibus, dat., governed by *persuasuros (esse.)*

8. Coacturos (esse,) fut. inf. act. of *cogo.*

9. Ut .... paterentur, "to suffer," &c.

10. Qua die. Some omit *die.* See Note, p. 15, line 36. In next line it is *is dies,* (masc.) *Dies* is masc. and fem. in singular, and masc. only in plural. See Z. § 86.

11. A. d. v. Kal. Aprilis = *ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis,* i. e. the 28th of March, B. C. 58, the same year in which Caesar came into Gaul. His arrival was early in the month of April. In the phrase above, *ante* "seems really to belong, in sense, to *Kalendas,* and to be the cause why *Kalendas* is an accusative." (Prof. Key.) Zumpt (*Latin Gram.* § 869) says: "This expression, *ante diem,* must be considered as an indeclinable substantive, since we often find it preceded by prepositions which govern the accusative or ablative." Consult Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* pp. 191–201.

12. Coss. = *consulibus,* ablat. absol. The year was A. U. C. 696, or B. C. 58.

14. Conari, "were attempting *or* endeavoring."—*Maturat,* the historical present, which is of frequent occurrence in Caesar.—*Urbe,* i. e. Rome.

16. Ad Genevam, i. e. in the vicinity or neighborhood of Geneva. *Ad* may here be regarded as = *apud.*

17. Imperat, &c. He orders the province (see Note, p. 13, line 7) to furnish as large a number of troops as it could muster.—*Omnino,* "only."

18. Legio. In the times of the Republic, each legion was divided into *ten cohorts;* each cohort into *three maniples;* and each maniple into *two centuries.* So that there were *thirty maniples and sixty centuries* in a legion; and if there had always been *one hundred* men in each century, as its name imports, the legion would have consisted of 6000 men. But this was not the case, the number of men in a legion being different at different times. During the earliest periods, the legion consisted of 3000 infantry and 300 cavalry; the number was afterwards increased to 4000, 5000, and even to upwards of 6000; in the time of Caesar it contained about 4500 men. Consult Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Roman Antiq.* pp. 102–107.—*Pontem.* The bridge was across the river Rhone.

19. Certiores facti, "were informed."

20. Cujus legationis = *quorum,* reference being to *legatos* preceding.

22. Qui dicerent, (depending on *mittunt.*) See Z. § 556; A. and S. §§ 264, 5.—*Sibi .... animo,* "that it was their intention."

24. Rogare, viz. *se.*

25. L. Cassium. This disaster had happened B. C. 107. See Livy, *Epit.* lib. 65.

Page

16 **26. Sub jugum,** "under the yoke." The Romans obliged captives to *pass under a yoke*, indicating a state of subjugation and servitude. Two spears were fixed in the ground, and a third fastened across them at the top. Under these the conquered were compelled to pass, after being deprived of their arms.

28. Temperaturos, "would be temperate and abstain from," &c. (Schmitz.)

29. Ut .... posset. His object was simply to gain time, since he was not yet ready to attack the Helvetii.

31. Diem = tempus. "He would take time," &c.

32. A. d. Idus, i. e. *ante diem Idus*, the day before the Ides of April, which fell on the 13th of the month. By *si quid vellent*, Caesar would pretend that he is not aware of their wishes and plans.

34. A lacu Lemanno .... Juram. Critics have been much perplexed with this passage, which at first sight seems to state what was the reverse of the fact. The Rhone in reality flows into the lake, and not the lake into the river; hence some emend thus: *quem in flumen Rhodanum influit*, i. e., "into which the river Rhone flows;" but not well. Dr. Schmitz explains the matter in this way: "We do not say that a lake through which a river flows, flows into the river, but that the river flows into the lake. But Caesar seems to have had in view the point at which the river comes out of the lake, and where a portion of the water of the lake flows out along with the river, and accordingly into the river. Compare lib. VII. 57." A greater difficulty relates to the position of the wall and ditch which Caesar constructed. If we render, "he draws a wall, &c., from the lake Leman *to* Mount Jura," we find that that could not have been the case, since the cutting down of the bridge would have been a positive injury to Caesar, as interrupting the communication between his camp and the country on the other side of the river; besides, towards the end of the chapter we learn that the Helvetii endeavored to cross the river in boats, &c., which shows that the wall was on the southern bank of the Rhone, and not from the northwest corner of the lake to the mountain; and lastly, had this been the situation of the wall, the narrow passage between the Rhone and the mountain (cap. 6) would have been blocked up, whereas it is stated (cap. 9) that notwithstanding the wall, this had been left free, and (cap. 11) that the Helvetii actually marched out of their country through it. *Ad montem Juram*, hence, may be rendered "in the direction of *or* towards Mount Jura," along the southern bank of the Rhone. The student will find it advantageous to consult the notes of Vossius, Davies, Clarke, and Oudendorp, in the large edition of Oudendorp; Stuttgard, 1822.

36. Decem. Most of editors read *decem novem*.

39. Possit. Some read *posset*, to connect with *conarentur* in the imperf. The historical present may be followed by either the pres. or imperf.; it is here followed by both. Other instances of the same kind occasionally occur. See A. and S. § 258, Rem. 1.

Page

2. More et exemplo. See Z. § 472; A. and S. § 249, II. 17

3. Si vim facere conentur. "When the expression of futurity is contained in another part of the sentence, the future of the subjunctive is supplied by some other tense of that mood." See A. and S. 260, Rem. 7, (1.)

4. Prohibiturum, supply *se.*—*Ostendit,* "he declares."—With *ea spe dejecti* supply *alii,* corresponding to *alii* in the next clause.

5. Ratibus, "rafts." These were pieces of timber, or planks pinned together or fastened with cords, having the appearance of a floating platform; of course they could be used only in smooth water. The poets sometimes use *ratis* to signify *a ship.*—*Alii.* See note on line above. Dr. Schmitz, however, says, "*alii* which is neither preceded nor followed by another *alii* must mean 'some,' or 'a few;' so that the meaning is, the Helvetii generally, or most of them, tried to cross by boats, but some tried to ford the river."

6. Altitudo, "depth."—*Si .... possent.* Dependent clauses containing an indirect question, take the subjunctive. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 467. *Si* is for *an,* as often.

7. Operis munitione, in reference to the *murum, fossam, castella,* mentioned above.

10. His, governed by *persuadere.*—*Sua sponte,* "by or of themselves," by the means they had at their command.

12. Deprecatore. A *deprecator* is a person who prays that a thing may *not* be done; so that the meaning here is, that he might pray the Sequani not to prevent them, (Schmitz.) *Eo deprecatore* = "through his mediation."—*Impetrarent,* imperf. depending on *mittunt,* the histor. pres. Supply *hoc,* i. e. the privilege of going through their territories.

13. Gratia .... poterat, "by his popularity and generosity had very great influence with the Sequani." Supply *facere.*

15. Filiam ... duxerat. "Uxorem ducere, wedding a wife, taking a wife; used of the husband who, on the day of marriage, led his bride to his home. *In matrimonium ducere,* taking in matrimony, equally of the man. See 260." See Ramsh. 728; Crombie, p. 92; Z. § 406. *Nubere* is used when speaking of the female.

19. Dent, i. e. the *Helvetii et Sequani.*

20. Helvetii, i. e. *perficit, uti Helvetii obsides dent ut,* &c.

22. Renunciatur. Verbs compounded with *re* are sometimes used in the same sense as their simples. See cap. 39.

23. Santonum, &c. The *Santones* or *Santoni* inhabited the district to the north of the Garonne, and the town of Tolosa (Toulouse) was situate on the upper part of the Garonne, and a considerable distance from the Santones; but Caesar's object is to make out that the province was in great danger, and for this reason he exaggerates. (Schmitz.)

24. Tolosatium ... quae civitas. "When to the relative is joined a noun, explanatory of the antecedent, but of a different gender or number, the relative agrees with that noun." See A. and S. § 206, (8.)

Page

17 **26. Futurum,** scil. *esse* = "that it would be attended." The verb is used impersonally.

27. Locis . . . . frumentariis, "an open and very fertile country."

28. Ob eas causas, i. e. the several causes of danger which Caesar has enumerated.—*T. Labienum.* Labienus had been tribune of the people, B. C. 63, and a strong partisan of Caesar. Subsequently, during the civil war, he was one of his bitterest opponents. See Arnold's *Later Roman Commonwealth*, p. 237.

29. Legatum. The legati accompanied the generals on their expeditions. They were chosen by the consul or dictator, and were usually distinguished for military talent. In the absence of the consul from the army, the legati, or one of them, took his place, and had the insignia as well as power of his superior. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* pp. 575, 576.—*Magnis itineribus,* "by forced marches." From cap. 24 it appears that the two legions were enrolled in Gallia Cisalpina, which is here meant by *Italiam.*

30. Legiones. See note, p. 16, line 18.

31. Hibernis. See note, p. 40, line 6.—*Proximum,* "shortest."

35. Compluribus, &c. The order is, *his pulsis compluribus proeliis.*

36. Citerioris Provinciae . . . ulterioris Provinciae. The *Provincia citerior* was Gallia Cisalpina in the north of Italy. *Provincia ulterior* was the province beyond the Alps, and the same as that called *provincia* or *nostra provincia.* See cap. 1. The town of Ocelum was situate at the very foot of the Alps.

18 **1. Angustias.** See cap. 6, at the beginning.

4. Rogatum. The supine in *um* is used with verbs which express motion to a place. See Z. § 668, 2; Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 362.*

5. Ita se, &c. Supply *dicentes,* which is implied in *legatos mittunt.*—*Omni tempore,* i. e. ever since their having formed an alliance with the Romans. The Aedui had been the earliest among the Gallic tribes to enter into friendly relations with the Romans, and had always been distinguished for their friendship and fidelity.—*Meritos esse . . . . ut non debuerint.* As *meritos esse* depends on a historical pres., its time is that of the pluperf. (See A. and S. § 268.) Regularly the pluperf. is followed by the imperf.; but in clauses with *ut,* containing a conclusion, the historical perf. is also properly placed instead of the imperf. See Krebs's *Guide,* § 264.

7. Eorum for sui. A. and S. § 208, (6.)

8. Quo Aedui, Ambarri quoque. The reading varies here. Oudendorp and others read, *eodem tempore, Aedui Ambarri, necessarii,* &c. According to this lection, the Ambarri were not distinct from, but belonged and were related to the Aedui.

9. Necessarii. Friends or allies, engaged mutually to support and assist each other.

11. Trans Rhodanum. Only a small part of their possessions was across, i. e. on the north side of the Rhone.

Page

13. Demonstrant, "inform him," &c. *Demonstrare* has this sense continually in Caesar. 18

15. Santonos. The MSS. vary between *Santonos* and *Santones.* The former is regarded by Oudendorp as the better lection. See note, p. 17, line 23.

17. Arar, the modern *Saône.* It formed, to a considerable extent, the boundary between the Sequani and Aedui, whence *fines* has here its proper meaning, "boundary." (Schmitz.)—*Quod*, in reference to its antecedent *flumen.* Some MSS. read *qui*, referring to *Arar.* See cap. 2, *flumine Rheno, qui; Rhodano, qui.* There is a similar variation in Livy, lib. i. 3. *Quod* no doubt is the correct reading.

18. Lenitate, "smoothness." *Levitate* is pronounced by Oudendorp to be an inferior reading, *lenis* being the proper word to express the gentleness and placidity of the Arar's course.

19. In .... fluat. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 467.

20. Ratibus. See note, p. 17, line 5.—*Lintribus.* The *lintres* were boats formed by hollowing out trunks of trees.

21. Tres .... traduxisse, "that the Helvetii had already conveyed across that river three parts of their forces." *Flumen* is governed by *trans* in composition.

23. De tertia vigilia. *De*, when joined with words expressing time, indicates that a part of that time is spent along with the time which follows. Hence Caesar here set out before the third watch was at an end. The Romans divided their nights into four *vigiliae*, which differed in length according to the season of the year. (Schmitz.) Consult Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Roman Antiq.* p. 222. The third watch began at midnight.

24. Castris. See cap. 10, at the end. The camps of the Romans were objects of particular attention, and were remarkable for regularity and order. The proper situation was selected by persons sent in advance, under the direction of one of the tribunes. The form of the camp was usually square; it was divided into two parts, and strongly fortified with a ditch and rampart. There were four gates, one on each side. That facing the enemy was *porta praetoria;* the one opposite it, the *porta decumana:* the side gates were the *porta principalis dextra* and *principalis sinistra.* The trench or ditch (*fossa*) was generally nine feet deep and twelve broad: the rampart (*vallum*) was made of the earth that was thrown up, (*agger,*) with stakes (*valli*) fixed at the top of it.—For a full account of the internal arrangement, discipline, &c., of the Roman camps, see Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* pp. 220–223.

28. Tigurinus. The four *pagi* or cantons of the Helvetii, reckoning according to their situation from north to south, were the Urbigeni, Ambrones, Tugeni, Tigurini.

30. Cassium .... sub jugum miserat. See note, p. 16, lines 25, 26.

32. Quae pars .... ea princeps. The place of the antecedent is

Page

18 sometimes supplied by a demonstrative pron. See A. and S. § 206, 3, (*a*.) *Princeps*, and primus, prior, solus, &c., are used adverbially instead of their neuters.

36. L. Pisonis, &c. Caesar's first wife was Cornelia, the daughter of Cinna. She gave birth to a daughter named Julia. Upon Cornelia's death, he married Pompeia, daughter of Q. Pompey and grand-daughter of Sylla, whom he afterwards divorced. Some time after, in B. C. 59, Caesar married Calpurnia, daughter of L. Piso, consul in B. C. 58, and grandson of L. Piso, the legatus slain by the Tigurini.

39. In Arari, "over the Saône."—With *faciendum* supply *esse*. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 351.

19 **2. Quum .... intelligerent,** "when they perceived that he had done in one day what they, with the greatest difficulty, had accomplished in twenty days, viz. the crossing the river."

4. Cujus legationis. See note, p. 16, line 20.—*Princeps*, i. e. the principal, leading person = *primum locum tenebat.*

5. Bello Cassiano. It was customary to name the war after the person or people conquered.

6. Agit, "discourses, treats," &c.

9. Reminisceretur. In the *oratio directa*, *reminiscere* or *reminiscaris*. See A. and S. § 266, 2, Rem. 1. The same remark applies to *tribueret*, *despiceret*, and *committeret*.—*Veteris incommodi*, referring to the defeat of Crassus. *Incommodi* is governed by *reminisceretur*. See Z. § 439.

11. Adortus esset. Vossius notes this as an instance of the figure termed μείωσις. Divico was unwilling to say *fugasset*, because that would have derogated from the glory of the Helvetii, and allowed too much to the skill and bravery of Caesar. Hence he uses the language before us. —On the use of the subjunctive, see Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 465; A. and S. § 266, 3.

12. Ne is here connected with the notion of requesting Caesar to remember, as above.

13. Magnopere. Oudendórp prefers *magno opere*, in this and other places, Bk. II. 5; IV. 26; VII. 52. *Quanto opere* and *tanto opere*, are used adverbially in the same manner.

15. Contenderent. Davies and others regard this word as spurious.

16. Constitissent, referring to the Helvetii, who had not yet crossed the Saône.

17. Memoriam proderet, "transmit the memory," i. e. of this calamity, to posterity. The places where great battles have been fought, (as Marathon, Salamis, Cannae, &c.,) have served to perpetuate the memory of defeat and disgrace to the conquered, and of glory and renown to the conquerors.

19. His, i. e. what Divico had said.—*Eo .... dari*, "that on this account he was under less hesitation what course to pursue, because," &c. He was in no doubt how he ought to act towards the Helvetii.

Page

20. Legati Helvetii. Oudendorp thinks these words only a marginal gloss, since Caesar was addressing these very persons.—*Commemorassent .... teneret.* See note above, line 11. 19

21. Ferre, scil. *se,* i. e. Caesar, "that he took it the more heavily, = he resented it the more indignantly, the less it had happened from any desert of the Roman people;" i. e. he was the more indignant in proportion to his conviction that the Romans the less deserved the defeat they had met with under Crassus.

22. Accidisset. Many read *accidissent.*—*Qui:* the antecedent is *populi Romani.*—*Alicujus:* according to the common grammatical rule, it should have been *si cujus;* but the *ali* here has a peculiar force, and is emphatic: if they had been conscious of *any* act of injustice, ever so trifling. (Schmitz.)—*Conscius* takes the gen. and dat. See A. and S. § 222, R. 3.

23. Non fuisse. This is the consequent clause, (apodosis,) and the verb accordingly has been changed because of the *oratio obliqua,* or oblique discourse, i. e. in which the sentiments or speeches of a person are related in the third person instead of the first. In direct discourse it would be, *si sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisset difficile cavere.* See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 459, 460; A. and S. § 261, 1.—*Deceptum,* scil. *esse populum Romanum,* "were by this ensnared, because," &c.

24. Commissum, scil. *esse,* used impersonally.

25. Quod si, "but even if."

26. Num, expects the answer "*no.*" Construe, *num etiam posset deponere memoriam recentium injuriarum,* &c. Oudendorp reads *posse.* So Schneider, and others. See Bk. V. 28; Z. § 603

27. Eo invito, i. e. without Caesar's consent.

30. Gloriarentur. In the speech of Divico, as quoted by Caesar, we do not find any boasting. Probably, however, it was indulged in, as being characteristic of the people and their neighbors. See Michelet's *History of France,* vol. i. p. 34. *Quod .... gloriarentur,* "that *they boasted* = their boasting."

31. Eodem pertinere, "tended to the same result," viz. to stir up his indignation.—*Consuesse .... concedere.* Construe, *enim immortales deos consuesse concedere his, quos velint ulcisci pro scelere eorum, secundiores res et diuturniorem impunitatem, quo homines ex commutatione rerum gravius doleant.* After *quo,* there should follow *eo secundiores,* but the *eo* is often omitted by the best writers. (Schmitz.)

34. Quum, "although."

36. Polliceantur. See cap. 13, "*in eam partem ituros,*" &c.—*Et si .... satisfaciant,* "and if they would satisfy the Aedui," &c.

1. Ejus .... testem, alluding to the hostages given by the Roman lieutenant on occasion of the defeat of Crassus. 20

4. Movent, i. e. the Helvetii.—*Equitatum.* The cavalry in Caesar's army was composed of Gauls.

6. Coactum habebat. *Habeo,* with certain participles, forms a periphrasis. See Z. § 634.—*Qui.* See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 483.

Page

20 7. **Cupidius,** "too eagerly." See A. and S. § 256, Rem. 9.

8. **Novissimum agmen,** "the rear rank." See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 32.—*Alieno loco:* in military matters *aliena loca* are *unfavorable*, and *sua loca, favorable* places. Thus Davies, who quotes Sallust, *Jugurth.* c. 54, "*qui* sua *loca defendere nequiverat, in* alienis *bellum gerere.*" See also cap. 61.

9. **De nostris,** (instead of genit.) See Z. § 430, 308.

10. **Sublati,** i. e. *elati.* So Bk. V. 37, "*hac victoria sublatus Ambiorix.*" See also *Bell. Civ.* II. 37.

12. **Proelio.** See note p. 13, line 12.

13. **Habebat.** The object of the verb is the infinitive clause following.

16. **Primum,** scil. *agmen*, i. e. "our van."

19. **Publice,** i. e. in the name of their state.—*Flagitare*, the historical infin. = *flagitabat.* The verb is most appropriate to this place; for it denotes a vehement demand, accompanied with reproaches, (vehementem non sine conviciis postulationem.) Cic. *ad Fam.* 9, 8, (an epistle, which is also prefixed to the first book of *Acad. Quaest.*,) Metuo ne te forte flagitent, ego autem mandavi ut rogarent. See G. J. Voss. Etym. L. L. v. *Flagitium.* (Davies.)—*Frigora.* The climate has, no doubt, much changed, and the temperature become milder. Dr. Schmitz notes that this must have been the month of July according to the calendar, but as the calendar was in great confusion before Caesar reformed and regulated it, (which was B. C. 46, twelve years afterwards,) the month of June answered to our April.

20. **Sub septemtrionibus,** "towards the north," i. e. with respect to Italy.

22. **Frumento,** (governed by *uti*, below.) Besides his pay, each soldier was furnished with clothes, and received a certain allowance (*dimensum*) of corn, commonly four bushels a month. For these things a part of his pay was deducted. The soldiers prepared and made bread for themselves out of the grain or corn.

23. **Propterea .... quod,** "because."

25. **Diem ex die,** &c., "the Aedui put off from day to day, (bringing the corn,) told him they were gathering it up, bringing it together, that it was just ready." *Ducere* and *dicere* are historical infinitives.

26. **Se .... duci,** "that he was put off too long."

27. **Frumentum.** See above on line 22.

29. **Magistratu** for *magistratui*, the dat. after *praeerat.*

30. **Quem,** referring not to the magistracy but to the person invested with it. Some critics regard *quem* as spurious.—*Vergobretum,* "the Vergobretus;" according to Michelet, *Ver-go-breith*, Gaelic, "man for judgment." (*History of France*, vol. i. p. 46, note.)

33. **Necessario,** "critical."

34. **Sit destitutus,** "he had been abandoned, left destitute by them," i. e. they had not supplied him with the necessary corn.—On the subjunc. here and above, *sublevetur*, see A. and S. § 266, 3.

Page

38. Proponit, "discloses." 20

39. Privati. Oudendorp and others read *privatim.* The sense is the same.

1. Hos, i. e. *privatos.* 21

2. Ne expresses a purpose negatively. See A. and S. § 262, Rem. 5. —*Conferant, quod,* &c. The readings differ much here. Oudendorp gives *conferant; quod praestare dicant, si jam,* &c. Schneider reads *conferant: quod praestare debeat, si jam,* &c.

3. Obtinere, i. e. *diutius tenere.* (Davies.) They thought or hoped that the Aedui might still retain the supremacy.—*Non possint,* "they (the Aedui) cannot."

4. Gallorum, meaning the Helvetii.

5. Debere, scil. *se,* referring to *hos.* Some omit *debere.—Superaverint,* "conquered."

6. Sint erepturi. See A. and S. § 258, 1, (1.)

7. Quaeque = *et quae.*

8. A se, i. e. himself, the Vergobretus.

9. Necessario. Oudendorp has *coactus* also, which is pleonastic.—*Intelligere sese,* "he well knew."

13. Pluribus . . . . nolebat, "he was unwilling these matters should be discussed in the presence of so many."

15. Solo, i. e. Liscus. He asks Liscus in private, &c.

16. Liberius atque audacius, "more freely and confidently."

17. Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, "that it was Dumnorix himself." —*Summa audacia,* i. e. "a man of extreme boldness."

19. Portoria, "taxes *or* customs," the import and export duty paid on goods.

20. Vectigalia, the public revenues in general.—*Redempta habere,* see note, p. 20, line 6.

21. Illo licente, "when he bid," from licēri, *depon.* The verb means, to offer a price for a thing which a person wishes to purchase. The principal men among the Gauls performed the duties of farmers of the customs, on account of the profits resulting from the employment; and the people willingly consented, as these men, being wealthy, would be able to make good any loss or deficiency of the revenue.

25. Largiter posse, "he had great influence."

26. Potentiae, viz. *augendae.*

27. Collocasse. See Ramsh. 815. *Collocare in,* commonly with the ablat. as above, but here the accus. shows that *collocare* also implies the notion of "sending." (Schmitz.)—*Uxorem,* i. e. the daughter of Orgetorix. See cap. 3.

29. Cupere, "wished well."

30. Suo nomine, "on his own private account."

33. Si quid, i. e. any thing adverse, any calamity.

34. Imperio Populi Romani = *imperante Populo Romano,* "if the Roman people held the command."

Page

21 **36. Quod proelium,** &c. This passage is perplexed and variously explained by commentators, (see notes in Oudendorp's edition of Caesar's works.) Other readings have been given. Giani has "*reperiebat etiam Caesar inquirendo quod initium fugae proelii equestris adversi a Dumnorige atque ejus equitibus factum esset.*" So, too, Ciacconius, Gryphius, &c. Prof. Andrews explains the reading in the text as follows: "that in regard to this, that there had been an unsuccessful engagement of the cavalry," i. e. "in regard to there having been," &c. See A. and S. § 206, (14.)

38. Fugae. Flight is implied in the *proelium adversum.*

39. Equitatu for *equitatui,* the dative. Caesar is fond of this old form.

22 **4. Certissimae res,** "very certain *or* clear proofs."—*Quod per fines,* &c. in apposition with *certissimae res.*

6. Suo, i. e. Caesar's.

7. Ipsis, i. e. the Aedui.—*Magistratu,* i. e. Liscus the Vergobretus.

10. Rebus, i. e. the reasons which led to the conclusion that Dumnorix must be punished; but there was one circumstance which was against (*repugnabat*) this conclusion.—*Divitiaci.* "The other brother was a Druid, a title in all probability identical with that of Divitiacus, which Caesar gives as his proper name." Michelet's *Hist. of France,* vol. i. p. 46.

12. Voluntatem, i. e. *benevolentiam* or *amorem.* So Bk. V. 4.

16. Principem, "a leading man." See cap. 47.

17. Summam .... fidem, "the highest confidence in all respects."

18. Ipso, i. e. Divitiacus.

20. Eo, i. e. Dumnorix.

24. Ne quid .... statueret, "that he would not pass too severe a judgment upon his brother."

26. Ipse, i. e. Divitiacus.

27. Ille, i. e. Dumnorix.

28. Per se crevisset. Dumnorix had grown great *or* become powerful through his means.—*Quibus* refers to what is implied in *per se crevisset* = "this power and strength he was employing," &c.—*Nervis,* used metaphorically for *power,* the strength of animals being placed in their nerves and sinews.

31. Commoveri, viz. to intercede in behalf of his brother.—*Ei,* i. e. Dumnorix

32. Apud eum, i. e. Caesar.

33. Sua voluntate, "at his desire."

36. Rogat .... faciat, supply *ut.*—*Tanti ejus .... condonet,* "he tells him that his (Divitiacus's) favor is so great with him (Caesar) that, at his desire and entreaty, he pardons the injury done to the Republic and the insult offered to himself."

39. Adhibet, "he brings in."

23 **2. Omnes suspiciones** = "all occasion of suspicion."

Page

3. Dumnorigi .... ponit, "he places spies over Dumnorix." 23

7. Qui cognoscerent. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 483, = "who should ascertain," i. e. to ascertain.

8. Misit, supply *homines* or *exploratores.*—*Facilem*, i. e. *ascensum.*

9. Vigilia. See note, p. 18, line 23.—*Labienum.* See note, p. 17, line 29. Labienus, as being the principal legate, or lieutenant, took the place of Caesar whenever he was absent, hence he is distinguished by the honorary title of *propraetor.* See cap. 54. For *pro praetore*, however, Giani and some others read *propere*, contending that it suits the sense much better, and denying that when the commander was present, as Caesar was here, the legate ever had the title of *propraetor.* See Oudendorp, *in loc.*

10. Summum jugum, "the highest point of the ridge." See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 179; A. and S. § 205, Rem. 17; and below, line 17.

15. In M. Crassi, scil. *exercitu.*

17. Prima luce. In this, as in many other cases, the adjective does not apply to the entire thing expressed by the substantive, but only to a part of it. Hence, *prima lux* is the *first part* of the day. Compare *summus mons, primo vere, colle medio,* &c. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 179.

18. Ipse, i. e. Caesar.

21. Equo admisso = "at a full gallop."

23. Insignibus, the insignia or ornaments of the armor, as of the helmets, &c. (See Bk. II. 21.) The badges on the Roman helmets consisted of crests and feathers: the Gauls wore the horns, &c. of animals, and also various images. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 539.

26. Ipsius, i. e. Caesar.

28. Multo die, see above on line 17, = "when much of the day had already passed away."

31. Quod .... renunciasse, "had brought him back word of what he had not seen, as if he had seen it."—*Quo consuerat intervallo*, i. e. at the distance from the enemy described at the end of cap. 15.

35. Exercitu for *exercitui*, the dat. sing.—*Frumentum metiri*, "to measure out corn." Compare note, p. 20, line 22.

36. Aeduorum. The Aedui were Caesar's main dependence for the supply of corn.

37. Rei .... existimavit, "he thought he must provide for a supply of corn."

39. Fugitivos, "fugitives." Those who had deserted probably to return home. On the difference between *fugitivus*, and *perfuga, transfuga*, deserters who go to serve in the enemy's ranks, see Ramsh. 476, 783, 1.

1. Decurionis. The number of horse required to every legion was 24
three hundred, divided into ten *turmae* or troops, thirty to a troop, every *turma* making three *decuriae*, or bodies of *ten* men: each of these *decuriae* had a commander called a *decurion;* but he that was first elected

Page

24 commanded the *turma*, and was probably called *dux turmae;* the others were his lieutenants. Every one of the decurions had an *optio* or deputy under him. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 104.

4. Non commovissent. Some read *contmisissent.* This omission of the Romans to come to an engagement, though of actual occurrence, is here represented as existing in the thoughts of the Helvetii, and as constituting the reason which led them to believe that the present movement of the Romans was prompted by their fears. (Andrews.) See A. and S. § 266, 3.

5. Intercludi posse, i. e. the Romans. They hoped that the Romans could be cut off from their supply of corn.

8. Animum advertit, the same as *animadvertit. Id* depends on *ad* in *advertit.*

10. Colle medio. See above, note on p. 23, line 17.

11. Aciem. *Acies* is "the order of battle, inasmuch as both the armies are drawn up." See Ramsh. 838. "Acies is applied to an army in martial array." See Crombie, p. 301. Vegetius says, *exercitus instructus;* Noltenius, *exercitus stans.* Compare note, p. 20, line 8.

12. Gallia citeriore. See note p. 17, line 36.

15. Eum, scil. *locum.*

18. Phalange. The Helvetii probably adopted this mode of arranging their forces from the Germans. It is said to have consisted of a dense mass of soldiers holding their shields over their heads so as to form a roof. (Compare the *testudo.*) On the Macedonian phalanx, so celebrated in the annals of Greece, see Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 100.

19. Primam. The *first* that they met, of course the *lowest* on the hill.—*Successerunt,* "advanced."

20. Suo, scil. *equo.*—*Omnium,* not of all the horsemen, but merely of all persons of distinction, such as the legates, tribunes, and young Romans of distinction who composed the suite of Caesar. (Schmitz.)

22. Cohortatus. This was the usual practice before a battle.

23. Pilis, "javelins *or* darts." The shaft of the *pilum* was partly square, and five and a half feet long; the head, nine inches long, was of iron, and jagged or barbed at the end, so as to be exceedingly difficult to draw out. The *pilum* was used either to throw or thrust with; and was peculiar to the Romans. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 489.

26. Quum .... inflexisset, "as the iron point had bent itself."

27. Evellere, scil. *ea,* i. e. *pila infixa.*—*Sinistra impedita,* viz. with the shield and the dart fixed in it. Their shields, as noted above, were carried over their heads, one shield lopping about half way over another, so that as the *pila* were cast from the high ground, a single dart would serve to fasten two or more shields together.

Page

28. Multi ut, i. e. *ita ut multi.* 24

29. Scutum, a shield of an oblong form.—*Nudo,* "unprotected."

30. Pedem referre, "to retreat."

31. Suberat, "was near."—*Passuum,* gen. pl. depending on *mille,* which is sometimes used as a substantive in the singular also. See Cicero, *pro Milon.* 20; *Philipp.* vi. 5.

33. Claudebant, "closed the enemy's line of march" = formed the rear-guard of the enemy.

34. Latere aperto, "on the right flank," which was open to attack in consequence of the shields being carried on the left arm.

37. Romani .... intulerunt, "the Romans advanced their ensigns (that were now) turned about, two ways" = the Romans having faced about, advanced (against the enemy) in two divisions. The first and second lines charged the Helvetii who had renewed the contest, and the third, having faced about, fought with the Boii and Tulingi. *Conversa* is regarded by some critics as spurious.

1. Ancipiti proelio, i. e. *dubio marte,* says Davies, because they 25 were ignorant to which side the victory inclined. Others say that the engagement is called *anceps,* because it was fought in two places, at the top and the foot of the hill.

2. Alteri .... alteri, "some (the Helvetii) .... others (the Boii and Tulingi)."

5. Hora septima. The day was divided into twelve hours between sunrise and sunset. They differed in length, of course, at different seasons of the year. The seventh hour would answer nearly to our one o'clock, the sixth hour corresponding exactly with our twelve o'clock, or noon.

6. Ad multam noctem, "during a considerable part of the night." See note, p. 23, line 17.

9. Mataras ac tragulas. The *matara* (or *matera*) is a Celtic word, signifying a javelin or lance. The *tragula* was also a species of javelin, thrown by means of a thong. The *matara* and *tragula* were chiefly used in Gaul and Spain; the *tragula* was probably barbed, as it required to be cut out of the wound. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 490.

12. Filia. If we may credit Plutarch, (*Vit. Caes.* c. 18,) even the women and children engaged in the battle on this occasion.

14. Nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso. There seems to be an awkward tautology here compared with what immediately precedes. Oudendorp and others think these or the former words are spurious. Oudendorp inclines to the opinion that the words *ea tota nocte continenter ierunt,* should be rejected.

16. Sepulturam. Burial, or the rite of sepulture, was always carefully attended to, in consequence of the notion that the spirit could not enter the abodes of the dead till the body was interred, or at least the soul must wander a hundred years on the banks of the Styx before it

Page

25 could cross. In the most ancient times the Romans buried their dead; the custom of burning, adopted to some extent in early times, does not appear to have become general till the later times of the republic. Marius was buried, and Sylla was the first of the Cornelian gens whose body was burned. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 460.

18. Ne eos . . . . juvarent. The subjunc. depends on *literas nunciosque misit,* in the sense of *mandavit per literas,* &c. (Andrews.) See A. and S. § 273, 2.

19. Qui si = "and if they."—*Se eodem,* &c. Construe, *se habiturum* illos, i. e. Lingones, *eodem loco quo* (in the same manner as) habeat *Helvetios.*

20. Cum, is sometimes omitted.

22. Inopia adducti. After active verbs the *cause* is seldom expressed by the simple ablat., but either by a prepos. or by the ablatives *causa, gratia,* &c. with a genit. Sometimes, however, as here, the ablat. is used with *ductus, motus,* &c. See A. and S. § 247, Rem. 2.

23. Qui, at the beginning of a sentence, is equivalent to a demonstrative.

24. Ad pedes, "at the feet" of Caesar.

26. Jussisset. The subject is Caesar.

28. Ea. This includes the men as well as the arms. See cap. 29.

29. Nocte intermissa, i. e. a night intervening between the time of their promise and the time when they must give up their arms.

32. Dedititiorum. These were persons who had voluntarily surrendered, with the condition annexed of not being reduced to slavery. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 341.—*Aut occultari . . . . ignorari posse,* "could be either concealed or remain wholly unnoticed."

33. Prima nocte, "at the beginning of the night."

36. Ierant, i. e. *ire coeperant;* otherwise *conquirerent* and *reducerent* are wanting in meaning.

37. Purgati esse, to be excused, acquitted of sharing in their guilt.

38. Reductos, &c. "Overtaking the Helvetii in their flight to the Rhine, he forced them to surrender their arms, and to pledge themselves to return to their own country. Six thousand of them who had fled in the night, in order to escape this disgrace, were brought back by the Roman cavalry, and, to use Caesar's own language, *treated as enemies.*" Michelet's *History of France,* vol. i. p. 46.

39. Perfugis. See note, p. 23, line 39.—*In deditionem accepit* See above, line 32.

26 **2. Fructibus amissis.** They had destroyed all the provision, their towns, &c., before they set out. See cap. 5.

3. Quo famem tolerarent. See A. and S. § 264, 7; Arnold, *Pr Intr.* § 60.

Page 26

4. **Copiam facerent.** The expression *copiam facere* = to have plenty, and make others partake of it.—*Ipsos*, scil. *Helvetios*.

7. **Vacare,** "to be uninhabited."

10. **Boios,** &c. Construe, concessit *Aeduis petentibus ut* (*Aedui*) *collocarent Boios in finibus suis, quod* (*Boii*) *cogniti erant egregia virtute: quibus* (*Boiis*) *illi*, i. e. the Aedui, *dederunt agros*.

13. **Atque ipsi erant,** "as they themselves were in," or, "as they themselves enjoyed."

14. **Tabulae,** "tablets" used for writing. The name was applied to any flat substance used for writing upon, whether stone or metal, or wood covered with wax. The latter were the most common, and were employed for almost every variety of purpose. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* pp. 944, 924.—*Literis Graecis confectae*, "written in Greek characters." Morus contends (see *Barker's Caesar*) that by the expression here used we are to understand "the Greek language." Oberlin quotes Scaliger as thinking that certain persons, taught the Greek letters by the people of Marseilles, wrote this account in Greek secretly, lest it should be known to the rest of the Gauls and the neighboring people. The more general opinion, however, is that the Helvetii, as well as other tribes, simply used the Greek alphabet in their writings. Marseilles, from whence probably they had become acquainted with it, was a Greek colony in the south of Gaul. See Bk. VI. 14.

15. **Perlatae.** Others read *relatae*.

16. **Ratio,** "an account."—*Exisset . . . possent* Dependent clauses, containing an indirect question, take the subjunc. See A. and S. § 265.

18. **Rerum.** Used comprehensively, in the sense of men or classes just alluded to, as in cap. 27, *ea* refers to both men and arms.

19. **Capitum Helvetiorum** = "Helvetians."

21. **Summa,** &c. Ancient writers, as Strabo, Plutarch, &c., differ from Caesar in regard to these numbers. Davies attributes much of the discrepancy to the errors of copyists.

23. **Censu habito,** "a census being taken," i. e. a numbering or review being made. *Census*, in the Roman sense, was something very different: it was made every five years; and not only was the number of the people estimated, but a general review was made, and their estates valued.

25. **Totius fere Galliae,** i. e. *Gallia Celtica*, the third of the three divisions of Gaul. The Belgae were then making preparations for war.

26. **Gratulatum,** "to congratulate him, saying," &c.

28. **Populi Romani,** the objective genit., "the wrongs which the Helvetii had done *to* the Roman people." See Z. § 423, note 1; A. and S. § 211, Rem. 10.

29. **Non minus ex usu** = "as much to the advantage."—*Terrae Galliae*. *Terra* is often thus followed by the name of a country put in apposition with it, instead of an adjective agreeing with it, or the name of

Page

26 the country in the genit. depending on it; "the Gallic country," or "the country of Gaul." (Andrews.)

30. Florentissimis rebus, ablat. absol. See A. and S. § 257, Rem 7.

35. Stipendiarias, "tributary." The *stipendiariae urbes* of the Roman provinces were subject to the payment of a fixed money tribute, *stipendium,* in contradistinction to the *vectigales,* who paid a certain portion, as a tenth or twentieth of the produce of their lands, their cattle, or customs. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 925.

39. Et jurejurando, &c., viz. *in eo concilio,* and when the meeting was assembled, they all took an oath that no one should divulge the subject discussed in it, &c.

27 **1. Nisi quibus,** i. e. *nisi ii quibus.*

4. Fuerant ad. Schmitz thinks the verb *esse* here contains the idea of coming, whence it is followed by *ad.* Comp. Cic. *ad Attic.* x. 16. *Ad* is usually regarded as equivalent to *apud.* Ciacconius and others reject *qui ante . . . . Caesarem,* as an interpolation.

5. Secreto in occulto, tautological. Either *secreto* or *in occulto* seems out of place here. Some editors throw out the latter words entirely. Oudendorp defends the reading in the text, interpreting *secreto,* out of the hearing of others; *in occulto,* out of sight or view.

6. Caesari. Instead of the possessive and subjective genit., a dative is sometimes used, as the remote object of a verb. See A. and S. § 211, Rem. 5, 1.

7. Non minus, &c. Supply *dicentes,* "saying that they were no less urgent and solicitous that what they (had said or should say =) say should not be divulged, than they were to," &c.

11. Divitiacus. See note, p. 22, line 10.—*Factiones,* not *factions* in the English sense, but *parties,* referring to the two great political parties which divided Gaul. "Two vast confederations divided the land: on the one hand the Aedui, united in the strictest bonds with the tribes of the Carnuti, the Parisii, the Senones, &c.; on the other the Arverni and Allobroges. The former appear to be the lowlanders, the Cymry, living under a hierarchy, the party of civilization; the latter, mountaineers of Auvergne and of the Alps, are the ancient Gauls, formerly forced into the mountains by the Cymric invasion, but restored to their preponderance by their very barbarism and attachment to a clannish life." See Michelet's *History of France,* vol. i. p. 39.

13. Hi, i. e. the Aedui and Arverni.—*Potentatu.* Davies notes this as a rather unusual word, but still used by some good writers.

15. Horum, i. e. the Germans.

16. Copias, "abundance, riches," &c. Some render "forces, "(*exercitus,*) which is the usual sense of the word in the pl. Davies and Oudendorp show, by numerous quotations, that the meaning we have given is not infrequent.

18. Nunc esse, scil. *Germanos.*

19. Semel atque iterum, "again and again."

Page

23. Hospitio. The relation of hospitality existed in ancient times, 27
not only between individuals, but also between states, and between individuals and states. See Bk. VI. 5; VII. 75. (Schmitz.)

28. Unum se, i. e. Divitiacus.

31. Postulatum. He did not, however, succeed. See Bk. VI. 12. Cicero (*De Divin.* i. 41) mentions his arrival, and also that he was one of the Druids.

33. Pejus, "a worse thing."

37. Juberet, "was ordering."

39. Pararentur, "were to be provided."

1. Uti omnes, viz. *Galli.* 28

2. Neque enim, &c. Construe, *neque enim Gallicum* (*agrum*) *conferendum* (i. e. in respect to fertility) *cum agro Germanorum, neque hanc* (i. e. Germanam) *consuestudinem victus comparandam* esse *cum illa,* (i. e. Gallica.) The usual order of *hic* and *ille* is not preserved in this passage. See A. and S. § 207, Rem. 23. The Gauls, though a rude people, were nevertheless far superior to the Germans in the refinements of society.

4. Ut semel = "as soon as."

6. Magetobriam. Oudendorp reads *Admagetobriae.* The situation of this place is not known with certainty.

7. Omnia exempla cruciatusque edere. Clarke reads, *omnia exempla cruciatus edere,* supposing that *edere cruciatus* is not good Latin; but Oudendorp contends that there is no more objection to the phrase *edere cruciatus* than to *edere clades,* (Lucan, iii. 680,) *edere caedem, ludos, pugnam,* (in Tacitus, Livy, Justin, &c.) Morus interprets *exempla cruciatusque* by hendiadys for *exempla cruciatuum,* and says *exempla* = *genera.* Hence, "he inflicted upon them every species of cruelty."

9. Iracundum. *Iracundus* denotes one of a hot, quick, passionate temper. See Ramsh. 585.

15. Non dubitare, scil. *se*, i. e. *Divitiacum*

17. Atque exercitus, "and (that) of his army."

18. Deterrere. Supply *eum*, referring to Ariovistus.

21. Habita, "having been delivered."

26. Respondere . . . . permanere, historical or descriptive infinitives.

28. Exprimere posset, "could extort." Some read *possent,* which is wrong, unless also be read *expromere.* He is said, *expromere vocem,* "who speaks;" *exprimere vocem,* "who forces to talk, and extorts words." (Oudendorp.)

29. Hoc = *tanto.*

30. Prae. Oudendorp reads *quam.* The reading in the text is that of the Oxford MS. *Prae* is sometimes joined redundantly to the comparative. See Z. § 310; A. and S. § 256, Rem. 13.

33. Tamen. Before this word a clause is understood with this mean-

Page

28 ing: although the others may not be able to take vengeance on Ariovistus, or expel him, still (*tamen*) they may take to flight. (Schmitz.)—*Sequanis*, dat. after participle in *dus*. See A. and S. § 225, III.

35. Omnes cruciatus, "all kinds of torture."

38. With **magnam se habere,** &c., supply *dicens.*—*Beneficio suo.* The allusion is to an act of kindness on the part of Caesar, since Ariovistus, during Caesar's consulship, and mainly through his influence, had been honored with the title of king and friend of the Roman people, and valuable presents had been made to him. Comp. cap. 35 et 43.

29 **1. Secundum ea,** &c. "Besides these, (representations on the part of the Gauls,) many (other) considerations," &c. "To have repulsed the Helvetii was nothing, if the Suevi invaded Gaul. Their migrations were constant, and had already carried there a hundred and twenty thousand fighting men. *Gaul was about to become Germany.* Caesar affected to yield to the prayers of the Aedui and Sequani, oppressed by barbarians. The same Druid who had solicited the assistance of Rome, undertook to explore the road, and to guide Caesar to Ariovistus." Michelet's *Histy. of France*, vol. i. p. 46.

2. Quare = *ut propterea.* See Bk. V. cap. 31.

10. Periculosum videbat, scil. *esse*, which is commonly omitted after verbs of perceiving, saying, judging, &c.

12. Cimbri Teutonique. These nations or tribes from the north of Germany overran Gaul, and the Province, and crossed the Alps into Italy in vast numbers. They were completely routed by Marius, B. C. 102. See Arnold's *Later Roman Commonwealth*, pp. 37–40; Michelet's *Histy. of France*, vol. i. pp. 41, 42.

15. Rhodanus, i. e. the Rhone (alone) divided. As the Germans were already settled in the country of the Sequani, they might easily cross the Rhone, since it was fordable. See cap. 6.

18. Placuit ei, i. e. Caesar.

20. Utriusque = here to *inter utrumque*, i. e. midway between Caesar and Ariovistus. See A. and S. § 213.—*Diceret*, "appoint." See cap. 5, 42, &c.—*Summis utriusque rebus*, "affairs of the greatest moment to both parties."

23. A se. Oudendorp omits *a*. With that reading, *facere* is to be supplied.

26. Emolumento, effort, labor, difficulty, &c. Oudendorp prefers *emolimento*, (from *emolior*,) which has the same signification.

27. Quid .... negotii, "what business."

28. Vicisset, the subjunc., used in reference to the sentiments of the speaker, not those of the writer. The student will already have noted this idiom as of frequent occurrence.

30. Responsis, "answer *or* reply."

31. Tanto ... affectus, "having been treated with so much kindness by himself and the Roman people."

32. Consulatu suo. This was the year before, B. C. 59.

Page

33. Hanc . . . gratiam referret, "he made this return," ironically, (says Andrews,) instead of *tam male gratus esset.* 29

35. Gravaretur = "grudged," or was reluctant.

36. Haec esse, &c. Since he was so unwilling to accede to Caesar's request, these were the demands which he felt it necessary to make. The student must observe that Caesar's object is to drive Ariovistus into some open act of hostility, in order that he may find a good excuse for making war upon him.

37. Quam, for *aliquam.*

1. Ejus, i. e. Ariovistus.—*Illis,* i. e. the Aedui. See cap. 31. If 30
construed with *liceret,* the Sequani are meant.

4. Impetraret, i. e. Caesar. Some read *impetrasset,* which seems to be more in accordance with the general principles of the language. See A. and S. § 266, 2, Rem. 4.

5. M. Messala, &c. This was three years before, i. e. B. C. 61.—*Censuisset,* "had decreed," probably in this same year.

6. Quod = *quantum,* or perhaps *quoad,* i. e. "as far as."

8. Sese, repeated from above (line 4) for the sake of perspicuity.—*Aeduorum,* objective genit.

12. Item = in the same manner, *or* with the same right.

15. Uteretur, scil. *Populus Romanus,* "how it (or they) should use their right."

17. Stipendiarios. See note, p. 26, line 35.

19. Vectigalia, "revenues."—*Deteriora faceret.* Some of the Aedui, because of Caesar's arrival, had ceased to pay their tribute, and others intended to follow their example.

20. Injuria, "without cause, unjustly," &c.

21. Convenisset, "had been agreed upon."

22. Longe . . . . abfuturum, "the name of brothers, given them by the Roman people, would be far from protecting them ; or, would be of no avail to them, (i. e. the Aedui.)"

23. Populi Romani, gen. governed by *frater,* contained in the adject. *fraternum.*—*Quod . . . . denunciaret,* "as to Caesar's threatening him," &c.

24. Se, i. e. Caesar.

26. Invicti Germani . . . . subissent, &c. "These words told but too deeply on the Roman army. All that had been reported of the stature and ferocity of these northern giants terrified the smaller race of the south ; and nothing was to be seen in the camp but men making their wills." Michelet's *History of France,* vol. i. p. 47.

27. Inter annos = *per annos,* "during (*or* for the space of) fourteen years."

33. Treviri autem, scil. *veniebant questum.*

34. Pagos, refers here to the inhabitants of the district. The Suevi consisted of a hundred *pagi,* each of which every year furnished a thousand men to make war abroad. The remainder of

Page

30 the inhabitants staid at home to cultivate the ground. See Bk. IV. cap. 1.

39. Minus .... posset, scil. *Ariovisto,* "Ariovistus could be less easily withstood." See A. and S. § 209, Rem. 3, (6.)

31 **1. Itineribus.** An ordinary day's march for soldiers was eight Roman miles, (something less than eight English miles.) This is according to Dr. Schmitz's note on this passage; but compare note, p. 48, line 17, where the distance usually travelled by Roman soldiers on a day's march is rated as much more.

4. Vesontionem, the modern *Besançon,* on the river Dubis, now *Doubs.*

6. Profecisse, "had accomplished" Oudendorp reads *processisse,* "had advanced."

7. Magno opere, commonly *magnopere.*

9. Facultas, i. e. *copia.* See cap. 11. *Navium facultas,* Bk. III. 9.

10. Ad ducendum bellum, "for protracting the war."

11. Dubis. The MSS. give a great variety of readings in place of the now received lection.—*Ut .... circumductum,* "as if drawn around with a pair of compasses," meaning in a circle.

13. Qua flumen intermittit, "where the river intermits," i. e. ceases to flow in a circular course about the town. *Intermittit* is here equivalent to *cessat, deficit, desinit,* &c.

15. Contingant, scil. *ripam.* Others take *ripae* as the nom. plural, and *radices* as the accus. By the construction here adopted *ripae* is the gen. sing. governed by *parte.*—*Hunc,* scil. *montem.*

21. Qui .... praedicabant, "who declared," denoting positive assurance.

24. Congressos, viz. *armis* or *bello.*—*Aciem oculorum,* "the fierce expression of their eyes."

26. Non mediocriter, an instance of the figure termed *litotes,* (a mode of expressing something by denying the contrary.)—*Mentes animosque,* "minds and spirits."

27. Hic primum, scil. *timor.*—*Tribunis.* The number in a legion was originally four, or according to Varro, three, and they were appointed by the general. Afterwards the number was increased to six, and their appointment left to the consuls and praetors. Their duties were to keep order in the camp, superintend military exercises, inspect outposts and sentinels, procure provisions, &c. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 1001.

28. Urbe, i. e. Rome.

29. Habebant, &c. A large number of young Romans accompanied Caesar into Gaul, and served as tribunes of the soldiers, or officers of the auxiliary troops.—*Quorum alius,* &c. "of whom one having alleged one reason, another another, which they said made it necessary," &c.

Page

31. Diceret. For this use of the subjunctive with *dico*, see A. and S. § 266, 3, (last paragraph.)—*Ut ejus*, i. e. Caesar's. 31

33. Vultum fingere, "compose their countenance," i. e. assume a cheerful appearance or demeanor.

36. Totis castris, ablat. of place, without a preposition.—*Testamenta*, "wills." Consult Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* pp. 960–965.

38. Centuriones, "centurions;" properly commanders of a hundred men. There were sixty centurions in a legion, and according as the strength of the legion varied from about three to six thousand, the numbers under a centurion's command would vary in proportion from about fifty to a hundred. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 231.—*Quique = et qui.* The decurions of the cavalry are meant: see note p. 24, line 1.—*Equitatu* for *equitatui*, the dative.

3. Rem frumentariam. This accusative is a construction adopted from the Greek, where it is very common; the ordinary Latin construction would be, *aut ut res frumentaria satis commode supportari posset.* (Schmitz.) 32

4. Timere .... ut, &c. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 95.

6. Audientes, "obedient."

9. Omnium ordinum, i. e. of all ranks or grades. There were thirty maniples or companies in a legion, and three in a cohort. As the maniples differed in rank, so also the centurions were of different grades. See under reference above, p. 31, line 38. Ordinarily councils of war consisted only of the consul, the legati, tribunes, and centuriones primipili, *or* primorum ordinum, *of the first centuries.*

11. Sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum, "that it was their place to inquire or consider."

12. Se consule, ablat. absol. = "during his consulship." This was only the year before.

18. De sua .... ipsius, "of their own valor, or of Caesar's watchful care."

19. Factum .... periculum, "that a trial had been made of this enemy," &c.

20. Cimbris, &c. See note, p. 29, line 12.

22. Videbatur. The use of the indicative instead of the subjunctive denotes a transition from the indirect to the direct discourse.—*Nuper*, i. e. about fourteen years before.

23. Servili tumultu. Caesar refers to the war of the gladiators under the conduct of Spartacus. For several years this mixed army of gladiators, slaves, outlaws, (to the number, it is said, of 120,000,) carried devastation over some of the finest districts of Italy. They were, at last, defeated entirely by Crassus with the aid of Pompey, B. C. 72. See Arnold's *Later Roman Commonwealth*, pp. 152, 159, 160.—*Tumultu.* The term is applied to any war carried on in Italy. See Ramsh. 145.—*Quos*,

Page

32 i. e. *servos*, implied in *servili*. Among these were many Gauls and Germans.—*Aliquid*, "somewhat."

25. Constantia, "a resolute spirit," a mind not to be moved by fear.

26. Inermos. Some read *inermes*. The insurgents were, at first, badly provided with arms.

28. In suis, i. e. of the Helvetii.

29. Illorum, i. e. of the Germans.—*Superarint*. The object to this verb is *quos*, which must be taken from the preceding *quibus*.—*Qui*, i. e. the Helvetii.

30. Exercitu, for *exercitui*.—*Adversum proelium*. See cap. 31.

33. Neque . . . fecisset, "and had given them no opportunity of battle."

34. Desperantes, i. e. the Gauls.

35. Magis ratione et consilio, "more by stratagem and cunning."

36. Cui . . . . capi posse, "that not even he (Ariovistus) could expect that our armies could be ensnared by that stratagem, for which there had been opportunity against men uncivilized and unskilled in warfare."

37. Capi = *in fraudem induci*.

38. In . . . . simulationem, "to the pretence."

39. Conferrent, "attributed."

33 **1. Officio** = ability, qualifications for commander, &c.

4. Quod, "as respects this, that," &c.

8. Facinore, referring to dishonesty or meanness in regard to pecuniary matters.—*Conjunctam*. Oudendorp reads *convictam*.

9. Innocentiam, "integrity."—*Perpetua vita*, i. e. "during his whole life."—*Felicitatem*, "good fortune." This was an important qualification for a general.

10. Bello. See cap. 27.

11. Collaturus, i. e. *dilaturus*.—*Repraesentaturum*, a law term = *statim facturum*, would do it at once.

15. Decima. The legions were styled the *first*, *second*, &c., according to the order in which they were raised.

16. Praetoriam cohortem. The *praetoria cohors* was the cohort of the praetor, or commander, and acted as his body-guard.

21. Princeps = *prima*.

22. Optimum judicium, "a very high opinion."

23. Paratissimam, "very ready."

25. Egerunt, i. e. they had a meeting with their tribunes and centurions, in which they desired them, &c.

26. Summa belli, refers to the general management of the war.

27. Imperatoris = to the general-in-chief. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Roman Antiq.* p. 530.

28. Satisfactione, "excuse."

Page

29. Ut millium, &c., "(he discovered) that by taking a circuit of more than fifty miles," &c. 33

36. Antea .... postulasset. See cap. 34.

39. Sanitatem, "a correct way of thinking."

1. Petenti, i. e. Caesar. 34

5. Ultro citroque, "to and fro."

8. Alia ratione, "upon any other terms."

10. Equitatu, for *equitatui*.

11. Omnibus .... detractis, "all the horses having been taken from the Gallic cavalry."

12. Eo = *in eos*, i. e. upon the horses.

16. Ei, "for that legion."

18. Ad equum rescribere, i. e. he raised them to the rank of *equites*, which was looked upon as a more honorable service, and requiring a higher census than the service on foot. When men first enlisted, they were said *scribi;* on being promoted from a lower to a higher order, they were said *rescribi*.

20. Satis grandis, "of considerable height."

21. Dictum = *constitutum*.

24. Ex equis, "on horseback."

27. Beneficia, "acts of kindness."—*Quod rex .... quod .... quod,* an instance of the figure termed *anaphora*, i. e. the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses.

28. Munera. The presents sent to kings usually consisted of an ivory sceptre, an ornamented toga, a curule chair, &c. See Livy, xxx. 15; Tacit. *Ann.* iv. 26.

29. Magnis .... officiis, "important services on the part of individuals."

30. Aditum, viz. *ad senatum*.

31. Postulandi, scil. *ea praemia*.

33. Quam veteres. The Aedui are said by Strabo to have been the first among the Gauls who embraced the friendship of the Romans.—*Ipsis*, i. e. the Romans.

35. In eos, i. e. to honor and benefit them, meaning the Aedui.—*Ut,* "how."

38. Sui, i. e. their rights, power, influence, resources, &c.

1. Quod .... posset? "but who could bear to have that taken from them which they brought to the friendship of the Roman people," i. e. which they possessed when they became friends and allies of the Roman people? 35

5. At, meaning here much the same as *saltem*, "at least."

8. Virtutibus = "merits."

9. A Gallis, i. e. the Arverni and Sequani. See cap. 31.

14. Omnes. This is beyond the truth. The Aedui and their allies alone made war against Ariovistus.

17. Velint, scil. *Galli.*—*De stipendio.* Caesar in his demands (as

Page

35 stated above) had made no allusion to the *stipendium* or tribute; but his demanding Ariovistus to restore the hostages would have deprived Ariovistus of the means of compelling the Gauls to pay it. Hence the expression *de stipendio recusare*, and not *stipendium recusare*. (Schmitz.)

21. Idque .... petisse, "and that he had sought it (viz. the friendship of the Romans) with that expectation."

22. Dedititii. See note, p. 25, line 32.

24. Quod .... transducat, "as to his having brought over," &c.

26. Nisi rogatus, "without being requested."

27. Defenderit, i. e. *arcuerit, propulsaverit.* See *Bell. Civ.* i. 7.

28. Prius .... venisse. Here again Ariovistus misstates the fact, for Domitius (consul, B. C. 122) had long before the present date conquered the Arverni. See Michelet's *History of France*, vol. i. pp. 39, 40.

30. Sibi, i. e. Caesar.—*Suas*, i. e. Ariovistus. What was his object in coming into Ariovistus's possessions?

31. Hanc Galliam, this Gaul, i. e. the part which he was occupying, viz. the country of the Aedui and Sequani.

32. Illam, scil. Galliam, i. e. the Roman province.

36. Bello Allobrogum. See cap. 6. Consult note p. 16, line 3. Some suppose (but wrongly, as Davies thinks) that allusion is to the war which Domitius and Fabius Maximus carried on against the Allobroges.

36 **1. Amicitia,** i. e. for the Aedui: perhaps reference may be to the friendship alleged to exist between the Romans and Ariovistus.

2. Sui .... habere, "had it (the army) for the purpose of crushing him."—*Qui*, at beginning of a clause = *ille*.—*Decedat.* The tenses in this speech frequently change from the imperfect to the present, and vice versa, and the *verbum dicendi*, on which the whole depends, must be supposed to change accordingly from the perfect indefinite to the present, "he said, he says." (Andrews.)

4. Eum, i. e. Caesar. There was probably ground for this assertion, since Caesar had violent enemies at Rome who were apprehensive of his designs, and dreaded the consequences of his insatiable ambition.

7. Ejus, referring to Caesar. So too in line 10.

10. Vellet, scil. Caesar.

12. In eam sententiam, "to this effect," *or* "to show his opinion."

15. Ariovisti. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 190.

17. Q. Fabio Maximo. He was consul, B. C. 121. *Cf.* note, p. 16, line 3.

18. Ignovisset. The Roman people were said to pardon (*ignoscere*) when they left the people they had conquered free, and permitted them to enjoy their own laws and to choose their own magistrates.—*In provinciam redegisset.* Those countries were said *in provinciae formam redigi*, which were ordered to pay tribute, and which were dispossessed of their own laws, so that magistrates, invested with supreme power, were yearly sent into them to administer the Roman laws, as was done in that same year with respect to the *Narbonensis Provincia.* But those provinces,

Page

which used their own laws, were called *liberae*, "free," as we learn from the text. (Hotomann, as quoted by Barker.) 36

21. Imperium. See Ramsh. 535.

22. Bello victam, i. e. *quamvis.—Uti,* infin. of *utor,* not to be confounded with *uti* for *ut.* It governs the ablative.

23. Voluisset, scil. *senatus.*

25. Ad nostros adequitare. The repetition of the preposition in compounds of this kind is frequent, but it must not be forced into the text against the authority of MSS. Thus we have, cap. 50 and 51, *educere e castris* and *educere castris;* in the second place *e* has been inserted without the sanction of the MSS.: II. 2, *abesse a periculo;* II. 33, *ex oppido exire.* See also *ad* III. 9, *ex navi egredi;* IV. 26, &c., *per partes perequitare;* IV. 33, V. 44, *in eam irrumpere;* V. 45, *in jaculo illigari,* and in almost every page. So *adire ad aliquem,* and *ad aliquid.* See Hirt. *Bell. Afr.* 38, 74, *ad oppidum accurrere.* Similar expressions in Livy are noticed by Drakenb. *ad Praef.,* "In civitatem immigraverunt;" he has even *adequitare alicui,* and *ad aliquem.* See cap. 14, and elsewhere. (Oudendorp.)

27. Fecit . . . . recepit. Oudendorp commends the reading *facit* and *recipit,* notwithstanding *imperavit* follows, and remarks that this change of tense is elegant, and frequent among historical writers.

31. Per fidem, viz. *hostibus datam,* i. e. during the time that he had pledged himself to abstain from hostilities.

32. Vulgus militum, "the common soldiers."

34. Interdixisset. *Interdico* is sometimes used with dative of person and ablative of the thing.

35. Ut = *quomodo,* "how." Oudendorp thinks the word probably spurious, and Clarke is for placing it before *fecissent.*

36. Injectum est. The Greek version renders ἐνέφυ, which led Jo. Wasse to conjecture *innatum est,* in place of the received lection.

39. Uti aut, &c., asking of him that, &c.

1. Legatis, is rejected by some editors. 37

7. Procillus. He is spoken of in cap. 19 and 53.

8. Flacco. Flaccus had been governor of the province of Gaul, in B. C. 83. See Cic. *pro Quint.* 76.

9. Civitate donatus erat. The freedom of the city was regarded as a great privilege and honor. They who received this mark of distinction were accustomed to assume the *praenomen* and *nomen* of the individual by whose influence they had obtained the coveted honor.

10. Qua multa . . . . utebatur. The expression *multa lingua uti* is the same as *multum lingua uti,* "to make much use of a language," "to speak it often *or* fluently."

11. Peccandi causa, "ground for exception."

12. Hospitio. As the ancients had not proper inns for the accommodation of travellers, the Romans, when they were from home, used to lodge at the houses of certain persons, whom they in return entertained at their

Page

37 houses in Rome. This was esteemed a very intimate connection, and was called *hospitium*, or *jus hospitii*. The violation of the laws of hospitality was considered as the greatest impiety. *Cf.* note, p. 27, line 23. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* pp. 511–513.

13. Quae diceret, "what Ariovistus might say, or had to say."

16. An. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 120, *f.*

21. Eo consilio, "with this design," viz. to cut off, &c.

23. Dies continuos quinque, "for five days successively."

24. Pro castris, "before the camp."

25. Potestas = "an opportunity." See Ramsh. 890; Crombie, p. 73.

28. Hoc, in reference to the description which follows.—*Exercuerant*, "had exercised" = had trained. Compare Bk. VII. 65.

30. Quos ex omni, &c., "whom they had selected out of all the army, each horseman one, for his own protection."

31. Cum his, scil. *delectis peditibus.*

32. Si .... durius, i. e. if the danger was unusually great at any particular point.

33. Si qui = *si quis.*

35. Jubis .... adaequarent, "being supported by the manes of the horses, they could keep pace with them."

39. Eum locum, quo in loco. Repetitions of this kind are frequent in Caesar. See note p. 15, line 36.

38 **1. Acieque triplici instructa,** "the army being drawn up in three lines." This was usual in the Roman army. The *hastati* occupied the first line, the *principes* the second, and the *triarii* or *pilani* the third. As Caesar nowhere makes use of these terms, it is doubtful whether in his day the lines were distinguished by these names. Compare note, p. 16, line 18.

5. Hominum millia expedita, instead of *hominum millia expeditorum*. The light-armed troops carried nothing but their arms, and were extremely rapid in their movements.

6. Quae copiae. See Z. § 372, *note*.

9. Auxiliorum. The auxiliaries were the troops sent by foreign kings and states in alliance with Rome.

11. Instituto suo, "according to his plan."

12. A majoribus, scil. *castris.*

14. Prodire, "come out" of their encampment for the purpose of fighting.

16. Acriter utrinque. Diodorus (xxxviii. 48) relates that on this occasion Ariovistus came near taking the camp of the Romans, and that he was so elated with this success that he ventured to neglect the prophecies of the women, and to come to an engagement with Caesar.

20. Proelio. The word here means a regular battle, in which the whole army takes part. See Ramsh. 838; Crombie, p. 85; Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 348, note *t.*—*Hanc reperiebat .... quod.* See A. and S. § 273, 6.

Page

21. **Matres familiae.** See Plut. *Caes.* 712. They reposed the greatest confidence in women, because they thought that there was something holy and prescient in them; whence it came to pass that some of them were reckoned among divinities. Tac. *Hist.* Bk. IV. 61; Vetere apud Germanos more, quo plerasque feminarum fatidicas, et augescente superstitione arbitrentur Deas. So Aurinia and Velleda were deified, *Germ.* 8. (Davies.) 38

22. **Sortibus,** "lots." The ancient Germans used various modes of obtaining a knowledge of futurity. Tacitus tells of their cutting small slips of a tree and scattering them at random on a white cloth, of their observing the motion of whirlpools, the noise of waters, &c.

23. **Ex usu,** "of advantage, advantageous."

24. **Fas,** here refers to what is in accordance with divine law and religious rites. See *Krebs,* § 382; Ramsh. 596; Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* § 124, note *d.*—*Novam lunam.* This oracle applies only to the present case, and at another time the women might advise the very opposite. The new moon was generally considered an auspicious time.

27. **Alarios,** "the auxiliaries," so called because placed on the wings (*alae*) of the army.

28. **Pro castris minoribus,** "before the smaller camp."

30. **Triplici .... acie.** See above, line 1.

32. **Generatim** = *per gentes,* "by nations *or* tribes."

36. **Eo** = *in iis,* i. e. in the chariots, &c.

37. **Passis manibus,** "with outstretched hands." Oudendorp and others read *passis crinibus,* "with dishevelled locks."

39. **Quaestorem.** The duties of this officer were nearly equivalent to those of our paymaster. It was his business to manage the public accounts, take care of the supplies of provision, money, &c., to sell the booty acquired by conquest, &c. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 828.

1. **Eos,** i. e. the legates and quaestor. 39

2. **Eam partem,** i. e. the enemy's left wing.

3. **Animum adverterat** = *animadverterat.*

4. **Itaque,** i. e. *et ita.*

5. **Pila.** See note, p. 24, line 23.

7. **Phalange.** See note, p. 24, line 18. Of course, as the Germans fought *generatim,* by nations, there were as many phalanxes as there were tribes or nations.

9. **Scuta .... vulnerarent,** "tore off with their hands the shields (which the enemy held above their heads) and wounded them from above," i. e. stabbed downwards and wounded the soldiers underneath.

11. **Sinistro cornu,** i. e. of the enemy.—*Dextro,* also of the enemy.

13. **Adolescens,** properly a person that is growing up, a person from fifteen to thirty years of age. See Ramsh. 29.

14. **Equitatu** for *equitatui.*—*Expeditior,* "more disengaged."

18. **Prius .... quam,** separated by figure called *tmesis.*

Page

39 **21. Lintribus.** See note p. 18, line 20.—*Repererunt.* Some read *petierunt*, which Oudendorp and the best editions reject

22. Ariovistus. See Bk V. cap. 29.

24. Duae .... uxores. The Germans usually had but one wife. Their chiefs and nobles, however, made an exception and had two or more wives. See Tacit. *Germ.* 18.

26. Duxerat, "had married." See note p. 17, line 15.

27. Duae filiae, nominatives absolute, or supply *erant.*

34. Neque ejus .... diminuerat, "nor had fortune diminished by his distress or suffering any thing from the great joy and rejoicing, (on this occasion,)" i. e. they were not obliged to diminish aught of their rejoicing by mourning for Procillus's death.

36. Sortibus. See note p. 38, line 22.

38. Beneficio, "by favor."

40 **2. Quos Ubii.** The Ubii inhabited the right bank of the Rhine, and were hostile to the Suevi. See Bk. IV. cap. 3. The common text has *quos ubi*, which is an inferior reading.

5. Bellis, i. e. the wars with the Helvetii and Germans.

6. Hiberna. The winter-quarters of the Romans were strongly fortified, and furnished, particularly under the emperors, with every accommodation, like a city, as storehouses, workshops, &c.

7. Citeriorem Galliam, i. e. Gaul south of the Alps, or Cisalpine Gaul.

8. Conventus agendos. The *conventus* were court days or meetings of the provincials in certain places, at which the governor of the province held his courts of justice. For this purpose each province was divided into a certain number of districts or circuits, which were likewise called *conventus.* The proconsul generally chose twenty distinguished provincials, who assisted him in the administration of justice and formed his council. (Schmitz.) See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom Antiq.* p. 306.

BOOK SECOND.

SYNOPSIS.

Whilst the Roman army lay in winter-quarters, and Caesar was occupied in Cisalpine Gaul, he received intelligence that a confederacy had been entered into by the Belgae to expel the Romans from the Gallic territory. Having levied two new legions, he made a rapid march northward, and formed a strong camp on the Axona *or* Aisne.

That he might divide the forces of his opponents, he dispatched the Aeduan troops against the Bellovaci, one of the most powerful Belgic tribes. After two unsuccessful enterprises, the first to storm Caesar's encampment, and the second to cut off his army from provisions, the confederates, in consequence of the reports they heard of the operations of the Aedui, and compulsion by famine, determined to return to their respective homes, and defend themselves within their separate localities. Previously to the dispersion of their forces, all the tribes had entered into treaties offensive and defensive. Caesar immediately marched against three of the most formidable of the confederates, and at their request agreed on terms of pacification.

However, the Aduatuci and Nervii still persisted in setting him at defiance; and, an advance having been made against the latter people, they very nearly succeeded in routing and destroying the Roman army. According to his own account, the primary fault must be ascribed to Caesar's rashness, and his contempt of an untried enemy. He sent forward some officers to select a site for a camp on the west bank of the Sambre. The opposite bank of the river (at that point only three feet in depth) was crowned by a wood, in which the Nervian forces were posted, and which Caesar had neglected to reconnoitre. Before he had time to take his position, the Nervii issued from the wood, in so great numbers, and with such celerity, that both the general and his legions were taken by surprise. The military experience of his officers and soldiers induced them to disregard his general orders at such a crisis, and to endeavor, by any means whatever, to keep the foe in check.

When his camp was a thoroughfare for the enemy, and his cavalry in full flight, by his skilful measures, his enthusiasm, and his sovereign sway over the minds of his troops, Caesar rescued victory from the Nervii, almost to the extinction of their name.

Admiring the valiant spirit of this people, and pitying their fallen condition, he restored the survivors to their homes, and laid his commands on the neighboring tribes that they should give them no molestation. The reduction of the Aduatuci followed the defeat of the Nervii, as an easy consequence.

1. In hibernis. Caesar most likely had some of his legions with him in Cisalpine Gaul, who there went into winter-quarters Page 41

2. Uti . . . . demonstravimus. See Bk. I. 54.

3. Quam, in agreement with its predicate noun, instead of its antecedent *Belgas*. See A. and S. § 206, (10.)

Page

41 **4. Dixeramus,** i. e. *diximus.* The pluperfect here indicates that between the time *when he had said it* and the present moment, something took place which is now past. Caesar is very partial to this use of the pluperfect, *dixeramus.* Cf. II. 24, 28; and IV. 27. (Schmitz.)

6. Omni Gallia, i. e. Celtic Gaul, the Belgae being excepted.

7. Ab nonnullis Gallis, scil. *Belgae sollicitarentur.*

8. Partim qui, i. e. *quorum pars.* The indicative in the sentence following shows that Caesar is relating his own convictions and not simply the reports which he had heard.

10. Hiemare et inveterascere = should become accustomed to wintering in Gaul, as in a country wholly subdued.

11. Mobilitate = *propter mobilitatem.*

12. Ab nonnullis. Supply *sollicitarentur,* referring still to the Belgae.

13. Ad conducendos homines, "for hiring troops."

14. Eam rem .... consequi, "effect that end," or accomplish such a design.—*In imperio nostro,* "under our government," i. e. while the Romans held the supremacy in Gaul.

42 **2. Interiorem.** Oudendorp prefers *ulteriorem,* as more in accordance with Caesar's usual manner. Davies defends *interiorem,* "*the interior* or *central* part of Gaul."

3. Pedium. Pedius was Caesar's nephew.

4. Ipse, i. e. Caesar.

5. Dat negotium, "he gives orders."

6. Uti .... cognoscant, "to obtain information."—*Apud eos,* i. e. Belgas.

7. Constanter, "uniformly, invariably," &c.

9. Duodecimo die. These words are probably interpolated.

13. Celerius omni opinione, "quicker than any expectation;" sooner than any one imagined, &c.

14. Remi. The Remi inhabited the country between the Marne and the frontiers of the Belgae.—*Proximi,* &c., i. e. are the first who present themselves to a person going from the Belgae.

16. Qui dicerent. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 483. Oudendorp gives instances in which these words are omitted.—*Se,* &c. Before *se,* which is the object of *permittere,* a second *se* is understood, which is the subject of *permittere.* See cap. 31; Z. § 605. *Permittere* is equivalent to *committere.*

21. Germanos. They are enumerated in the next chapter, viz. the Condrusi, the Eburones, the Caeraesi, and the Paemani. (See p. 43, line 15.)—*Cis,* i. e. on the southern bank of the Rhine.

23. Furorem, "eagerness, infatuation, madness," &c.—*Ut ne Suessiones .... consentirent,* "that they could not dissuade even the Suessiones, &c. from uniting with them."

24. Consanguineos suos, i. e. of the Remi. See Ramsh. 48.—*Jure .... legibus.* "*Jus* is right, as the authorization of action founded

Page

in nature, on law and custom, and as the aggregate of all binding laws, law; *lex* is a law, or binding precept of superior authority, for actions of free agents; it is a species of the genus *jus*." See Ramsh. 596. 42

27. Quantae, "of what force, *or* how powerful."

30. Ibi consedisse, i. e. *cis Rhenum.*

32. Teutones Cimbrosque. See note, page 29, line 12. The more usual form is *Teutoni, Teutonos,* &c.

34. Magnos spiritus sibi sumere = to boast greatly. See Bk. I. 33.

37. Propinquitatibus affinitatibusque. The former is relationship by blood, (also of every kind of connection and relationship;) the latter is relationship by marriage. See Ramsh. 48.

39. Bellovacos. Their capital was Bratuspantium, afterwards Caesaromagus. The modern name Beauvais is derived from the name of the tribe.

2. Armata millia, i. e. *armatorum millia.* 43

3. Imperium, "management *or* direction."

4. Suos, referring to the Remi.—*Latissimos.* Some prefer *laetissimos,* but the phrases *lati agri, campi,* &c. are continually used.

6. Potentissimum, scil. *regem.*—*Quum . . . . tum etiam,* "not only . . . . but also."

9. Summam totius belli, "the management *or* direction of the whole war."

12. Longissime absint, "are very remote."

16. Arbitrari, i. e. *Remi se dicebant.* These tribes seem not to have been present at the meeting of the Belgae, whence the Remi are not quite certain about the number of their forces. (Schmitz.)

18. Liberaliter, "kindly." Caesar, in his speech, showed them great kindness and friendship.

21. Ad diem. On the very day appointed. See Bk. V. 1; VII. 77.

22. Magno opere, more correct than *magnopere,* according to Oudendorp. So, too, *quanto opere* for *quantopere.* It means, "with great earnestness."—*Rei publicae,* i. e. *Romanae.* The expression, *communis salutis,* refers to both the Romans and the Aedui.

23. Manus hostium distineri, "that the forces of the enemy be prevented from uniting." The importance of this fact is evident by considering that the forces of the enemy amounted to about 300,000, and Caesar's to about 60 or 70,000.

27. In unum locum. *Locum* is frequently omitted by other writers, but Caesar usually prefers the form in the text. See I. 34; III. 16; VI. 10; &c.

28. Vidit. He had got his information from the Remi, but he was as confident and certain as if he had seen it himself.

30. Flumen Axonam, quod. See A. and S. § 206, (9.)

31. Castra. See note, p. 18, line 24.—*Quae res.* "This position" —*Post eum,* i. e. Caesar. So *ad eum,* line 34.

Page

43 **37. Sex cohortibus.** The cohort was the tenth part of a legion, which in Caesar's days numbered about 4,500 or 5,000 men, (see note, p. 16, line 18:) hence six cohorts will amount to nearly 3,000 men.

38. Duodeviginti pedum, i. e. in breadth, or, as some say, in depth. —*Munire jubet*, i. e. the soldiers, (*milites.*) Sabinus was on the other side of the river. Some prefer to read *muniri jubet.*

44 **2. Ex itinere,** "on their march," and without delaying to pitch their camp. See Bk. I. 25.

3. Sustentatum est, "the assault was supported."

4. Gallorum .... atque Belgarum, "of the Gauls as well as of the Belgae."—*Oppugnatio*, "the mode of attack."—*Haec* = "of this kind."

5. Moenibus. "*Moenia*, the city wall, especially the highest part of it, as bulwark, fortification." See Ramsh. 767; Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 233; Crombie, p. 19.

6. Murum. See references just given.

7. Testudine. The name *testudo* was applied to the covering made by a close body of soldiers, who placed their shields over their heads to secure themselves against the darts of the enemy. The shields fitted so closely together, as to present one unbroken surface, without any interstices between them, and were also so firm that men could walk upon them, and even horses and chariots be driven over them. A testudo was formed (*testudinem facere*) either in battle, to ward off the arrows and other missiles of the enemy, or which was more frequently the case, to form a protection to the soldiers when they advanced to the walls or gates of a town, for the purpose of attacking them. Sometimes the shields were so arranged as to make the testudo slope. The soldiers in the first line stood upright, those in the second stooped a little, and each line successively was a little lower than the preceding down to the last, where the soldiers rested on one knee. This was called *fastigata testudo.* See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 965.—*Portas succedunt.* This verb takes an accus. as well as dat.

8. Facile, i. e. without danger.

11. Summa nobilitate. Supply *vir.*

12. Venerant. See cap. 3.

14. Posse. This verb depends on a verb of saying, implied in *nuncios mittit.*

15. Eo. Schmitz takes it in the sense of *ideo;* others render "thither," meaning Bibrax.—*De media nocte*, "soon after midnight."

16. Numidas. The Numidians were celebrated warriors, and always endeavored to engage the enemy in the night-time. Their horsemen used neither saddles nor bridles.

17. Baleares. The Balearic islands are in the Mediterranean, now called *Majorca* and *Minorca.* The inhabitants were famous slingers and archers. It is said that boys had no victuals allowed them but what they brought down from some high post with their slings, (Florus, iii. 8.)

Page

These troops, the archers and slingers, are here to be considered as a 44
light-armed infantry.

19. Hostibus . . . . discessit. The preposition *ab* is usually expressed after this verb.

21. Quos, in reference to both the preceding nouns. The construction of *adire* with accusative, is common.

22. Omnibus copiis. Caesar sometimes omits *cum;* at others, adds it. See I. 26; IV. 21, &c.

23. Et . . . . posuerunt, "and encamped within less than two miles." *Ab* here signifies "at the distance of," the point from which the distance is reckoned being expressed by the distance itself.

27. Proelio supersedere, "to decline a battle."

29. Sollicitationibus periclitabatur, "he made *frequent trial of.*"

30. Pro = *ante.—Loco . . . . idoneo,* ablative absolute.

33. Adversus, i. e. on the side facing the enemy. Schmitz says *adversus* is an *adjective* belonging to *collis,* though in reality applying only to a part of it, viz. that part which faced the enemy.

35. Dejectus, for *dejectio.—Frontem . . . . redibat,* "gently sloping in front, sank gradually to the plain." The word *fastigatus* is applied to what has a pyramidical form and terminates in a slender or spiral top.

37. Passuum quadringentorum, i. e. in length.—*Extremas fossas,* "at both ends of the ditch."

38. Tormenta. These consisted of engines by which large stones and showers of arrows were thrown against an enemy.

1. Pugnantes, "while fighting." 45

7. Si = *an.*

11. Secundiore equitum nostrorum proelio. Oudendorp reads *secundiore equitum proelio nostris.* Schmitz takes *secundiore proelio* as ablative absolute.

15. Eo consilio, "with this design." See A. and S. 249, II.

17. Si minus potuissent, "if they could not succeed in doing this."

19. Commeatuque nostros prohiberent, "and might cut off our men from provisions." Clarke and others read, *commeatusque nostros sustinebant.*

21. Levis armaturae. The cavalry were armed only with javelins.

22. In eo loco, i. e. where he found the enemy.

23. Impeditos, "entangled *or* embarrassed."

24. Per eorum corpora = "through the midst of."

27. Oppido, i. e. Bibrax.

31. Domum suam. On tms construction of *suam* with *domum,* without a preposition, see A. and S. § 237, Rem. 4.

32. Ut, quorum. Oudendorp reads *et, quorum.* With this latter reading *ut* is understood.

33. Convenirent. Instead of this we might have expected the infinitive *convenire,* as in the preceding clause we have *reverti;* but *reverti*

Page

45 is the real object of the enemy's decree, whereas *convenirent* expresses the intention or purpose for which they are to return. (Schmitz.)

34. Et . . . . uterentur, "and might subsist on the abundance of provisions which they had at home."

36. Divitiacum atque Aeduos. See cap. 5.

38. His, i. e. the Bellovaci.

39. Non poterat, "it was not possible to persuade," &c.

46 **1. Vigilia.** See note, p. 18, line 23.

4. Consimilis, "very-like."

5. Speculatores, "scouts *or* spies." These were sent before an army to reconnoitre the ground and observe the movements of the enemy. Under the emperors there was a body of troops called speculatores, who formed part of the praetorian cohorts and had the especial care of the emperor's person. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Gk. and Rom. Antiq.* p. 905.

8. Exploratoribus. See note preceding. Festus makes a distinction between *speculatores* and *exploratores*, which (according to Dr. Smith) is not sustained by the usage of ancient writers.

9. Novissimum agmen. See note, p. 20, line 8.

13. Ab extremo agmine, i. e. *in extremo agmine* = those in the rear, with whom our men first came up, &c.

14. Ad quos. A relative, like a qualifying adjective when referring to a collective noun, sometimes takes the gender and number of the individuals whom the noun denotes. (Andrews.) See A. and S. § 323, 3, (4.) But Oudendorp suspects the words *ad quos ventum erat* to be a marginal gloss.

17. Perturbatis ordinibus, "their ranks being broken."

18. Praesidium, "security *or* safety."

19. Quantum . . . . spatium, i. e. they slew as many as the remaining part of the day allowed them. See Bk. IV. 35.

20. Destiterunt, scil. *interficere.*

23. Reciperent. *Recipere ex,* "to recover from." See Bk. IV. 34.

24. Itinere confecto, viz. *in fines Suessionum:* as soon as he had reached their territory, he hastened (*contendit*) to Noviodunum, the modern Soissons, which name is derived from the Suessiones, whose capital it was.

25. Ex itinere, "on his march;" as he passed along.—*Oppugnare,* "assaulting, attempting to conquer by attacks from without." See Ramsh. 737.

28. Expugnare, "conquering by storm." See Ramsh. 413.—*Vineas agere.* The *vineae* were roofs of wicker-work resting upon posts eight feet in height. The roof was generally sixteen feet long and seven broad. It was also usually light, so as to be carried by the soldiers. The sides as well as the roof were covered with raw hides or wet cloth, as a protection against fire, by which the besieged frequently destroyed the vineae. Under these the soldiers endeavored to undermine the wall, or

Page

used the *aries* or battering-ram. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek* 46
and Rom. Antiq. p. 1050.—*Quaeque* = *et quae.*

31. Aggere. The *agger* was a mound, usually composed of earth, which was raised round a besieged town, and was gradually increased in breadth and height till it equalled or overtopped the walls. At the siege of Avaricum, (Bk. VII. 24,) Caesar raised in twenty-five days an agger three hundred and thirty feet broad and eighty feet high. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 31.

32. Turribus. Besides the towers with which the *agger* was provided, there were others which were moveable, of great size, and particularly important in storming a fortified place. They were made of beams and planks, and covered, on three sides at least, with iron, and also raw hides and quilts moistened, to protect them from fire. Ancient writers speak of towers six, ten, and even twenty stories high, and from thirty to fifty feet square. They contained various engines, the battering-ram, catapultae, balistae, ladders, &c., and were moved forward to the wall on wheels, placed for security inside of the tower. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* pp. 1027, 1028.

36. Primis, scil. *hominibus.*

39. Duxit. Oudendorp reads *ducit.*—*Qui quum se. Qui,* at the beginning of a sentence, is often rendered as a demonstrative = "when these," &c.

1. Bratuspantium. See note, p. 42, line 39. The ruins of a town 47
called Bratuspante, a little north of Beauvais, are said to have existed as late as the sixteenth century.

3. Majores natu = "the old men."

7. Passis manibus, "with outstretched hands." *Passis* is from *pando,* to open, to spread out.

10. Ad eum, i. e. to Caesar.

11. In fide atque amicitia, "in alliance and friendship."

12. Qui dicerent, "who had told them."

14. Et . . . . defecisse, et, "they had both revolted, and," &c.

15. Qui hujus, &c. The order is, (eos) *qui fuissent principes* (= auctores, "authors") *hujus consilii, profugisse in Britanniam, quod intelligerent,* &c.

17. Petere non solum. Some of the old editions read, *Praeterea petere non solum,* &c.—*Bellovacos,* &c., "that not only the Bellovaci, but also the Aedui in their behalf, begged him to exercise," &c.

20. Amplificaturum, scil. *eum,* i. e. Caesar.

21. Quorum, referring to the Belgae.—*Consuerint,* i. e. the Aedui.

22. Honoris Divitiaci, "of regard to Divitiacus."

23. Eos, i. e. the Bellovaci.

28. Quorum de natura moribusque, "concerning whose character and manners."

29. Nullum aditum esse, i. e. *non licere adire ad eos mercatoribus.*

Page

47 **30. Nihil pati . . . esse . . . increpitare,** &c. *Nihil*, by a common species of syllepsis, is referred to *vinum* instead of *pati*, to which it belongs; "they suffered no wine," for "they did not suffer any wine." (Andrews.)

31. Ad luxuriam pertinentium. These words are wanting in some of the best MSS. Oudendorp suspects them to be a marginal gloss, which has crept into the text.

35. Confirmare, i. e. *affirmare*, "openly declared." Caesar frequently uses the verb *confirmo* in this sense. See Bk. I. 41; VI. 33, &c.; also Cicero, *De Amicit.* 3.

37. Triduum. Clarke reads *triduo.*

38. Captivis, probably some of the country people whom Caesar had taken prisoners on his march.—*Sabim*, the modern *Sambre*, a tributary of the Meuse, into which it falls at Samur.

48 **1. Consedisse,** "had encamped *or* taken up a position."

4. In itinere, "on their march."

5. Quique, i. e. *et eos qui.*

6. Conjecisse, i. e. they had quickly or hurriedly taken or sent them.

8. Exploratores. See note, p. 46, line 8.

9. Castris. See note, p. 18, line 24.

10. Dedititiis. See note, p. 25, line 32.

12. Eorum . . . . perspecta, "the manner of our army's march during those days having been observed."

13. Perspecta. Davies reads *prospecta*, but very inappropriately, according to Oudendorp.

14. Impedimentorum. The *impedimenta* included every thing that an army was obliged to carry with it, usually the heavier articles of baggage, such as the tents, &c. For carrying these, mules and horses were employed.

15. Neque esse quidquam negotii, "and that there would be no difficulty."

17. Sub sarcinis. The load, which Roman soldiers carried, is almost incredible; provisions for fifteen days, sometimes for more; utensils, viz. a saw, a basket, a mattock, an axe, a hook, a leathern thong, a pot, &c.; three or four stakes, and frequently more; sometimes as many as twelve were added: the whole amounted to about sixty pounds weight, besides arms; for Roman soldiers considered these not as a burden, but as a part of themselves. Under this load it is said that they commonly marched twenty miles a day, often a greater distance. When on a march, the baggage was generally placed either in the middle or in the rear of the army.

19. Adjuvabat . . . . quod Nervii, "it added weight also to the advice of those who brought the information that the Nervii," &c.

24. Teneris arboribus incisis atque flexis. The young trees or saplings were notched or cut in sufficiently to allow of bending them to a horizontal direction. The branches continuing to grow, would shoot forth laterally. Among these branches the brambles and thorns being

placed very thickly, they altogether formed a hedge so close that the cav- 48
alry could not penetrate through them, and formed, as Caesar states, a fortification not unlike to a regular wall. The reading here is perplexed. Some editors have *que* after *crebris*, and *enatis* after *ramis*, which Oudendorp rejects. The passage is also variously pointed. We have followed Oudendorp.

26. Non modo, for ***non modo non,*** as in many other passages in this author. See Z. § 724, b.

28. Non .... consilium, "that this advice ought not to be neglected by them."

30. Loci .... quem locum. See note, p. 15, line 36. Caesar is rather fond of this kind of repetition.

31. Summo, viz. *colli*, "from its top."

33. Collis, i. e. another hill.—*Huic*, i. e. the hill which the Romans had selected for their camp.

34. Infima. This is either an accus. = *quod ad infima loca*, or an ablat. with *parte* understood. The sense is the same either way.

36. Aperto, i. e. the part of the hill not covered with trees.

37. Secundum flumen, "along the river."—*Stationes*, "guards *or* troops." See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 222.

1. Aliter se habebat, ac, "was otherwise than." 49

3. Expeditas, i. e. unincumbered with the loads usually carried by the soldiers. See note, p. 48, line 17.

5. Totum agmen claudebant, "closed up the whole rear," i. e. formed the rear-guard.

9. Silvas, referring to the parts of the forest, the whole of which is afterwards expressed by *silva*.

10. Quem ad finem, "as far as."

11. Porrecta. Schmitz says this cannot belong to *loca*, on account of its position, and must be taken in the sense of a substantive. *Cf.* Bk. VII. 88. Clarke takes *porrecta* absolutely for *porrecta camporum*. Oudendorp, if the MSS. would allow, would reject *loca*.

12. Opere dimenso, referring to the space marked out for pitching and fortifying the camp.

15. Convenerat, "had been agreed upon."—*Ita*, "so," *or* "accordingly," here used as an adverb of time.

16. Ut, "as," *or* "as soon as." *Ita ut* is also rendered, "in the same order *or* manner in which," &c.—*Constituerant*, "they had formed." Oudendorp gives various examples of this verb, used in this application, from Livy, Frontinus, &c. See his note, *in loc.*

19. Proturbatis, "repulsed *or* dispersed."

20. In manibus nostris. The phrase denotes that the enemy were so near that they could be almost touched with the hands, or engaged hand to hand in close fight. *Cf.* Sall. *Jugur.* 57; *cupere proelium in manibus facere.*

Page

49 **21. Adverso colle,** "up the hill;" just as *adverso flumine* is up the river. Some supply *ab* or *ex* before these words, so that the hill opposite the camp is meant.

24. Vexillum proponendum, "the standard to be displayed." The vexillum was a square piece of purple cloth elevated on a gilt staff, to which a cross-bar was adapted for the purpose. It was here hoisted over the general's tent, as the signal to the soldiers to make ready for battle. When they were ready, they were called together by the sound of a trumpet, (*signum dare tuba;*) they were then harangued by the general, after which the trumpets sounded and the advance began. The watchword (*signum*, line 28) was given usually by means of a *tessera*, or tablet, with the word of battle inscribed on it, and passed along from rank to rank. The *signum* was sometimes given *viva voce*, and was whatever word or words the general pleased, as Caesar's *felicitas*, at the battle of Thapsus; or *Venus genetrix;* or Marius's *Lar Deus;* or Sylla's *Apollo Delphicus;* or Brutus and Cassius's *libertas*, &c.

26. Tuba. This was a long, straight bronze tube, gradually increasing in diameter and terminating in a bell-shaped aperture. The Romans used only wind instruments for their martial music.—*Ab opere*, i. e. from the works of the encampment.

27. Aggeris, &c. They were dispersed in quest of materials for constructing the mound or rampart. See note, p. 46, line 31, and p. 18, line 24.

29. Successus et incursus. Caesar loves to join two words, of which the one interprets the other: VII. 30, Patienda et perferenda; *Bell. Civ.* I. 5, Extremum et ultimum; II. 4, Invisis, latitantibus; III. 13, and elsewhere. *Incursus* is here the interpretation of the more rare word *successus*, which in this place denotes "a rapid and prosperous incursion." So Bk. I. 24: Ipsi confertissima acie rejecto nostro equitatu, sub primam aciem successerunt. (Oudendorp.)

31. Erant subsidio, "were of advantage."—*Usus*, "experience."

34. Singulisque legionibus, "and from their respective legions."

35. Nisi munitis castris, "until the camp was fortified."—*Hi*, scil. *legati*.

37. Spectabant, "looked for *or* minded." Some read *expectabant*, "waited *or* delayed."—*Per se*, "of themselves."—*Videbantur*, i. e. *administranda esse*.

39. Quam in partem, &c., i. e. *in eam partem decucurrit, quam partem fors obtulit.*

50 **1. Milites .... cohortatus quam, &c.,** i. e. he said no more than was necessary to impress upon them the necessity of remembering, &c.

4. Telum adjici. Oudendorp quotes Bos's excellent explanation of the phrase *adjicere telum*, viz., so to send as to reach the destined place, which is within the throw of the weapon. *Adigere* has the same force.

7. Pugnantibus occurrit, "he found them (already) fighting."

Page

8. Insignia. These were the ornamental parts of the armor, especially of the helmet. See Bk. I. 22, and note p. 23, line 23. 50

9. Ad galeas induendas. Caesar wishes to show the shortness of the time, which scarcely allowed leisure even for putting on their helmets. For the Romans, when they travelled, generally carried their helmets appended to their breasts or backs, and but little time was required for putting them on. (Vossius.) Oudendorp prefers the reading *inducendas*, and says that in general *inducere* is applied to whatever covers any thing; hence it is properly applied to helmets, which cover the head.—*Scutisque tegmenta*, (tegimenta.) The Romans were very curious about such matters; their shields were painted or otherwise ornamented. This seems to have been particularly the case under Caesar, of whom Suetonius writes: Habebatque tam cultos, (sc. milites,) ut argento et auro politis armis ornaret. Simul et ad speciem, et quo tenaciores eorum in proelio essent metu damni. In the most ancient times of Greece, shields had figures embossed or painted on them, not for mere ornament, but for good omens of success in war, and to strike terror into the enemy: see the description of shields in Euripides' *Phoenissae*. (Vossius.) The covers were made of leather, and were necessary to protect these ornamented shields from dust or injury to the brass.

12. In = "while."—*Quaerendis suis.* Some read *quaerendos suos.*

13. Dejectus, "declivity."

14. Necessitas, "shortness," or "exigency."

15. Diversis legionibus, the ablative absolute. Schmitz says the structure of the sentence is an unusual one, and might have been, *diversae legiones aliae alia*, &c. Oudendorp and others read, *diversis locis legiones aliae alia*, &c.

17. Impediretur, "was obstructed."

18. Neque quid in quaque parte opus esset, scil. *poterat provideri.*

19. Administrari, "be given."

20. In tanta rerum iniquitate, "in so disadvantageous a position of affairs."

23. Acie, the old form of the genitive for *aciei*. See Z. § 85, note 3; A. and S. § 90, exc. in decl. Sallust (*Jugur.* 21) uses this old form: *et quia die extremum erat.* So too Virgil, (*Georg.* i. 208,) *libra die somnique pares ubi fecerit horas.*

24. Exanimatos. Caesar (says Davies) frequently uses this word to signify those who with difficulty draw their breath, from lassitude. See Bk. III. 19. It is here equivalent to "panting *or* breathless."—*His*, referring to the soldiers of the ninth and tenth legions.—*Ea pars*, i. e. the right wing of the Gauls, to which was opposed the left wing of the Romans.

26. Conantes, i. e. the Atrebates.

27. Ipsi, i. e. the Roman soldiers.

30. Diversae duae legiones, "two other legions."

Page

50 **33. Tum** = *eo tempore et ea re.* (Oudendorp.) Some editors omit *tum.*—*Nudatis castris,* scil. *defensoribus.* The legions who were charged with this duty were in pursuit of the enemy.

37. Aperto latere, "on the open flank," i. e. on the left side, from which the legions had withdrawn.

38. Summum castrorum locum, i. e. the highest part of the hill on which the camp of the Romans was situated.

51 **1. Levisque armaturae peditis.** These were the light-armed troops, called *velites* from their activity and swiftness. These did not form a part of the legion, but fought in scattered parties wherever they were required. They carried a strong circular buckler three feet in diameter; the staff of their javelin was two cubits long and about the thickness of a finger: and the iron was formed with a fine point, in order that it might be bent on the first discharge, and consequently rendered useless to the enemy. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 104.

3. Dixeram. See towards end of cap. 19.—*Adversis hostibus occurrebant,* "met the enemy in flank," i. e. as they entered the camp they saw before them the enemy, who were already there.

4. Aliam in partem fugam petebant. The more usual form of expression is *aliam partem fuga petebant;* good authors, however, use *fugam petere.* See Livy, ix. 23; Virg. *Aen.* xii. 263, &c.

5. Calones. These were the slaves or servants of the Roman soldiers, so called from carrying wood (κᾶλα) for their use. From their being continually with the soldiers, they became quite expert in military matters, and occasionally did good service in emergencies.—*Decumana porta.* See note, p. 18, line 24.

8. Praecipites .... mandabant, "fled precipitately."

10. Aliique aliam in partem, "some in one direction, some in another."

13. Quum, &c.; construe, *quum vidissent nostra castra compleri,* &c.

15. Diversos = "each in a different place *or* quarter."

20. Cohortatione, as was mentioned in cap. 21, for in all that has been related, from cap. 21 down to the 24th, Caesar had not taken any part. (Schmitz.)

21. Ubi suos urgeri. The clauses of this long period depend, as to their construction, upon the verb *vidit,* line 31. Oudendorp gives the older form *urgueri.*

23. Centurionibus. There were six centurions in each cohort. See note, p. 16, line 18.

24. Signo amisso. The loss of the standard was considered the height of disgrace, particularly to the standard-bearer, and was sometimes punished with death.

26. Primopilo. This was the first centurion of the first maniple of the triarii, also called *princeps centurionum, primi pili centurio.* He

Page

was intrusted with the care of the eagle, and had the right of attending 51
the councils of the general. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 231. The MSS. vary here between *primopilo*, *primipilo*, and *primipili*. With the last, *centurione* must be understood. The form *primipilus* is condemned by Oudendorp, though adopted by others. See his note, *in loc.*

28. Ab novissimis, for *novissimorum.*

29. Desertos, i. e. *a ducibus*, meaning those who no longer had any leaders to urge them on to fight.—*A fronte*, "in front."

30. Subeuntes, "advancing," or "coming up."

31. In angusto, supply *loco*. He saw that affairs were now in a critical state, or in an extremity.

35. Signa inferre = "to advance."—*Laxare*, "to open *or* extend." The maniples, as related above, were crowded together, so as actually to hinder their efforts against the enemy.

37. Pro se quisque, i. e. each for himself, to the best of his ability, without looking to see what others were doing.

38. Operam navare, "to exert his utmost efforts."

3. Conversa . . . . inferrent, "having faced about should charge 52
the enemy." The two legions, here united, were placed back to back, so that the back of each was protected by the other.

4. Alius . . . . ferrent. Partitives, as *alius*, *alter*, *quisque*, &c., from their containing the idea of plurality, are frequently joined with plural verbs. So Sall. *Jugur.* 53, *alius alium laeti appellant*, &c. Schneider reads *inferret* in this passage.

5. Aversi = "in their rear."

8. Cursu incitato conspiciebantur, i. e. *cursum incitaverant et jam conspiciebantur.*

12. Qui, though referring to *legionem*, takes the gender and number of *milites*, included in the word *legio*. See A. and S. § 323, 3, (4.)

14. Versaretur = *esset*, "were."—*Nihil . . . . fecerunt*, "made all the haste they could;" they did all that was possible, as far as speed was concerned.

21. Se praeferrent, "thrust themselves forward before the legionary soldiers." They wished and determined to surpass these by their deeds of valor.

22. Praestiterunt, "displayed."

25. Ut ex tumulo, "as if from a mound *or* eminence."

26. Non nequidquam . . . . ausos esse, "had not in vain, *or* to no purpose dared," &c.

28. Flumen, i. e. the Sabis or Sambre.

30. Redegerat. The phrase *redigere facilia* is rare, though used in other places by Caesar. It is equivalent in meaning to *reddere facilia.*

33. In aestuaria ac paludes. See cap. 16.

3. Uti = "to occupy," viz. to retain and use their own territories 53
and towns.

Page

53 **5. Supra.** See cap. 16.

8. Oppidum. What town is meant is uncertain; some think the modern town of Namur, others Falais.

9. Ex omnibus in circuitu partibus, "on all sides round about."

11. Ducentorum pedum, genitive, governed by *aditus*.

14. Ipsi, i. e. the Aduatuci.

16. Agere, "to drive," referring to their cattle.

17. Citra flumen Rhenum, i. e. on the south side of the Rhine.

18. Post eorum obitum, i. e. after the overthrow of their countrymen. See note, p. 29, line 12. *Obitus* commonly signifies the death of an individual; here it is used of the destruction of a number of persons.

19. Exagitati, "harassed."—*Quum alias*, &c., i. e. at one time they made war upon their neighbors, at another defended themselves from attack.

20. Eorum, referring both to *hi* and to those with whom they had been at war.

22. Primo adventu. See note, p. 23, line 17.

23. Excursiones, "sallies."—*Parvulis proeliis*, "slight skirmishes."

24. Pedum duodecim, scil. *in altitudinem*.

25. Circummuniti, &c. In besieging a town the Romans used to draw a wall or rampart entirely round it, and at a considerable distance from it. This wall was strengthened with forts or turrets at convenient intervals, and answered the double purpose of cutting off the inhabitants from provisions and supplies, and of guarding against attacks from their allies and friends from without.

26. Vineis. See note, p. 46, line 28.—*Aggere*. See note, p. 46, line 31.—*Turrim*. See note, p. 46, line 32.

27. Irridere .... increpitare, historical infinitives.

28. Quo tanta. The MSS. and old editions, according to Oudendorp, have *quod tanta*. The reading in the text is that of Lipsius, Scaliger, and others.—*Ab*. See note, p. 44, line 23.

32. In muros, "*to*, i. e. near the walls."

33. Moenibus. See Ramsh. 767.

35. Non se existimare. What here follows, down to *possent*, depends upon the participle *locuti*, and forms only the introduction to the speech of the Aduatuci, the sum and substance of it being contained in the words which follow. (Schmitz.)

37. Et ex propinquitate pugnare. These words not occurring in many old MSS., are marked with brackets, as in the text, by Oudendorp: he also thinks *dixerunt*, in the next clause, suspicious.

39. Unum petere, ac deprecari, i. e. "they requested that he would not do one thing."

54 **2. Audirent.** The subjunc. is used as expressing the sentiments of those who were speaking, not those of the historian. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* § 59.

Page

5. Sibi praestare, "that it was better for them."—*Eum casum*, i. e. the calamity or misfortune of being deprived of their arms. 54

6. Per cruciatum. The *means* is often expressed by *per* with an accus.

10. Aries. The battering-ram was the chief engine in the attack of places, and was of two sorts, the one rude and plain, the other artificial and compound. The former was nothing more than a large beam, which the soldiers bore on their arms and shoulders, and with one end of it, by main force, assailed the wall. The compound one was a long beam like the mast of a ship, armed at one end with iron in the form of a ram's head. It was suspended by the middle with ropes and chains, fastened to the beam that lay across two posts; hanging thus equally balanced, it was thrust forward by a number of men, and drawn back: this was continued until the wall was battered down. The men who worked the ram were protected by a wooden roof over the machine, so as to form a "testudo." The besieged made various efforts to defend their walls against the force of this tremendous instrument of attack. They attempted to set it on fire; they threw down great stones, so as to break off the iron head of the ram; caught the head of it in a noose, or a large pair of forceps armed with teeth, (called the *lupus;*) interposed bags of chaff or soft materials between the wall and the ram, &c. The Romans usually allowed terms to a town which surrendered before the ram began to play; after that they had to endure the consequences of a storm. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 92.

11. Nisi armis traditis, i. e. *nisi arma tradita essent.* See A. and S. § 257, Rem. 10.

12. Fecisset. See cap. 28.

14. Facere, i. e. *se facturos.* The pres. is here used to denote what is future. See Bk. IV. 21; VII. 21, &c. Andrews takes it as the imperf., "they were doing," implying activity, and ready obedience.

16. Aggeris. See note, p. 46, line 31.

20. Sub vesperum, "towards evening."

21. Ne .... acciperent. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 58, (*b.*)

22. Ante inito .... consilio, quod, "a plot being entered into beforehand, because," &c.

23. Deducturos, "would lead *or* draw off."

24. Denique = *saltem*, "at least."

27. Vigilia. See note, p. 18, line 23.

29. Eruptionem, "a sally."—*Celeriter.* This belongs to the words *ignibus significatione facta*, i. e. *signo dato.*

35. Ad = "about." It is here equivalent to *circiter.*

38. Sectionem .... universam, "all the spoils," i. e. every thing in the town, consisting of moveable property and men. The purchasers generally afterwards retailed the goods to others, and this was called *secare.* Hence *sectio* signifies all the goods that are afterwards to be retailed.

Page 55 **4. Oceanum**, i. e. the Atlantic.

8. Incolerent. This subjunc. depends upon *quae*, which contains the idea of "although," (*quum;*) namely, although they lived beyond the Rhine, and thus had nothing to fear, still they send ambassadors, &c. (Schmitz.)

9. Quae . . . daturas . . . facturas. Some read *qui . . . daturos . . . facturos*, referring to *legati;* but Oudendorp prefers as in the text. *Nationibus* is the antecedent.

15. Dies quindecim, acc., expressing duration of time. It is to be taken with *supplicatio*, and is equivalent to *quindecim dierum*, or *per quindecim dies.*—*Supplicatio.* This was a public solemn thanksgiving, or supplication to the gods decreed by the senate, when all the temples were opened, and the statues of the gods frequently placed in public upon couches, to which the people offered up their thanksgivings and prayers. A thanksgiving for a signal victory was commonly for three or five days. To Pompey, on concluding the war with Mithridates, ten days had been decreed. Afterwards they were increased in number to forty, fifty, and even sixty days.

BOOK THIRD.

SYNOPSIS.

The Farther Province being tranquilized, Caesar determined that the road by the passes of the Alps, on which travellers and merchants were exposed to many dangers, and heavy imposts, should be rendered a safer thoroughfare and medium of commerce between Italy and Gaul.

With the view of intimidating and coercing the marauding clans, he sent Galba, with one legion, to winter among them; but, after a hazardous, although successful encounter with thirty thousand mountaineers, that officer was forced to retrace his steps, and pitch his winter-camp within the Roman province.

During the same winter, whilst he abode in the remote province of Illyricum, information reached Caesar that the Armoric, or maritime states, on the west coast of Celtic Gaul, had formed a combination with the Aquitani and Belgae; were making warlike preparations on a great scale; and, setting at defiance the law of nations, had thrown his envoys into prison. He dispatched orders that shipping should be built on the Loire, and lost no time in hastening in person to the scene of action. Having sent three divisions of his forces against as many sections of the allies, he chose, as his own opponents, the Veneti, the most powerful maritime tribe.

In the absence of his fleet, his first undertaking was to storm their towns, and subdue them by land; but this he discovered to be a fruitless enterprise. Their towns, generally well fortified, were situate on peninsulas or promontories; and their own transports, with those collected from the adjacent states, and from Britain, assembled at any place to which he laid siege, in so great numbers, that they could easily convey the population, with their effects, from one town to another. By this policy, they gave his troops employment during a great part of the summer.

Brutus, a young man whom he had appointed admiral, arrived with the fleet, formed his line-of-battle near the coast, and received the attack of the Veneti in presence of Caesar and the army. The action lasted from ten in the morning till sunset. From their superior adaptation to the tides and tempests of the ocean, and the great height of their decks, Brutus had to cope with many difficulties in boarding the enemy's vessels; but this purpose having at length been carried into execution, the Roman discipline prevailed, and few of them effected a retreat to the shore.

At the same time, Sabinus subjugated the Unelli; and shortly after, Crassus, by two decisive victories, quelled the hostile factions in Aquitania.

About the same time also Caesar undertook an expedition against the Morini and Menapii, but after some partial success, was obliged by the season of the year to lead back his army to winter-quarters.

Page 56

5. Mittendi, scil. *eos.*

6. Portoriis. The *portoria* signify the money exacted by the inhabitants from the merchants for the liberty of conveying (*portare*) their merchandise through those places. So Sueton. *Jul.* 43; Peregrinarum

Page

56 **mercium portoria**; the sum paid for the importation of foreign merchandise. The Greek version has erroneously, *πολλοῖς φορτίοις*, as if *portoria* meant the same as *onera*. (Davies.)

13. Octodurus, probably the modern town of Martinach in the canton the Vaux.

15. Hic, i. e. *vicus*.

57 **3. Eum locum,** referring to that part of the village in which the cohorts were to pass the winter.

4. Hibernorum. The word generally signifies "winter-quarters:" here it means the time spent in winter-quarters.

5. Eo, i. e. the *hiberna castra*. See note, p. 40, line 6.

8. Id, referring to what has just been stated: the clause from *ut* to *caperent* contains a further explication of *id*. See Bk. VI. 14.

10. Legionem, "a (single) legion."

11. Plenissimam. A legion was said to be *plenissima* when it had all the soldiers and officers which belonged to it according to law.—*Compluribus*, scil. *militibus*.

20. Sibi persuasum habebant, "they had a firm persuasion *or* conviction." Vossius says that this expression is so unusual, that he proposes a change in the reading and punctuation.

21. Opus hibernorum, referring to the various works in connection with the winter-quarters, as buildings, shops, &c.

22. Neque . . . . provisum, "nor had a sufficient supply of corn and other provisions been procured."

29. Subsidio veniri, scil. *posset;* "neither could aid come to them," i. e. their countrymen could not come to assist them.

32. Ad salutem contenderent, "they should hasten to seek safety."

34. Eventum experiri, to wait for the result of the operations of the barbarians.

37. Collocandis atque administrandis, "for arranging and executing."

38. Decurrere, conjicere, &c., historical infinitives.

39. Gaesae. These were javelins used by the Celtic tribes. We find them mentioned not only in Gaul, Spain, and among the Alpine tribes, but also in Italy.

58 **1. Frustra,** "without effect."

3. Hoc superari = "in this they were under a disadvantage."

4. Pugnae . . . . proelio. See Crombie, p. 85; Ramsh. 838.

6. Propter paucitatem, "on account of the smallness of their number."—*Non modo* for *non modo non*, as elsewhere.

8. Sui recipiendi, "of recovering himself."

10. Deficerent. This verb more usually governs the accus.

11. Languidioribus nostris, ablat. absol. = *quum nostri jam languidiores essent*.

13. Extremum casum, "the utmost crisis," the greatest misfortune which could befall a besieged army.—*Primipili*. See note, p. 51, line 26.

Page

15. Diximus. See Bk. II. 25. 58

17. Unam spem, "the only hope."—*Extremum auxilium*, "the last resource."

19. Intermitterent, scil. *ut.*

23. Portis. Compare note, p. 18, line 24.

24. Sui colligendi, "of rallying themselves." The expression (like the one above, line 8) is unusual, instead of *se colligendi.* The *sui* must be taken as a plur. See Z. § 660.

26. In spem . . . . venerant, "had conceived the hope."

32. Armis exutis, "stript of their arms."

34. Alio consilio. Probably (as Schmitz observes) he intended to enjoy peace, restore his men, and live on terms of friendship with the barbarians.

35. Aliis occurrisse, i. e. *et aliis se occurrisse.*

1. Omnibus de causis, "on all considerations," or on every ground. 59

3. Ita = "for these reasons."

4. Illyricum. This also had been placed under Caesar's government. It bordered on the Adriatic opposite Italy, and included a large extent of country along the Danube.

6. Crassus. See Bk. I. 52; II. 54.

7. Mare Oceanum. The latter word, according to Caesar's usual manner, serves to explain the former, and limits it to the Atlantic.

8. Praefectos. This was a name for several kinds of officers, viz. the prefects who commanded the allies, those who commanded the horse, these who superintended the camp, workmen, &c. The first-named are here meant, who were in rank equal to the tribunes. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 102.

9. Tribunos. There were six tribunes in each legion. See note, p. 31, line 27.—*Unellos.* Others read *Sesuvios;* others *Esubios;* and others *Lexovios.*

14. Civitatis, i. e. the Veneti.—*Auctoritas.* See Ramsh. 126.

18. Aperto. Properly it belongs to the sea itself, though joined to *impetu maris*, the impetuosity of the sea. *In* denotes the cause of the state of things described; = "as the open sea is very impetuous," &c.

19. Ipsi, i. e. the Veneti.

20. Initium, &c., i. e. they were the first who kept back the Roman envoys, and those whom they did retain were Silius and Velanius.

23. Subita . . . . repentina. See Ramsh. 271.

26. Acturos, scil. *se.*

27. Sollicitant, ut . . . . mallent. The imperf. subjunc. after an historical present is not infrequent.

34. Naves longas. Ships or galleys of war were called *naves longae*, because they were of a longer shape than those of burden, (*naves onerariae*,) which were more round and deep: the ships of war were chiefly propelled by oars, the ships of burden by sails. The ships of war were variously named from their rows or banks of oars: those having two

Page

59 banks, were called *biremes;* three, *triremes;* four, *quadriremes;* five, *quinquiremes* or *penteres.* The Romans seldom had ships of more than five banks of oars, and therefore those of six or seven are called by a Greek name, *hexeres, hepteres;* and above that, by a circumlocution, *naves octo, novem,* &c., *ordinum* or *versuum.* The rowers are generally supposed to have been placed above one another, on different stages or benches on the side of the ship, not in a perpendicular line, but in the form of a *quincunx.* The oars of the lowest bench were the shortest, and those of the other benches were longer in proportion to their height from the water. There were three different classes of rowers: the first sat in the highest part of the ship, near the stern; the second, in the middle; and the last, in the lowest part, next the prow. Critics, however, differ widely as to the number of oars and rowers, the arrangement of the mariners, &c. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.*, article "*Ships.*"

35. Remiges. Slaves were generally employed by the Romans as rowers and mariners. The average number of men in a war galley of ordinary size was two hundred. From the ancient accounts, it seems that they propelled the galleys with very surprising swiftness. Consult Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* pp. 889–895.

36. Nautas. These had the management of the sails, &c. The soldiers who fought on board the ships were generally raised for that particular service, and styled *classiarii* or *epibatae.* In a vessel of the size mentioned in the preceding note, there were on some occasions as many as thirty epibatae added to the crew and marines.—*Gubernatores.* The *gubernator* was "the pilot," who steered the ship and directed its course: he sat at the helm, and gave orders about spreading the sails and plying the oars. It was his duty to know the signs of the weather, to be acquainted with ports and places, and particularly to observe the winds and stars: for, as the ancients knew not the use of the compass, they were directed in their voyages, chiefly by the stars in the night-time, and, in the day-time, by the coasts and islands, with which they were acquainted.

39. Cognito. They learned by Caesar's arrival, that they would have to contend with him, and not simply Crassus.—*Quantum .... admisissent,* i. e. *quantum sibi nocuissent,* "how great a crime they had committed against themselves," i. e. how greatly they had injured themselves by a course of conduct which would recoil upon their own heads.

60 **1. Facinus.** See Ramsh. 1044.—*Legatos .... retentos,* instead of *retentionem legatorum,* "the detaining of the ambassadors."

2. Apud. Oudendorp reads *ad,* which is equivalent here to *apud.*

5. Hoc, "on this account."

6. Pedestria, &c., "they knew that the approaches by land were interrupted by arms of the sea," &c.

7. Navigationem, "access by sea."

10. Ut, in the sense of "granting that *or* supposing that," as often.

14. Aliam .... atque, "other .... than."—*In concluso mari,* i. e. the Mediterranean.

17. Venetiam. Not a town, but the country of the Veneti. Giani 60
and others take it to be a town, the modern Vannes.

18. Socios, &c. "Caesar no longer concealing his design of subduing Gaul, undertook the reduction of all the coast tribes. He penetrated the forests and marshes of the Menapii and Morini, (Zealand and Guelders, Ghent, Bruges, Boulogne;) while one of his lieutenants subdued the Unelli, Eburovices, and Lexovii, (Coutances, Evreux, Liseux;) and another, the young Crassus, conquered Aquitaine, although the barbarians had summoned to their aid from Spain, the old brothers-in-arms of Sertorius. Caesar himself attacked the Veneti and other tribes of our Brittany. This amphibious race inhabited neither the land nor the water. Their forts erected on peninsulas alternately inundated and deserted by the tide, could be besieged neither by the one nor the other. The Veneti maintained a constant communication with the other Britain, and was supplied from it. To reduce them, it was necessary to be master of the sea. Nothing checked Caesar. He built vessels, formed sailors, and taught them to secure the Breton ships by using grappling-irons and cutting their ropes. He treated hardly this hard people; but the lesser Britain could only be conquered through the greater. Caesar made up his mind to invade it." Michelet's *History of France*, vol. i. p. 47.

24. Injuriae .... equitum. The *equites* are the persons sent as legati, who were of equestrian rank, and the *injuriae retentorum equitum* (See A. and S. § 274, Rem. 5) is the wrong consisting in detaining them, though the personal wrongs which they suffered may be meant to be included.—*Rebellio .... defectio.* See Ramsh. 324.

26. In primis, ne. Supply *metus* or *cura*, a noun of fear or apprehension being implied before *ne.*—*Hac parte*, scil. *Galliae.*—*Neglecta*, i. e. *non punita.*

28. Gallos .... studere. The natural fickleness and levity of the Gauls were almost proverbial.

34. Mandat .... adeat .... contineat, scil. *ut. Ut* is often omitted before the subjunctive, after verbs of *asking, reminding*, &c. See A. and S. § 262, Rem. 4.

36. Auxilio. A very old MS. has *in auxilio*, "among the auxiliaries," a reading which Oudenderp does not disapprove.

38. Cum cohortibus legionariis duodecim. As a legion consisted of ten cohorts, Crassus had of course under his command one legion and two cohorts.

1. Galliam, i. e. Celtic Gaul. 61

3. Eam manum, instead of *eorum manum*, meaning the forces of the Unelli and the others.

9. Extremis lingulis, "on the extreme points of tongues of land." These were not so elevated as the promontories.

11. Bis .... XXIV. Oudendorp reads *bis .... XII.*, according to the MSS., but it seems difficult to reconcile the fact that the tides are twelve hours apart, with the words in the text. The Oxford MS. omits

Page

61 *bis*, which would remove the difficulty. Schneider reads *his* (referring to the Gauls inhabiting the sea-coast) instead of *bis*.

13. Afflictarentur. The subjunctive denotes here mere possibility; since the ships might or would be injured, if, &c.—*Utraque re*, "by either circumstance," i. e. either the ebbing or flowing of the tide.

15. Operis, i. e. the mound and piers erected by the Romans.—*Superati*, scil. *oppidani.*—*Extruso mari*, "the sea having been kept off or warded off by mounds and ditches."

16. His, i. e. *aggere atque molibus.*

17. Cujus rei, i. e. *quarum*, scil. *navium.*

22. Vasto, &c. The ablatives to *portibus* are ablat. absolute; "as the sea was vast and open, the tides strong," &c.

24. Armatae, "rigged or equipped."

25. Planiores, "flatter."

26. Decessum, "ebbing."—*Excipere possent*, "they might be able to meet," the ships being conceived as an army that meets the dangers arising from shallows and low water.

29. Vim et contumeliam. As these are personal attributes, the sea must here be regarded as personified, as in the preceding sentence.

30. Transtra. Schmitz takes these for beams running across the boat, so as to make it firm and strong. The usual translation is "benches of the rowers."

32. Alutae tenuiter confectae, "thin dressed skins."

33. Lini, "of linen," i. e. canvass.

38. Congressus, "meeting *or* conflict."—*Una*, i. e. *sola.*—*Pulsu remorum. Pulsu* is thought to be a marginal gloss. Caesar usually employs *incitare*, &c. See Bk. III. 14; IV. 25; VII. 60, &c.

39. Praestaret, scil. *nostra classis.*—*Reliqua*, "all other things." —*Pro* = "considering."—*Illis*, scil. *navibus.*

62 **2. Rostro.** The *rostrum* was a sharp-pointed iron attached to the prow of the ancient ships of war for the purpose of running into and breaking those of the enemy.

3. Adjiciebatur = *jaciebatur ad.*

4. Scopulis. Others read *copulis*, referring to the hooks or grappling-irons by the aid of which they boarded the enemy. Scaliger reads *incommode* with *scopulis.*

11. Neque his noceri posse, "and they could not be injured."

14. Armorum. The *arma* comprised not only arms but every thing necessary for the equipment of a fleet, such as sails, ropes, anchors, &c.

17. Quam rationem pugnae insisterent, "what mode of fighting they should adopt." *Insisterent* contains the idea of great exertion and activity.

19. Excitatis, i. e. on the ships of the Romans; "although towers were erected," &c. These were frequently raised on ships about to engage, from whence stones and missive weapons were discharged.

Page

21. Gravius, "with greater force." 62

24. Muralium falcium. The *murales falces* were iron hooks fastened to long poles, by means of which the walls of a besieged town were pulled down, or the defenders of a wall dragged down.

25. Destinabant. The verb is used in its primitive meaning, "to fasten to."

28. Armamentis. The rigging and tackling of a ship, its sails, sail-yards, oars, ropes, &c., were called by this name.

32. Latere posset, "could escape observation."

35. Dejectis, i. e. from the top of the masts.

36. Transcendere .... naves, "to board the enemies' ships."

38. Expugnatis, scil. *ab Romanis.*

1. Quo = *in quam.* 63

2. Malacia ac tranquillitas. The words explain each other; the former (the Greek *μαλακία*) being a calm, and the latter the stillness prevailing during a calm.

6. Hora fere quarta, "about ten o'clock in the forenoon."

9. Quum .... tum, "as .... so also;" "both .... and," &c.

11. Navium .... fuerat, "whatever shipping they had."

14. In quos .... statuit, "whom Caesar therefore determined to punish with greater severity."

15. Eo .... quo = *ideo .... ut,* "for this reason .... that."

17. Sub corona vendidit, "he sold as slaves." It was an ancient custom among the Romans when they sold prisoners of war into slavery to put wreaths (*corona*) on their heads, as a sign that they were prisoners of war. Hence the expression *sub corona vendere,* "to sell a person as a slave." Others understand by the term *corona* the ring of Roman soldiers who stood around the captives while they were exposed to sale.

22. His paucis diebus, "during these few days," during which Sabinus had been upon his march into their country.

28. Idoneo omnibus rebus, "convenient in all respects."

30. Duum, old form for *duorum.* See Z. § 115. Note.

33. Nonnihil carperetur, "was somewhat railed at *or* upbraided."

35. Id, viz. to keep within his camp.

36. Eo absente, i e. Caesar.

39. Opinione, viz. the opinion which the enemy entertained of his cowardice and timidity.

1. Auxilii causa = "among the auxiliaries." 64

4. Perfuga, "a deserter from faithlessness and bad intention: *transfuga,* from disaffection with his party or thoughtlessness." See Ramsh. 783, 1.

6. Neque longius, &c., "and that at no greater distance than the next night, Sabinus," &c.

11. Superiorum dierum, a genitive of time.

12. Cunctatio, "hesitation."—*Confirmatio,* "positive assurance."—

Page
64 *Inopia.* The Gauls acted on impulse mainly in their expeditions, and seem not to have made regular provision for a campaign of any length.

13. Spes Venetici belli. The hopes which they entertained in that quarter, for as yet they had not heard the result. See cap. 16.

15. Non .... dimittunt, "they do not permit Viridovix and the other officers to leave the council before that," &c.

17. Ut = *ut si* or *velut si,* "as though the victory were certain."

22. Quam minimum spatii, "as little time as possible."

23. Exanimati, "out of breath."

25. Eruptionem, "sally."

26. Factum est, "it happened."

32. Sabinus. Supply *certior factus.*

35. Animus .... mens. The former is "courage," the latter "mind," or the internal power which thinks, and impels to action. See Ramsh. 79; Crombie, p. 246.—*Minime resistens,* "by no means resolute."

37. In Aquitaniam. See cap. 11.

38. Ut ante dictum est. See Bk. I. 1.

39. Ex tertia parte, (*esse*) i. e. *ex tertia parte constare,* to consist of the third part, or to form the third part. Oudendorp thinks the text here corrupt. Some MSS. have *ex tertia parte Gallia est,* &c., which that critic rather approves.

65 **1. Quum** is repeated after the parenthetical clause just recited.

2. Paucis ante annis. Allusion is probably to the war with Sertorius, which was concluded twenty-seven years before this date.

3. Mallius. Oudendorp reads *Manilius;* others *Manlius.*—*Proconsul.* This was an officer invested with the power of a consul, and having in charge a province. Usually the proconsul had been consul the year before, but occasionally a man was made proconsul without having held the office of consul.

4. Profugisset. Schmitz thinks the occurrences here alluded to belong, in all probability, to the year B. C. 79. See Livy, *Epit.* 90; Oros. v. 23.

7. Civitates, "cities." The usual meaning of civitas is "state."

8. Regionibus, i. e. Aquitania, where Crassus was carrying on the war.

10. Plurimum valebant, "were very powerful."

16. Superioribus victoriis, viz. those over Mallius and Praeconinus. See cap. 20.

18. Imperatore, i. e. Caesar.

20. Tamen = *tandem.* Some editors adopt *tandem* as the reading.

23. Vineas turresque. See notes, p. 46, lines 28 and 32.

24. Cuniculis. These were subterranean passages, so called from their resemblance to the burrowing of a rabbit. The object of the *cuniculi* was to destroy the fortifications of the enemy by withdrawing the earth from the mound, or from under the wall of the city, so that it might be

Page

overturned.—*Aggerem.* See note, p. 46, line 31.—*Cujus rei,* "in which art," viz. that of constructing mines. 65

26. Aerariae secturae, "copper mines." Some MSS. have *stricturae,* which is said by critics to mean "a mass of earth and stone from which iron ore is obtained by means of the furnace." Schneider reads, *aerariae structuraeque,* i. e. "mines and subterraneous structures or passages," the latter word being an explanation of the former. The reading in the text, however, (which is that of Oudendorp,) is the most generally approved.—*Diligentia nostrorum,* "on account of the vigilance of our men."

32. Soldurios. This Gallic word is probably equivalent in meaning to *devoti.*

34. Amicitiae dederint. Oudendorp says that *dedere se alicui, patriae, reipublicae,* is a frequent phrase in Terence, Cicero, Livy, Nepos, and others.

35. Iis, i. e. those to whose friendship and assistance they had devoted themselves. Diodorus asserts that the Greek soldiers used to take a solemn oath never to abandon their generals, alive or dead. So Tacitus, *De Mor. Germ.* 14, says, that it was reckoned infamous among the Germans to return alive from a field of battle where their prince had fallen.

38. Cum iis Adcantuannus. These words are repeated for the sake of perspicuity, in consequence of the long parenthesis preceding.

2. Tamen .... impetravit, "obtained nevertheless from Crassus to 66
be allowed the same terms of surrender (with the rest.)"

5. Barbari, i. e. the Vocates and Tarusates.

7. Paucis diebus, quibus, i. e. "a few days after they had arrived there." See cap. 17. Instead of *postquam, ex quo,* or *quum,* a relative agreeing with the preceding ablative may be used. See A. and S. § 253, Rem. 1.

10. Citerioris Hispaniae. Hither Spain comprehended the north part of the country, equal in extent to about three-fourths of modern Spain. *Ulterior* or Farther Spain was the southern or remaining part of the country.

11. Adventu, ablative of time; "on their arrival." *Cf.* IV. 34; VII. 5.

12. Magna cum auctoritate, "with great confidence" and expectation of success.

14. Q. Sertorio. Q. Sertorius was one of the greatest men and generals of that period. He fled from Rome at the time of Sylla's triumph, in B. C. 84, and established himself in Spain, where he maintained himself for more than eight years by his humanity, prudence, and valor against the efforts of both Metellus and Pompey. He was treacherously murdered by Perpenna in B. C. 72.—*Omnes annos,* "during all the years" Sertorius had been in Spain.

16. Capere, in the sense of *deligere,* to choose a place for a camp.

17. Instituunt, "begin."—*Quod ubi* = "when therefore."

Page

66 **18. Facile,** i. e. *tuto,* "with safety, *or* safely."

25. Duplici acie. The troops were usually drawn up in three lines, and the auxiliaries placed on the wings. In this instance the arrangement was altered, a double line being used and the auxiliaries placed in the midst.

31. Sese recipere, "to retreat."

32. Sarcinis. See note, p. 48, line 17.—*Inferiores animo,* "depressed in spirit."

35. Quum sua cunctatione, &c. The reading in this passage is doubtful. As we have given it, *timidiores hostes* is the nominative to *effecissent.* The sense is, as the too timid enemy by their delay, and by the opinion which, by their delay, they had created among the Romans, had made our soldiers more courageous. Clarke reads, *sua cunctatio atque opinio timidiores,* &c.: others have (after Stephens and Vossius) *sua cunctatione atque opinione timoris hostes,* &c.

67 **4. Ad aggerem,** i. e. *faciendum.* On the *agger,* see note, p. 46, line 31.

6. Constanter ac non timide, "boldly and intrepidly."

7. Ex loco superiore, i. e. *ex vallo munitionibusque hostium.*—*Non frustra,* "not without effect."

9. Decumana porta. See note, p. 18, line 24.

14. Intritae, i. e. *non tritae,* "not worn out *or* fatigued." Clarke reads *integrae,* which is inferior to the received lection.

18. Prius . . . . quam plane . . . . posset, "before it could plainly be perceived by them," &c.

24. Contenderunt. Oudendorp reads *intenderunt,* "strove."

27. Multa nocte = "late at night."

29. Quo in numero, i. e. *quorum in numero.*

31. Ultimae nationes. Probably the districts beyond the Pyrenees.

36. Supererant, "remained," i. e. unsubdued.

38. Longe . . . . Galli, "in a far different way from the other Gauls."

39. Bellum agere. *Bellum gerere* is more usual.

68 **2. Continentes silvas,** "extensive woods."

4. Silvarum. See note, p. 49, line 9.

9. Longius, i. e. farther than was right or advisable.

13. Materiam, "timber."

14. Conversam ad hostem, i. e. "facing the enemy."

15. Magno spatio confecto, "a great space having been finished," i. e. a great extent of wood having been felled, &c.

19. Sub pellibus, "under the skins," i. e. "in tents." It is an ancient military phrase, meaning tents made up of or covered with skins or hides. Canvass does not appear to have been used.

23. Proxime bellum fecerant, (= *intulerant,*) "had made war upon him last."

BOOK FOURTH.

SYNOPSIS.

During the ensuing winter, two German tribes crossed the Rhine, and defeated the Roman cavalry. Caesar marched against them, and forced their camp. Stimulated by the frequency of these inroads, he determined to prove to the Germans that he could lay their country open to the Roman armies at his pleasure: in the space of ten days, he constructed a bridge over the Rhine, and, having chastised them, led back his forces, and broke down the bridge.

His next enterprise was, to land a part of his troops on the coast of Britain, as, in all their revolts, the Gauls drew their chief supplies from that island. On the approach of his fleet, the British army covered the shores. His soldiers, intimidated by the depth of the water, the numbers of their opponents, and the formidable array of expert charioteers, hesitated to attempt a landing, until all doubt was set aside by the standard-bearer of the tenth legion leaping from his ship, and his comrades rushing after him to save the eagle. This example was followed by the other legions, and after many changes of fortune, they succeeded in gaining a firm footing on land.

For a long time, the Roman ranks exhibited a scene of the utmost confusion, from the desultory and instantaneous attacks of the charioteers at all points of advantage: as soon as a general charge could be effected, the Britons were forced to give way, and very soon after they sued for peace.

Caesar agreed upon terms of future alliance, and received a part of their hostages; but an equinoctial storm arising, by which many of his vessels were wrecked on the coast, and those conveying over his cavalry were driven back to Gaul, the British chiefs entered into a conspiracy, and again met in arms. After one victory, he doubled the number of hostages that he had in the first instance demanded; and, as his ships were in a shattered condition, immediately set sail for the continent. Of the British tribes, two only fulfilled the treaty by sending the promised hostages.

Page

1. Annus. The year here mentioned is B. C. 55, at the beginning 69
of which the German tribes named in the text crossed the Rhine. As the winter belonged partly to the year 56, and partly to 55, Caesar explains which part he means by the words *qui annus fuit.* (Schmitz.)

4. Quo = *in quod.* The place appears to have been somewhat below the place where the Meuse flows into the Rhine.

5. Exagitati, "harassed."

8. Pagos. See note, p. 30, line 34.—*Singula millia armatorum,* "a thousand armed men each," i. e. *ex unoquoque pago.*

9. Ex finibus = *extra patriam.*

10. Alunt, &c. They who remain at home cultivate the fields, and prepare provisions for themselves and the warriors.

12. Ratio atque usus belli, "the art and practice of war."

Page

70 **1. Incolendi causa,** "for the sake of a residence."

2. Maximam partem, "for the most part." Supply *secundum.* It is equivalent to *maxima ex parte,* and is a frequent Graecism in Caesar.

3. Multum sunt, "are much (employed.")

6. Faciant. Schmitz says that the use of the subjunc. here seems to indicate that the Germans themselves gave this account of their mode of living.—*Et* .... *et,* "both .... and."

7. Homines efficit, i. e. *eos esse homines.*

10. Aperta, "uncovered, naked." See a farther account of the dress used by the Germans, Bk. VI. 21.

11. Ut quae bello, &c. The order is, *ut habeant* (illos) *quibus vendant* (ea) *quae ceperint bello.*

12. Quo = *eo quod,* or the simple *quod,* "because."

13. Jumentis, according to Schmitz, are here horses, and not oxen or mules.

14. Gallia delectatur. Clarke reads *Galli delectentur.*

15. Importatis. Oudendorp has *importatis his:* he conjectures *importatitiis,* (*Bell. Afr.* 20,) which is adopted by some editors.—*Prava.* Others read *parva.*

16. Summi ut sint laboris, i. e. *ut summum laborem perferre possint,* "that they may be able to endure the greatest labor."

21. Ephippiis. Mr. Yates (in the *Dicty. of Antiq.* p. 407) contends that *ephippium* denotes not a mere horse-cloth, a skin, or a flexible covering of any kind, but a saddle-tree or frame of wood, which, after being filled with a stuffing of wool or cloth, was covered with softer materials, and fastened by means of a girth (*cingulum, zona*) upon the back of the animal.—*Ad quemvis numerum* .... *adire,* "to advance against any number."

25. Publice, i. e. "to the state at large."

26. Vacare, "lie waste, be uninhabited."

27. Civitatium. The usual form is *civitatum.* This form occurs in Bk. V. 22; VII. 36, &c.

28. A Suevis, i. e. reckoning from the frontier of the Suevi.—*Millia passuum* DC. Some read *millia passuum* C., which Vossius approves, the former number appearing to him incredibly large.

31. Paulo quam sunt, &c. The reading here is doubtful and perplexed. Oudendorp, and those who follow the reading he gives, understand it thus: *et paulo humaniores quam sunt* (homines) *ejusdem generis, etiam* (paulo humaniores) *caeteris,* (Germanis.) Clarke reads, *et qui paulo, &c.* Hotomann conjectures, *et qui paulo sunt ceteris ejusdem gentis humaniores.* Anthon (after Bentley) reads, *et paulo quam sunt ejusdem generis ceteri humaniores.* The notes in Oudendorp may be consulted to advantage.

35. Gravitatem. Some understand the word to mean "population;" others "power and strength." See Livy xxxiv. 17, who uses *gravis* in the same sense.

38. In eadem causa, "in the same condition" as the Ubii.

2. Quas regiones, instead of *ad Rhenum in eas regiones, quas.* 71

5. Aditu, "at the approach."—*Trans flumen,* i. e. on the right or northern bank of the river.

11. Rursus reverterunt. Davies notes this as a pleonasm not infrequent in the best writers. See Book VII. 9; Curtius, iii. 11, 14; &c.

18. Se .... aluerunt, "they lived upon their provisions."

20. Infirmitatem, "fickleness."

22. Nihil his committendum, "that nothing (= none of his plans or purposes) should be intrusted to them." See cap. 6, near the end.

23. Est ..... consuetudinis, "it belongs to, i. e. it is one of the Gallic customs."

26. Vulgus circumsistat, "the mob flock round."

29. E vestigio, "soon, speedily," &c.

30. Serviant, i. e. they act in perfect reliance on such vague and uncertain reports; they are mere slaves to many-tongued rumor.—*Et plerique .... respondeant,* "and since most of persons give them answers invented to please them."

33. Occurreret. The verb *occurrere* is here equivalent to *incidere,* "to become involved."

35. Germanos, i. e. the Usipetes and Tenchtheri.

37. Ab se, i. e. on the part of those who desired the Germans to withdraw from the banks of the Rhine.

39. Clientes. See note, p. 15, line 16.

2. Dissimulanda (*esse,*) "should be concealed." 72

6. In ea loca ..... quibus in locis. The repetition is usual in Caesar.

12. Resistere, scil. *iis;* but Caesar usually omits the pronoun *is* after *quicunque.* See Book I. 40; VII. 4.

14. Posse, scil. *se.*—*Vel .... attribuant,* "that they should either allot to them lands."

16. Concedere, "yielded *or* were inferior to." *Quibus ne dii immortales pares esse possint.* An old and boastful form of expression. So heroes are called in Homer ἀντίθεοι. Thus, *Tydidem superis parem.* (Dionys. Vossius.) Ἀντίθεος is applied by Homer to heroes of superhuman and godlike strength and courage, and to men who possess some quality, mental or corporeal, in a pre-eminent degree, exceeding the usual powers of humanity, and manifesting divine energy. In like manner Caesar *in Orat. ap. Auctorem de B. Hisp.* 42: An me deleto non animadvertebatis decem habere legiones populum Romanum, quae non solum vobis obsistere, sed etiam coelum diruere possent? Homer introduces even gods as conquered and wounded by men; on which account Plato *De Rep.* 2, p. 530, reprehends him. See also Lucian, *Jov. Trag.* 2, 139. Thus the pagans, impelled by a twofold fury, inappropriately represented those whom they had impiously received into the number of the gods, to be weaker than men, while they believed them to be gods. (Davies.)

Page

72 **19. Quae visum est,** viz. *respondere* = what appeared to him right that he should answer. As he gives only the conclusion (*exitus*) of his speech, we are left to surmise the purport of what preceded.

21. Verum, i. e. *aequum*, "just, proper, consistent with what was right," &c.—*Qui suos*, i. e. *eos qui suos.*

24. Licere, scil. *iis.*

25. Considere, scil. *eos.*

26. Impetraturum. Caesar could promise that he would command the Ubii, because, as we learn from cap. 16, he had hostages of the Ubii in his possession.

33. Mosam, the modern *Meuse*, which empties itself into the main arm of the Rhine at Workum, which is called Waal (Vahalis) below Nimeguen.

37. Et parte quadam .... transit. The text is here in great confusion, and has perplexed critics not a little. That which we have given, differs from Oudendorp's and agrees with Oberlin, Morus, Lemaire, &c.

38. Ab eo, scil. *loco.*

73 **3. Citatus,** "with a rapid current."

4. Partes, "branches."

7. Existimantur. The indicative is here used because the preceding *sunt qui* is equivalent to *nonnulli*, and does not convey the notion of a quality in those nations that might lead to the belief; if the latter were the case, the subjunctive would have been used. (Schmitz.)—*Capitibus*, "mouths."

9. Ut erat constitutum. See cap. 9.

15. Ea conditione. See cap. 8.

22. Praefectos. See note, p. 59, line 8.

23. Mittit. Supply *quosdam.*

27. Non amplius DCCC equites. See cap. 2, which explains the reason why so small a number ventured to attack a body 5,000 in number. The German cavalry despised all those who used *ephippia*. See note, p. 70, line 21.

30. Eorum, i. e. the ambassadors of the Germans.

32. Rursus = *vicissim*, "in their turn;" as, in their turn our men offered resistance, &c.

33. Equis, scil. *Romanorum equitum.*

36. In conspectum. Clarke and others read *in conspectu.*

38. Piso. As this is a Roman name, his grandfather, who had been honored by the Roman people, had probably received the Roman franchise. (Schmitz.)

74 **1. Intercluso,** "intercepted," i. e. cut off from the rest of the troops.

5. Animum advertisset = *animadvertisset.*

7. Caesar .... arbitrabatur ..... per dolum, &c. "Two great German tribes, the Usipetes and Tenchtheri, had just emigrated into Gaul. Caesar stopped them; and under the pretence that he had been attacked by their young men, during parley, he fell unexpectedly upon them and

Page

massacred them to a man." Michelet's *History of France*, vol. i. p. 48. 74
Caesar seems here clearly guilty of deception and gross injustice, and in violation of those very rights of which he boasted himself the defender in the case of the Veneti, he imprisoned the ambassadors and slaughtered their countrymen without mercy. Plutarch relates (*Vit. Caes.* 12) that when the *supplicatio* of twenty days was decreed for Caesar's victories in Gaul and Germany, Cato indignantly denounced Caesar as guilty of bad faith in this matter, and counselled his being given up to the barbarians. To the same purpose, Sueton. *Vit. Jul.* 24.

11. Dementiae. See Ramsh. 72. *Dementia* denotes madness, folly, want of sense, &c. *Amentia* implies a total absence of reason and judgment.

12. Infirmitate, "fickleness."

13. Quibus, i. e. *hostibus* or *Gallis*.

15. Legatis et quaestore. See note, p. 17, line 29; p. 38, line 39.

16. Ne refers to the preceding clause, and indicates the purpose for which Caesar made the communication to his legates and quaestor.—*Pugnae*, dative, depending on *diem*, "a day fit for," &c.

20. Simul .... simul, instead of the more common phrase *simul .... atque, ac*, or *et*.—*Sui purgandi*, "of clearing themselves."

22. Fallendo, "by deceiving him."

23. Retineri jussit. A violation of the law of nations. Compare note above, line 7.

29. Discessu suorum, referring to the chiefs and elders who were kept back by Caesar, and without whose advice and guidance the Germans did not know how to act.

30. Perturbantur. The verb here means "to be so confounded as not to know what to do."

31. Hostem, i. e. the Romans.

34. Pristini, i. e. *pridiani*, "of the day before."

39. Consectandos .... misit. This was nothing less than horrible barbarity, and affords melancholy proof of how little account human life is esteemed when ambition goads the conqueror on.

1. Audito, i. e. of the women and children. 75

3. Confluentem. This word is properly a participle or adjective. It is here used substantively, with *alveus* understood. (Schmitz.)

4. Reliqua fuga desperata, i. e. all hope of farther flight being taken away.

7. Ex .... timore, "after the terror of so great a war."

12. Libertatem, scil. *remanendi*.

16. Suis .... voluit, "he wished them to be alarmed for their own possessions also."

19. Supra commemoravi. See cap. 9 and 12.

23. Qui postularent. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 483.

24. Dederent. Supply *ut*, which is often omitted after verbs of asking, advising, &c.

Page

75 **27. Cur .... postularet?** "why should he claim any right of commanding, or any authority beyond the Rhine?" *Sui* is the personal pronoun governed by *esse*.

32. Reipublicae, the objective genitive; by the occupations in which he was engaged for the republic.

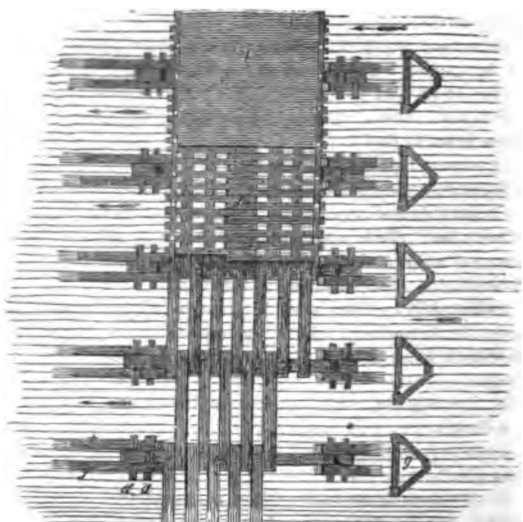
34. Opinionem, "reputation."

35. Ad, in the sense of *apud*, but *ad* at the same time contains the idea that Caesar's fame had *penetrated to* the most distant tribes. (Schmitz.)

76 **4. Proponebatur,** "was placed before his eyes," i. e. was manifest, according to the representations of those whom he consulted, and knew the real state of things.

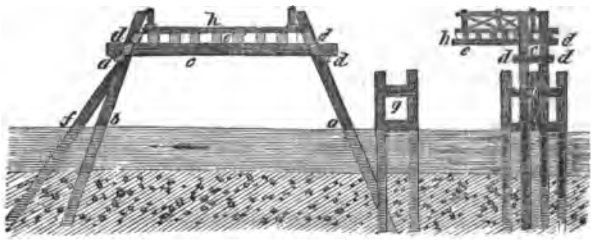
6. Rationem .... instituit, "he determined, therefore, upon this plan of a bridge." The place where this bridge was made across the Rhine has been the subject of much discussion; the most probable opinion is, that it was somewhere in the neighborhood of Coblentz or Andernach. (Schmitz.) Professor Long agrees entirely with this statement. See *Classical Museum,* vol. IV. p. 279.

RHENANI PONTIS ICHNOGRAPHIA.



Page 76

PRIMA PONTIS SECTIO. SECTIO SECUNDA.



a. Bina tigna sesquipedalia prona ac fastigata secundum fluminis naturam.—*b*. Alia bina ex adverso defixa.—*c*. Trabes bipedales.—*d*. Binae fibulae.—*e*. Materia directa.—*f*. Sublicae obliquae.—*g*. Defensores.—*h*. Longurii.—*i*. Crates.

7. Tigna bina sesquipedalia, "two posts or piles (each) a foot and a half thick." There were, of course, a number of pairs of posts; hence *bina* is used. These posts or piles were in length proportioned to the depth of the river, and placed at a distance of two feet from each other.

10. Fistucisque adegerat, "and had driven them home with rammers." The *fistucae* were machines for driving large stakes or piles into the ground.—*Non .... ad perpendiculum,* "not quite perpendicularly, after the fashion of a stake."

11. Ut .... procumberent, scil. *tigna.* The idea was, to have the piles slope or incline according to the force of the current of the river. The student must remember to look well at the plan of the bridge, in connection with the description here given.

13. Bina. This is the reading of Clarke. The common text has *duo,* which seems certainly incorrect.

14. Ab inferiore parte, scil. *fluminis.* So Davies and others. Lipsius thought that Caesar meant to state that the double posts were forty feet distant at their lower end, or the bottom of the river.

15. Haec utraque, referring to those in the upper and lower part of the river.

16. Immissis, "let in between."—*Quantum .... distabat,* i. e. the space between the two posts or piles of each pair was two feet. The braces (*trabes*) were fitted into these spaces.

17. Fibulis, "clamps *or* braces." These being framed into the posts, one on each side, enclosed and supported the *trabes bipedales* in this position.—*Distinebantur,* "were kept apart."—*Quibus disclusis,* "these two pairs of posts being thus separated." The *quibus* refers to *haec utraque,* above. The beams let in of course kept the posts apart, and the braces above and below served to keep them together.

18. Revinctis, "fastened *or* made firm."

Page

76 **21. Directa materie,** "by planks or rafters placed according to the length of the bridge;" from one cross-beam to another.

22. Nihilo secius, i. e. besides all these means just mentioned, of strengthening the bridge.—*Sublicae.* Caesar placed the *sublicae* at the lower part of the river, and against the impulse of the waters, lest the bridge should be driven to the other side, which might have happened from the violence of the current. The *defensores* were merely stakes fixed above the bridge, to prevent the trees thrown into the river from reaching the bridge. (Dionys. Voss.)

26. Dejiciendi operis. Supply *causa* or *gratia*, which is sometimes, as here, omitted.

28. Materia, i. e. the timber for building the bridge.

35. Comparata, i. e. *parata*, as in Bk. VII. 61.—*Hortantibus iis*, "by the advice of those," &c.

77 **8. Hunc .... obtinerent.** They selected a position in about the centre of the country which they inhabited.

10. Expectare .... constituisse, scil. *Suevos.*

11. Comperit, &c. It seems quite probable that Caesar did not care to push matters to the same extent with the Germans as he had done in similar cases with the Gauls. The former were much more skilled in warfare, and would have proved no mean adversaries.

12. Ut Germanis, &c. The three following clauses beginning with *ut*, contain merely an explanation of the preceding words, *omnibus rebus his confectis.*

13. Obsidione. This word ("a siege") when used, as here, of a country or nation, is to be rendered by "pressure" or "oppression." *Cf.* Bk. VII. 32.

15. Profectum. The verb *proficere* signifies "to gain an advantage," "to make progress," or "to succeed."

18. Maturae sunt, "are early," set in early.

20. Subministrata auxilia. This was the ostensible reason. According to Suetonius, (*Vit. Jul.* 47,) *Britanniam petisse spe margaritarum*, &c.

21. Intelligebat. See Bk. II. 4, 14; III. 8, 9.

22. Usui, "utility." *Usus* is elsewhere employed in the same sense.

23. Insulam. He calls Britain an island from common rumor; for that such was the case was not discovered till long after the time of Caesar. (Davies.)

25. Temere = *facile*, commonly, or upon any slight occasion.—*Illo*, i. e. *in Britanniam*, or *ad illos.*

26. Ipsis, scil. *mercatoribus.*

30. Usum belli, "practice in war" = *quid in bello possent*, Bk. II. 4.

34. Arbitratus, C. Volusenum. Some editors place the comma after Volusenum, thus connecting it with what precedes. See Bk. III. 5. —*Navi longa.* See note, p. 59, line 34.

Page

4. Dare, i. e. *se daturos.—Obtemperare,* i. e. *se obtemperaturos.* 78

7. Atrebatibus superatis. See Bk. II. 23.

9. Regionibus, viz. of Gaul.

11. Ut .... sequantur, "to embrace the alliance of the Roman people."

13. Qui. Schmitz notes that *qui* here contains the idea of *quum,* whence it is followed by the subjunctive.

18. Consilio = "conduct."

20. Fecissent. This seems to allude to what is stated, Bk. III. 28, &c.

21. Pollicerentur. Connect by *que* with *excusarent.*

24. Tantularum rerum occupationes, "engagements in such trifling matters."—*Britanniae,* i. e. to his design of invading Britain.

26. Navibus onerariis. See note, p. 59, line 34.

29. Praefectis. The prefects commanded the auxiliaries.

39. Solvit, i. e. *solvit naves,* "he set sail." *Cf.* Bk. V. 23. According to Dr. Halley, the celebrated astronomer, as quoted by Prof. Long, (*Classical Museum,* vol. IV. p. 276,) Caesar landed in Britain on the 26th of August, B. C. 55, in the afternoon, about a month before the autumnal equinox. According to the same authority, the place of his landing was between the chalk rocks of Dover and the South Foreland.

3. Hora diei circiter quarta, i. e. about ten o'clock in the fore- 79 noon.

6. Angustis, "steep." Andrews says, the words following seem to imply that the mountains are called *angusti* because the space between them and the sea was narrow.

7. Egrediendum, scil. *navibus,* "for disembarking."

9. Horam nonam, i. e. three o'clock in the afternoon

10. Et quae, i. e. *et ea quae.*

11. Monuit .... administrarentur. Construe, *monuitque* (ut) *omnes res administrarentur ab iis ad nutum et ad tempus* (at a beck and in a moment) *ut ratio militaris rei,* (et) *ut maxime maritimae res postularent, ut quae haberent,* &c., "as being things that had," &c. Schneider and Schmitz enclose *quae* in brackets.

16. Sublatis anchoris, "having weighed anchor."

17. Litore, i. e. on a part of the coast which was flat and not protected by hills.

19. Essedariis. The *esseda* or *essedum* (from the Celtic *ess,* a carriage) was the name of a chariot used especially in war by the Britons, Gauls, and Belgae, and also by the Germans. They seem to have had only two wheels. The *essedarii* were the warriors, who drove these chariots with extraordinary swiftness and skill. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 420. Dionysius Vossius, in a note on this passage, (quoted by Barker,) says: "I have often wondered that Caesar, throughout these Commentaries, has made no mention of the Gallic or British *falcati currus.* Hence I fully believe in the propriety of

Page

79 the remark formerly made by Asinius Pollio, that Caesar would have most probably altered many passages, if he had lived longer; more particularly as Frontinus, *Strategem.* 2, 3, expressly says: C. Caesar Gallorum falcatas quadrigas eadem ratione palis defixis excepit, inhibuitque. We can scarcely doubt that these words were taken from the *Ephemerides* of Caesar."

22. In alto, viz. *mari,* "in the open sea."

24. Armorum onere. *Cf.* note, p. 48, line 17.

27. Omnibus membris expediti, "having the free use of all their limbs."

28. Insuefactos, i. e. accustomed to go into the water, and used to this species of warfare.

31. Nitebantur. Oudendorp reads *utebantur.*

33. Inusitatior. The Britons it seems were accustomed only to the vessels of burden, and not to the galleys of war.

35. Latus apertum, i. e. the unprotected side or wing of the enemy.

36. Tormentis. The *tormenta* were engines used in discharging darts and stones.

39. Paulum modo, "only a little."

80 **2. Aquilam.** This was the common standard of the legion. It was made of silver or bronze, and with expanded wings. The pole on which it was fixed had at its lower extremity an iron point (*cuspis*) so that it could be thrust into the ground, and the *aquilifer* could, if need be, repel an attack. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 896. It was considered the height of disgrace to lose the eagle.—*Contestatus* = *comprecatus* or *precatus.*

5. Praestitero. The future to which this future perfect relates is not expressed, "I shall have performed my duty when you have done this." (Andrews.) See Z. § 511.

12. Ordines, i. e. the lines formed by the soldiers when drawn up in battle array.

13. Alius, &c., "one from one ship and another from another joined whatever standard he had happened to meet with," &c.

18. In universos, i. e. when they saw the whole body of a ship's crew come out, they threw their darts among them.

19. Speculatoria navigia = "spy boats," i. e. boats for observation and reconnoitring the coasts.

21. Simul, i. e. *simul ac,* "as soon as."

24. Equites, scil. *Romani.* These had embarked on board the eighteen transports, but had not been able to keep their course and reach the island.—*Capere* = *attingere.* See cap. 36; Book V. 8.

25. Pristinam fortunam, i. e. the good luck or success which he had hitherto enjoyed.

31. Supra demonstraveram. See cap. 21.

32. Oratoris modo, "in the character of an ambassador." *Orator* is often used in this sense.

Page

35. Ejus rei, referring to the detention and imprisonment of Com- 80
mius.—*Contulerunt,* "charged *or* laid."

37. Continentem, i. e. Gaul.

38. Ignoscere, scil. *se.*

39. Illi, i. e. *Britanni.*

2. In agros jusserunt. The chiefs directed the people to return 81
home, to the places where they usually lived, since the war was now over.

5. Post diem quartum quam, i. e. *die quarto post quam.* The Romans in counting days included both the one from which they started and the one down to which they reckoned; hence, only two days had elapsed after Caesar's arrival in Britain when the eighteen ships set sail. (Schmitz.)

6. Est ventum, scil. *ab Romanis.*

7. Sustulerant. *Tollere* is here used in the sense of "taking in a cargo."

10. Cursum tenere, "to hold on its course."

12. Magno sui cum periculo, instead of *magno suo cum periculo.*

13. Dejicerentur, "were driven downward," i. e. to the southern and westerly shore of the island.—*Tamen* here refers to *quamvis,* understood; viz. although the storm was vehement, yet they cast anchor, in the hope that the wind would subside.

14. Necessario .... provectae, "through necessity, in an unfavorable night, having put to sea."

16. Luna plena. Compare note above, p. 78, line 39. The full moon occurred in the night between the 30th and 31st of August, B. C. 55.

18. Id = "this circumstance" of the effect of the full moon upon the tides of the ocean.

21. Afflictabat, "dashed together, shattered," &c.

22. Administrandi, "of managing them."

28. Quod omnibus constabat, "because it was evident to all," it was understood by all that they were to winter in Gaul.

29. His in locis, i. e. Britain.

34. Hoc = *propter hoc* or *hanc ob rem.* So the *etiam* following is the same as "still."

36. Rebellione. See Ramsh. 324.

37. Rem producere, "protract the affair," i. e. prolong the contest or war.

38. Reditu interclusis, "being prevented from returning," i. e. to Gaul.

2. Ex agris deducere. Compare end of cap. 27, *remigrare in agros.* 82

4. Ex eventu navium suarum, "from what had happened to his ships."

8. Aere. The *aes* (χαλκός) of the ancients was a composition in which copper was the predominant ingredient. It answers to what is now termed "bronze," which is composed of *copper* and *tin.* "Brass" is

Page

82 a mixture of *copper* and *zinc*. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* p. 29.

15. Interposita, i. e. between the day on which the Britons had surrendered and the present moment.—*Hominum,* scil. *Britannorum.*

17. In statione, "on guard."

19. Id quod erat, "what was really the case."

20. Cohortes. A cohort was stationed or on guard at each gate of the camp. See Book VI. 37. Respecting the Roman camp, see note, p. 18, line 24.

25. Conferta legione, "the legion being crowded close together."

31. Essedis. See note, p. 79, line 19.

33. Perequitant. Schmitz remarks that from this passage it is evident that *equitare* not only signifies "to ride on horseback," but also "to ride in a chariot."—*Terrore equorum,* an objective genitive, "by the fear or terror which the horses caused," i. e. among the cavalry of their opponents.

36. Aurigae. These were the drivers of the chariots, and were held inferior to the *essedarii* or warriors who fought from them.

37. Illi, i. e. the *essedarii.*

39. Mobilitatem, "agility."

83 **1. Praestant,** "they exhibit."

2. Incitatos equos sustinere, "to check their horses when at full gallop."

3. Brevi, scil. *tempore.*

6. Perturbatis nostris, ablat. absol. It may also be taken as a dat. depending on *auxilium tulit,* but not so well.

9. Lacessendum . . . proelium. Scaliger and Clarke insert *hostem* after *lacessendum,* but without authority from MSS. Oudendorp shows that *lacessere pugnam* or *proelium* is both correct and an elegant Latin phrase. See his note, *in loc.*

12. Qui . . . . discesserunt, i. e. the Britons who had been left behind in the country. See cap. 32.

13. Reliqui = *relicti.*

14. Quae contains the idea of *ut;* viz. *tantae tempestates,* ut; hence the subjunctives *continerent* and *prohiberent.* (Schmitz.)

16. Suis, "to their countrymen."

19. His rebus, "by these means."

24. Ante dictum est. See cap. 21 and 27.

27. Quos . . . . potuerunt, i. e. they pursued them as far as their strength enabled them to run.

29. Afflictis, "demolished, prostrated," &c. Clarke has *aedificiis* before *afflictis.*

33. Antea. See cap. 27.

34. Aequinoctii, i. e. the autumnal equinox. *Cf.* note, p. 78, line 39.

35. Subjiciendam. The verb means, to expose to the power or influence of some one.

Page

38. Eosdem . . . . capere, "to reach the same harbor as the rest." 83

39. Paulo infra, "a little lower" on the Gallic coast, i. e. to the west of the place where the others landed.

3. Pacatos reliquerat. See cap. 22. 84

4. Circumsteterunt, i. e. the three hundred who had landed from the two ships just spoken of, and were hastening towards the camp.

6. Orbe. The orb was assumed for the purpose of defence. When attacked on all sides by a superior force, the Romans usually formed themselves into a round body, which was regarded as the best mode of repelling the assaults of the enemy.

18. Anno. See Book III. 28, &c.

20. Duxerant. See cap. 22.

23. Hiberna. See note, p. 40, line 6.

25. Ex literis, i. e. the dispatches which Caesar sent to the senate containing accounts of his late campaigns.

26. Supplicatio. See note, p. 55, line 15. "To strike the greater terror into the Germans he went in search of these terrible Suevi, whose neighbors no nation dared to be. In ten days he threw a bridge over the Rhine, not far from Cologne, despite the width and impetuosity of that immense river. After having ransacked in vain the forests of the Suevi, he repassed the Rhine, traversed the whole of Gaul, and in the same year embarked for Britain. When these prodigious marches, more astonishing than victories, were reported at Rome, such audacity and fearful rapidity provoked one universal burst of admiration. The senate decreed a lectisternium of twenty days in thanksgiving to the gods. 'Compared with Caesar's exploits,' exclaimed Cicero, 'what did Marius?'" Michelet's *History of France*, vol. i. p. 48.

BOOK FIFTH.

SYNOPSIS.

Caesar made extensive preparations for a second expedition into Britain, and after being engaged for a time in suppressing the incursions of the Pirustae and the insurrection of the Treviri, he assembled a body of Gallic cavalry and set sail for the island. The naval equipment consisted of more than 800 vessels of all orders, and the military force amounted to five legions and 2,000 cavalry. The Britons terrified, fled for refuge to the woods.

Having fortified a camp on the coast, and left a few troops to protect the shipping, Caesar pursued the enemy within the forests, forced their intrenchments there, and his army was in full pursuit of them, when a party of horse arrived from his admiral with the intelligence, that in a sudden tempest many of his ships had been lost, and the greater part had sustained serious damage.

On his return, he found that the loss amounted to about forty vessels. By daily and nightly exertion on the part of his soldiers, he, in the space of ten days, had the rest hauled up close to his camp, and rendered them secure by extending the fortifications so as to enclose them. Prompt measures were adopted for the repair of these, and for the construction of others on the coast of Gaul. During this interval, Caesar was employed in collecting information in reference to the statistics of the country, its position and extent, and the origin and peculiarities of its various inhabitants.

The chief command of the Britons was conferred on Cassivellaunus, the leader in highest repute among them; and, from their desultory mode of fighting, Caesar now met with the same difficulties that he had experienced in his first encounter with these tribes. Their rapidity in charging and retreating, disappointed the efforts of his heavy-armed legions, while parties of the cavalry were diverted to a distance, and overpowered by the enemy. At length, by their rashness, having committed themselves to a disadvantageous position, the Britons sustained a severe reverse, and shortly after, all abandoned Cassivellaunus, save four thousand charioteers. The Romans, crossing the Thames, entered his territories, and took by assault his principal encampment.

In this situation of his affairs, the British chief made proposals for peace. These were readily accepted; for, as Caesar suspected that fresh insurrections were on the eve of breaking out in Gaul, he deemed it expedient that his troops should go into winter-quarters on the Continent.

A scarcity of provisions obliged Caesar to distribute his army among the several states, in consequence of which the whole country was up in arms. The Eburones massacred the troops under the command of Titurius Sabinus, and, joining with the Nervii, besieged the quarters of Q. Cicero, the brother of the famous orator. After a brave defence he was relieved by Caesar, who was occupied the whole winter in Gaul in watching and suppressing various insurrections.

The Treviri, under command of Indutiomarus, prepare for war, and venture to attack the camp of Labienus. In a sally from the camp, Indutiomarus is slain, and the Gauls dispersed; the country generally becomes more composed.

Page

1. **L. Domitio .... Coss.,** i. e. in the year B. C. 54. Of course Caesar left his winter-quarters some time after the first of January, as that was the date on which the consuls for the year entered upon their office. 85

2. **Italiam,** i. e. the northern part of Italy, termed Hither or Cisalpine Gaul, which formed part of his province.

6. **Subductiones,** "drawing them on shore." This was necessary to facilitate the loading of them. During the winter, and whenever ships were not in use, they were drawn on the beach, (*subducere naves.*) The opposite to this was, *deducere naves*, drawing them down into the water, launching them.

7. **Nostro mari,** i. e. the Mediterranean.—*Id,* scil. *facit.*

11. **Actuarias.** These were light transports, moved by oars and sails. They usually had but one bank of oars, and never more than two.

13. **Conventibus.** See note, p. 40, line 8.

1. **Illyricum.** This was also in Caesar's province. 86

2. **Pirustae.** These inhabited a part of the modern Tyrol, and had invaded the part of Illyricum nearest to their own country.

6. **Demonstrant.** The indicative is here used, though *doceant* precedes, to indicate the *fact* that the Pirustae through their ambassadors show. (Schmitz.)

9. **Civitatem,** "the whole nation."

11. **Litem,** "the damage" which the Pirustae had done the province. *Lis* is not only the trial, but also denotes all the expenses connected with it, and the fines that may be imposed.

17. **Cujus,** viz. *generis naves.* The *naves actuariae* are meant. See cap. 1.

19. **Deduci.** See note, p. 85, line 6.

21. **Itium.** Prof. Long, following Dr. Halley, takes the port Itius to be either Ambleteuse or Calais. D'Anville, after Du Cange, thought that Itius was Wissan or Wit-sand. (See *Classical Museum,* vol. IV. pp. 277, 278.)

23. **Huic rei,** viz. *transmissui.*

30. **Supra demonstravimus.** See Bk. II. 24; III. 11.

32. **Alter,** i. e. Cingetorix.

37. **Arduennam.** The forest so termed extended from the Rhine as far as the mouth of the Meuse and Schelde. *Cf.* Bk. VI. 29, 33. A portion of it still exists, bearing the name of the Ardenne forest.

4. **Civitati consulere.** With the dative, *consulere* means, to consult, seek what is best for some one, take measures in his behalf; with the accusative, it signifies to consult with some one, i. e. ask his advice. See Ramsh. 262; Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 233. 87

6. **Sese idcirco,** &c. A verb of saying is implied in the preceding statement.

8. **Officio.** The word frequently has the meaning of "obedience," comprising all that a person is bound to do by law or agreement.

Page

87 **9. Plebs**, the common people, as distinct from the nobility.—*Laberetur*, might glide, slip, or fall off, i. e. from duty.

11. Fidei, meaning the honor and virtue which he believed to exist in Caesar.

14. Ab instituto consilio deterreret, "deterred him from his projected undertaking," viz. that of attacking the Romans.

22. Ejus, i. e. Cingetorix.—*Tum .... arbitrabatur*, "he also imagined," &c.

24. Id factum. This is explained by the clause *suam gratiam*, &c., the word *factum* being the general or abstract term, the real nature of which is, *suam gratiam minui*. The word *qui* contains the idea of *quum*, denoting *cause*, whence the subjunctive *fuisset*. (Schmitz.)

27. Hoc dolore, "by this affront."

29. Meldis. They probably inhabited the country near the *Sequana* or Seine, and the *Matrona* or Marne.

39. Antea dictum est. See Bk. I. 3.—*In primis*, "above all others."

88 **1. Cupidum imperii**, an instance of *anaphora*, or the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses.

2. Magni animi, scil. *esse*.

5. Neque. It here introduces a natural consequence of that which precedes. So, often, *et* and *atque*. See Bk. VII. 30.

10. Religionibus. Perhaps because he pretended that the omens or auspices were adverse to him. So Pharnaces, *ap. Hirt. B. Alex.* 74, Auspiciis et religionibus inductus—descendere praerupta valle coepit. This interpretation is the more likely, because among the Gauls were prophets, who διά τε τῆς οἰωνοσκοπίας καὶ διὰ τῆς τῶν ἱερείων θυσίας, τὰ μέλλοντα προλέγουσι, καὶ πᾶν τὸ πλῆθος ἔχουσιν ὑπήκοον, Diod. S. 5, p. 380, Rhod.—So also Rhellicanus and Glandorpius understand the passage, while Hotomann, with less propriety, refers it to the performance of a vow, or of funeral rites. Sueton. *Caes.* 86, Ideoque et quae religiones monerent, et quae renuntiarent amici, neglexisse; 59, Ne religione quidem ulla a quoquam incepto absterritus. See also Livy, i. 31. (Davies *and* Oudendorp.)

13. Territare, a descriptive infinitive, or (as called by others) an historical infinitive.—*Fieri.* This infinitive depends upon a verb of saying, implied in *metu territare*.

16. Fidem interponere, "he pledged his honor."

17. Ex usu, "useful."

23. Amentiam. See Ramsh. 72.—*Prospiciendum*, &c. The order is *prospiciendum esse* (Caesari) *ne* (Dumnorix) *posset nocere quid sibi* (i. e. Caesari) *ac Reipublicae*.

25. Corus ventus, or *caurus ventus*. "The northwest wind," which began to blow in the Atlantic about the summer solstice, and continued till the end of autumn.

27. Dabat operam, "he took measures."

30. Impeditis, "occupied." The preparation for the voyage caused

Page

the vigilance with which Dumnorix was observed to be somewhat relaxed. 88

35. Hunc, i. e. Dumnorix.—*Se,* i. e. Caesar.

36. Pro sano, "as became a sound-minded *or* prudent man." *Pro* is here equivalent in meaning to *tanquam.*—*Praesentes,* scil. *sui.*

37. Enim. Davies says *enim* is here an affirmative particle, put for *enim vero.* Tacitus uses it in the same way, Plautus and others very often.

7. Pari numero, i. e. two thousand. 89

9. Africo. This was a southwest wind, so termed as blowing from Africa.

11. Britanniam. Schmitz thinks that the point of Britain here alluded to was probably the isle of Thanet.

12. Commutationem. This change of tide must have been the beginning of the rise of the water.

14. Virtus = "courage and perseverance." Caesar is praising their patience and endurance in rowing.

17. Omnibus navibus, scil. *cum.*

20. Annotinis. The word means "of only one year." It here refers to the ships built within the preceding year.

21. Sui commodi, scil. *causa.*

26. Cohortibus decem. This was the full complement of a legion. See note, p. 16, line 18.

27. Vigilia. See note, p. 18, line 23.

28. Eo minus veritus navibus. Davies notes this as a somewhat unusual phrase. He refers to Cicero, *Acad.* 4, 45, for a similar expression. —*In litore molli atque aperto,* "on a smooth and open shore." The *litus molle* is a gently, gradually sloping shore or coast; the term *apertum* applied to *litus* indicates its freedom from rocks and promontories.

32. Essedis. *Cf.* note, p. 79, line 19.—*Flumen,* probably the river Stour, somewhat below Canterbury.

36. Crebris .... succisis. They appear to have been placed together in the form of an abattis or breastwork. The Gauls and Britons do not seem to have made use of other fortifications to any extent, if at all.

39. Testudine. See note, p. 44, line 7.—*Aggere .... adjecta.* See note, p. 46, line 31. *Jaci* is properly applied to the throwing up a mound; *agi,* to the erecting a tower.

6. Milites = *pedites,* "the foot *or* infantry." 90

10. Superiore nocte, "on the preceding night."

11. In litore. The ablative indicates that they were not only thrown upon the coast, but were still lying there, wrecked and scattered round.

12. Subsisterent .... possent. The verbs here retain the tense of the *oratio directa,* instead of the pluperfect required by the *oratio obliqua;* the writer putting himself in the place of the narrator. (Andrews.) See Z. § 525. *Subsistere,* with acc. is "to hold out against."

18. Coram perspicit = "he sees with his own eyes."

Page

90 **19. Tamen,** referring to *quamvis*, implied in *amissis navibus*.—*Magno negotio*, "with great trouble."

20. Fabros. Each legion had a certain number of *fabri*, "artificers," who worked in wood, iron, &c.

21. Posset. The imperfect subjunctive is here used instead of *possit*, because the leading verb *scribit* is an historical present for *scripsit*. (Schmitz.)

24. Subduci. *Cf.* note, p. 85, line 6.

30. Summa .... administrandi, "the supreme command and direction of the war."

33. Tamesis, the Thames. The territory of Cassivellaunus was north of the Thames, and the place where Caesar met him was eighty miles from the point where he had landed his troops. It cannot refer to the mouth of the river, since Caesar knew nothing of its course.

34. Continentia, "continual *or* uninterrupted." See Bk. III. 28.

37. Natos in insula ipsa = "whose ancestors sprung from Britain itself." There is a similar expression in Thuc. 1, *Τὴν γοῦν Ἀττικὴν ἄνθρωποι ᾤκουν οἱ αὐτοὶ ἀεὶ*, Schol. *τῷ γένει δηλονότι, οὐ γὰρ ἦσαν ἀθάνατοι*. The most ancient nations thought themselves *αὐτόχθονας*, because having long dwelt in the same country, they at length forgot their origin. (Davies.)

38. Memoria. The dative is more common. The ablative signifies the manner in which the tradition had been handed down.

91 **1. Civitatum .... quibus ex civitatibus.** This repetition has been frequently noticed before. Caesar often uses it.

2. Bello illato, i. e. when the war was finished.

5. Aere. See note, p. 82, line 8.—*Taleis.* These were thin or small staves. Being properly of wood, *ferreis* is added, to show that those used for money were of this latter substance. It is plain from this that the Britons had no coinage, but, like the early Romans, determined the value of pieces of metal by their weight.

7. Plumbum album, i. e. tin, the *κασσίτερος* of the Greeks. The mines are in Cornwall, the southwestern part of England. Hence Caesar is wrong in asserting that it is found in the interior.

9. Materia, wood, i. e. trees.

11. Animi .... causa, "for the sake of amusement and pleasure."

12. Loca. This, like *aer* and *coelum*, may be rendered by "climate." (Schmitz.)

14. Insula natura triquetra. From this (generally) accurate description of Britain some writers collected that these Commentaries were not the production of Caesar, because it was not ascertained till the reign of Claudius that Britain was an island. See Dio, 39, p. 114; see also Tacit. *Agr.* 10. But Caesar obtained this information from report, and also what he says about the Britons in the interior of the island; for he never penetrated into the interior, and hence Pomponius Mela, 3, 6, congratulates Claudius that Britain had been at length discovered. (Davies.)

15. Cantium, the present county of Kent. 91

17. Circiter millia passuum D, "about five hundred miles." Measuring in a straight line from *Bolerium Promontorium* (Land's End) to *Cantium Promontorium*, (North Foreland,) the distance does not exceed three hundred and forty-four British, or three hundred and fifty-six Roman miles: if Caesar included the irregularities of the coast, the measurement would be greatly enlarged.

18. Ad Hispaniam. This is quite out of the way, since Spain lies to the *south* and not the *west* of Britain.

22. Mona, "the Isle of Man." Some say that Anglesea is meant.

23. Objectae, scil. *esse*.

24. Bruma, "the winter solstice." It is, perhaps, a contraction of *brevissuma*, viz. *dies*. (Schmitz.) The statement here made has, of course, no foundation.

25. Ex aqua mensuris, measurements made by water, i. e. by means of the clepsydra, or an hourglass filled with water. See Anthon's Smith's *Dicty. of Greek and Rom. Antiq.* pp. 508–510.

27. DCC millium. This is about ninety Roman miles too much. The western coast is 590 (= 610 Roman) miles.

30. Millia passuum DCCC. Caesar's estimate here, too, is too large. The exact length is 550 miles, or about 570 Roman miles.

37. Se vitro inficiunt, "paint themselves with woad." *Vitrum* is the herb woad, used for dyeing a blue color. The ancients also called it *glastum*, and modern botanists call it *isatis tinctoria*. It seems to have produced a greenish or bluish color. The verb *inficiunt* denotes that the dye was applied not only to the surface of the skin, but penetrated it, and thus caused the dye to appear like the natural color of the skin. (Schmitz.)

38. Horridiore. The term *horridus*, as Oudendorp remarks, is generally applied to shaggy bristles, thick leaves, squalid hair, and foul beards. It is also applied to other things, as *horrida tempestas, verba, horridus clamor*, &c.

39. Capillo sunt promisso, "they have long hair."

1. Uxores, &c. The order is, *deni duodenique* (Britanni) *habent* 92
uxores communes inter se.

4. Quo, i. e. *ad quos*, or *in quorum domos*. *Deducere* is to lead a bride home.

7. Tamen ut, i. e. *ita tamen ut*.

9. Cupidius = "too eagerly."

10. Spatio, viz. *temporis*, "after the lapse of some time."

15. Primis. The first cohorts of a legion were generally distinguished for bravery, being equivalent to picked troops.

17. Per medios, scil. *nostros*.

19. Illi, i. e. *hostes*.—*Submissis*, others read *immissis*.

22. Pro = *ante* or *ante frontem*, "in front of," as often elsewhere.

26. Illi, referring to the Britons.

27. Cederent, "retreated, fell back," &c.

Page

92 **28. Dispari proelio,** in unequal combat, i. e. with great advantage on their side.

29. Proelii ratio, scil. *Britannorum.* The mode of fighting used by the British cavalry was full of danger to the Romans, whether they retreated or pursued.

31. Rari, "scattered here and there."

32. Dispositas haberent, i. e. stationed in different places and at certain intervals.

33. Exciperent = "relieved."

36. Lenius, i. e. with less eagerness or readiness.

39. C. Trebonio. Trebonius was one of Caesar's lieutenants, and subsequently received many favors at his hands. Notwithstanding, however, he joined with the conspirators who succeeded in assassinating Caesar.

93 **2. Non absisterent,** "did not keep at a distance from," i. e. approached close up to.

4. Quoad = "until."

7. Ex. The preposition signifies "in consequence of;" hence also, "immediately after," which is here clearly signified by *protinus.* (Schmitz.)

9. Summis copiis = *omnibus copiis,* "with all their forces." They never after this ventured to come to a general engagement.

13. Transiri potest. According to Dr. Schmitz, the place where Caesar and his army forded the Thames, is commonly believed to be at Cowey Stakes, near Oatsland, and not far from the confluence of the Wey. Venerable Bede, who flourished in the eighth century, speaks of the stakes which the Britons fixed in the river, as being visible there in his day. Consult the interesting article of Prof. Long, on "the British Expeditions of C. Julius Caesar," *Classical Museum,* vol. iv. p. 281.

14. Animadvertit. Oudendorp reads *animum advertit,* as the preferable form.

16. Sudibus, &c. See note above, line 13.

20. Quum .... exstarent, "though they (the soldiers) were above the water with the head only," i. e. though their heads only were above water.

21. Dimitterent, "relinquished *or* abandoned."

23. Supra demonstravimus. See cap. 17.

24. Contentionis, i. e. of the success of a struggle with the Romans for supremacy.

25. Servabat. The verb means "to watch closely." It is here equivalent to *observabat,* for which, as Oudendorp observes, it is frequently found.

26. Ex via, i. e. out of the public or frequented roads.—*Impeditis,* intricate, difficult of access.

31. Magno .... equitum, "with great danger to our cavalry."

33. Relinquebatur, "it remained."

Page

34. Discedi, scil. *ab equitibus* or *militibus*, "the cavalry, *or* soldiers, 93
to depart."

38. Trinobantes. They inhabited the modern county of Essex. Their capital, Camulodunum, was the present town of Colchester.

1. Venerat. See Book IV. 21. 94

5. Petunt ut (Caesar) **defendat, &c.** They beg Caesar to espouse their cause, and to send Mandubratius into the state to govern it.

6. Qui praesit, i. e. *ut ille praesit.*

9. Numerum, supply *constitutum*, i. e. to the amount required of them.

11. Militum, subjective genitive = "from all injury which the soldiers might inflict upon them."

14. Oppidum. It is impossible even to conjecture where this town was situate. In fact the course of Caesar north of the Thames cannot be traced with any approach to certainty.

19. Locum, i. e. the *oppidum* just spoken of. Some read *lucum*, which Oudendorp says is not an inelegant lection.

26. Ad mare = on the sea-coast. See cap. 13.

29. Castra navalia. See cap. 11. When the Romans were in a hostile country, where there were no good or proper harbors, they used to draw their vessels upon shore, and construct fortifications about them. This was done more especially when they expected to pass the winter in an enemy's country.

37. Extrahi, i. e. *cunctando perdi: extrahere* signifying "to spend time in inactivity, and for no other purpose than to get over it." (Schmitz.)

38. Quid vectigalis, "how much tribute." This tribute, however, was not paid till at a later period when Britain became a province under the emperors.

1. Interdicit atque imperat. These two words, the one of which 95
is negative and the other positive, express Caesar's command in the strongest way, indicating both what he wished to be done and what he wished not to be done. The clause which follows with *ne*, however, has reference only to *interdicit*. (Schmitz.)

4. Deductis, "being launched;" *ad mare* is understood.

6. Commeatus, "the act of going," i. e. the voyage across the channel, the transportation, &c. Caesar appears to have left Britain about the 25th of September.

9. Desideraretur, "was lost *or* missing."

10. Prioris commeatus, "of the former convoy."

12. Locum caperent = "reached the destined place."

16. Solvisset. Supply *anchoras* or *naves.*

18. Subductis, scil. *in aridum*, "being drawn on shore."—*Samarobrivae.* Dr. Schmitz says it is the modern town of Amiens on the river Samara, (Sambre,) from which the ancient name of the town is derived.

Page

95 **20. Angustius provenerat,** "had been produced more scantily (than usual.)"

23. Q. Ciceroni, the brother of M. Tullius Cicero, the famous orator.

24. Essuos. Their locality is entirely unknown; it is supposed to have been in some part of Normandy.

26. Belgio, Belgium, a part of the country inhabited by the Belgae. It comprised the districts of the Bellovaci, Atrebates, and Ambiani. See cap. 46; compare Book II. 4. (Schmitz.)—*Quaestorem.* See note, p. 38, line 39.

30. Cativolci. See cap. 26; Book VI. 31.

34. Mederi, "remedy."

37. Quoad .... cognovisset, i. e. until he should have learned that the winter-quarters were properly established and fortified.

96 **1. Summo loco,** i. e. *summo genere,* of a very high or noble family. Hence *locus* is also used in the sense of rank or dignity.

5. Hunc .... eum. The reading here is various. Some omit *eum;* in that case *hunc* refers to Tasgetius. As it stands in the text we have followed, *hunc* refers to *annum.* Oudendorp omits *palam* after *inimici,* and inserts it after *multis.* His note on the passage is worthy of being consulted.

6. Inimici. See Ramsh. 35; Crombie, p. 168. *Inimicus* is a private enemy; *hostis,* an avowed or public enemy.

8. Ad plures pertinebat, i. e. more persons than one were concerned in it; many were concerned in it.

14. Hibernis, the dative, denoting the object for which the place was destined. *Cf.* Book VII. 15.

15. Diebus circiter quindecim, quibus, "about fifteen days after." See A. and S. § 253, Rem. 1.

17. Ambiorige et Cativolco. See cap. 24.

18. Praesto fuissent. Ambiorix and Cativolcus had met Sabinus and Cotta on the confines of their kingdom, had supplied them with provisions, &c., as testimonials of respect and friendship.

20. Magna manu, scil. *cum.*

27. Minui posse, "could be adjusted."

29. Titurii, i. e. Titurius Sabinus.

30. Missu Caesaris = *mittente Caesare.* See Book VI. 7.

32. Plurimum ei debere, "that he owed very much to him;" that he was under very great obligations to him.

33. Stipendio liberatus esset, "he had been freed from the payment of tribute."

39. Imperia, i. e. the rights and powers which appertained to him as king.

97 **1. Multitudo,** i. e. the people in general. These had no less power over him than he had over them. It would hence seem that the government of many of the Gallic states was a mixture of aristocracy and democracy.

3. Humilitate, "weakness." *Humilitas* is the opposite of *potestas.* 97

7. Alterae, an old form for *alteri.* We sometimes also find *altero* in the dative for *alteri.* See Book VII. 25.

10. Pietate. This word comprises all the duties which a man has to perform towards God, his parents, friends, and his country. Here it refers more especially to the duties he owed to his country. (Schmitz.)

11. Habere .... officii, "he had now regard to the claims of duty."

12. Hospitio. See note, p. 37, line 12.

14. Ipsorum esse consilium, "that it was for them (the legates, Titurius and Cotta) to consider and determine whether," &c.

19. Quod quum faciat, &c., "that in doing this, he was both consulting the good of his own state in freeing it from the burden of winter-quarters, and was making a grateful return for the favors he had received from Caesar."

29. Exsistit, "arises."

32. Quantasvis magnas, a pleonastic expression. The common form of speech is *quantumvis magnas* or *quantasvis copias.* Similar pleonasms not unfrequently occur: they serve to render the expression emphatic; "if the forces of the Germans were ever so great."

34. Docebant = *demonstrabant.*

35. Multis .... illatis. The meaning is, they (the Romans) without being commanded by Caesar (*ultro*) had bravely held out against the enemy, and wounded many of them. (Schmitz.)

36. Premi, viz. *se.*

38. Levius aut turpius, "more thoughtless or disgraceful."—*Auctore hoste,* an enemy being the author of the steps they were about to take.

1. Sero, "too late." 98

5. Arbitrari, scil. *se.* Schmitz supplies *hostes* or *Gallos.*—*Aliter,* i. e. unless Caesar had gone.

7. Ille, i. e. Caesar.

8. Spectare, scil. *se,* "that he did not look to the enemy, but to the fact itself, for his authority."

9. Subesse, "was near."—*Ariovisti mortem.* See Book I. 53. It hence appears that Ariovistus died soon after his flight across the Rhine.

10. Ardere, "was burning" with resentment against the Romans.

11. Redactam, i. e. *se esse.*

13. Sine certa re, "without accurate information," or without a certain and substantial reason.

15. Si nil sit durius, i. e. *si nil gravius acciderit,* "if nothing extraordinary, *or* no uncommon misfortune, happened."

17. Unam salutem, "their only safety."

19. Praesens, "immediate."

20. Longinqua = *diuturna,* "long *or* protracted."

22. Primisque ordinibus. See note, p. 32, line 9; p. 51, line 26. The centurions of the first orders are here meant.—*Vincite,* "prevail *or* carry your opinion, if you wish it."

Page

98 **24. Qui terrear,** i. e. *neque talis sum ut terrear.*

25. Hi sapient, &c., "these (the soldiers standing near) shall know it, and if any calamity happen, they will demand satisfaction of you, Cotta."

28. Casum = *eventum.* The idea of an unfortunate event or issue of the war is implied in the expression.

30. Comprehendunt utrumque, "they (i. e. the officers) embrace both," i. e. Titurius and Cotta. *Comprehendere* commonly means, to seize or arrest.

35. Dat . . . . manus. The words *dare manus* indicate a symbolic action, expressing that a person surrenders his independence, or owns that he is conquered. See Corn. Nepos, *Hamilc.* 1; Cic. *De Amic.* 26.

36. Pronunciatur . . . ituros, "orders are given to march at break of day."

39. Instrumento. The term is here collective, and refers to the utensils, furniture, provisions, &c., required in a stationary camp.

99 **1. Excogitantur,** viz. *a militibus,* for Caesar is here describing the thoughts and reflections that passed through the minds of the soldiers. (Schmitz.) Others give a different turn to the passage, which has been much controverted.

3. Ut quibus = *quasi iis,* "as if they," &c. See cap. 33.

8. De profectione eorum senserunt, "they became aware of their departure."

11. Convallem. The word means a place shut in between two hills, whereas *vallis* is the low ground at the foot of a hill; but this difference is not always strictly observed. (Schmitz.)

12. Demisisset, "had descended."

18. In ipso negotio, "at the very moment of action."

19. Qui cogitasset, &c. Supply *ut.* See A. and S. § 264, 8.

21. Auctor, "adviser."

22. Appellandis. The verb is here equivalent to *alloqui,* "to address."

25. Possent, i. e. Titurius and Cotta.—*Jusserunt pronunciare,* "they (the commanders) ordered the officers (i. e. the centurions) to announce to their men." See cap. 34.

26. Orbem. See note, p. 84, line 6.

28. Incommode accidit, "turned out disadvantageously."

29. Quod . . . . videbatur, "because it was evident."

33. Abripere. Oudendorp prefers this to the reading in some editions, *arripere.* They not only seized but carried away the things which they regarded as most valuable. The MSS. continually confound these two words.

35. Consilium, "judgment, presence of mind," &c.

37. Illorum, i. e. the Gauls.

39. Erant . . . . nostri, "our men, both in valor and numbers, were a match for them in fighting." Caesar does not mean to say that the

Page

Romans equalled the enemy in numbers, but that in consequence of their 99 valor the number which they had was sufficient to enable them to make a stand against the barbarians. Oudendorp and others place a colon after *pares*, and connect *nostri* with what follows. In that case the clause refers to the Eburones, who by their valor and numbers were able to cope with the Romans.

1. **Ab duce**, i. e. Caesar. 100

4. **Pronunciari**, "to be proclaimed."

7. **Nihil .... posse**, "that it was not possible to hurt them;" they ran no risk in so doing, because the lightness of their armor and their daily exercise gave them every advantage over the Romans.

8. **Recipientes**, scil. *Romanos*.

11. **Eam partem**, i. e. of the Roman army.

12. **Ab latere aperto**, "on the open flank."

19. **Horam octavam**, i. e. about two o'clock in the afternoon.

21. **Primum pilum.** See note, p. 51, line 26. He had held the office of chief centurion of the legion.

24. **Subvenit.** On the meaning of this verb and its synonyms, see Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 222.

25. **In** is here used with the accusative, because the verb *vulnerare* implies the idea of aiming at, or throwing a missile at a person.

30. **Ille**, i. e. Ambiorix.—*Appellatus*. See note, p. 99, line 22.

32. **Ipsi .... iri**, "that no injury should be done to him," i. e. he, Titurius, should personally be safe, however it might be with regard to the soldiers.

33. **Interponere**, "pledged."—*Ille*, i. e. Titurius.

37. **Constitit**, i. e. *perstitit*, "he persisted" in his determination not to go to an enemy in arms against the Romans.

5. **Victoriam conclamant**, i. e. *conclamant victoriam partam esse.* 101

9. **Aquilifer**, the officer who bore the eagle or standard of the legion. *Cf.* note, p. 80, line 2.

11. **Illi**, i. e. those who had taken refuge in the camp.

17. **Sublatus**, "elated."

20. **Re demonstrata**, i. e. after he had informed them of his recent victory and had explained his present intentions.

24. **Magnam partem exercitus interisse.** This appears to have been a greater loss than was ever sustained by Caesar in any of his battles. The whole number of soldiers was about seven thousand.

25. **Nihil esse negotii**, "that it was an enterprise of no difficulty."

28. **Centrones**, &c. These tribes were clients or subjects of the Nervii. The districts they inhabited are unknown.

32. **Huic**, referring to Cicero.

33. **Lignationis munitionisque causa**, "for the sake of obtaining wood and materials for the fortifications."

38. **Aegre .... sustentatur**, i. e. *aegre eo die milites sustentant hostium impetum.*

Page

102 **1. Adepti**, i. e. *si hanc adepti essent victoriam*, the participle *adepti* having the meaning of a conditional clause. See Z. § 635, note 1.

4. Si pertulissent, i. e. the persons to whom the letters were intrusted. Schmitz pronounces the ellipsis to be rather bold, but says instances of a similar kind do now and then occur.

6. Turres. See note, p. 46, line 32.—*Admodum*, "about."—*Excitantur*. The verb *excitare* is here equivalent to *erigere*, as in Bk. II. 14, but it contains the notion of rapidity, which *erigere* does not.

14. Praeustae, "burnt at the end." Stakes of this sort were used in defending the rampart.—*Muralium pilorum*. These were the pili or lances which were hurled upon the besiegers from the walls. They were larger and heavier than those used in the field.

15. Turres contabulantur. The *turres contabulatae* were towers of several stories, from which stones were cast by means of engines.—*Pinnae*, a square kind of breastwork, round the top of a tower, behind which the soldiers were protected against the darts of the enemies. They seem to have been similar to the breastwork round the tops of Gothic towers. The *pinnae* alternated with *loricae;* that is, a kind of wicker-work serving a similar purpose as the *pinnae*. (Schmitz.)

17. Tenuissima valetudine, "in very delicate *or* weak health."

18. Ultro = "even."

19. Vocibus, "entreaties."

23. Egerat. See cap. 24.

26. Ambiorigem .... faciundae causa, i. e. they brought forward Ambiorix as a proof of the truth of what they said, and at the same time to intimidate Cicero.

27. Eos, i. e. those with Cicero.—*His*, i. e. those in the different winter-quarters throughout Gaul.

28. Sese tamen, &c., "nevertheless, that they entertained such feelings towards," &c.

30. Consuetudinem, i. e. of establishing winter-quarters in Gaul.—*Licere illis incolumibus*. Respecting this attraction with *licet* and similar verbs, see Z. § 601.

31. Per se, i. e. as far as the Nervii were concerned.

36. Sperare. Supply *se*.—*Justitia*, "clemency," or "compassion."—*Impetraturos*. Supply *eos esse*.

37. Spe, i. e. the hope of persuading the Romans to leave their camp.

103 **1. Nulla .... copia**, ablative absolute = *quum nulla copia esset*. See Bk. II. 8 and 9.

3. Exhaurire. This verb can, properly speaking, be joined only to *manibus*, "they took up the loose soil with their hands, and then carried it away in their military cloaks;" and to *sagulis* must be supplied a verb signifying "to carry away." This mode of speaking is called a *zeugma*. (Schmitz.)

5. Millium. Supply *passuum*. The account here given seems almost incredible.

Page

7. Testudines. See note, p. 44, line 7. 103

10. Glandes. These were balls of clay, which being in a moist or fluid state, were burnt, and while red-hot the balls were thrown by means of a sling (*funda*) among the tents of the enemy, to set them on fire.

15. Agere, "to advance."

19. Demigrandi. Vossius says *demigrare* is here used for *deserere aut fugere castra.*

24. Ut se .... dabant, "as they had crowded in close to the rampart, and the hindmost prevented the foremost from retiring."

26. Turri, meaning a moveable tower of the enemy's.

29. Si introire, &c., i. e. they began to invite them to enter if they wished.

32. Qui .... appropinquarent. Schmitz says that *qui* here contains the idea of *quum;* hence the subjunctive. They were now approaching the first ranks, or the honorable post of *primipilus*, or chief centurion. See note, p. 51, line 26, and p. 32, line 9.

35. Loco, i. e. their rank or place in the army.

38. Hic, hic dies. This is Oberlin's reading. Oudendorp has *hic dies, hic dies.*

5. Exanimato, "deprived of life." 104

7. Transfigitur scutum Pulfioni. Instead of the possessive and subjective genitive, a dative is sometimes used, as the remote object of a verb. See Bk. I. 31.

9. Conanti. See note on line 7.

10. Succurrit .... subvenit. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 222.

11. Ad hunc, i. e. Varenus.

15. Dejectus, "driven back," or "repelled."

18. Contentione et certamine. The former relates to the rivalry, or spirit of emulation, between the two men, the latter to their struggle with their enemies.

19. Versavit, i. e. fortune turned the scale sometimes towards one, sometimes towards the other.—*Inimicus.* See Ramsh. 35; Crombie p. 168.

27. Unus Nervius, for *quidam Nervius.*—*Intus*, "within," i. e. our camp.

28. Loco honesto, "of an honorable family."

29. Suam .... praestiterat, "and had given proofs of his fidelity to him."—*Servo*, scil. *suo*, "his slave."

31. Effert. Supply *e castris.*

34. Hora circiter undecima, "about five o'clock in the afternoon."

35. Crassum. See cap. 24.

38. Cum nuncio, i. e. as soon as he received the message of Caesar.

39. Qua, &c., "where he knew he should have to pass."

1. Reipublicae. The word is here used in the sense of "the common good," or *salus publica.* 105

Page

105 **2. Facere posset,** "could do it."

5. Cogit, i. e. *coagit* or *colligit,* "he assembles."

6. Hora tertia, "nine o'clock in the morning."

8. Samarobrivae. See note, p. 95, line 18.

10. Literas publicas. These consisted of the accounts of the army, dispatches, reports, and the like.

14. Veritus ne .... non posset. Dr. Schmitz remarks, that the two negatives *ne* and *non* in this sentence neutralize each other, and are therefore equivalent to *ut.* See Z. § 535.

17. Remittit, "sends in return, *or* writes a reply."

19. Equitatus peditatusque copias. Caesar uses the fuller form of expression than is common in other writers.

21. Opinione dejectus, "disappointed in his expectation." *Spe dejectus* is the more usual expression.

22. Redierat = "he had been reduced."

27. Graecis literis. Critics are not agreed whether only Greek characters were used, or whether the letter was written in Greek. Schmitz thinks the latter more probable. See note, p. 26, line 14.

29. Monet, i. e. *Gallicum equitem,* to whom Caesar had given the letters.

38. Fumi incendiorum. Caesar's custom was to burn the buildings of the enemy.

106 **3. Armatorum** = *militum.*—*Data facultate,* i. e. by Vertico's being in the camp and the departure of the enemy.—*Gallum .... repetit,* "begs the Gaul again."

5. Qui .... referat, "to carry back."

7. Convertisse, scil. *se.*

13. Tum. Schmitz regards this word as adding another reason to that contained in the words *erat magni,* &c.

14. Eoque, "and for this reason."—*Remittendum,* scil. *esse sibi.*

18. Viarum. The *viae* here mentioned are the roads or passages in the camp, between the divisions of troops. There were five lengthwise, i. e. from the decuman to the praetorian side, and three crosswise. He made these as narrow and close together as he could, in order to get the camp in a small compass.

22. Ad aquam, i. e. near the river mentioned above, to which the soldiers had to go for water. The Romans usually pitched their camp near some stream of water.

24. Caesar. Supply *exspectabat* from the preceding clause.

25. Suum locum, i. e. the ground favorable for himself.

31. Portas obstrui. The blocking up of the gates was of course a mere pretence, so as to deceive the enemy.

33. Concursari .... agi, used impersonally. *Concursare* means, "to run about here and there in confusion."

34. Transducunt, i. e. across the valley and stream of water.

Page

3. Ea. Supply *parte.*—*Vallum manu scindere,* i. e. of course with 107
suitable instruments wielded by hand.

10. Neque .... videbat. The reading and signification of this passage is much disputed. Prof. Anthon (following Oberlin) renders, "and because he saw that their position was abandoned by the enemy with no small loss on their part." Dr. Schmitz supposes the meaning to be, he saw that even if he were to abandon his position now (*locum relinquere*) the enemy had already sustained not an inconsiderable loss. Prof. Andrews agrees with this latter view.

13. Admiratur, "he is surprised at."—*Producta legione,* i. e. for the purpose of being reviewed by Caesar.

14. Non decimum quemque, &c., i. e. there was not one soldier in ten without a wound.

22. Culpa, "by the misconduct."—*Sit acceptum.* See A. and S. § 266, 3, and 2, Rem. 2.—*Hoc,* "on this account."

25. Laetatio. The word does not occur anywhere except in this passage; but it is a very expressive word, and far better suited to this passage than the common word *laetitia,* for, being a verbal substantive, it expresses the act of rejoicing itself. (Schmitz.)

29. Eoque, i. e. the camp of Cicero.

32. Fieret. This subjunctive depends upon *quo,* which contains the idea of *ut,* viz. *tantus clamor, ut eo clamore fieret.*

37. Trinis hibernis. *Trina hiberna* are "threefold winter-quarters;" distributive numerals being frequently used with plural nouns which have no singular, instead of cardinal numerals. See Z. § 115 and 119 (Schmitz.)

2. Quid reliqui consilii, "what farther measures." 108

6. Quin, i. e. *quo non,* the *quo* referring to *tempus.*

9. Armoricae. These were several tribes, apparently those living in marshy and fertile districts near the sea, between the Seine and Loire.—*Oppugnandi sui,* i. e. *L. Roscii.*

19. Adventu, &c. At the time of Caesar's arrival in Gaul Moritasgus had been king.

23. Satisfaciendi. The verb here means "to apologize."

25. Tantum, &c., "so great an influence did it exercise among barbarous men that some were found," &c.

26. Principes belli inferendi, i. e. the persons who first stir up a war.

27. Attulit. The subject of *attulit,* as of *valuit,* is the clause *esse repertos,* &c.

28. Alteros .... alteros, "the former .... the latter."

30. Officiis = "services."

31. Idque .... sit, i. e. "I am even inclined to wonder at this." The whole expression is a rhetorical one, stating in a doubtful manner that of which a person is perfectly convinced. (Schmitz.)

34. Deperdidisse. It depends upon *dolebant.* The words *ejus*

Page

108 *opinionis* are to be explained by *se virtute belli praeferri.*—*A populo Romano*, i. e. *populi Romani.*

109 **3. Ariovisti bello.** See Book I. 31, &c.—*Tenchtherorum transitu.* See Book IV. 1, &c.

4. Lapsus = "disappointed."

6. Tota Gallia, i. e. *in tota Gallia* or *per totam Galliam.*

11. Conscientia facinoris. The Senones on account of the expulsion of Cavarinus, cap. 54, and the Carnutes on account of the slaughter of Tasgetius, cap. 24.

12. Neque .... defore, "nor would there be wanting troops that of their own accord would join him."

15. Quo, i. e. *ad quod concilium.*

19. Supra demonstravimus. See cap. 3.

20. Bonaque ejus publicat, "and confiscates his estates."

23. Huc, i. e. into the country of the Senones and Carnutes.

26. Manu, "by art."

29. A Cingetorige, "from, i. e. by means of Cingetorix."

33. Sub castris, "below *or* close to the camp."

34. Alias .... alias, i. e. "sometimes .... sometimes." The word *alias* seems to be a contraction for *aliais*, i. e. *aliis*, and to be equivalent to *alio tempore* or *alio loco.* (Schmitz.)

37. Timoris opinionem. See cap. 49, where Caesar used the same stratagem against the Nervii.

39. Intromissis, "having been introduced" into the camp of Labienus.

110 **1. Arcessendos curaverat.** The participle in *dus* often expresses the *end* or *purpose for which a thing is done.* This is especially the case after *curare*, verbs of *giving*, *sending*, &c. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 351; A. and S. § 274, Rem. 7.

2. Nulla ratione, "in no way."

6. Magna .... verborum, "with very insulting language."

7. Ubi visum est, i. e. "when it appeared to them to be time."

9. Praecipit atque interdicit. The former word expresses a positive, the latter a negative command. See note, p. 95, line 1. Before *petant* (which belongs to *praecipit*) supply *ut;* the following *neu .... vulneret* refers to *interdicit.*

10. Proterritis hostibus, i. e. "so terrified as to be forced into a precipitate flight," and therefore Caesar adds, Atque in fugam conjectis, agreeably to his habit of introducing synonyms, as in the words, *dispersi dissipatique.* (Oudendorp.)

16. Hominis, i. e. Labienus: "fortune favored Labienus's plan."

17. Fluminis, i. e. the Mosa or Meuse, which separated the Treviri from the Remi.

BOOK SIXTH.

SYNOPSIS.

The death of Titurius Sabinus, and the slaughter of the troops under his command, gave rise to insurrections throughout the major part of Gaul. Caesar, apprehending this result from the well-known fickleness and excitability of the Gallic tribes, augments his forces, as a necessary preparation for the ensuing campaign. He falls suddenly upon the Nervii and subdues them; his legate Labienus attacks and routs the Treviri; and the Senones and Carnutes are admitted to terms of peace.

In order to intimidate the Germans, who were about proceeding to the aid of the Gauls, he crosses the Rhine a second time; the Suevi retire before him, but Caesar, fearing the want of provisions, returns into Gaul.

He embraces the opportunity, in this part of his Commentaries, of giving a description of the manners, religion, &c. of the Gauls and Germans. He also gives an account of the Hercynian forest, and the various kinds of wild animals found in it.

The remainder of the book details his operations in Gaul against Ambiorix and the Eburones. The former is overcome, and the territories of the latter are laid waste. The Sigambri, who, with others, had been invited to assist in plundering the Eburones, suddenly attack the camp of Cicero, throw the Romans into great consternation, succeed in cutting off a part of the troops sent to forage, and return with their booty over the Rhine.

The country of the Eburones having been completely wasted, Caesar holds a council of Gaul, and investigates the conspiracy of the Senones and Carnutes. Acco, their chief, is tried and executed; and the troops having been placed in winter-quarters, Caesar returns to Italy.

Page 111

3. Dilectum habere, "to hold a levy," i. e. to raise forces.

4. Proconsule. Pompey had been consul the year before, and was now proconsul. Accordingly he ought to have gone to Spain, which had been assigned to him as his province for five years. But he allowed his legates, Afranius and Petreius, to undertake the command in Spain, and remained in the neighborhood of Rome, for the ostensible purpose of seeing that the city should be provided with supplies of grain.—*Ad urbem*, i. e. near or in the neighborhood of Rome. No person vested with military command, (*cum imperio*,) was permitted by the laws of Rome to enter or remain in the city. The single exception was in the case of a triumph decreed by the senate, on which day a general was freed from this restriction.

5. Quos, i. e. *milites quos.*

6. Consulis sacramento. This was the oath by which the soldiers swore allegiance and obedience to the consul. *Rogare* is the technical

Page

111 term for calling on a soldier to take the oath, hence it is here equivalent to "to bind by an oath." (Schmitz.) Pompey had raised these troops during the preceding year.

8. Ad opinionem, "in reference to the opinion which Gaul entertained," &c.—*Tantas .... facultates,* "that the resources of Italy should appear so great," &c.

10. Brevi tempore sarciri. This is a legal term, signifying ("to repair damage") "to make whole." Festus: *Sarcito* in XII. Servius Sulpitius ait significare *damnum solvito, praestato.* Whence *sartus* for *integer*, and hence the form, *sarta tecta conservare.* (Vossius.) According to Davies, the metaphor is taken from those who repair the rents in garments. See Barker's Caesar.

11. Quod, "this request of Caesar."

13. Adductis, i. e. *ad Caesarem.*

14. Cum Q. Titurio. See Bk. V. 30–37.

112 **1. Docuit,** "showed."

3. Ut docuimus. See Bk. V. 58.

6. Inventis nonnullis civitatibus, scil. *a quibus impetrare possent.*

7. Confirmant, scil. *se* or *animos suos.*—*Obsidibusque de pecunia cavent,* i. e. "and by hostages they took precaution to secure the sum of money which each state was to contribute." The hostages were given as a pledge that the Treviri would pay to the states the promised sum. So, Bk. VII. 2, *obsidibus cavere,* where others wrongly insert *de.* Those critics erroneously thought that the sense would be the same in the expression *cavere aliqua re,* as in *de aliqua re,* whereas it is quite different, as in the well-known example, *De illis testamento cavisset.* So Terence, *Eun.* 4, 7, 12; Sibi cavit loco, i. e. per locum, quem elegit. (Oudendorp.)

11. Cisrhenanis. According to Davies, these were the Condrusi, Eburones, Caeraesi, and Paemani. See Bk. II. 4.

12. Ad imperatum, to perform what had been commanded.

22. Uti instituerat. This was Caesar's annual practice. *Cf.* cap. 44.

25. Lutetiam Parisiorum, the modern city of Paris. In Caesar's days it was a small town, situated on an island in the river Seine, and did not acquire any great importance until the time of the Frankish kings.

26. Hi, i. e. the Parisii.

27. Ab hoc concilio abfuisse, "to have had no concern in this plot or conspiracy."

28. Suggestu. The *suggestus* or *suggestum* was an elevated place, formed of earth, stone, &c., from which speeches or addresses were delivered, and from which the president of an assembly pronounced his opinion or judgment.

32. Conantibus. Supply *convenire.*

34. Deprecandi, i. e. of excusing their acts, as appears from this, viz. that Caesar replies that he receives their excuse.

Page

35. Per Aeduos, i. e. the Aedui were prevailed upon to interfere in their behalf with Caesar. 112

36. Petentibus Aeduis, ablative absolute, expressing cause.

2. Peragit, dissolves the assembly of the Gallic states. 113

4. Et mente et animo. See note, p. 64, line 35.

5. Cavarinum. See Bk. V. 54.

7. Iracundia. See Ramsh. 585.—*Odio civitatis.* He seems to have become odious to the state because Caesar had made him king over it.

8. Quod . . . habebat. The expression *pro explorato aliquid habere* means, "to believe a thing to be certain."

9. Ejus, i. e. Ambiorix.

14. Amicitiam, "alliance."—*Illi,* i. e. Ambiorix.

17. Congredi, "to join *or* form an alliance with."—*Cogeretur.* In Caesar it signifies the same as *necessitate coactus conaretur* or *niteretur,* with which it is on this account more than once confounded. Compare the notes on Bk. V. 42; Manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire cogebantur; *Bell. Civ.* Bk. I. 22; Adeo esse perterritos nonnullos, ut suae vitae durius consulere cogantur. The Greek translator rightly: *Μετὰ τῶν πέραν τοῦ Ῥήνου Γερμανῶν συμμαχίαν ποιεῖσθαι ἀναγκάζοιτο.* (Oudendorp.)

24. Adit. Supply *Menapios.*

29. Confirmatis, i. e. *constitutis.*

35. Bidui via. Ciacconius expunges the word *via,* as, Cic. *ad Att.* 5, 16, Quae aberant bidui; 5, 17, A quibus aberam bidui. But in these expressions *via* is understood, and I have more than once observed that Caesar shuns those ellipses, which are common in other writers. So, Bk. I. 37, we have twice *tridui viam.* See also Bk. IV. 4. (Davies.)

36. Missu Caesaris. See cap. 5.

1. Cum XXV cohortibus, equivalent, of course, to two legions and a half. 114

4. Flumen. Schmitz says that this river must have been the Mosella, (*Moselle,*) a river which Caesar does not anywhere designate by its real name.

7. Loquitur, i. e. Labienus.

8. In dubium non devocaturum, "that he will not risk" any longer.

11. Natura. This is here "the love of country which is implanted in our nature," and which some of the Gallic horsemen who served in the Roman army could not resist. (Schmitz.)

12. Primisque ordinibus. See note, p. 98, line 22.

17. In, considering that, or because the camps were so near each other. The preposition here contains the idea of cause.

21. Longum esse. This positive has the meaning of a comparative; as is often the case, especially with adjectives denoting size or space, such as *longus, multus, exiguus.* Render, "it would be too long." (Schmitz.)

Page

114 **27. Usus .... simulatione,** "practising the same deception."—*Placide,* "quietly *or* leisurely."

29. Facultatem, "opportunity."

30. Praestate, "display."

31. Imperatori, i. e. Caesar.

32. Et .... cernere, "and is an eye-witness of every action you perform."

36. Praeter spem, "contrary to their expectation."

37. Modo, i. e. "in a measure," or "only just," so that it is almost equivalent to *vix,* "scarcely." (Schmitz.)

115 **2. Civitatem.** This explains the preceding *quos,* indicating that by *quos* the whole state is meant. *Recipere* denotes the recovery or reduction of a nation which had before revolted.

4. Propinqui Indutiomari. See cap. 2.

5. Cingetorigi. See Bk. V. 3, 56.

6. Principatus .... imperium. The former is the princely or kingly dignity, the latter the military power connected with it.

10. Miserant, i. e. the Germans.—*Altera.* Some read *una,* which Oudendorp pronounces less elegant than the received lection

12. Transduxerat. See Bk. IV. 17.

13. Nota .... ratione, i. e. the manner of making a bridge was known and had been tried.

16. Ubii. See Book IV. 16.

20. Communi odio = *propter commune odium.*

22. Amplius, "still more," i. e. more in addition to those who were already with Caesar.—*Dare,* scil. *se.* The pres. infin. is here used for the future. See A. and S. § 268, Rem. 3.—*Cognita causa* = on inquiry.

31. Homines, referring to the Suevi.

37. Penitus, i. e. deep into the interior of the country.

39. Appellatur. The indicative shows that this clause is inserted by Caesar himself, and forms no part of the report of the Ubii.—*Bacenis.* This is generally thought to have been a part of the Hercynian forest, and especially that part which is now called the Thüringer Wald.

116 **1. Nativo** = what we call "natural," or "made by nature herself."

2. Prohibere. This verb has here a twofold meaning; namely, "to separate," and "to prevent from." In the first sense, it must be taken in connection with *Cheruscos a Suevis, Suevosque ab Cheruscis;* and in the latter, in connection with *injuriis incursionibusque.* (Schmitz.)

5. Alienum, improper or foreign to the design of these Commentaries.

7. Proponere, "to give some account."

8. Partibus. The *partes* are the subdivisions of the *pagi.*

9. In singulis domibus, "in every family."

11. Quorum .... redeat, "on whose judgment and decision all their most important affairs and resolutions depend." Schmitz remarks that *quorum* contains the idea of *quum,* denoting cause, whence the subjunctive *redeat.*

Page

12. Idque, referring to this division among the Gauls. 116

16. Eadem ratio .... totius Galliae, i. e. the constitution of all Gaul, considering it as one great state, or as a union of states.

19. Alterius factionis. In cap. 11, Caesar speaks of the factions prevailing in towns and even families: he now speaks of the two great parties which agitated nearly all Gaul. See Book I. 31, and note, p. 27, line 11.

20. Hi, i. e. the Sequani.

23. Jacturis, "presents *or* gifts." The word denotes a loss which a person is obliged to sustain for the purpose of securing an advantage.

31. Divitiacus. See note, p. 22, line 10.—*Auxilii petendi causa,* &c. It was usual for nations in alliance with the Romans, when in danger from any cause, to send an embassy to the senate to implore aid, which was seldom denied.

33. Adventu Caesaris, i. e. at the time of the arrival of Caesar.—*Commutatione.* This was in consequence of the defeat of Ariovistus by Caesar. See Book I. 35.

37. Eorum, i. e. of the Aedui.—*Amplificata.* The word is here made to agree only with *dignitate,* though, strictly speaking, it ought to agree with *reliquis rebus,* of which *gratia* and *dignitate* are only explanations. (Schmitz.)

39. Adaequare, i. e. *Remos aeque ac Aeduos in gratia esse.*

3. Illi, i. e. the Remi. 117

4. Collectam, "acquired."

5. Principes. The Aedui were the first in regard to their power and resources, but in the favor of Caesar they were only equal to the Remi.

7. Qui .... duo = "there are (only) two classes who are of any consideration and held in any esteem."

9. Nullo, the dative, an old form for *nulli.* *Cf.* note, p. 97, line 7.

10. Plerique, i. e. "most of the plebs," which, as just stated, is not counted as one of the two classes of which the Gauls consisted.

13. Quae, i. e. *quae (jura sunt) dominis,* &c.—*Sed,* is here resumptive of what was said in the commencement of the chapter. The brief digression respecting the Gallic plebs, interrupted the author's remarks relative to the two principal parties in Gaul.

14. Druidum. The derivation of the name is much disputed. Michelet terms them "men of the oaks;" *Derw* (Cymric), *Deru* (Armorican), *Dair* (Gaelic),—*Oak.* Respecting Druidism, its discipline, hierarchy, &c., consult Michelet's *History of France,* vol. i. pp. 43–45; and Anthon's *Classical Dictionary,* pp. 456, 457. Caesar himself is the main authority for all that is known with certainty respecting this powerful and important class.

15. Intersunt. This does not mean that the Druids alone were present, and that others were excluded from religious ceremonies; but *interesse* here indicates their active presence, as the Druids themselves had to perform the religious ceremonies; see cap. 16. Compare Book VII. 87, *proelio interesse.* (Schmitz.)—*Religiones.* This in the plural de-

Page

117 *notes* not only the doctrines of a religion, but all the phenomena connected with it, such as omens, prodigies, and all kinds of signs.

17. Ii, i. e. the Druids.

18. Fere, according to Schmitz, qualifies the whole clause, and does not belong to *omnibus*.

19. Facta. Supply *est* or *sit*.

21. Si qui = *siquis*. The former is more definite than the latter.

22. Sacrificiis interdicunt, "they forbid them the sacrifices," i. e. they excommunicate them from participation in their religious rites.

26. Jus redditur, "is justice dispensed."

31. De principatu, i. e. for the office of chief Druid.

32. Quae regio .... habetur. No other place was equally convenient to the Druids, who assembled from all parts of Gaul. For this same reason, no doubt, the Amphictyons assembled at Delphi, because that town was in the heart of Greece. See Strabo, 9, p. 419; Pausanias, 7, p. 445. (Davies.)

35. Disciplina. The word here denotes "the knowledge" or "the wisdom and system of the Druids."

36. Reperta. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 177; Ramsh. 577; Crombie, p. 235. The latter says, "*invenire* expresses the power or the faculty, as well as the act; *reperire* denotes the latter only."

38. Illo, i. e. into Britain.

118 **3. Disciplinam.** It here means the instruction in the wisdom of the Druids, or the place where such instruction is given.

4. Ibi, referring to the schools of the Druids.

5. Annos .... permanent, "some continue twenty years in (this) study."

6. Ea, i. e. the subjects of the verses they require to be learned.

7. Rationibus, not "accounts," as in Book I. 29, but "affairs" generally.

8. Id, i. e. this peculiar custom of not committing their instructions to writing.

13. Non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios. This was the doctrine of Pythagoras: Diod. S. 5, p. 306. *Ἐνισχύει γὰρ παρ' αὐτοῖς (Γαλάταις) ὁ Πυθαγόρου λόγος, ὅτι τὰς ψυχὰς τῶν ἀνθρώπων ἀθανάτους εἶναι συμβέβηκε, καὶ δι' ἐτῶν ὡρισμένων πάλιν βιοῦν, εἰς ἕτερον σῶμα τῆς ψυχῆς εἰσδυομένης.* But whether the Druids drew their doctrine from Pythagoras, or he himself rather borrowed it from them, seems doubtful to Lipsius, *Physiol. Stoic.* 3, 12. Alexander indeed in Clem. Alex. *Str.* 1, p. 223, ed. Lugd. maintains that Pythagoras *ἀκηκοέναι Γαλατῶν*. But I am more inclined to listen to Amm. Marcellinus, 15, 9; Druidae ingeniis celsiores, ut auctoritas Pythagorae decrevit, sodalitiis adstricti consortiis, quaestionibus occultarum rerum altarumque erecti sunt; ut, despectantes humana, pronunciarint animas immortales. Certainly, since the Gauls devoted themselves to the literature of Marseilles, as appears from Strabo, 4, p. 181, it is no wonder that they were imbued with the Pythagorean

doctrines. In this opinion at least Iamblichus, *V. P.* n. 173, seems to have been. Origen, however, *Philos.* 2, p. 46, expressly says: 'Ο τοῦ Πυθαγόρου οἰκέτης Ζάμολξις τοὺς παρὰ Κελτοῖς Δρυΐδας λέγεται διδάξαι φιλοσοφεῖν τὴν Πυθαγόρειον φιλοσοφίαν. He nearly repeats the same words, c. 25, p. 168. (Davies.) 118

15. Excitari. Supply *homines.*

24. Ambactos. Schmitz thinks this is probably not a Latin word, but a Gallic or Celtic word (*andbaht*, i. e. minister) which denotes persons who attend upon the nobles. It is not impossible that Caesar may mean to explain the word by *clientes*, the *que* often serving to join an explanation to some preceding word.

26. Religionibus =, according to Morus, *ritibus sacris, usque superstitiosis.*

28. Pro victimis homines immolant, "they offer human victims in sacrifices." This horrible practice is mentioned by other writers, and it seems to be true that the religion of the Druids instituted human sacrifice. If not so, it at least adopted it, and kept it up, with attendant circumstances which make one shudder at the awful cruelties and abominations of heathenism.

34. Simulacra, "images," which probably represented their various gods.

36. Supplicia, "punishments."

37. Noxa. The word means, any evil deed by which injury is done to another person.

38. Ejus generis. Supply *nocentium.*

39. Supplicia, = "sacrificing *or* immolating."

1. Mercurium. This (according to Schmitz) cannot have been the Mercury of the Romans; and it must be borne in mind that both Greeks and Romans, when they became acquainted with a new divinity in a foreign country, forthwith identified it with the one among their own gods with whom he seemed to have any resemblance. The Mercury in this place is probably the Odin or Wodan of the northern nations, Apollo the god Belenus, Mars the god Thor, Jupiter the Gallic god Taran or Taranin, and Minerva is perhaps the goddess of the moon. 119

5. Apollinem. Supply *colunt.*

9. Huic, i. e. Mars.

10. Quae. It has here a general meaning comprising both *animalia* and *reliquae res.* The meaning is, "whatever they conquer, they treat in either of two ways; if the booty consists of animals, they sacrifice them; and if of any other things, they collect them into one place." (Schmitz.)

17. Dite. *Dis* is the god of the lower world, commonly called Pluto. By calling themselves his descendants they probably meant to describe themselves as aborigines or *αὐτόχθονες*, those who sprang from the earth itself.

18. Spatia omnis temporis, "all the intervals of time." This mode

Page

119 of computation is stated by Tacitus to have been followed by the ancient Germans. Compare also the scriptural expressions in the beginning of Genesis.

19. Finiunt, i. e. *definiunt,* "they define *or* compute."

20. Ut noctem dies subsequatur, i. e. they began their reckoning with the night instead of the day, counting from sunset to sunset, and not from sunrise to sunrise.

23. Palam, openly, i. e. publicly, in public.

28. Conjunctim ratio habetur, "a joint account is kept."

29. Fructus, "interest."

34. In servilem .... habent. Among the Romans slaves only were examined by torture; citizens gave evidence upon oath.

35. Si compertum est, i. e. if the suspicion is confirmed, viz. that the wife had caused the death of the husband.

36. Pro cultu, "considering the manner in which the Gauls live." See Book IV. 3; *ut est captus Germanorum.*

37. Vivis cordi fuisse, "to have been dear to them when living."

39. Supra hanc memoriam, i. e. not long before the time of which we have any recollection. (Schmitz.)

120 **1. Justis funeribus.** The *justa funera* were the funeral rites, which by the laws of religion they were bound to perform.

3. Commodius, i. e. better or more judiciously, viz. than other states.

4. Sanctum, for *sancitum.*

7. Imperitos, "inexperienced," i. e. in public affairs.

11. Per concilium. The preposition relates to the way and manner as well as the time of doing any thing. Oudendorp notes *per ea tempora, per hiemem,* and similar expressions.

13. Neque sacrificiis student, "nor are they much given to sacrifices."

15. Vulcanum = "fire." It is this element personified.

16. Ne .... acceperunt. Tacitus, who is much better authority, contradicts this statement. (See *De Moribus Germ.* 9.) Caesar, says Davies, might easily have been deceived, as he passed only a few days within the limits of Germany.

18. Ab parvulis .... student, "from infancy they are inured to labor and fatigue."

19. Impuberes, "chaste," or "in an unmarried condition."

21. Intra .... vicesimum, i. e. "before the twentieth year."

23. Promiscue, i. e. without any distinction of sex or age.

24. Rhenonum. The *rhenones* are said by some to have been a peculiar kind of dress, covering the shoulders and breast down to the stomach, while others believe them to be the name of the reindeer, and *tegumenta rhenonum* the skins of those animals. The latter seems to be more probable, and the meaning therefore is: "they cover their bodies either with the entire skin of the reindeer, or with a sort of apron (*parvis tegumentis*) made of the same material." (Schmitz.)

Page

28. Gentibus. These appear to be "the tribes," and the *cognationes* following "the families" belonging to a *gens*. 120

30. Alio, i. e. *in alium locum.*

33. Humiliores, i. e. *tenuiores* or *infirmiores.*

35. Qua, for *aliqua.*

37. Cum potentissimis, i. e. *cum opibus potentissimorum.* *Aequari*, "to be made or esteemed equal," is more generally construed with the dative or accusative than with *cum*. See Z. § 389, note 2.

39. Civitatibus, i. e. to each state.

1. Solitudines habere. See Bk. IV. 1, 3.—*Hoc .... existimant,* 121 "this they regard as a proof of their valor." The infinitives following, *cedere* and *consistere*, are explanatory of *hoc*.

5. Defendit, "repels."

8. Jus dicunt controversiasque minuunt, "administer justice and decide controversies." *Minuunt*, "they diminish the number of lawsuits," viz. by bringing about amicable arrangements between the parties at issue.

11. Desidiae minuendae, i. e. *tollendae prorsus et eradicandae;* for this is no unfrequent sense of the word. Horace, *Epist.* 2, 1, 107, Crescere res posset, minui damnosa libido. So Caesar says, a little before, *controversias minuere* in the sense of "deciding and terminating." It is worthy of remark that the Lacedaemonians for the same reason permitted predatory expeditions. (Davies.)

14. Causam, "the plan *or* the proposed expedition."

15. Qui ex iis, referring to those who have promised their aid and approved of the enterprise.

19. Sanctos, "inviolable." The word is used of men and things under the especial protection of the gods. See Ramsh. 894.

25. Eratostheni. He was born B. C. 276, died B. C. 192, and was one of the most learned men and greatest geographers of antiquity. He was librarian of Ptolemy Euergetes at Alexandria in Egypt.

26. Quam illi, i. e. *et quam illi.*

29. Opinionem, "reputation."

30. Patientia. It denotes the patient and voluntary endurance of hardships.

31. Gallis, i. e. the Volcae Tectosages, who remained in Gaul and did not migrate.

32. Transmarinarum rerum, "foreign commodities."

37. Finiri. The verb is here taken in a sense rather unusual for *dimetiri*, "ascertaining the space from limit to limit." (Vossius.)

39. Recta regione, i. e. "in a straight line along the banks of the Danube." *Regio* (from *regere*) often signifies the line or direction which a thing takes, as in *diversis regionibus* below. *Cf.* Bk. VII. 46.

1. Sinistrorsus, i. e. to the northward. 122

3. Hujus Germaniae, i. e. western Germany, the part in which Caesar himself was.

Page

122 4. **Initium**, meaning the eastern extremity.—*Dicat*, "can say."—*Quum*, "although."

5. **Acceperit**, connected by *aut* with *dicat*.

9. **Bos.** The reindeer is here meant. It is very plain, however, that Caesar never saw the animal, but speaks from uncertain rumor, or he would not have described it as having one horn in the centre of its forehead.

11. **Palmae.** The word means a shovel or the flat part of an oar. (Schmitz.) Others render, "palms," referring to the leaves of the palm-tree.

12. **Quam.** It commonly goes with superlatives to strengthen their meaning. It also occurs with the positive, and has the same effect. See Livy xxxv. 15. (Schmitz.)

14. **Alces**, "elks." The description is not to be received as complete, arising out of the same cause, viz. his not having seen the animals.

15. **Varietas.** Their color is referred to. It varies at different seasons of the year.

20. **Se applicant**, = "they lean."

23. **Summa species**, i. e. "the general aspect."

24. **Huc**, i. e. *in his*, "upon these."

27. **Uri.** *Urus* is a German word, (the full form is *auer-ochs* or *ur-ochs*,) and signifies "a mountain-bull," or "wild bull."

28. **Paulo infra elephantos**, "a little less than elephants." The statement is, of course, exaggerated, being derived from mere hearsay.

32. **Exercent.** Supply *se*.

35. **Assuescere ad homines**, "to be reconciled to men," "to be domesticated."

37. **Haec**, "these horns."

38. **Ab labris**, i. e. where the lips (*labra*) touch them in drinking out of them.—*Amplissimis*, "their most splendid."

123 1. **Caesar postquam**, &c. The narrative is resumed from cap. 10.

3. **Supra demonstravimus.** See cap. 22.

13. **Bellum Ambiorigis.** See cap. 5.—*Per Arduennam silvam*, &c. These and the words following, to *patet*, are thought to be an interpolation: hence we have enclosed them in brackets. *Cf.* Bk. V. 3; VI. 33.

16. **Basilus.** He was afterwards one of the conspirators who slew Caesar.

20. **Subsequi.** The present infinitive used for the future. See A. and S. § 268, Rem. 3.

25. **Multum fortuna potest**, "fortune can do much," i. e. fortune is very powerful. So below, *multum fortuna valuit*.

26. **Ipsum**, i. e. Ambiorix.

28. **Fama ac nunciis afferretur.** This is the reading of Oudendorp. Others read, *fama aut nuncius afferretur;* and others again, *fama ac nuncius adventus afferretur*. The true lection is not very clear.

29. **Instrumento.** This word has often a collective meaning, denoting all implements of war; so that it is the same as *apparatus militaris*. *Cf.* Bk. V. 31.

Page

30. Ipsum effugere mortem. These words form the subject of 123
the clause, and *magnae fortunae fuit*, the predicate; "the circumstance of his (Ambiorix) escaping alive was a piece of great good luck." Davies does not doubt that Caesar gave orders that they should put Ambiorix to death, as the author of the sedition, if he fell into their hands, as Labienus also conducted himself towards Indutiomarus; Bk. V. 58.

37. Ad subeundum .... ad vitandum. The former refers to the Romans under Basilus; the latter to Ambiorix, who escaped the unexpected attack.

39. Ambiorix copias suas judicione .... dubium est, "it is doubtful whether Ambiorix did not assemble his forces from choice," &c.

1. An tempore exclusus, "or whether prevented by want of time." 124

4. Sibi consulere. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 233.

5. Continentes = *continuas*.

6. Insulis. These appear to have been the downs near the coast, according to Dr. Schmitz.

12. Precibus, "imprecations *or* curses." Davies refers to the *preces iratae*. (Hor. *Sat.* 2, 6, 30; *Epod.* 5, 85.) So also *Druidum preces dirae*. (Tacit. *Ann.* 14, 30.)

13. Taxo. This is the yew-tree, of which the berries, not the leaves, are poisonous.

19. Nihil, stronger than *non* = "in no way," or "in no manner." See Bk. II. 20.

21. Captivorum, an object. genit. = "by questioning the captives."

27. Reliquis rebus, "for other reasons." The ablative is equivalent to *ob* with the accusative.—*Superioris anni munitiones*, meaning the fortifications of Titurius and Cotta. See cap. 37.

31. Q. Tullius Cicero, the brother of the orator. See Bk. V. 38, 39, &c.

34. Versus. This is originally a participle, (from *verto*,) but came afterwards to be used as a preposition, and then the prepositions *ad* or *in*, which were originally joined to the participle, were yet retained in conversational language, whence we often find *ad versus* or *in versus*. (Schmitz.)

37. Scaldim. This is the modern Schelde, emptying itself into the sea below Antwerp. Caesar's description has led commentators to the belief that originally a branch of the Schelde flowed into the Meuse; but it must either be supposed that the whole country between the Schelde and Meuse has entirely changed its aspect since the days of Caesar, or that Caesar was mistaken in saying *quod influit in Mosam*. Thus Dr. Schmitz; others avoid the difficulty by reading *Sabim*, (now *Sambre*,) which flows into the Meuse in the territory of the Aduatuci. The Greek paraphrase has Σάβιν.

1. Diem septimum. Supply *inchoatum*. It is hence equivalent 125
to "on the seventh day." See cap. 35.

4. Reipublicae. The word here means "the common good" = *salus publica*.

Page

125 8. **Supra demonstravimus.** See cap. 31.—*Manus certa nulla.* Ambiorix had not assembled his forces, but ordered them to conceal themselves; hence there was no regular force collected in one place.

13. **Vicinitatibus** = *vicinis*, the abstract for the concrete.—*Diligentiam*, scil. *Caesaris*.

14. **Non .... intuenda,** i. e. "not in the care for the protection of the whole mass of the army."

16. **Ex parte,** "in some measure."

17. **Nam et.** *Nam* refers to the clause *in singulis*, &c.

20. **Vellet,** i. e. Caesar.

22. **Instituta ratio,** "the established discipline."

27. **Ad ulciscendum,** "to avenge" the slaughter of the troops under Titurius and Cotta.

29. **Omnes .... evocat spe praedae.** "Caesar overwhelms the Eburones, the barbarian party and friendly to the Germans, by chasing their intrepid Ambiorix through the forest of Ardennes, and delivering them up to the mercy of the Gallic tribes acquainted with their retreats in the woods and marshes, who with cowardly avidity joined in hunting this quarry. The legions blockaded this unfortunate people on every side, and prevented all possibility of escape." Michelet's *History of France*, vol. I. p. 48.

31. **Legionarius miles,** a concise mode of expression instead of the more logical one, *vita legionarii militis*.

32. **Facinore.** See Ramsh. 1044; Crombie, p. 259.

36. **Appetebat,** "was approaching." The verb has this signification, especially in reference to time.

37. **Reverti constituerat.** See cap. 33.

38. **Quantos afferat casus,** "what great changes she effects."

126 3. **Ultro.** The word indicates that any one might come, without being specially commanded or called upon.

5. **Supra docuimus.** See Bk. IV. 16.

7. **Perfectus** = *factus* or *exstructus*.

8. **Primos,** meaning those who were nearest to them.

16. **Fortunatissimis.** See Z. § 601.

17. **Fortunas.** See cap. 32.

18. **Praesidii tantum est,** i. e. *tam parvum;* = "the garrison is so small, or few in number." See Bk. II. 8; VI. 27.—*Cingi*, scil. *militibus Romanis*.

20. **Oblata spe.** Oudendorp notes that Caesar elsewhere says, *illata spe*. So we have often, *occasio oblata*, and *spes oblata*.

21. **Usi eodem duce,** "using the same person as a guide."

26. **Caesarem .... servaturum,** "that Caesar would keep his promise," i. e. relative to the time of his return. See cap. 33.

29. **Patientiam,** "forbearance."

33. **Offendi.** The verb *offendere* is properly, "to stumble against any thing," hence the passive *offendi*, "to be met by something which

Page

is an obstacle in our way;" that is, "to encounter a difficulty or danger." 126
In millibus passuum tribus; the preposition *in* here seems to denote cause: "considering that the distance was only three thousand paces." (Schmitz.)

37. Una mittuntur, "are sent with the cohorts to forage."

1. Hoc .... casu, "at this moment and under these unfortunate 127
circumstances." Some editors reject *et.*

3. Decumana porta. See note, p. 18, line 24.

5. Tenderent mercatores. *Tendere* is *habere tentoria,* ("to pitch tents;") whence (Virg. *Aen.* II. 29; Hic Dolopum manus, hic saevus tendebat Achilles: VIII. 605; legio latis tendebat in arvis.) But when the cantonments are going to be broken up, the phrase is *detendere tentoria,* (Caes. *Bell. Civ.* III. 85, Tabernaculisque detensis.) But the custom of the Romans deserves notice: the merchants were not permitted to dwell within the camp, but pitched their tents without it, but close to the ramparts, *sub vallo.* (Vossius.)

8. Circumfunduntur, "crowd around."

9. Portas tuentur. There were no ditches outside the gates; hence the enemy came directly up to them.

15. Religiones. These are fears and apprehensions arising out of a religious or superstitious feeling. These feelings were roused in this instance by the recollection that Cotta and Titurius had perished in the same place. (Schmitz.)

16. Calamitatem. See Bk. V. 37, 38, &c.

19. Nullum, i. e. *perexiguum.*

23. Ad = *apud,* as in Bk. III. 9, *nomen ad omnes nationes sanctum.—Mentionem .... fecimus.* See Bk. II. 24.

29. In statione, "on guard."

30. Relinquit animus Sextium, = "Sextius faints." *Animus* is strength, energy, &c.; *anima* is breath, life, or soul. Oudendorp shows that Davies is wrong in rendering the phrase, "he dies," confounding it with *relinquere animam.*

35. Exaudiunt. The verb means, "to hear at a distance."

37. Modo conscripti, "those who had been recently enlisted."

4. Despecta. The verb *despicere* implies the idea of contempt, "to 128
behold or perceive with contempt."

6. Calones. See note, p. 51, line 5.

8. Cuneo facto. The wedge was the name applied to a body of foot-soldiers, drawn up in this form for the purpose of breaking through an enemy's line. The wedge was met by the *forfex,* or "shears," a name given to a body of men drawn up in the form of the letter V, so as to receive the wedge between two lines of troops.

9. Censent. *Censere,* "to be of opinion," is here followed by *ut ... perrumpant,* and not by the accusative with the infinitive, because *censere* contains the idea of a wish or desire.

10. At = *tamen,* "at least."

Page

128 **11. Ut.** It refers to *censent*, which is understood before it.

12. Docuimus. See cap. 36.

18. Nullo .... percepto, "having as yet acquired no experience in warfare."

22. Demiserant. Supply *se*, "they threw themselves," *or* "they came into an unfavorable position." The pluperfect here brings the matter more vividly before us than the historical perfect, for the meaning is; "they had come to that position, and there they then were." (Schmitz.)

34. Fidem non faceret, "did not make them believe," *or* was not believed.

36. Paene alienata mente, "having almost lost their senses," *or* "so disturbed in mind as to be hardly masters of themselves."

37. Incolumi exercitu, the ablative absolute. It has the force of a conditional clause, "if the army had been unimpaired."

129 **1. Eventus,** acc. pl., meaning, "the various and uncertain chances of war."

3. Casu, old form for *casui*. See cap. 44.

4. Judicavit. This clause contains the grounds on which Caesar consoled himself for the things of which he had just been complaining.

6. Maxime .... videbatur, "it appeared the most surprising."

14. Agebatur. This verb, when used in connection with booty, indicates that the booty consists of cattle, which are "driven away."

16. Anni tempore. It was autumn, and the frequent showers of that season had thrown down and spoiled the corn in the fields.

19. Locum, "state, condition," &c. See Book II. 26.

20. Modo = *paullo ante*, "shortly before," *or* "just before."

21. Captivi .... contenderent, "the captives declared" that Ambiorix, &c.

22. Ut, the same as *ita ut*. To *consequendi* supply *eum*, viz. *Ambiorigem*.

24. Paene .... vincerent, "almost overcame nature by their zeal," i. e. well-nigh accomplished impossibilities.

30. Duarum cohortium damno, referring to the loss of the two cohorts, cut to pieces by the Sigambri. With *Remorum*, supply *urbem*. It was the capital of the Belgae.

33. Accone. See cap. 4.

34. More majorum refers to the Romans. The execution of Acco, which Caesar ordered to be performed according to the mode of the early Romans, consisted in the criminal being scourged to death by the lictors. (Schmitz.)

35. Aqua .... interdixisset, i. e. banished them. To forbid the use of fire and water, was the Roman judicial sentence whereby a person was banished from Italy, but might go to any other place he chose. Of course here reference is to banishment from Gaul.

38. Exercitu, old form for *exercitui*.

39. Conventus agendos. See note, p. 40, line 8.

BOOK SEVENTH.

SYNOPSIS.

The cruelly severe course pursued by Caesar, in regard to the Eburones and the Gauls generally, and the intelligence which had been received from Italy of civil commotions, induced the Gauls to form new plans for carrying on the war against Caesar. The Carnutes and Arverni, at the instigation of Vercingetorix, (the general-in-chief,) first commence hostilities. Caesar returns with some difficulty to his army and enters the country of the Arverni, which obliges the Gallic general to leave the north, whither he had gone, and defend the parts attacked by Caesar. Several towns are taken by the Romans, and the inhabitants put to the sword.

Vercingetorix proposes another plan of carrying on the war, and assures his countrymen that the only hope of safety is in starving out the Roman army, and to do this it is necessary to burn down their own towns. The Bituriges do so with all theirs, (twenty in number,) except Avaricum, the finest city in Gaul. The Romans suffer much in consequence of want of provisions, and endure their privations with great fortitude. Vercingetorix, accused of treason, defends himself successfully and endeavors to succor Avaricum. The city, however, is taken after severe fighting, and most of the inhabitants are massacred.

The Aedui, the firmest and best friends of the Romans, revolt, partly in secret, from Caesar, and thus disappoint him of his expected force of cavalry. Caesar does what he can in the emergency; but his soldiers attacking Gergovia too eagerly, are repulsed with great loss. Caesar censures the rashness of his troops on this occasion, abandons the siege and retires into the country of the Aedui. Labienus in the north gains a victory over the Parisii, and rejoins Caesar.

The Gauls, under the command of Vercingetorix, continue the war with vigor. A furious battle is fought, in which Caesar gains the victory by a charge of his German cavalry.

Vercingetorix retreats to Alesia, a town extremely well fortified, and sends a summons to all Gaul to come to his aid. Caesar circumvallates the town and the Gallic camp with vast works, enclosing a circuit of fifteen miles. A very large army is collected from all quarters, who make most earnest efforts to relieve their countrymen in Alesia; but in vain. The besieged, hard pressed and suffering from scarcity of provisions, vigorously second the efforts of their friends without Caesar's intrenchments, but to no purpose. Violent contests serve only to confirm the superiority of the Romans, and draw on the final result. At last, in despair, Vercingetorix and Alesia surrender.

With this the campaign of the present year is concluded, and the army goes into winter-quarters.

130 **1. Italiam,** i. e. the north of Italy, or Gallia Cisalpina.

2. P. Clodii caede. Clodius was an unprincipled and licentious Roman nobleman. He was killed in an accidental encounter by the slaves of Milo, at the command of their master, towards the end of B. C. 53. See Arnold's *Later Roman Commonwealth*, pp. 218, 219.

Page

130 **3. Ut omnes . . . . . conjurarent,** "that all the youth of Italy should take up arms." *Conjurare* here signifies "to take the military oath in a body," for as the dangers were urgent, there was no time for administering the military oath (*sacramentum*) to each individually. They were called *tumultuarii milites*, because such a *conjuratio* generally happened during a tumult. The *juniores* are all those between the ages of seventeen and forty-six, who were bound to serve in the legions.

131 **2. Dissensionibus.** The *dissensiones* here referred to, are most probably the riots and disorders that broke out at Rome in consequence of the murder of Clodius, the trial of Milo, &c.

3. Qui . . . . dolerent. A relative clause expressing the *reason* of what goes before, takes the subjunctive. See A. and S. § 264, 8.

6. De Acconis morte. See Book VI. 44.—*Casum*, "misfortune."

7. Recidere posse, "might befall."

9. Deposcunt. Supply *tales* or *eos*, to which the following *qui* (= *ut*) refers.

10. Ejus = *ejus rei.* It is explained by the clause *ut Caesar ab exercitu*, &c.

15. Praestare interfici, "that it was better to be slain."

19. Recusare, the pres. infin. instead of the future serves to give vividness to the statement in the text.—*Principes . . . . facturos*, "that they will be the first of all to commence the war."

21. Obsidibus cavere = *dare obsides in pignus fidei.* (Bk. VI. 2.) —*Ne* refers to *cavere.*

22. Ut belongs to *petunt*, and *ne* (line 24) refers to the whole clause, *ut jurejurando ac fide sanciatur.*

26. Ejus rei, i. e. beginning the war against the Romans.

28. Desperatis. The word means, one who despairs of himself, so that, as Schmitz says, the passive *desperatus* has the meaning of the Greek middle voice.

29. Qui negotiandi, &c. The *negotiatores* or merchants in the Roman provinces were chiefly equites: their business was of a twofold nature: they either lent money at a very high per centage to the provincials, or purchased large stores of grain, which they conveyed to Italy and Rome. (Schmitz.)

35. Proximis tradunt, i. e. they formed a line of communication, being stationed at intervals. The arrangement was not unlike a modern telegraph.

132 **2. Galliae totius,** i. e. *Celticae*

9. Ex civitate, i. e. *ex tota regione.*

16. Qui Oceanum attingunt. The Armoric states are meant. See Book II. 34; V. 53.

20. Efficiat, i. e. *efficere* or *conficere debeat*, "which every state had to raise."

21. Summam . . . . severitatem, "the utmost rigor of power."

22. Majore commisso delicto, equivalent to a conditional clause; 132
"if a person committed a serious crime."

30. In fide. It appears to be the same as *in clientela.*

32. De consilio, "in accordance with the advice." Similar expressions are, *de more, de sententia,* &c.

39. Ipsi, i. e. the Bituriges.

3. Ponendum = in meaning to *statuendum, affirmandum.* 133

6. Urbanas res, &c. During the disturbances which took place at Rome after the murder of Clodius, Pompey was elected sole consul and ordered by the senate to watch over the safety of the whole republic.

8. Qua. Before *qua* we must supply *dubitans* or *nesciens:* "he found himself in great difficulties, not knowing," &c.

17. Versus. See note, p. 124, line 34.

18. Antevertendum. The verb *antevertere* is, "to anticipate a person, and thereby to prevent his carrying out his plan;" *omnibus consiliis* is the ablative, and equivalent to *prae omnibus consiliis.* The sense is: "before forming any other plan, Caesar thought it necessary to go to Narbo." (Schmitz.)

20. Rutenis. A part of these people belonged to the Roman province, and these are here called *Ruteni provinciales.*

26. Putabat, scil. Lucterius.

27. Proficiscitur, scil. Caesar.

29. Discussa, "being cleared away." Oudendorp rather prefers *discisa,* which is the reading given by Oberlin. In that case, the word refers to the cutting away the ice with axes, &c.

32. Singulari homini, equivalent to *singulis hominibus;* for *singularis* usually signifies, that which is singular in its kind, *or* that which is not like any thing else. (Schmitz.)

3. Quod .... praeceperat = "because he had foreseen that Ver- 134
cingetorix would act in this manner." *Usu venire* is equivalent to *accidere* or *evenire. Opinione praecipere* is, "to believe a thing before it actually takes place."

4. Per causam supplementi, i. e. *supplementi cogendi causa.*

13. De sua salute, i. e. *contra se* or *contra suam salutem.*

18. Rursus reducit, pleonastic. It is common in the case of *rursus* with a verb having the prefix *re.*

20. Aeduisque attribuerat, i. e. *ut iis stipendia et tributa solverent,* "had rendered tributary to the Aedui."

23. Ne. It depends on some verb denoting *fear,* which is implied in the word *difficultatem.*

24. In eo, i. e. in Caesar.

25. Videret, scil. *Gallia:* "since all Gaul would see that he was unable to protect his friends."

26. Ab re. The *ab* here indicates the source of the possible suffering. —*Durae subvectiones* are "the laborious and difficult ways in which provisions are to be obtained or supplied." (Schmitz.)

Page

134 **34. Altero die,** "on the second day."

36. Oppugnare instituit, scil. *id,* which is expressed in the next clause.

135 **1. Iter faceret,** viz. to Gergovia, to attack Vercingetorix.

3. Eam rem, i. e. *oppugnationem urbis Vellaunoduni.*

8. Continebat. Schmitz says that the town lay on both sides of the river, so that its two parts were connected by the bridge.

10. Excubare, "to keep watch," i. e. at the bridge.

14. Perpaucis . . . . caperentur, i. e. "so very few of the number of the enemies being missing, (having escaped,) that it might be said all were taken alive."

20. Oppugnatione desistit, scil. *Gergoviae.*

21. Biturigum, positum in via. These words are enclosed in brackets, as being probably interpolated. Noviodunum was a town of the Aedui, and not of the Bituriges. Its modern name is Nevers on the Loire.

32. Ex significatione Gallorum, "from the signs made to one another by the Gauls."

37. Submittit. The verb *submittere* is the same as *auxilio mittere; sub* in composition frequently having the meaning of "support."

136 **7. In potestatem,** scil. *suam.*

13. Anni tempore. It was the depth of winter. See cap. 8.

15. Petere. Supply *pabulum.*

17. Hoc spatio . . . . videantur, i. e. "from the territory of the Boians, in all directions, as far as it appeared possible for the enemy to go to forage." *Boia* appears to be equivalent to *terra Boia.* The reading of the passage, however, is disputed and doubtful.

18. Harum rerum. The words refer to *vici* and *aedificia,* as well as *pabulum.*

22. Ne . . . . ne. Used for the more common expression *utrum . . . . an.* See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 102, &c.

27. Praedamque tollendam. Hotomann thinks the last word superfluous, though it is found in all the MSS., and required by the unelliptical and perspicuous style of Caesar. Phaedrus 2, 8; Quem convocata jubet occidi familia, Praedamque tollit. (Oudendorp.)

37. Incendi placeret. Before these words we must supply *utrum,* which is omitted for the purpose of making the question more lively and animated. (Schmitz.)

137 **4. Et,** "and that." The word following *et* is explanatory of the word preceding it, as often in Caesar.

6. Precibus, scil. *motus;* or, *propter preces et propter misericordiam.* The genitive *vulgi* is objective.

11. In . . . . tempora, "at all times of the day."

16. Occurrebatur. The verb *occurrere* is "to meet an emergency," or "to provide against it." The manner in which this was done is explained by the clause beginning with *ut.*

19. Intermissa, i. e. *interjecta inter flumen et paludem.* The ap-

proach to the town was by a narrow strip of land where the river and 137
marsh did not overflow or prevent.—*Supra diximus.* See cap. 15.

23. Alteri, i. e. the Aedui.

24. Alteri, i. e. the Boii.—*Non magnis facultatibus,* the ablative absolute, "the others possessing but small means."

28. Usque eo, "to such a degree." The words belong to *affecto exercitu.*

35. Meruisse. Supply *stipendia. Stipendia merere* signifies "to serve in the army."

39. Genabi .... interissent. See cap. 3.—*Parentarent.* The word is here used instead of the infinitive. See Bk. II. 10, (p. 45, line 33, note,) where *convenirent* is employed instead of *convenire.* The verb *parentare* signifies, "to perform those rites and duties which are due to the dead;" hence also, "to take vengeance for the death of a person." (Schmitz.)

11. In artiores silvas, "in the thicker part of the woods," i. e. 138
where the crowded state of the trees prevented access.

18. Generatim, i. e. "according to the tribes to which they belonged." Some think *in civitates* superfluous.

19. Saltus, is "a thick wood," through which it is difficult to pass, whether on a mountain or in a plain.

21. Haesitantes, "sticking in the mire *or* mud."

22. Qui .... videret, "he who should see." The singular has here a collective meaning.

23. Aequo Marte, "with equal success," or "on equal terms." *Mars,* the god of war, is often used to designate war itself, and its various chances and mishaps.

30. Condemnari, "to be declared guilty."

39. Potuisse. This and the following infinitives depend upon a verb of "saying," which is implied in *insimulatus.*

4. Persuasum. Supply *sibi fuisse.—Munitione,* scil. *naturali.* 139

5. Neque .... et. It frequently happens in Latin, that a writer begins a clause with *nec* or *neque,* as if he was going to use another beginning with the same negative, but instead of it he employs *et,* the sentence not being a negative one. See Bk. IV. 29. (Schmitz.)

9. Mollitiem, "want of energy and perseverance," qualities espepecially required in this emergency.

15. Nullum. It is stronger and more emphatic than *non.*

16. Remittere. Supply *se,* "he would leave it to their own judgment."

25. Operis laborem, i. e. *eundi, muniendi, oppugnandi molestiam.*

30. Victorem. This and similar verbal substantives are often used as adjectives in Caesar and other writers.

34. In eo, "in the case of a person."

37. Statuunt, ut. *Ut,* after *statuo,* instead of the accusative with the infinitive, occurs occasionally.

4. Genus = *gens,* with which in fact it is etymologically identical. 140

Page

140 **6. Falces.** These are *falces murales*, or the iron hooks fastened to long poles, by means of which the besiegers endeavored to pull down the walls. Compare cap. 81. The Gauls caught these hooks with slings, and kept them away from the walls, (*destinabant*,) and then dragged them, by means of ropes (*tormenta*, from *torqueo*) into the town. (Schmitz.)

8. Subtrahebant, i. e. they dragged down the mound on which the Roman fortifications stood, by undermining, and thus causing it to fall down. Compare note, p. 65, line 24.

11. Contabulaverant. Compare note, p. 102, line 15.

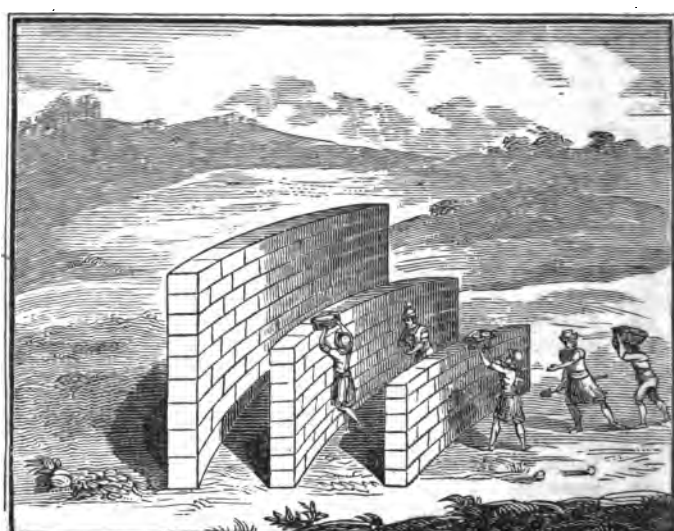
14. Quantum .... expresserat, i. e. "as much as the earth daily accumulated had raised our towers." Caesar has used a term of art. *Deprimere* and *exprimere* are opposed to each other: the one means "to let down," the other, "to raise up."

16. Malis. The *mali* are perpendicular beams like masts: they were fixed either in the walls, or in the towers already standing, and thus served to raise them. (Schmitz.)

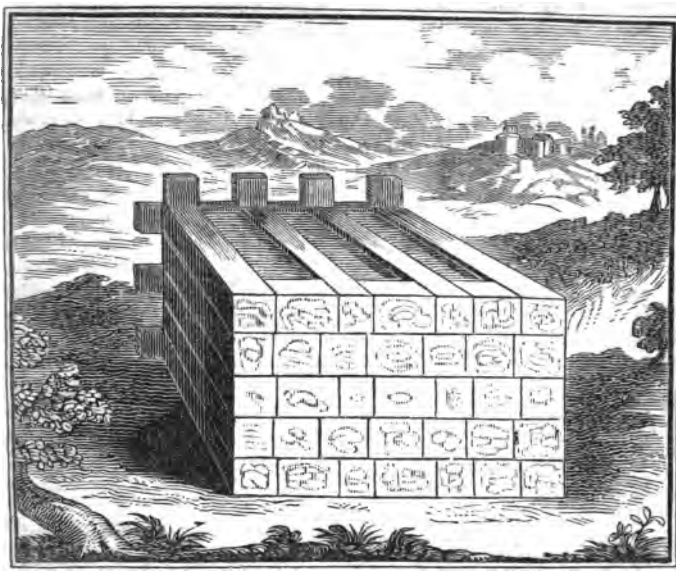
18. Morabantur. The words *morari cuniculos* signify the fact that the Gauls obstructed the passages of the *cuniculi* made by the Romans, so that they could not approach the walls.

19. Muris autem, &c. The following appears to be the mode of construction as here described by Caesar. Beams, forty feet in length,

MURI VEGETIANI.



MURI GALLICANI.



Page

were laid from front to rear upon the ground, parallel to each other, 140
and two feet apart, so that their length constituted the breadth or thickness of the wall; and consequently, when the wall was completed, the ends only of the beams were visible. These beams were firmly secured within the wall, and the spaces between them were filled with earth. In front, however, instead of earth, large stones were placed between the beams. When this layer of beams, earth, and stones was completed, a similar one was laid over it, but in such a manner that the beams of the former course were now covered with earth and stones, and the earth and stones of the former course with beams. In front, therefore, the ends of the beams and stones formed a kind of checker-work. (Andrews.)

20. Perpetuae, "solid," "unbroken," &c.

30. Alternis trabibus ac saxis, ablative absolute, "beams and stones alternating."

2. Consuetudine, i. e. *pro sua consuetudine*, "as he was wont to 141
do." It is the ablative of cause.

10. Vix ratio iniri posset, "a plan could hardly be formed," i. e. it was difficult to determine, &c.

12. Pluresque. Supply *legiones*.

14. Reducerent, "rolled back." These towers were moveable

Page

141 and stood on wheels.—*Aggeremque interscinderent*, "and they intersected *or* cut across the mound," i. e. they separated the portion which was undermined and on fire, from the remainder of the mound.

20. Apertos, i. e. *non tectos*, "unprotected by the *plutei*."

22. Vestigio temporis, "a point *or* moment of time."

25. Per manus. The Gauls formed a line, in which those balls were handed from one to another until the last threw them into the burning tower of the Romans. (Schmitz.)

26. Scorpione. This was a missile thrown by hand. It was small, but with very sharp points, so that it penetrated deep into the body and produced fatal wounds. The *scorpiones* were often dipped in poison.

30. Propugnatoribus. The term *propugnator* is properly applied to those who, being besieged or blockaded, defend the ramparts of a town, or the intrenchments of a fortified position, or fight from the deck of a ship in self-defence; here it is used simply for "persons besieged," and often for "the defender or protector of another." See Gronov. *Obs.* 4, 19, p. 748, who remarks, "that the besieged are never said simply *oppugnare*, but *propugnare;* as, on the other hand, the besiegers are never said *propugnare*, but *oppugnare*. Sometimes both parties assume the opposite character, as when, for instance, the besieged make a sally, and attack the intrenchments of the hostile camp; then in truth the former are said *oppugnare*, and the besiegers *propugnare*, with respect to one and the same camp." (Barker.)

31. Restincto aggere, "the fire of the mound being extinguished."

34. Consilium .... profugere. See A. and S. § 204, Rem. 9. Davies says the infinitive for the gerund (*profugiendi*) is a Hellenism very frequent in the poets, and occasionally in prose writers.

142 **10. Directis,** viz. against those parts of the wall where they might produce the greatest effect.

15. In occulto. This is explanatory of *intra vineas*. Caesar addressed them while they were within the vineae, and could not be seen by the enemy.—*Expeditas*, "prepared for battle."

22. Obviam contra. Some reject *contra*, which certainly seems pleonastic here.

24. Circumfundi. Supply *hostes*, which is implied in the preceding *neminem*. (Schmitz.)

26. Continenti impetu, i. e. *cursu non intermisso*, "without stopping, they ran to the farthest part of the town."

27. Se ipsi premerent, "they crowd themselves."

29. Sic = "to such a degree."—*Genabensi caede*. See cap. 3.

37. Disparandos, i. e. *separandos* or *dispertiendos*. Vercingetorix took care that they should be separated according to the tribes to which they belonged, and that each should be taken to the men of his own tribe in the camp. (Schmitz.)

143 **1. De animo demitterent.** It is the same as *animum abjicerent*. *Animum abjicere* is "to lose courage."—*Admodum* = "to such a degree."

Page

7. Nimia obsequentia, "the too ready compliance." 143

11. Consensu, old form of dative for *consensui.*

20. Re integra, i. e. before the siege of Avaricum.

24. Affirmatione. With active verbs, the participles *ductus, motus,* &c., are commonly found in place of the simple ablative. (Andrews.) See A. and S. § 247, Rem. 2.

26. Consternati, "roused," = *erecti,* or *concitati,* which are more commonly used in this sense. *Cf.* Livy, vii. 42. (Schmitz.)

27. Patienda et perferenda. The synonymous words serve to express the meaning more forcibly.

30. Animo laborabat, "seriously exerted himself."

32. Quorum. It depends on *oratione.*

36. Quem .... velit, i. e. *quem adduci velit, et ante quam diem adduci velit, constituit.*

3. Et quos, i. e. *cum iis quos.—Conduxerat.* The verb *conducere* (*mercede* understood) means, "to hire mercenaries." 144

13. Rem, scil. *publicam;* the state of the Aedui.

19. Cognationis. This is equivalent to our expression, "family connection." Caesar means to say that he had many and powerful relations.

22. Clientelas = *clientes.* Supply *esse,* "each had," &c

23. Positum, (*esse.*) The subject is *id ne accidat.*

25. Detrimentosum. This word occurs in Caesar only, and in this place only. Some editors propose a different reading in consequence, but needlessly, we think. It has the force of words in *-osus,* meaning "very detrimental *or* injurious." See Z. § 252, 9.

29. Aluisset. The verb *alere* has here the meaning of "to favor *or* support."

31. Praevertendum, scil. *esse sibi.*

35. Et quos inter, by anastrophe, for *et inter quos.* See A. and S. § 323, 4, 1.

38. Renunciatum. The verb *renunciare* is here = "to elect *or* create." Its proper meaning is, "to announce that a person has been elected."

3. Intromissis, "being present." Oberlin and Schmitz read *intermissis,* in the sense of "at the time when there was no magistrate." 145

13. Secundum flumen, "along the bank of the river, and following its course." The Elaver (modern Allier) flows into the Loire at Nevers.

14. Illi, i. e. Labienus.

18. E regione, "opposite to," is commonly construed with the genitive; but as *e regione ponere* is in sense the same as *opponere,* Caesar adopts the construction of *opponere.* (Schmitz.)

21. Quod non fere ante autumnum. The Elaver, then, was greater in the summer, and we account for the fact by the melting of the snow on the mountains, which is conveyed into the river. So, cap. 55, Ligerim ex nivibus crevisse, ut omnino vado transiri non posse videatur. For the same reason the Rhone and Lake Leman are always more swollen in summer, as is observed by Le Clerc, *Phys.* 2, 7, 31. (Davies.)

Page

145 **25. Restitit,** i. e. *constitit* or *mansit*, "he remained."

26. Captis quibusdam cohortibus. Schmitz reads, *captis* [*quartis*] *quibusque cohortibus*, and explains, "having taken every fourth cohort from the sixty he had, (for he had six legions, and each legion contained ten cohorts;) so that he had fifteen cohorts; that is, two incomplete legions, which he kept back with him, for the purpose of restoring the bridge;" but the reading here is very doubtful, and much perplexed. According to the reading of the text, it would appear that Caesar so arranged the four legions which he sent forward as to give them the appearance of six legions.

27. His, referring to the troops which were sent forward.

35. Quintis castris = *quinto die*, or "after a journey of five days." A Roman army encamped regularly every night.

39. Agendum, i. e. *cogitandum*.

146 **4. Despici.** Supply *in castra Romana*.—*Horribilem*, "formidable."

12. Et aquae .... pabulatione. According to the ordinary mode of speaking, we should here have *aqua* (that is, *ab aqua*) *magnam partem* (or *magna parte*, "to a great extent") *et pabulatione*. There is an irregularity in the use of the ablative *pabulatione* instead of the genitive *pabulationis*, dependent, like *aquae*, upon *magna parte*. (Schmitz.)

13. Prohibituri, "likely to prevent."

15. Tamen, refers to *egregie munitus*, &c.

21. Demonstravimus. See cap. 33.

25. Praemium. This was probably the money with which he endeavored to bribe them.

26. Imperio natos, i. e. *ad imperium natos*, "born to rule."

28. Qua traducta, i. e. "if that state were brought over to the side of Vercingetorix."

31. Causam obtinuerit. *Causam obtinere* is a judicial term, signifying "to gain a lawsuit."

35. Vel, "even." Since they declared that they would even be the first to carry the design into effect.

38. Decem illis millibus. See cap. 34.

147 **8. Indicta causa,** i. e. "without having had an opportunity of defending themselves."

17. Quasi vero. This is an ironical expression, answering to our "as if, indeed." See Z. § 572.—*Ac non necesse*, i. e. *ac non potius sit necessitatis*.

26. Tota civitate, i. e. *per civitatem*.

28. Suas injurias, taken passively, "the injuries they had suffered." See A. and S. § 211, Rem. 3.

31. Gratia, i. e. *apud populum*.

33. Ab eo, i. e. by Caesar.

36. Summis opibus = *summo labore*, "with the greatest exertions."

148 **2. Quorum salutem, &c.** The danger to be apprehended from Litavicus's joining the Arverni was the carrying over the whole state, since

Page

Caesar could hardly expect the Aedui to unite with him against their 148
own countrymen.

5. **Nulla .... dubitatione** = *sine mora.*

7. **Ad contrahenda castra.** The camp would need to be contracted in such a manner as to correspond with the diminished number of legions remaining to defend it.

12. **Permoveantur,** "that they might not be uneasy *or* alarmed."—*Cupidissimis omnibus,* "all being most anxious," viz. to set out, in consequence of Caesar's exhortation.

20. **Clientibus,** i. e. *soldurii.* See Bk. III. 22.

21. **Fortuna,** i. e. *mala fortuna,* "in extreme misfortune."

24. **Quos,** i. e. *quum eos.*

30. **Eisdem,** i. e. they had been obliged to remain on the rampart, and as they were few in number, the work had to be done always by the same persons; whereas among the enemies, the place of the fatigued soldiers had been taken by those who were yet fresh. (Schmitz.)

33. **Tormenta.** These were engines used in casting darts and stones. —*Eorum,* i. e. *hostium.*

39. **Ad cognoscendum,** "to discover the truth of the reports."

2. **Illi hominum generi,** i. e., says Schmitz, *illi genti,* viz. to the 149
Gauls. Respecting their credulity and curiosity, see Bk. IV. 5.

6. **Sanitatem,** i. e. *sana mens.* See Bk. I. 42.

8. **Educunt,** "they induced *or* obliged him to go out."

15. **Quaestionem .... decernunt,** "they determine that an investigation shall be made."

18. **Capti compendio,** i. e. "captivated *or* led by the gain;" for *compendium* (from *cum* and *pendere*) is properly the profit which the purchaser makes, in receiving somewhat more than the weight which is due to him, or a gain which a person makes by saving or economizing, and then gain, profit, or advantage in general. (Schmitz.)

19. **Ea res,** viz. the *bonorum direptio,* in which many persons had taken part.

25. **Deminuere.** Supply *quidquam.* *Cf.* Bk. I. 53.

27. **Omnem exercitum.** A part of the army under Labienus had been sent against the Parisii. See cap. 34.

31. **Minora castra,** i. e. where the two legions were stationed. See cap. 36, at the end.

36. **Quod jam ipse Caesar.** The antecedent of *quod* is the clause *dorsum esse,* &c., which is also the subject of *constabat.*

38. **Hac silvestre et angustum.** So Davies. Others read *hunc silvestrem,* and others, *hinc silvestre,* &c.

39. **Nec jam aliter sentire .... quin,** i. e. "and they had no doubt .... but that." So Dr. Schmitz renders, and says that *quin* cannot follow after *sentire* in its usual sense.

3. **Interclusi viderentur,** i. e. *interclusi forent.* 150

8. **Castris detrahi.** Oudendorp reads, *castris mulorumque produci,*

Page

150 *eque iis stramenta detrahi.* But the words are rejected by some of the best editors.

11. **Easdem .... regiones,** "the same quarter *or* place."

12. **Ut,** "*as far as.*" *Cf.* Bk. IV. 3.

14. **Eodem jugo.** The dative *jugo* is equivalent to *ad* or *versus jugum,* "towards the same hill."

18. **Insignibus.** See note, p. 23, line 23; p. 50, line 8.

19. **Raros,** i. e. "in small parties."

24. **Occasionis .... proelii,** i. e. the hill could be taken only by their availing themselves of a favorable opportunity, and not by force.

29. **Recta regione,** "in a direct *or* straight line."

30. **Huic,** scil. *ascensui.—Ad molliendum clivum,* "to softening the ascent of the hill," i. e. rendering it less difficult.

35. **Densissimis castris.** These were camps placed very near to each other, and occupying as small a space as was practicable.

37. **Trinis castris.** The Gauls encamped by nations or tribes, (see cap. 36,) though forming one army. Caesar took three of these camps in succession.

151 1. **Superiore corporis parte nudata,** i. e. having laid aside the *thorax,* or covering for the breast, according to Hotomann.

3. **Cani.** Supply *tuba,* "with the trumpet," for *canere* is used no less of musical instruments than of sounds produced by the human voice *Receptui canere,* or *receptui signum dare,* is "to give the signal for a retreat." (Schmitz.)

16. **Pectoris fine prominentes,** "thrusting their bodies, as far as the lower part of the bosom, over the wall."

21. **Avaricensibus praemiis,** i. e. by the rewards which Caesar had given to his soldiers at Avaricum.

26. **Ii,** i. e. *Galli.*

27. **Convenerant.** See cap. 44.

28. **Oppidum .... teneri,** this accusative, with the infinitive, depends upon the preceding word *nunciis.*

34. **Obtestari.** Supply "that they might fight bravely against the Romans."

37. **Spatio pugnae,** "by the long continuance of the fight."

152 2. **Minoribus castris.** See cap. 36.

5. **Terreret.** Supply *eos* or *hostes;* the *quo minus* is the same as *ut eo minus.*

9. **Ab latere nostris aperto,** "on the side where our flanks were exposed or open."

13. **Exsertis,** i. e. *vestibus nudatis,* "laid bare." The Gauls, in time of peace, used to have their shoulders and breasts uncovered.

18. **Excidere.** Some read *exscindere.*

26. **Quem,** refers to *ego,* implied in *meae vitae.*

31. **Intolerantius,** "too impetuously *or* eagerly."

33. **Exceperunt,** "relieved *or* sustained."

Page

36. Infestis signis. Schmitz says these words are almost the same as *conversis signis*, "they turned against the enemy and made a stand." 152

1. Ipsi, the nominative, "they themselves having taken upon themselves to judge what was to be done, instead of leaving that judgment to others." 153

3. Recipiendi. Supply *sui* or *se*.

4. Exposito, ablative absolute, "after he had explained." See Z. § 647.

12. Plus .... sentire, "that they had a better insight or knowledge."

13. Modestiam. In the case of a soldier, *modestia* is "obedience," or "the keeping within the limits of the orders given by the commander." *Cf.* Livy, xxxviii. 24. (Schmitz.)

16. Ad extremum, "at the conclusion."

19. Eadem de profectione cogitans, scil. *ad Aeduos*. See cap. 43.

22. Atque eo, "and that a successful one." *Atque* has here explanatory power.

23. Reduxit, i. e. Caesar.

28. Appellatus. The verb *appellare* has here the sense of *alloqui* or *adire*.

32. Admaturari. This is a rare form, on the analogy of *adamare*, *addubitare*, and similar verbs. The preposition *ad* strengthens the meaning, so that *admaturari* is equivalent to *valde maturari*, "to accelerate greatly."

36. Quos = *quales*.

39. Quamque in amplitudinem. The Segusiani, Ambivareti, Brannovii, Aulerci, Brannovices, Boii, and Mandubii were at this time clients of the Aedui.

2. Gratiam. In an active sense, *gratia* is "influence" or "power." 154

10. Cognovissent. *Cognoscere* is "to collect information about a thing;" but as at the same time it contains the idea of "learning" or "discovering," it is followed by the accusative with the infinitive. Sense: "When they had gathered information about the condition of the state, and learned that," &c. (Schmitz.)

16. Custodibus, scil. *Romanis*.—*Quique*, i. e. *et iis Romanis qui*.

17. Itineris causa, "led by a journey," or "in consequence of a journey."

21. Quod subito, &c. *Quod* has the meaning of *tantum quantum*, "as much as they could."

26. Aut adductos .... expellere. These words are bracketed by some editors, and rejected by others. Schmitz has the following note; *adductos excludere possent*, i. e. "whether they could, by want of provisions, prevent them from returning, or cut off their return, to the Province."

28. Ex nivibus, "by the melting of the snows."

Page

154 **33. Ut.** *Ut* is here in the sense of "granting that," "supposing that," &c.

34. Id nemo .... existimabat. This is the reading of Morus. Others have *ut nemo non tunc .... existimabat.*

36. Abjuncto. Schmitz pronounces this a rare word, having the same meaning as *sejunctus* or *separatus.*

155 **1. Pro rei necessitate,** "considering the urgency of the case."

15. Tamen. According to Schmitz, *tamen* refers to the idea of *quamvis*, which is contained in the participle *confectus.*

18. Impediret. The verb here signifies "to render a place *impeditus* or difficult to pass."

20. Vineas. See note, p. 46, line 28.

22. Confieri, i. e. *confici.* In composition, *facere* very rarely makes the passive *fieri.* *Cf.* Livy, v. 50; Cicero *ad Fam.* iv. 5, *ad Att.* ix. 8. (Schmitz.)

23. Vigilia. See note, p. 18, line 23.

25. Lutetiam diximus, scil. *positam esse.*

26. Eo, i. e. *iis*, viz. *navibus.*

30. Secundo flumine, i. e. "down the river."

33. Profecti. Some read *protecti.*

36. Secundo, "successful."

37. Itinere et Ligeri, i. e. *transitu Ligeris*, "from crossing the Liger."

156 **7. Bellovaci .... virtutis.** See Bk. II. 4.

10. Maximum flumen, i. e. the Sequana, at this time much swollen by the melting of the snow.

21. Adverso flumine, "up the river," or "against the current of the river," the opposite of *secundo flumine.*

26. Ut. It is here almost the same as *quum*, and may be rendered "as."

28. Exercitus = *peditatus*, "the infantry," which composed the main part of the army.

32. Tumultuari. It is here used in a passive sense; for verbs called *deponents*, are not unfrequently employed in a passive sense. So, Apul. *Met.* 4, p. 71. Magnanimi ducis vigore venerato: 11, p. 239. There is a large number of verbs of this kind, and it is probable that all deponents were in their primitive use passives originally: see Perizonius *ad Sanct. Min.* 3, 2, p. 318. Hence they formerly said *tumultuare*, as we are informed by G. J. Vossius, *Anal.* 3, 7, who, cap. 6, has collected a long list of deponents used passively. (Davies.)

38. Metiosedum. Probably the modern Mardon, south of Paris: others suppose it to be identical with Corbeil.

157 **7. Praesentem adesse,** an emphatic mode of expressing his presence: "he bade them act as if Caesar were present in person."

11. Quum, "although."

17. Tempore. *Tempus* is here "the decisive or critical moment."

Page

22. Neque = *sed non.* *Cf.* Bk. IV. 26. 157

28. Augetur. Other tribes, following the example of the Aedui, endeavored to shake off the yoke of the Romans.

30. Ad. Before *ad* supply *tantum*, corresponding with *quantum* preceding.

31. Nacti obsides. These hostages had been given to Caesar by the other states of Gaul, and had been left by him with the Aedui. See cap. 55.

32. Ad se veniat, scil. *ut.*

39. Illis, viz. the Remi and the Lingones.

5. Requirunt, "regret, feel the loss of," &c. *Requirunt* = *desi-* 158
derant vel amissam sentiunt. (Clarke.)

10. Huc, i. e. *ad hoc* or *ad hanc rem*

12. Neque = *neque etiam* or *et non.*

18. Provinciae, scil. *Romanae.*

25. Superiore bello. This was nine years before, when the Allobroges had been conquered and rendered subject to the Romans. *Cf.* Bk. I. 6.—*Resedisse.* The verb *residere* is "to settle down," or "to become appeased."

28. Ad = *contra,* "against all these emergencies."

30. L. Caesare. This was a relative of Julius Caesar; but, belonging to the opposite party, (the aristocratic,) he went over to the side of Pompey when the civil war broke out. He was consul B. C. 64.

3. Sed et equitibus Romanis atque evocatis. *Sed et* or *sed* 159
etiam generally follow after the negative *non solum* or *non tantum;* in this passage, the negative, though not expressed, is implied in the preceding clause, "not only from the tribunes of the soldiers, but also from the Roman equites;" the Roman *equites* here are not common horsemen, but persons of equestrian rank. The *evocati* are men who had already served their time, but, to oblige a general, and derive further benefit, again engaged as soldiers. (Schmitz)

14. Reliqui, i. e. *futuris.*—*Parum profici,* "little was gained."

16. Adoriantur. It depends upon some verb denoting "to admonish" or "advise," which is implied in the preceding *demonstrat.*—*Pedites,* scil. *Romani.*

18. Magis futurum, "would rather be the case."

20. De equitibus hostium. These words must be connected with the verb *dubitare,* though, instead of *de equitibus,* Caesar might also have used the genitive *equitum,* governed by *nemo,* and afterwards have omitted the pronoun *eorum.* (Schmitz.)

33. Una, "at one and the same time."

37. Spe auxilii: because they knew well that if they were pressed too heavily, Caesar would assist them.

39. Flumen. This was the Arar, modern Saône; others say, the Sequana.

4. Cotus, &c. Respecting Cotus and Convictolitanis, see cap. 33, 160

Page

160 39, though the Eporedix here mentioned cannot be the same as the one who is spoken of in cap. 54; he may have been his father, or even his grandfather. (Schmitz.)

11. Ut, "as, *or* in the same manner."

18. Equitatu. Schmitz terms this an ablative of limitation, limiting the general assertion of their being put to flight (*erant pulsi*) to the cavalry.

21. In colle summo, "on the top of the hill." *Editus locus* describes the nature of the hill as very high.

23. Flumina. These were the Lutosa and Osera, the modern La Loze and Le Lozerain.

24. Sanctissimo jurejurando . . . ne tecto recipiatur, &c. "So bad was the aspect of affairs, that Caesar fell back upon the Roman province. The army of the Gauls pursued and overtook him. They had sworn that they would never behold house, family, wives, or children, until they had twice broken through the enemy's lines. The contest was terrible. Caesar was forced to run the utmost personal risk, was nearly taken, and his sword remained in the hands of the enemy. However, a charge of his German cavalry struck a panic terror into the Gauls, and decided the victory." Michelet's *History of France*, vol. I. p. 49.

29. Maceriam. *Maceria* or *maceries* is a wall made of stones and bricks, with earth between them; but no mortar was used; whence such walls seem to have derived their name from *macer*. *Praeducere* is "to build or construct in front of." (Schmitz.)

30. Munitionis, i. e. *fossae et valli*, "circumvallation."

31. Tenebat. It is here used as a neuter verb, and almost equivalent to *erat*, whence the genitive *XI millium passuum*.

32. Castella = "redoubts *or* forts."—*Quibus in castellis*. This repetition is not uncommon in Caesar

36. Opere. The *opus* is the *circumvallatio* mentioned in cap. 69.

37. Intermissam, "situate in the midst of," or "surrounded by."

161 **4. Angustioribus portis relictis.** Oudendorp's explanation is this; because none but *narrow* gates were left (*reliquae*,) by which they could enter. The larger gates seem to have been obstructed by the ditch (*fossa*) and the mound (*maceria*.) Many think that the word *relictis* is inserted by some mistake of the transcribers, but it is found in all the texts.—*Coarctantur* has the reflective meaning of *sese coarctant*, just as *promoveri* is used in the sense of *se promovere*.

16. Dimittere for *dimittendi*. This is in imitation of the Greek construction.

20. Quod si. The words are nearly the same as *si* alone; sometimes they may be rendered by "if therefore." The *quod* is added to *si* for the purpose of connecting the sentence more closely with the preceding one. (Schmitz.)

22. Ratione inita, "after a calculation was made."—*Exigue* = *parum* or *vix*, "scarcely."

Page

25. Intermissum, i. e. at a point where the Roman works or circumvallation had not yet been finished. 161

34. Directis lateribus, "with straight sides;" that is, the sides or banks of the ditch, and consequently the ditch itself also, formed straight lines. (Schmitz.)—*Ut* = *ita ut.* Caesar here describes a ditch, the sides or banks of which are perpendicular, so that the ditch is as broad at the bottom as at the upper end (*labra*) of the banks.

36. Passus CD. Achaintre and others read *pedes CD.*—*Reduxit,* "withdrew," i. e. towards the city.—*Id,* scil. *fecit.*

37. Totum corpus, the whole body or whole extent of fortifications. *Militum corona* is "a circle of soldiers," or "the soldiers stationed all around the fortifications to guard them."

1. Destinatos. Much the same as *intentus.* It may be construed either with the dative or the preposition *ad.* 162

4. Post eas, "behind these," i. e. nearer to the city.

5. Loricam. It is here a coating of boards, with iron or wooden points in it. It seems to have been the same as what in cap. 25 is called *plutens.* Respecting the *pinnae,* see note, p. 102, line 15.

6. Cervis. The *cervi* are trunks of trees presenting the appearance of forks, the branches not being entirely cut off, so that they resembled the horns of stags, (*cervi.*) They were placed in front of a ditch or rampart, so as to prevent the enemy approaching. The *commissurae* are the joints between the boards or stones. (Schmitz.)

7. Turres. These were fixed or stationary. *Cf.* note, p. 46, line 32.

16. Abscissis. Many prefer *abscisis.*—*Atque horum,* scil. *truncorum et fermorum ramorum.*

17. Perpetuae fossae, "a continued trench."

18. Illi stipites, scil. *trunci et firmi rami.*—*Demissi,* "sunk into the ground and well fastened at the lower end." The whole trunk was concealed in the ground, and they were visible only from the point where the branches began.

21. Se . . . . induebant, "they became entangled in the sharp palisades, (*valli.*)" The dative *vallis* is the same as *inter vallos.*

23. Scrobes. These, says Schmitz, are holes in the earth of the form of a wine-glass, broad at the top and ending below in a point, which is here called *infimum fastigium.*

24. Huc, i. e. *in hos scrobes.*

31. Lilium. The fortification here spoken of consisted of several rows of pits, sloping like the cup of a lily, from which a sharp stake projected.—*Taleae,* staves or sticks of small size.

37. Pares ejusdem generis. This is thought by some to be a pleonasm, but, as Dr. Schmitz remarks, it is not really so, since things may be of the same kind (*ejusdem generis*) in form, but yet are not *pares* in size and strength.

38. Exteriorem hostem. These were the forces which the cavalry sent out by Vercingetorix might bring to his aid.

Page

162 **29. Ejus discessu,** viz. of the cavalry or *hostis exterior.* Some refer *ejus* to Caesar, but wrongly.

163 **5. Ut censuit Vercingetorix.** See cap. 71.

8. Frumentandi rationem, "any mode of supplying corn."

28. Demonstravimus. Compare Bk. IV. 21.

30. Immunem, exempt from the tribute required by the Romans from conquered nations.

37. Numerusque inibatur, viz. *eorum,* "their number was counted."

164 **2. Administraretur.** The imperfect is used, because the leading verb *attribuuntur,* is an historical present instead of a perfect.

5. Ancipiti proelio. *Cf.* note, p. 25, line 1. It here means a two-fold or double battle with foes both in front and rear.

6. Eruptione, i. e. *eruptione facta.*

8. Praeterita die = *quum dies praeteriisset.* See cap. 71.

11. Apud quos = *in quo concilio.* The *quos* refers to the persons of whom the *concilium* consisted.

12. Deditionem .... eruptionem. Supply *faciendam.*

21. Ista. It is in apposition with the clause *inopiam paulisper,* &c., but agreeing in gender with the predicate *mollities.*

25. Dignitas, authority, influence, &c.

27. Quid .... animi, "what degree of courage," or "what state of feeling will they be in?"

31. Spoliare. Oudendorp reads *exspoliare.*

32. Nec. If connected with *nolite* preceding, we have a double negative, in imitation of the Greek. We may, however, supply *velites,* taken out of *nolite,* which is itself equivalent to *ne velitis.*

34. An. Here, as in many other cases, *an* introduces the second part of a double question, the first being understood and implied in what precedes.

36. Animi causa, "for the sake of amusement."

37. Illorum, i. e. the Gauls whom they were expecting to come to their relief.

38. Iis, i. e. the Romans.

165 **5. Vitam toleraverunt,** "maintained their lives." From this it appears that the Gauls, at the time of the invasion of the Cimbri and Teutones, when they were blockaded in their towns, fed upon the corpses of the aged and of their children. For the date, *Cf.* note, p. 29, line 12.

8. Depopulata, a participle of a deponent verb used passively. See note, p. 156, line 32.

14. Injungere servitutem. The expression is much harsher than *imponere servitutem;* it implies severity and permanence, being taken from the yoking of cattle to the plough. (Schmitz.)

18. Securibus subjecta. Reference is to the proconsular authority. These officers were attended by twelve lictors, who carried "axes" and rods (*fasces*) as emblems of the powers of the governor of a Roman province. "A Gaulish chief, while exhorting his countrymen to maintain

Page

their independence against the arms of Rome, is represented by Caesar 165
as describing in two words the degraded condition of that part of Gaul which was already a Roman province. He called it *subjecta securibus*, 'subject to the lictor's axe;' and though the last extremities of tyranny might have been comparatively rare, yet in fact the lives of the provincials were subject to the arbitrary will of the governors, without any immediate protection, and too often with only a feeble prospect of retribution upon their oppressor." See Arnold's *Later Roman Commonwealth*, p. 158; where is detailed a shocking instance of the wretched condition of the countries subject to the Roman yoke.

20. Sint. Some read *sunt*.

22. Utendum. Supply *esse sibi*.

34. Demonstravimus. See cap. 69.

35. Abditas, i. e. *separatas* or *remotas*, that their number might not be perceived. Some read *abductas*.

1. Se . . . . comparant = *se praeparant*, or simply *se parant*. 166

4. Si usus veniat, i. e. *si opus esse incipiat*, "if there should be any necessity," *usus* being the moment of time when use is to be made of something. *Cf.* Bk. IV. 2; V. 15. (Schmitz.)

6. Ex omnibus castris, i. e. from all parts of the camp.

8. Eventum. Many read *proventum*, which is equivalent in meaning.

11. Ab his, i. e. *sagittariis, &c.*—*Complures*, scil. *nostrorum equitum*.

14. Qui munitionibus continebantur, i. e. those who were in the town.

17. Utrosque. Supply *et*, corresponding with the preceding *neque*.

20. Una in parte, i. e. in a part different from that where the battle was fought.

28. Harpagonum. These were long poles with strong iron hooks at the end, for the purpose of pulling down either the walls themselves, or any thing erected upon the walls for the purpose of protecting the soldiers of the besieged. (Schmitz.)

29. Campestres munitiones, scil. *exteriores*, those which had been erected against the Gauls.

30. Qua significatione, i. e. *ut ea significatione . . . . possent*.

32. Prejicere, deturbare, administrare, descriptive infinitives.

36. Definitus, i. e. *attributus*, "assigned."

37. Fundis, librilibus. Some have *libralibus*, which lection may be confirmed from Vegetius, 2, 3: Libralia saxa; but Festus defends the received reading: Librilia appellantur instrumenta bellica, saxa scilicet ad brachii crassitudinem in modum flagellorum loris revincta. Hence we must distinguish between *fundis* and *librilibus*, as Lipsius also thought, *Poliorc.* 4, 3, and so we find in the MS. Brant. and the Greek version: Σφενδόναις, μεγάλοις τε λίθοις. (Davies.) In no MS. does *a* appear; but all my MSS., the MSS. Ciacc., and the early editions have *librilibus*, except that the word is absent from the MS. Cujac. See also Pareus, *Lex. Crit.* 677. (Oudendorp.)

Page

28. Glandibus. See note, p. 103, line 10.

167 **7. Se .... induebant.** See note, p. 162, line 21.

10. Appeteret. See note, p. 125, line 36.

12. Interiores, i. e. those in the town.

14. Priores, a nominative, says Schmitz, before which *et* must be supplied.

27. Opinionem. It has here a passive meaning, "who were believed to be most valorous."

28. Quid quoque pacto, "what was to be done, and in what manner it was to be done."

29. Adeundi, i. e. *appropinquandi* or *egrediendi,* viz. *castra.*

35. Ea castra .... demonstravimus, viz. the *superiora castra,* or the camp on the hill.

168 **1. A castris.** See cap. 69. Vercingetorix had encamped before the town.—*Musculos.* These were sheds or roofs, under the protection of which the soldiers might make an attack upon the walls or ramparts of a place.

7. Pugnantibus, dative, depending on *exstitit.* Caesar might, says Schmitz, have used the genitive dependent upon *tergum,* but it would have been less expressive.

8. In aliena virtute, &c., i. e. they perceived that their own danger consisted in the valor of the enemies in their rear, and their safety in the cowardice of those same enemies, though their shouts did not seem to indicate that they were cowards. (Schmitz.)

12. Ad animum occurrit, i. e. *in mentem venit,* "it occurred to them, *or* to their minds."

14. Rem obtinuerint. The expression, *rem obtinuere,* is a general one, denoting here the same as *victoriam referre,* "to carry off the victory."

17. Exiguum loci, &c., i. e. *loci fastigium, quamvis exiguum, tamen ob declivitatem magnum habet momentum,* "an eminence, though not very high, is yet of great importance." *Ad* is the same as *quod attinet ad,* "in regard to," *or* "on account of." (Schmitz.)

18. Alii, scil. *Galli.*

30. Praerupta ex ascensu, i. e. steep from the point where the ascent begins.

31. Propugnantes, scil. *Romanos.*

34. Brutum. This was probably Decimus Brutus.

169 **7. Vestitus.** The color of a general's cloak was scarlet, with a purple stripe in front. The words following in parentheses are rejected by some editors; they seem intended to show that Caesar was not afraid of exposing his person in cases of extreme danger.

11. Excipit. Supply *hunc clamorem,* to be taken out of the preceding ablative absolute.

13. Post tergum, scil. *Gallorum.*—*Equitatus,* scil. *Romanorum.*

Page

22. Fuissent defessi. Schmitz reads *essent defessi*, and refers to Z. § 525. 169

27. Necessitatum. These are connections of friendship or relationship.

33. Vercingetorix deditur. "The Vercingetorix alone, preserving his firmness of mind in the midst of general despair, markedly delivered himself up as the sole mover of the war, clad in his rich armor, and wheeling round the tribunal of Caesar, cast his sword, casque, and javelin at the foot of the Roman, without uttering a word." (See Plutarch, *Vit. Caes.* cap. 27; Dio Cassius, 40, 41: this latter author relates that Vercingetorix, after having been led in triumph at Rome, was put to death in prison.) Michelet's *History of France*, vol. i. p. 49.

34. Civitates recuperare, "to recover the friendship and good-will of the states."

35. Toto exercitu, "in the whole army," the ablative being used instead of *per totum exercitum*, "throughout the army." *Singula capita* are individuals: "he gave one captive to each of his soldiers." (Schmitz.)

38. Recipit, scil. *in deditionem et fidem.*

4. Attribuit, viz. as an assistant in case of Labienus being obliged to leave his post. 170

12. Supplicatio. See note, p. 55, line 15. "During the present summer, Caesar had in fact completed the conquest of Gaul, by the defeat of the formidable confederacy organized by Vercingetorix and by the capture of Alesia. By his successive victories he had amassed a treasure, which, if we may judge by the effects ascribed to it, must have been enormous. . . . . To his own army his liberalities were almost unbounded, while his camp presented a place of refuge to the needy, the profligate, the debtors, and even the criminals who found it convenient to retreat from the capital. When it is remembered that the object of all this profusion was the enslaving of his country, and that the means which enabled him to practise it were derived from the unprovoked pillage of the towns and temples of Gaul, and the sale of those unfortunate barbarians, who in the course of his unjust wars became his prisoners, it may be justly doubted whether the life of any individual recorded in history, was ever productive of a greater amount of human misery, or has been marked with a deeper stain of wickedness." Arnold's *Later Roman Commonwealth*, p. 224.

LATIN-ENGLISH LEXICON.

A.

A. 1) Aulus. 2) *a. d.* ante diem.

A, ab, abs, prep. with *ablat. A* is used before consonants; *ab* before vowels; *abs* before *q* and *t.* From, by; of, after, at; on account of, on, in, among; at the distance of; on the side of.

Abdĭtus, a, um, partic. from *abdo,* which see. Concealed, remote, secret, private.

Abdo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, (ab, do.) To hide, conceal; remove, put away. *Se in silvas,* (I. 12;) *copiae paullum ab eo loco abditae,* (VII. 79.)

Abdūco, cĕre, duxi, ductum, (ab, duco.) To lead away, withdraw, take by force, take away.

Abeo, ire, ii, (ivi,) ĭtum, (ab, eo.) To go away, depart, go; pass away.

Abesse. See *absum.*

Abfuturus, a, um. See *absum.*

Abies, ĕtis, f. A fir-tree.

Abjĭcio, jĭcĕre, jĕci, jectum, (ab, jăcio.) To throw away, cast off, cast, throw down.

Abjunctus, a, um, part. from *abjungo.*

Abjungo, gĕre, xi, ctum, (ab, jungo.) To loose from the yoke, remove, separate.

Abreptus, a, um, part. from *abripio.*

Abrĭpio, ipĕre, ipŭi, eptum, (ab, rapio.) To take away, carry off by force, snatch away.

Abscīdo, ĕre, īdi, īsum, (ab, caedo.) To cut, cut off, cut away.

Abscindo, ĕre, ĭdi, issum, (ab, scindo.) To cut off, cut *or* tear away.

Abscissus, a, um, part. from *abscindo.*

Abscīsus, a, um, part. from *abscīdo.*

Absens, tis, part. prop. from *absum;* used as *adject.* Absent, distant, remote.

Absĭmĭlis, is, e, (ab, similis.) Unlike, dissimilar.

Absisto, ĕre, stĭti, —, (ab, sisto.) To stop, cease, depart, stand at a distance.

Abstĭneo, ĕre, ŭi, entum, (abs, tĕneo.) To abstain, keep aloof from, decline. *Proelio,* (I. 22.)

Abstrăho, ĕre, xi, ctum, (abs, traho.) To draw, *or* drag away, take away by force.

Absum, abesse, abfui, (afui,) irreg., (ab, sum.) To be absent, distant, remote; to stand aloof, take no part in. *Longe iis abfuturum,* (I. 36,) would be of no service to them: *neque longius abesse quin,* nor was it at all unlikely that.

Abundo, āre, āvi, ātum, (ab, undo, unda.) To overflow, abound, be very abundant. *With the ablative,* to abound in, &c.

Ac, conj. = *atque. It is almost never placed before a vowel or h. After aliter, contra, juxta, pariter*, &c., than *or* as. So after *simul.* And, and indeed.

Accēdo, ĕre, essi, essum, (*ad, cedo.*) To approach, be added, arrive at, come to, go.

Accedēbat, it was added, moreover, *followed by quod or ut,* (III. 2; V. 6, 16.)

Accelĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, (*ad, celero.*) To hasten, make haste, be expeditious.

Acceptus, a, um, part. and adj. (*accipio.*) Accepted, received; acceptable, pleasant, welcome, grateful.

Accĭdo, ĕre, ĭdi, —, (*ad, cădo*) To fall, fall down; come, happen, occur, fall out. *Accĭdit,* it happens.

Accīdo, ĕre, īdi, īsum, (*ad, caedo.*) To cut off, cut down, lop, fell.

Accipio, ĕre, ēpi, eptum, (*ad, capio.*) To receive, take, get, obtain, acquire; bear, suffer; hear, understand, approve, accept of.

Acclīvis, is, e, adj., (*ad, clivus.*) Sloping-upward, steep, up-hill, rising, ascending.

Acclīvitas, ātis, f., (*acclivis.*) A sloping upward, ascent, acclivity, steepness.

Accommŏdo, āre, āvi, ātum, (*ad, commodo.*) To suit, adjust, accommodate, adapt.

Accurāte, adv. comp. *accurātius.* Carefully, exactly, attentively, with care.

Accurro, ĕre, curri & cucurri, cursum, (*ad, curro.*) To run to, hasten to, run.

Accūso, āre, āvi, ātum, (*ad, causa.*) To accuse, blame, impeach, reprimand, censure.

Acer, acris, e, adj. Sharp, fierce, sour, pungent.

Acerbe, adv., (*acerbus,*) comp. *acerbius,* sup. *acerbissime.* Sharply, bitterly, harshly, keenly.

Acerbĭtas, ātis, f., (*acerbus.*) Sharpness, harshness, bitterness. *Figur.*, moroseness, sorrow, affliction.

Acerbus, a, um, adj. Unripe, sour, tart, harsh; severe, hard, disagreeable.

Acerrĭme. See *Acriter.*

Acervus, i. m. A heap, hoard, pile, store.

Acies, ēi, f., (ἀκίς.) The sharp edge or point of any thing; a file of soldiers, an army in array; fierceness, keenness; the eye, the organ of sight. *Acies instructa,* an army drawn up for battle. *In acie,* in battle array. See p. 24, 11; 38, 1; 66, 25.

Acquīro, ĕre, sivi, sītum, (*ad, quaero.*) To acquire, get, procure, obtain.

Acrĭter, acrius, acerrime, adv., (*acer.*) Sharply, keenly, vehemently, courageously, eagerly.

Actuarius, a, um, adj., (*ago.*) Nimble, light. *Navis actuaria,* (V. 1,) a light galley, pinnace, brigantine.

Actus, a, um, part. from *ago.*

Acūtus, a, um, adj., (*acuo.*) Sharp-edged, pointed, prickly, sharp.

Ad, prep. with *accus.* To, unto, on, at, by, near, as far as, according to, against, after, with. See p. 127, 23. *Nomen ad ómnes nationes sanctum,* (III. 9;) *occisis ad hominum millibus quatuor,* (II. 33.)

Adactus, part. from *adigo.*

Adaequo, āre, āvi, ātum, (*ad, aequo.*) To equal, equalize, make equal.

Adămo, āre, āvi, ātum, (*ad, amo.*) To love greatly, covet, take pleasure in.

***Adaugeo**, ēre, xi, ctum,* (*ad, augeo.*) To augment, increase, add to, enlarge.

***Addīco**, ĕre, xi, ctum,* (*ad, dico.*) To give up, assign, surrender; to devote; confiscate. *Aliquem servituti,* (VII. 77.)

***Addo**, ĕre, ĭdi, ĭtum,* (*ad, do.*) To add, appoint, give, put, mingle with.

***Addūco**, ere, xi, ctum,* (*ad, duco.*) To bring, conduct, convey to; induce, move, lead.

***Ademptus**, a, um, part.* from *adimo.*

***Adĕo**, adv.,* (*ad, eo.*) So, so far, so much, to such a degree.

***Adĕo**, īre, ii* or *īvi, itum,* (*ad, eo.*) To go to, accost, approach, attack, encounter.

***Adeptus**, part.* from *adipiscor.*

***Adequĭto**, āre, āvi, ātum,* (*ad, equito.*) To ride up to, *or* near to.

***Adhaeresco**,* (*adhaereo,*) *ĕre, haesi, haesum.* To adhere, stick close to, grow to.

***Adhibeo**, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum,* (*ad, habeo.*) To use, receive, admit, give, furnish; bring, bring on, call in, call for.

***Adhortor**, āri, ātus sum, depon.,* (*ad, hortor.*) To exhort, encourage.

***Adhuc**, adv.* (*ad hoc usque tempus.*) Until now, hitherto, thus far, as yet, still.

***Adĭgo**, ĕre, ēgi, actum,* (*ad, ago.*) To drive, drive in, drive to, thrust, impel; bring, conduct, force.

***Adĭmo**, ĕre, ēmi, emptum* or *emtum,* (*ad, emo.*) To take away, remove, deprive of, take.

***Adipiscor**, i, eptus sum, depon.,* (*ad, apiscor.*) To acquire, get, procure, obtain.

***Adĭtus**, ūs, m.,* (*adeo.*) An approach, entrance, access.

***Adjăceo**, ēre, ŭi, —,* (*ad, jaceo.*) To lie contiguous, border upon, lie near.

***Adjectus**, a, um, part.* from *adjicio.*

***Adjĭcio**, ĕre, jēci, jectum,* (*ad, jacio.*) To throw to, add, join, bring in contact with.

***Adjudĭco**, āre, āvi, ātum.* To adjudge, assign, give sentence.

***Adjungo**, ĕre, xi, ctum.* To join add, annex, unite.

***Adjūtor**, ōris, m.,* (*adjuvo.*) An aider, helper, assistant, promoter.

***Adjūvo**, āre, jūvi, jūtum.* To assist, help, aid, succor, favor.

***Admatūro**, āre, āvi, ātum.* To accelerate, quicken, mature. See p. 153, 32.

***Administer**, stri, m.* A servant, manager, attendant, minister, promoter.

***Administro**, āre, āvi, ātum.* To wait upon, serve, execute, attend, administer to; conduct, direct, govern.

***Admīror**, āri, ātus sum, depon.* To admire, wonder at, marvel, be surprised.

***Admitto**, ĕre, isi, issum.* To admit, receive, allow, commit. *Equo admisso,* at full gallop *or* speed.

***Admŏdum**, adv.* (*ad, modus.*) Very, much, exceedingly. *With numerals,* about, fully, quite.

***Admŏneo**, ēre, ŭi, ĭtum.* To remind, put in mind, warn, suggest, advise.

***Adŏlescens**, tis, m.* et *f.,* (*adolesco.*) A youth, a young person. See p. 39, 13.

***Adolescentia**, ae, f.,* (*adolescens.*) Youth, adolescence, the age succeeding boyhood.

***Adolescentŭlus**, i, m., dimin.,* (*adolescens.*) A young man, youth, stripling.

***Adolesco**, ĕre, ēvi, ultum, (ad, olesco.)* To grow, grow up, increase.

***Adŏrior**, tri, ortus sum, depon., (ad, orior.)* To attack, assail, invade; attempt, begin.

***Adortus**, a, um, part.* from *adorior.*

***Adscisco**.* See *Ascisco.*

***Adsum**, esse, fui, irreg.* To be present, on the spot, at hand; to be near; to aid.

***Adventus**, ûs, m., (advenio.)* An arrival, a coming, approach.

***Adversarius**, i, m.* An adversary.

***Adversarius**, a, um, adj.* Hostile, contrary to, inimical.

***Adversus**, a, um, adj., (adverto.)* Opposite, over against, fronting; unfavorable, unsuccessful. *Adverso flumine,* up *or* against the stream, (VII. 61.)

***Adversus**, prep.* with *accus.* and *adv., (adverto.)* Against, in front of, opposite, facing, towards.

***Adverto**, ĕre, ti, sum, (ad, verto.)* To turn to *or* towards; with *animum, mentem,* to apply one's thoughts, observe, perceive.

***Advŏco**, āre, āvi, ātum.* To call, call to, summon.

***Advŏlo**, āre, āvi, ātum.* To fly to *or* towards; to run to, hasten to, rush upon.

***Aedificium**, i, n., (aedifico.)* An edifice, a building, a house.

***Aedifico**, āre, āvi, ātum, (aedes, facio.)* To build, erect a building; fabricate, construct.

***Aeger**, gra, grum, adj.* Weak, infirm, faint, sick.

***Aegre**, adv., (aeger,)* comp. *aegrius;* sup. *aegerrime.* Hardly, with difficulty, ill, unwillingly, scarcely.

***Aequaliter**, adv., (aequālis.)* Equally, uniformly.

***Aequinoctium**, i, n., (aequus, nox.)* The equinox, i. e. when the day and night are of equal length, the 22d of March and 22d of September, (IV. 36.)

***Aequitas**, ātis, f., (aequus.)* Equality; equity, impartiality. *Animi aequitas,* contentment.

***Aequo**, āre, āvi, ātum.* To level, make smooth, equal. See p. 120, 37.

***Aequus**, a, um, adj.,* comp. *aequior;* sup. *aequissimus.* Level, smooth, equal, just, favorable, advantageous.

***Aerarius**, a, um, adj., (aes.)* Relating to copper, brass *or* bronze.

***Aes**, aeris, n.* Copper, brass *or* bronze. See p. 82, 8. *Aes alicuum,* another's money, i. e. debt.

***Aestas**, ātis, f.* Summer.

***Aestimatio**, ōnis, f. (aestimo.)* Esteem, judgment, a valuation, value, apprisal.

***Aestimo**, āre, āvi, ātum.* To estimate, value, appreciate, esteem, regard, believe.

***Aestivus**, a, um, adj., (aestas.)* Relating to the summer, summer.

***Aestuarium**, i, n.* An arm of the sea, a creek, a frith, a marsh.

***Aestus**, ûs, m.* Heat, burning *or* scorching heat; the tide.

***Aetas**, ātis, f.,* (for *aevitas* from *aevum.)* Age, time of life.

***Aeternus**, a, um, adj., (= aeviternus.)* Eternal, everlasting, perpetual, durable.

***Affero**, afferre, attŭli, allātum, irreg., (ad, fero.)* To bring to; to take, carry; impart, give; gain, cause.

***Afficio**, ĕre, ēci, ectum, (ad, facio.)* To affect, influence, move. *Afficere supplicio* = to punish. *Beneficio affectus,* kindly treated. *Afficere beneficio,* to bestow kindness on.

***Affigo**, ĕre, xi, xum, (ad, figo.)* To

fix *or* fasten to, attach to, fix upon, affix.

Affingo, ĕre, inxi, ictum, (ad, fingo.) To form, fashion, make; add by fashioning; attach; attribute, bestow.

Affīnitas, ātis, f., (affinis.) Vicinity, near union, connection, alliance by marriage.

Affixus, a, um, part. from *affigo.*

Afflicto, āre, āvi, ātum, (affligo.) To agitate, toss, vex, torment, shatter, damage.

Afflictus, a, um, part. and *adj.* Dashed against, dashed down, agitated; damaged; troubled, harassed; prostrated.

Afflīgo, ĕre, xi, ctum, (ad, fligo.) To throw violently or dash against, overthrow, afflict, ruin, lay waste, destroy. *Naves afflictae,* (V. 10;) *arbores,* (VI. 27.)

Affŏrem, &c., defect., (ad, forem,) for *adessem, &c.,* subj. imperf. of *adsum. Affore = adfuturum esse.* To be about to be present.

Afui. See *absum.*

Ager, agri, m. A field, a territory, tract, country.

Agger, ĕris, m., (aggero.) A mound, a rampart. See p. 46, 31.

Aggrĕdior, i, essus sum, depon., (ad, gradior.) To go to, come near, accost, meet, attack, attempt.

Aggrĕgo, āre, āvi, ātum, (ad, grego.) To collect, associate, join, unite, attach.

Agĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, (ago.) To set in motion, drive, conduct, follow, pursue; debate, discuss.

Agmen, ĭnis, n., (= agimen from *ago.)* An army on a march, a file, a troop, band; the act of marching, a march. *Agmen primum, novissimum,* (I. 15;) *agmine impediti,* (VII. 66.)

Ago, ĕre, ēgi, actum. To conduct, drive, lead; do, live, treat, plead. *Cum aliquo,* to discourse with, discuss, &c. *Agere se,* to conduct one's self, to behave. *Agere vineas,* (II. 12; III. 21;) *agere cuniculos,* (III. 21;) *bellum agere,* to wage war.

Agricultūra, ae, f., (ager, colo.) Agriculture, husbandry.

Alăcer, cris, e, adj., comp. *alacrior.* Brisk, lively, cheerful, active; fierce, eager.

Alacrĭtas, atis, f., (alacer.) Eagerness, cheerfulness, ardor, alacrity.

Alārius, a, um, (ala.) Belonging to the wings, stationed on the wings; *alarii,* the auxiliaries, *who were stationed on the wings.*

Albus, a, um, adj. White, pale.

Alces, is, f., (the *cervus alces* of Linn.: VI. 27.) See p. 122, 14.

Alias, adv. At another time, otherwise. *Alias . . . alias,* sometimes . . . sometimes.

Aliēno, āre, āvi, ātum. To make different from what it is, alienate, estrange.

Aliēnus, a, um, adj., (alius,) sup. *alienissimus.* Of another, foreign, unfavorable.

Alio, adv. In another place, elsewhere.

Aliquamdiu, adv. For some time.

Aliquando, adv., (alius, quando.) At some time, sometimes, occasionally.

Aliquanto, adv. With comparatives and particles of time, somewhat, occasionally.

Aliquantus, a, um, adj., (alius, quantus,) some, a little, somewhat.

Alĭquis, (aliqui,) qua, quod, or *quid, pron.* Some, somebody, any, any one, something.

Alĭquot, numer. indecl., (alius, quot.)

Some, several, some certain, a few, not many.

Aliter, adv. In a different way or manner, otherwise; else. *Aliter ac*, otherwise than.

Alius, a, ud, (ἄλλος,) adj. Another, other; another of many. *Alii . . . alii*, some . . . others; *alius, alia, causa illata*, one assigning one reason, another another. *Alius* in enumerations = *alter*, (I. 1.)

Allatus, a, um, part. of *affero.*

Allĭgo, ĕre, ēgi, ectum, (ad, lego.) To choose, elect, admit by election.

Allĭcio, ĕre, exi, ectum, (ad, lacio.) To attract, allure, entice, decay.

Alo, ĕre, alŭi, alĭtum and *altum.* To increase *or* support by feeding; nourish, cherish, feed, support, maintain.

Alter, ĕra, ĕrum. One of two, the other, the second. *Alter ... alter*, the one . . . . the other.

Alternus, a, um, adj., (alter.) One after another, interchangeable, mutual, alternate, every other.

Altitūdo, ĭnis, f., (altus.) Loftiness, height; depth.

Altus, a, um, adj. High, tall, lofty; deep. *Altum, i, n.*, the deep, the sea, the ocean.

Alūta, ae, f. Soft tanned leather, (III. 13;) leather.

Ambactus, i, m. A servant. *Ambacti*, (VI. 15.) See p. 118, 24.

Ambo, ae, o, adj. Both.

Amentia, ae, f., (amens.) Madness, folly, absurdity.

Amentum, i, n. A strap *or* thong, by means of which javelins and other missiles were thrown with greater force.

Amicitia, ae, f. Friendship, amity, alliance.

Amicus, i, m. A friend, an ally.

Amicus, a, um, adj. Friendly, benevolent, allied.

Amitto, ĕre, īsi, issum. To send away, dismiss, let go, lose.

Amor, ōris, m. Love, desire, affection.

Amplĭfico, are, avi, atum, (amplus, facio.) To enlarge, amplify, augment, increase.

Amplitūdo, ĭnis, f., (amplus.) Ampleness, extent, greatness, largeness.

Amplius, adv., (comp. of *ample.*) More, further.

Amplus, a, um, adj. Large, ample, great, extensive; noble, illustrious, magnificent.

An, adv. & conj. Whether? or. See Arnold's *Practical Introd. to Lat. Prose Composition*, p. 48.

Anceps, ĭpĭtis, adj., (am, caput.) Having two heads, double, twofold; uncertain, doubtful, dangerous. See p. 25, 1; p. 164, 5.

Ancŏra, ae, f. An anchor.

Anfractus or *amfractus, ûs, m., (an, frango.)* The turning *or* winding of a way; a winding or bending; a circuit, compass.

Angŭlus, i. m. An angle, corner, nook.

Anguste, adv. Straitly, closely, narrowly; sparingly, scantily, scarcely, hardly.

Angustia, ae. f. Narrowness, straitness; a narrow defile; difficulty, distress. *Generally used in the plural.*

Angustus, a, um, adj., (ango.) Strait, narrow, close, confined, steep. *In angusto*, in difficulty, at a crisis.

Anima, ae, f. Air, breath; life, the soul. See p. 127, 30.

Animadverto, ĕre, ti, sum, (animus, adverto.) To take heed, attend,

observe, perceive; to punish, inflict punishment. See p. 24, 8.

Animal, ālis, n., (anima.) An animal.

Animus, i. m., (ἄνεμος.) The mind, life, courage, spirit, heart. *Sibi esse in animo,* that it was his intention; *inferiores animo* = dispirited; *magno animo,* firmly, courageously. See p. 64, 35.

Annŏtĭnus, a, um, adj. Of a year, a year old. See p. 89, 20.

Annus, i, m. A year. *Omnes annos,* every year, constantly.

Annuus, a, um, adj. During a year, yearly, annual.

Anser, ĕris, m. A goose, a gander.

Ante, prep. with *accus.* Before, previous to. *Ante diem .... kalendas, &c.* See p. 16, 11.

Ante, adv. Before, previously.

Anteā, adv. Before, aforetime, formerly.

Antecēdo, ĕre, essi, essum, (ante, cedo.) To go before, precede, surpass, outdo, excel.

Antecursor, ōris, m., (ante, cursor.) A forerunner, pioneer, advanced guard.

Antefĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum. To bear before, set before, prefer.

Antenna, ae, f. A sail-yard.

Antepōno, ĕre, sui, sĭtum. To set *or* place before, present, prefer.

Anteverto, ĕre, ti, sum. To precede, prevent, forestall, anticipate; prefer. See p. 133, 18.

Antīquĭtus, adv., (antiquus.) Anciently, of old time, formerly.

Antīquus, a, um, adj. Old, ancient, of long standing, antique.

Apĕrio, īre, erŭi, ertum, (ad, pario.) To open, or set open, reveal, uncover.

Aperte, adv. Openly, publicly.

Apertus, a, um, adj., (aperio.) Open, lying open, wide open, set open; uncovered, unprotected, exposed, naked.

Appăro, āre, āvi, ātum, (ad, paro.) To prepare with care, make preparations for, get ready, put in order; furnish, equip, provide.

Appello, āre, āvi, ātum. To call, address, name; term, entitle, accuse.

Appello, ĕre, ŭli, ulsum, (ad, pello.) To drive *or* cause to go to *or* towards, bring to, go near, approach; make for, steer, direct.

Appĕto, ĕre, īvi, ītum, (ad, peto.) To try to get, catch at, seek for, strive for, covet, aspire at; approach.

Applĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, (ad, plico.) To apply, bring near *or* in contact with, attach.

Apporto, āre, āvi, ātum, (ad, porto.) To bring *or* carry to, conduct, convey.

Apprŏbo, āre, āvi, ātum, (ad, probo.) To approve, commend, applaud, praise.

Appropinquo, āre, āvi, ātum, (ad, propinquo.) To draw nigh, approach, come on.

Appulsus, part. from *appello.*

Aprīlis, is, m. The month of April.

Aptus, a, um, adj. Added to, tied, connected; suitable, proper, fit.

Apud, prep. with *accus.* At, near, with, by, among, before, in presence of; at *or* in the house of.

Aqua, ae, f. Water.

Aquātio, ōnis, f., (aquor.) The act of getting *or* fetching water; a watering.

Aquila, ae, f. An eagle; the Roman ensign. See p. 80, 2.

Aquilĭfer, ĕri, m. The eagle-bearer, standard-bearer of the legion.

Arbĭter, tri, m. An arbitrator, umpire, judge.

Arbitrium, i, n., (*arbiter.*) Judgment of an arbitrator; a determination, decision; will, pleasure, opinion.

Arbitror, āri, atus sum, depon., (*arbiter.*) To judge, think, imagine, be of opinion.

Arbor, (*arbos,*) *ŏris, f.* A tree.

Arcesso, ĕre, ivi, itum. To call, send for, invite, summon, fetch.

Arcte and *arte, adv.,* (*arctus.*) Closely, tightly, strictly.

Arctus and *artus, a, um, adj.* Narrow, confined, close, strait.

Ardeo, ēre, si, sum. To burn, be on fire, blaze. *Applied to the mind,* to burn, glow; to be prone, eager, impatient.

Arduŭs, a, um, adj. High, lofty, steep, difficult to reach.

Argentum, i, n. Silver.

Argilla, ae, f. White clay, potter's earth, argil.

Arĭdus, a, um, adj., (*areo.*) Dry, parched up, dry, thirsty, arid. *Ex arido,* on dry land.

Arĭes, ĕtis, m. A ram, a battering-ram. See p. 54, 10.

Arma, ōrum, n., (*ἄρω.*) Arms for defence, armor *both offensive and defensive;* war, warfare, warlike deeds; implements *for all uses;* rigging, tackling *of a ship.* See p. 62, 14.

Armamenta, ōrum, n., (*armo.*) Utensils *for all purposes;* cordage, tackling *or* rigging *of a ship;* oars, rudder, sails. See p. 62, 28.

Armatūra, ae, f. Armor *of various kinds;* soldiers, soldiery. *Pedites levis armaturae,* (II. 24.)

Armatus, a, um, part. and *adj.* Armed, equipped. *Armati, orum, m.* Armed men, soldiers.

Armo, āre, āvi, ātum. To arm, fit out, equip; to strengthen, fortify.

Armoricae civitates. The Armoric states, *the general name of the states of Celtic Gaul, on the west coast between the Loire and the Seine.* See Bk. V. 53; VII. 75.

Arroganter, adv., (*arrogans.*) Insolently, presumptuously, haughtily, proudly.

Arrogantia, ae, f., (*arrogans.*) Arrogance, presumption, insolence, pride, haughtiness.

Ars, artis, f. An art, faculty, quality, method, way, contrivance, skill, stratagem.

Artĭcŭlus, i, m., (*artus.*) A joint, juncture, knot.

Artus, a, um. See *Arctus.*

Artificium, i, n., (*artifex.*) Art, skill, workmanship, science, ingenuity.

Arx, arcis, f. A lofty place, a steep, tower, fortress, citadel.

Ascendo, ĕre, di, sum, (*ad, scando.*) To ascend, mount, climb.

Ascensus, ûs, m., (*ascendo.*) The act of ascending, an ascent, acclivity.

Ascisco, ĕre, ivi, itum, (*ad, scisco.*) To take, receive, admit, unite.

Aspectus, ûs, m., (*aspicio.*) A looking at, beholding; the sight, presence, appearance.

Asper, ĕra, ĕrum, adj. Rough, uneven, harsh, sour, fierce, cruel, severe.

Assĭduus, a, um, adj., (*assideo.*) Settled; continual, incessant, frequent; diligent.

Assisto, ĕre, stĭti, —, (*ad, sisto.*) To stand near *or* by, be present, assist.

Assuefăcio, ĕre, ēci, actum, (*assuetus, facio.*) To accustom, habituate, inure, use to a thing.

Assuesco, ĕre, ēvi, ētum, (*ad, suesco.*) To accustom one's self, ac-

custom, habituate; to be accustomed.

At, conj. But, yet; but at least.

Atque, conj. And. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 4, note *d.*

Attămen, conj., (*at, tamen.*) But, but yet, however.

Attexo, ĕre, xui, xtum, (*ad, texo.*) To weave; unite, join, add.

Attingo, ĕre, igi, actum, (*ad, tango.*) To touch gently, touch, come in contact with; reach, arrive at.

Attribuo, ĕre, ŭi, ūtum. To attribute, bestow, give, ascribe, impute, assign.

Attŭli. See *Affero.*

Auctor, ōris, m., (*augeo.*) An author, originator, inventor, institutor, maker, adviser, approver, director.

Auctōritas, ātis, f., (*auctor.*) Authority, power, influence, fame, ostentation.

Auctus, a, um. See *Augeo.*

Audacia, ae, f., (*audax.*) Boldness, audacity, impudence, presumption.

Audaciter and *audactor, adv.,* (*audax,*) comp. *audacius,* sup. *audacissime.* Boldly, confidently, audaciously, spiritedly.

Audeo, ĕre, ausus sum, neut. pass. To dare, adventure, attempt, presume.

Audio, ire, ivi, itum. To hear, hearken, listen, perceive, obey, mind, heed, be informed of.

Auditio, ōnis, f., (*audio.*) The act of hearing, a hearing, hearsay, report, rumor.

Augeo, ĕre, auxi, auctum. To increase, amplify, enlarge, improve, advance, command.

Auriga, ae, m., (*aurea, ago.*) A driver, charioteer.

Auris, is, f. The external part of the ear; the ear.

Ausus, a, um. See *Audeo.*

Aut, conj. Or, or else, or at least. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 456, note *a.*

Autem, conj. But, but however, moreover.

Autumnus, i, m. Autumn, the time of harvest and vintage.

Auxi. See *Augeo.*

Auxiliāris, is, e, adj., (*auxilium.*) Assisting, aiding, succoring, auxiliary.

Auxilior, āri, atus sum, depon. To assist, aid, help.

Auxilium, ii, n., (*augeo.*) Assistance, help, succor; auxiliary force, a resource, remedy.

Avaritia, ae, f., (*avarus.*) Avarice, covetousness, greedy desire.

Avĕrsus, a, um, part. from *averto; adj.* Turned away. *Hostis aversus,* an enemy who has turned his back, i. e. a flying enemy.

Averto, ĕre, ti, sum, (*ab, verto.*) To turn of *or* away, avert, remove; alienate, estrange.

Avis, is, f. A bird, fowl. See Arnold, *Pr. Intr.* 479, note *u.*

Avus, i, m. A father's *or* mother's father, a grandfather.

B.

Balteus, i, m., and *balteum, i, n.* A belt, a sword-belt.

Barbarus, a, um, adj., (*βάρβαρος.*) Barbaric, not Greek or Roman, foreign; wild, uncultivated, uncivilized, savage.

Bellicōsus, a, um, adj., (*bellicus.*) Warlike, martial, valorous. *Gens bellicosissima,* (IV. 1.)

Bellĭcus, a, um, adj., (*bellum.*) Of war, warlike. *Laus bellica,* (VI. 24.)

Bellum, i. n. War, battle, fight.

***Bĕne**, adv.*, comp. *melius*, sup. *optime*. Well, successfully, happily.

***Beneficium**, i, n.*, (*bene, facio.*) A kindness, favor, benefit.

***Benevolentia**, ae, f.*, (*benevolens.*) Benevolence, good-will, kindness.

***Biduum**, i, n.*, (*biduus.*) The period of two days, two days.

***Biennium**, i, n.*, (*bis, annus.*) The space of two years, two years.

***Bīni**, ae, a, adj.*, (*bis.*) Two by two, two.

***Bipartīto**, adv.*, (*bis, partior.*) In two parts *or* divisions.

***Bipĕdālis**, is, e, adj.*, (*bis, pes.*) Two feet long, wide, *or* thick.

***Bis**, adv.* Twice, on two occasions.

***Bonitas**, ātis, f.*, (*bonus.*) Goodness, bounty, favor, advantage.

***Bŏnus**, a, um, adj.*, comp. *melior*, sup. *optimus*. Good, fit, apt; well-disposed, friendly; large, considerable. *Bonum, i, n.*, any good, good thing; benefit, advantage. *Bona, n. pl.*, goods, property, effects.

***Bos**, bŏvis, m. and f.* An ox *or* cow. See p. 122, 9.

***Brachium**, i, n.* The arm, an arm *or* bough of a tree.

***Brĕvis**, is, e.* Short, transitory, brief.

***Brevitas**, ātis, f.* Shortness, brevity.

***Breviter**, adv.*, (*brevis.*) Shortly, summarily.

***Brūma**, ae, f.* The winter solstice, winter. See p. 91, 24.

C.

C. for *Caius*.

***Cacūmen**, inis, n.* The top *or* summit of any thing; the peak; extremity, end.

***Cadāver**, ĕris, n.*, (*cado.*) A dead body, a corpse, a carcass.

***Cădo**, ĕre, cĕcīdi, cāsum.* To fall, fall in battle, die, perish.

***Caedes**, is, f.*, (*caedo.*) A cutting, striking, slaughter, murder.

***Caedo**, ĕre, cĕcīdi, caesum.* To cut, cut down, lop, fell; beat, strike; kill, destroy; sacrifice.

***Caerimōnia**, ae, f.* A religious ceremony, sacred rites.

***Caeruleus**, a, um, adj.* Cerulian, azure, blue.

***Caesus**, a, um.* See *Caedo*.

***Calămitas**, ātis, f.* A loss, injury, damage, calamity.

***Calendae**, ārum, f.* The first day of the month, the Calends.

***Callĭdus**, a, um, adj.*, (*calleo.*) Skilful, tried, experienced, shrewd, cunning, crafty.

***Cālo**, ōnis, m.* A soldier's slave *or* boy. See p. 51, 5.

***Campester**, stris, stre, adj.*, (*campus.*) Of *or* belonging to a plain *or* field; level, flat.

***Campus**, i, m.* A field, plain.

***Căno**, ĕre, cĕcĭni, cantum.* To sing, chant, play upon an instrument; to prophesy, foretell.

***Capillus**, i, m.* A hair, the hair of the head, hair.

***Căpio**, ĕre, cēpi, captum.* To take, take up; seize, captivate, take prisoner;. obtain, acquire, enjoy; choose, select. *Capere initium*, to begin, (I. 1;) *consilium*, to form a design *or* adopt a plan, (III. 2, V. 8;) *or portum*, to gain arrive at the port, (IV. 36.)

***Caprea**, ae, f.* A roe.

***Captīvus**, a, um, adj.*, (*capio.*) Captive, taken prisoner, enslaved

***Captus**, ûs, m.*, (*capio.*) A taking *or* seizing; capacity, talent; state, condition.

***Captŭs**, a, um.* See *Capio*. *Capta, orum, n.*, booty, spoils.

Caput, ĭtis, n. A head; man, person; life; mouth of a river; fountain, source.

Careo, ēre, ui, —. To be without, in want, in want of; free from.

Carīna, ae, f. The keel *or* bottom of a ship.

Căro, carnis, f. The flesh of animals.

Carpo, ĕre, psi, ptum. To gather, pull, pluck, blame, upbraid; slander; weaken.

Carrus, i, m., and *carrum, i, n.* A car, wagon. See p. 14, 29.

Cārus, a, um, adj. Dear, precious, beloved.

Casa, ae, f. A cottage *or* cabin of turf *or* straw; a soldier's hut.

Caseus, i, m. Cheese.

Cassis, ĭdis, f. A helmet.

Castellum, i, n., (*castrum.*) A castle, little camp, fort, redoubt.

Castīgo, āre, āvi, ātum. To chastise, punish, correct; reprove; mend, improve.

Castra, ōrum, n. A camp, encampment. See p. 18, 24; 94, 29; 150, 35.

Cāsus, ûs, m., (*cado.*) A fall *or* falling; chance, accident, misfortune, danger, extremity.

Catēna, ae, f. A chain; fetters.

Causa, ae, f. A cause, reason, case; a suit at law; pretence, pretext; state, condition. *Causa* with *genit.*, on account of, for the sake of. *Per causam,* for the sake of. *Causa cognita,* the trial being heard, having put him on his trial.

Caute, adv. Cautiously, prudently, warily.

Cautes, is, f. A rock, cliff.

Cautus, a, um, adj. Legally secured; cautious, careful, wary.

Caveo, ēre, cāvi, cautum. To beware, take care, to be on one's guard, to avoid.

Cĕcĭdi. See *Cado.*

Cēdo, ĕre, cessi, cessum. To yield, retreat, go, withdraw, retire, depart.

Cĕler, ĕris, ĕre, adj. Swift, speedy, quick.

Celerĭtas, ātis, f., (*celer.*) Speed, rapidity.

Celerĭter, adv., (*celer,*) comp. *celerius*, sup. *celerrĭme.* Speedily, quickly, immediately.

Cēlo, āre, āvi, ātum. To hide, conceal, cover, keep secret.

Cènseo, ēre, ui, censum. To think, judge, decree. See p. 128, 9.

Census, us, m., (*censeo.*) A census; tribute, tax; numbering. See p. 26, 23.

Centum, ind. num. adj. A hundred.

Centuria, ae, f. A century *or* hundred; a company of foot, a hundred in number; a squadron of horse; a division of the Roman people.

Centūrio, ōnis, m. A centurion. See p. 31, 38.

Cēpi. See *Capio.*

Cerno, ĕre, crēvi, crētum. To sift; decide, decree; to see, perceive, understand.

Certāmen, ĭnis, n., (*certo.*) A contest, debate, battle, engagement, fight.

Certe, adv., (*certus.*) Certainly, assuredly; at least, yet.

Certo, āre, āvi, ātum. To contend, contest, strive, struggle, fight; attempt.

Certus, a, um, adj. Determined, resolved, established, certain, trusty, accurate, regular: *certior fieri,* to be informed.

Cervus, i, m. A stag; stakes *resembling a stag's horns.* See p. 162, 6.

Cespes, itis, m. A turf, peat *or* sod.
Cessi. See *Cedo.*
Cetĕrus, ĕra, ĕrum, adj., (nom. sing. mas. not used.) The rest, residue, remainder; other.
Cibarius, a, um, adj. Relating to food, fit for eating. *Cibaria, orum, n.* Food, provisions, victuals.
Cibus, i, m. Food, victuals, provender.
Cingo, ĕre, cinxi, cinctum. To gird, surround, encompass, environ.
Cippus, i, m. A cippus; sharp stake.
Circa, prep. with *accus.* About, around.
Circīnus, i, m. A pair of compasses.
Circĭter, adv. About, near, somewhere about.
Circueo. See *Circumeo.*
Circuĭtus, ûs, m., (*circueo.*) A going round, circuit, revolution; circumference.
Circuĭtus, a, um. See *circumeo.*
Circum, prep. with *accus.* Around, about. Also *adv.*, around, near.
Circumcīdo, ĕre, īdi, īsum, (*circum, caedo.*) To cut about *or* around; to take away.
Circumcīsus, a, um. See *Circumcido.* Cut around, steep, craggy.
Circumclūdo, ĕre, si, sum, (*circum, claudo.*) To shut up on every side, hem in, surround, invest.
Circumdo, ăre, dĕdi, dătum, (*circum, do.*) To put *or* set round, to surround, encompass, draw round.
Circumdūco, ĕre, xi, ctum. To lead *or* draw round.
Circumeo, īre, īvi, (*ii,*) *circuĭtum.* To go round *or* about; to encompass, surround, environ.
Circumfundo, ĕre, ūdi, ūsum. To pour round, sprinkle about; surround, encompass. *Pass.*, to flock *or* meet together, to collect.
Circumĭtus, a, um, part. of *circumeo.*
Circumjicio, ĕre, ĕci, ectum, (*circum, jacio.*) To cast *or* throw round; compass, comprise.
Circummitto, ĕre, īsi, issum. To send around.
Circummunio, īre, īvi, ītum. To fortify all around. See p. 53, 25.
Circumplector, ti, exus sum, depon. To embrace *or* clasp round; to surround.
Circumsisto, ĕre, stiti & stĕti, stitum. To surround, beset, besiege.
Circumspicio, ĕre, exi, ectum, (*circum, specio.*) To look round, take heed, weigh, ponder over.
Circumsto, āre, stĕti, —. To stand around, surround.
Circumvallo, āre, āvi, ātum. To surround with a rampart, circumvallate, besiege, invest.
Circumvectus, a, um. See *Circumveho.*
Circumvĕho, ĕre, exi, ectum. To carry round. *Generally in pass.*, To ride, sail *or* go around.
Circumvĕnio, īre, ēni, entum. To come *or* stand round, to surround, encompass, invest, besiege, overreach, entrap.
Cis, prep. with *accus.* On this side.
Citātus, a, um, part. from *cito; adj.* Swift, hurried, speedy, quick.
Citerior, us, adj., comparat. of *citer.* Nearer, hither.
Citissime, superl. of *cito.*
Cito, adv. Quickly, soon, shortly.
Cito, āre, āvi, ātum. To excite, rouse, stir up; hasten, summon.
Citrā, prep. with *accus.* On this side.
Citro, adv., (*citer.*) Hitherwards. *Ultro citroque,* this way and that, to and fro.
Civis, is, m. and *f.* A citizen, a free man *or* woman.

Civitas, ātis, f. The body of citizens; a city, state; the privilege of citizenship.

Clam, adv., (for *celam* from *celo.*) Privately, privily, secretly.

Clămito, āre, āvi, ātum. To cry aloud, vociferate.

Clāmo, āre, āvi, ātum. To cry, shout, cry aloud, exclaim.

Clāmor, ōris, f. A loud cry, shout; clamor, any noise *or* sound.

Clandestīnus, a, um, adj., (*clam.*) Secret, hidden, unknown, private.

Clāre, adv. Clearly, brightly, distinctly.

Clārus, a, um, adj. Clear, bright, illustrious, splendid; manifest, evident.

Classis, is, f. A class *or* order of citizens, a company; a fleet, an armament.

Claudo, ĕre, si, sum. To shut, close, enclose, surround, encompass; conclude. *Claudere agmen,* to bring up the rear.

Clavus, i, m. A nail.

Clĕmenter, adv., (*clemens.*) Gently, mildly, quietly, placidly.

Clĕmentia, ae, f. Mildness, clemency, kindness, humanity.

Cliens, tis, m. and *f.* A client, a retainer, dependent, subject, vassal.

Clientēla, ae, f., (*cliens.*) Clientship, patronage, protection. *In plural,* clients *or* dependents, *spoken of weaker in reference to more powerful states.*

Clīvus, i, m. The ascent of a hill; an acclivity, elevation, height, steep.

Cn. Abbreviation for *Cnaeus.*

Coacervo, āre, āvi, ātum, (*con, acervo.*) To heap together, heap up, accumulate, amass.

Coactus. See *Cogo.*

Coactus, ûs, m. A forcing, constraining.

Coagmento, āre, āvi, ātum. To join *or* glue together; connect, construct, compact.

Coarcto, (*coarto,*) *āre, āvi, ātum,* (*con, arcto* or *arto.*) To straiten, press together, compress.

Coēgi. See *Cōgo.*

Coelestis, is, e, adj., (*coelum.*) Celestial, heavenly. *Coelestes, ium,* the gods.

Coĕmo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum, (*con, emo.*) To buy up, purchase various articles.

Coeo, īre, īvi, (*ii,*) *ĭtum,* (*con, eo.*) To go *or* come together, assemble, meet, collect, resort.

Coepi, isse, defective verb. I began. *Perf. pass., coeptus sum* is used only when an *inf. pass.* follows.

Coerceo, ĕre, cui, itum, (*con, arceo.*) To surround, embrace, encompass; check, repress, curb.

Cogitatio, ōnis, f., (*cogito.*) A thinking, considering, reflecting, care, consideration.

Cogĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, (*con, agito.*) To revolve in mind, ponder, consider, meditate, design, intend.

Cognātio, ōnis, f., (*con, nascor.*) Relation *or* connection by blood; kindred, family.

Cognitus, a, um, part. from *cognosco;* known, ascertained.

Cognosco, ĕre, ōvi, ĭtum, (*con, nosco.*) To examine, investigate, discover, ascertain. See p. 154, 10.

Cōgo, ĕre, coēgi, coactum, (*con, ago.*) To drive together, collect, draw together, impel, compel, force, urge.

Cŏhors, tis, f. A cohort. See p. 43, 37.

Cohortatio, ōnis, (*cohortor.*) An exhorting, encouraging

***Cohortor**, āri, ātus sum, depon.*, (*con, hortor.*) To exhort, encourage.

Coire. See *Coeo.*

***Collatus**, a, um.* See *Confero.*

***Collaudo**, āre, āvi, ātum*, (*con, laudo.*) To commend, extol.

***Collectus**, a, um.* See *Colligo.*

***Collēga**, ae, m.* A colleague, partner in office.

***Collĭgo**, āre, āvi, ātum*, (*con, ligo.*) To bind *or* tie together, connect, bind.

***Collĭgo**, ĕre, ēgi, ectum*, (*con, lego.*) To gather together, collect, assemble, obtain, acquire.

***Collis**, is, m.* A hill, hillock, ascent.

***Collŏco**, āre, āvi, ātum*, (*con, loco.*) To set, place, set up, erect; station; arrange.

***Collŏquium**, i, n.* Conversation, interview, conference.

***Collŏquor**, i, cūtus (quūtus) sum, depon.*, (*con, loquor.*) To speak together, converse, conspire.

***Cŏlo**, ĕre, ui, cultum.* To cultivate, attend to; worship, honor, venerate.

***Colōnia**, ae, f.*, (*colōnus.*) A colony, settlement.

***Color**, ōris, m.*, (*colo.*) A color, complexion, tint, hue.

***Combūro**, ĕre, ussi, ustum*, (*con, uro.*) To burn together, burn utterly; scorch.

***Cŏmes**, ĭtis, m.* and *f.* A comrade, companion, fellow, associate, attendant.

***Comĭnus**, adv.*, (*con, manus.*) Hand to hand, in close combat.

***Comĭtium**, i, n.*, (*comes.*) The comitium, or place in the forum where causes were tried and the *comitia centuriata* held. *Comitia, pl.*, the comitia, i. e. the people assembled for making laws, choosing magistrates, &c.

***Comĭtor**, āri, ātus, depon.*, (*comes.*) To accompany, attend, wait upon, follow.

***Commeātus**, ūs, m.*, (*commeo.*) A passing *or* passage, furlough; provisions, supplies, victuals.

***Commĕmŏro**, āre, āvi, ātum*, (*con, memoro.*) To call to mind, mention, refer to.

***Commendo**, āre, āvi, ātum*, (*con, mando.*) To commit, commend, intrust with.

***Commeo**, āre, āvi, ātum.* To go, to come and go, to go to and fro, resort.

***Commissūra**, ae, f.*, (*committo.*) A joining together, joint, juncture.

***Committo**, ĕre, īsi, issum.* To bring together, unite, commit, intrust, risk, cause. *Committere proelium*, to join battle, to engage.

***Commode**, adv.* Fitly, aptly, to the purpose, conveniently, suitably.

***Commŏdum**, i, n.* Convenience, advantage, profit, utility.

***Commŏdus**, a, um, adj.*, (*con, modus.*) Convenient, apt, fit, suitable, advantageous; agreeable.

***Commonefacio**, ĕre, ēci, actum*, (*commoneo, facio.*) To put in mind, remind, warn, advise.

***Commŏror**, āri, ātus sum, depon.*, (*con, moror.*) To stop, pause, stay, abide.

***Commōtus**, a, um.* See *Commoveo.*

***Commŏveo**, ēre, ōvi, ōtum.* To move, stir, excite, disturb; affect, disquiet.

***Communico**, āre, āvi, ātum*, (*communis.*) To communicate, impart, share, conspire, plan, concert.

***Communio**, īre, īvi, (ii,) ītum*, (*con, munio.*) To fortify, secure, fence about.

Commūnis, is, e, adj. Common, general, belonging to the public.

Commūtatio, ōnis, f. A changing, change, alteration.

Commūto, āre, āvi, ātum. To change, alter, exchange.

Compăro, āre, āvi, ātum. To prepare, get ready, provide, acquire, get; compare.

Compello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum. To drive together, collect, assemble; force, compel.

Compendium, i, n., (con, pendo.) Gain, profit, advantage. See p. 149, 18.

Compĕrio, īre, pĕri, pertum, (con, pario.) To find out, discover, learn, be informed, know. *Id se compertum habere,* that he had been assured of that.

Compertus, a, um. See *Comperio.*

Complector, i, xus sum, depon., (con, plecto.) To encircle, compass, embrace, enclose.

Compleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum. To fill, fill up, complete, finish.

Complexus, ûs, m., (complector.) Circumference, compass.

Complūres, es, a, (and *ia,*) ***adj.*** Many, a great many, very many, several.

Compōno, ĕre, sŭi, situm. To put *or* place together; dispose, order; build, compose.

Comporto, āre, āvi, ātum. To convey *or* bring together, collect, bring.

Comprehendo, ĕre, di, sum, (con, prehendo.) To bring together, to seize, apprehend; embrace, include. See p. 98, 30.

Comprŏbo, āre, āvi, ātum. To approve, allow, prove, confirm, verify.

Compŭli. See *Compello.*

Compulsus, a, um. See *Compello.*

Conātum, i, n., (conor.) An endeavor, effort, attempt.

Conatus, ûs, m., (conor.) An attempt, effort, endeavor, undertaking.

Concēdo, ĕre, essi, essum, (con, cedo.) To yield, grant, permit, depart.

Concerto, āre, āvi, ātum. To strive together, contest, dispute, debate.

Concessus, ûs, m., (concedo.) A permitting, allowing, permission.

Concīdo, ĕre, īdi, īsum, (con, caedo.) To cut in pieces, slay, destroy, intersect.

Concĭdo, ĕre, ĭdi, —, (con, cado.) To fall *or* drop down, subside, fall, die.

Concilio, āre, āvi, ātum, (concilium.) To join together, gain over, reconcile, unite.

Concilium, i, n., (concieo.) An assembly, meeting, council; place of meeting.

Concio, ōnis, f., (concieo.) An assembly of the army *or* people; an oration, harangue.

Concionor, āri, ātus sum, depon. To make a speech, harangue, address the people.

Concĭpio, ĕre, ēpi, eptum, (con, căpio.) To take, receive, contract, conceive, comprehend, understand.

Concīsus, a, um. See *Concido.*

Concĭto, āre, āvi, ātum. To set in motion, stir up, excite, arouse, provoke.

Conclāmo, āre, āvi, ātum. To cry out together, call out, proclaim; call upon, invoke.

Conclūdo, ere, si, sum, (con, claudo.) To shut up, enclose, confine, end.

Concrĕpo, āre, ui, —. To make a noise, resound, rattle, ring.

Concurro, ĕre, curri, cursum. To

run *or* rush together, to meet, resort; concur, agree; engage in fight, charge; happen together, concur.

Concurso, āre, āvi, ātum. To run together, run to and fro, run up and down.

Concursus, ûs, m., (concurro.) A running *or* rushing together; a meeting, collision, engagement, contest.

Condemno, āre, āvi, ātum, (con, damno.) To condemn, charge with.

Condĭtio, ōnis, f., (condo.) A making, constructing; condition, stipulation, terms, law, rule, nature, quality.

Condōno, āre, āvi, ātum. To give, grant, give away, bestow, pardon.

Condūco, ĕre, xi, ctum. To bring together, conduct, assemble, collect, tend, hire.

Confectus, a, um. See *Conficio.*

Confercio, ire, si, tum, (con, farcio.) To stuff *or* cram together.

Confĕro, ferre, contŭli, collātum, (confero.) To bring together, collect, gather, compare, betake, ascribe, impute.

Confertus, a, um. See *Confercio;* crammed full, crowded; thick, close, dense.

Confestim, adv. Forthwith, immediately.

Conficio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, (con, facio.) To get together, collect; prepare, finish, execute, accomplish, equip, exhaust, kill.

Confīdo, ĕre, fīsus sum, neut. pass. To trust, be assured, believe, hope, confide in.

Confīgo, ĕre, xi, xum. To fix together, fix in, fasten together, pierce, stab.

Confīnis, is, e, (con, finis.) Next to, adjoining, bordering upon, contiguous.

Confinium, i, n. A confine, boundary, limit, frontier.

Confio, fieri, defect. To be made *or* done.

Confirmātio, ōnis, f. A confirming, establishing; confirmation, proof, assurance.

Confirmo, āre, āvi, ātum. To confirm, establish, strengthen, encourage, secure, affirm. See p. 47, 35.

Confīsus, a, um. See *Confido.*

Confit, (confio.) It is done.

Confĭteor, ēri, essus sum, depon., (con, fateor.) To confess, acknowledge, own, concede, admit, grant.

Confixus, a, um. See *Configo.*

Conflăgro, āre, āvi, ātum. To burn, be consumed by fire, be on fire.

Conflicto, āre, āvi, ātum. To strike, *or* dash together, struggle with; to be troubled or harassed.

Conflīgo, ĕre, xi, ctum. To strike *or* dash together; mix, unite; engage, fight.

Confluens, tis, part., from *confluo. Confluens, tis, m.,* the place where two streams meet, the confluence of two *or* more streams.

Confluo, ĕre, xi, xum. To flow *or* run together, meet, flock together.

Confŭgio, ĕre, ūgi, ūgĭtum. To flee for succor, flee, have recourse to.

Confundo, ĕre, ūdi, ūsum. To pour together, mingle, mix, blend together.

Congĕro, ĕre, essi, estum. To carry together, pile up, accumulate, amass, hoard up.

Congredior, i, essus sum, depon., (con, gradior.) To go *or* move with; accost, meet; engage, fight.

Congressus, a, um. See *Congredior.*

Conjectūra, ae, f., (conjicio.) Conjecture, guess; conclusion.

Conjĭcio, ĕre, jēci, jectum, (con, jacio.) To throw *or* hurl together, fling, cast, discharge; impel; put, place; conjecture, divine.

Conjunctim, adv. Conjointly, together.

Conjungo, ĕre, xi, ctum. To join together, connect, associate, unite.

Conjuratio, ōnis, f., (conjūro.) Conspiracy, combination, confederacy.

Conjūro, āre, āvi, ātum. To swear together; conspire, enter into a conspiracy. See p. 130, 3.

Conjux, ŭgis, m. and *f.* Husband, wife, consort.

Cŏnor, āri, ātus sum, depon. To strive, undertake, endeavor, attempt.

Conquiesco, ĕre, ēvi, ētum. To rest, be at rest, enjoy repose.

Conquīro, ĕre, sīvi, sītum, (con, quaero.) To seek after, search for, collect.

Conquisītus, a, um. See *Conquiro.*

Consanguineus, a, um, adj. Related by blood, of the same kindred, allied.

Conscendo, ĕre, di, sum, (con, scando.) To climb *or* go up, mount, get up, ascend. *Navem conscendere,* to embark.

Conscientia, ae, f. Joint knowledge; conscience, consciousness.

Conscisco, ĕre, īvi, ītum, (con, scisco.) To vote together, determine, resolve, execute. *Consciscere sibi mortem,* to lay violent hands on one's self, to kill one's self.

Conscius, a, um, adj. Conscious, privy to, witness of; guilty.

Conscribo, ĕre, psi, ptum. To write together, enrol, enlist, levy.

Consecro, āre, āvi, ātum, (con sacro.) To make sacred, consecrate, devote.

Consector, āri, ātus sum, depon. To follow after eagerly, pursue, overtake.

Consecūtus, a, um. See *Consequor.*

Consensio, ōnis, f. Consent, agreement; unanimity; plot, conspiracy.

Consensus, ûs, m. Consent, agreement.

Consentio, īre, sensi, sensum. To agree, accord, be of same opinion, combine.

Consĕquor, i, cūtus (quūtus) sum, depon. To follow, go after, pursue, overtake; obtain, acquire; complete, understand, learn.

Conservo, āre, āvi, ātum. To preserve, maintain, defend, protect, save.

Consīdo, ĕre, ēdi, essum. To sit down, settle, encamp; stop, delay; fall, sink.

Consilium, i, n. Deliberation, counsel, advice, wisdom; design, plan, stratagem; determination, judgment, resolve; a council, council of war.

Consimilis, is, e, adj. Like, similar.

Consisto, ĕre, stĭti, stĭtum. To stand fast, stop, halt, withstand; consist, exist.

Consobrīnus, i, m. A (male) cousin-german, a first-cousin.

Consōlor, āri, ātus sum, depon. To console, comfort, solace, cheer.

Conspectus, ûs, m., (conspicio.) A seeing, look, sight, view.

Conspexi. See *Conspicio.*

Conspĭcio, ĕre, exi, ectum, (con, specio.) To see, behold, observe, discern.

Conspĭcor, ari, atus sum, depon. To see, behold, descry, observe, perceive.

Conspiro, āre, āvi, ātum. To blow together; agree, unite, conspire.

Constanter, adv. Consistently, steadily, firmly, constantly.

Constantia, ae, f. Firmness, resolution, consistency.

Consterno, āre, āvi, ātum. To alarm, terrify, disturb, amaze.

Consterno, ĕre, strāvi, strātum. To strew *or* cover over, spread, lay.

Constīpo, āre, āvi, ātum. To crowd together, thicken.

Constĭtuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, (con, statuo.) To set down, place, put, dispose, station, post; appoint, determine, fix, settle; decree, regulate; create, make.

Consto, āre, ĭti, ātum. To stand, halt, consist of; persist, continue; agree, exist. *Constat,* it is evident; it appears.

Constrātus, a, um. See *Consterno.*

Consuesco, ĕre, ēvi, ētum. To be accustomed, accustom one's self.

Consuetūdo, ĭnis, f., (consuesco.) Custom, use, habit, intimacy, intercourse.

Consul, ŭlis, m. A consul, *the chief Roman magistrate, elected annually.*

Consulatus, ûs, m. The office of consul, consulship, consulate; time of the consul's office.

Consŭlo, ĕre, lui, ultum. To consult, deliberate, take counsel, advise, provide for, regard, respect. See p. 87, 4.

Consulto, āre, āvi, ātum, (consulo.) To ask advice, consult, deliberate; take care, provide, look to.

Consulto, adv. Designedly, on purpose.

Consultum, i, n. Consideration, decision, decree, statute.

Consūmo, ĕre, psi, ptum. To eat up, consume, waste, devour, destroy; employ, pass.

Consurgo, ĕre, rexi, rectum. To rise together, rise up, rise, pay respect.

Contabulatio, ōnis, f. A covering over with boards *or* planks, flooring, floor, story.

Contăbŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum. To cover with boards *or* planks, to plank *or* floor with boards. (Bk. V. 40; VII. 22.)

Contagio, ōnis, f., (contingo.) A touching, contact; contagion, infection.

Contāmĭno, āre, āvi, ātum. To pollute, stain, defile, contaminate.

Contĭgo, ĕre, exi, ctum. To cover, cover up, protect; hide, conceal.

Contemno, ĕre, mpsi, mptum. To despise, slight, contemn.

Contemptio, onis, f. Despising, contempt, scorn, disdain.

Contemptus, ûs, m., (contemno.) Contempt, scorn, disdain, derision.

Contendo, ĕre, di, tum. To stretch, strain, draw, endeavor; contend, fight; go to, hasten.

Contentio, ōnis, f. Straining, stretching, endeavor, contest, zeal, dispute.

Contestor, āri, ātus sum, depon. To call to witness, invoke, conjure.

Contexo, ĕre, ui, tum. To weave, entwine, join together, interweave, interlace.

Contĭgi. See *Contingo.*

Continens, tis, part. and *adj.* Holding, containing; contiguous, adjoining; continual, uninterrupted.

Continenter, adv. Continually, uninterruptedly.

Continentia, ae, f. Checking, holding back, forbearance, moderation.

Contineo, ēre, tinum, tentum, (con, teneo.) To hold together, keep, contain, bound, environ, confine, restrain.

Contingo, ere, tigi, tactum, (con, tango.) To touch, concern, affect, reach, happen.

Continuatio, ōnis, f., (contineo.) Continuation, connection, continuance.

Continuo, adv. Immediately, forthwith.

Continuus, a, um, adj. Continual, without intermission, uninterrupted, successive.

Contra, prep. with *accus.* and *adv.* Against, contrary to, in opposition to; on the contrary, on the other hand. *Contra atque esset dictum,* contrary to what had been agreed upon.

Contraho, ĕre, xi, ctum. To draw together, unite, collect; draw in, contract.

Contrārius, a, um, adj. Opposite, contrary, at variance with, repugnant.

Controversia, ae, f. A controversy, debate, dispute.

Contŭli. See *Confero.*

Contumelia, ae, f. Affront, outrage, insult, injury, violence.

Convalesco, ĕre, ui, —. To gain strength, grow strong, become strong, convalesce.

Convallis, is, f. A valley, vale. See p. 99, 11.

Convectus, a, um. See *Conveho.*

Convĕho, ĕre, xi, ctum. To carry *or* bring together.

Convĕnio, īre, ēni, entum. To come together, meet, flock, assemble; suit, be agreed upon. *Convenit,* it is fit, proper, &c.; it is agreed upon, settled, &c.

Conventus, ūs, m., (convenio.) A meeting, assembly, collection; the assizes. See p. 40, 8.

Converto, ĕre, ti, sum. To turn about, whirl about, turn, turn back, return; change, convert. *Conversa signa intulerunt,* advanced their standards in opposite directions, wheeled about and attacked, &c.; the ranks turned round, back to back, and charged the enemy in two opposite directions.

Convinco, ere, ici, ictum. To conquer, conquer by argument; convict, prove.

Convŏco, āre, āvi, ātum. To call together, assemble, summon.

Coorior, īri, ortus sum, depon., (con, orior.) To rise together, rise, rise in mutiny.

Copia, ae, f., (coopia, from *con, ops.)* Plenty, abundance, number, supply; provisions, effects, goods, (usually in *pl.;*) troops, forces. See p. 27, 16.

Copiōsus, a, um, (copia.) Copious, plentiful, well-stocked, wealthy, rich.

Copŭla, ae, f. A grappling-hook.

Cor, cordis, n. The heart. *Vivis cordi fuisse,* to have been agreeable *or* dear to them when alive. (VI. 19.)

Coram, prep. with *ablat.* Before, in presence of, openly, in person.

Corium, i, n. The skin *or* hide of a beast; leather.

Cornu, n. A horn; a trumpet, horn, cornet; the wing of an army.

Corōna, ae, f. A crown, chaplet, wreath. *Sub corona vendere,* (III. 16.) See p. 63, 17.

Corpus, ŏris, n. A body, solid substance; the body, person.

Corripio, ĕre, ipui, eptum, (con, rapio.) To take, snatch, seize,

lay hold of, snatch away; attack, diminish; reprove.

Corrumpo, ĕre, ūpi, uptum, (*con, rumpo.*) To tear apart, waste, damage, hurt, injure, destroy, corrupt.

Cortex, ĭcis, m. and *f.* The bark of a tree, cork.

Corus, i, m. The north-west wind, (V. 7.) See p. 88, 25.

Crassitūdo, ĭnis, f., (*crassus.*) Thickness.

Crātes, is, f. A hurdle, a texture of wattled rods, fascines.

Crēber, ra, rum, adj. Frequent, repeated, thick, crowded.

Crebro, adv. Frequently, ofttimes.

Credo, ĕre, ĭdi, ĭtum. To believe, trust, rely; give credit to, think, imagine; intrust, commend.

Crĕmo, āre, āvi, ātum. To burn, set on fire.

Creo, āre, āvi, ātum. To make, create, form, produce; appoint, elect, create.

Cresco, ĕre, crēvi, crētum. To grow, come forth, increase, thrive, become greater.

Crimen, ĭnis, n. A reproach, charge, accusation; fault, offence.

Crīnis, is, m. The hair of the head; hair.

Cruciātus, ûs, m., (*crucio.*) Torment, torture, anguish, distress.

Crudēlis, is, e, adj., (*crudus.*) Cruel, fierce, savage, barbarous.

Crudēlitas, ātis, f. Cruelty, savageness.

Crudelĭter, adv. Cruelly, barbarously.

Crus, crūris, n. The leg from the knee to the ankle.

Cŭbīle, is, n., (*cubo.*) A resting-place, bed, couch, den, hole.

Cujusquemodi = *cujuscumque modi.* Of what kind *or* sort soever.

Culmen, ĭnis, n. The top *or* summit of a thing.

Culpa, ae, f. A fault, blame, guilt, failure.

Cultus, ûs, m., (*colo.*) Cultivation, culture, civilization, worship, dress, mode of living. See p. 13, 6.

Cum, prep. with *ablat.* With, along with, together with, among.

Cum. See *Quum.*

Cunctatio, ōnis, f. A delaying, lingering, doubt, hesitation.

Cunctor, āri, ātus sum, depon. To delay, linger; hesitate, doubt.

Cunctus, a, um, adj. All together, all, the whole, entire.

Cuneātim, adv., (*cuneo.*) In the form of a wedge.

Cuneus, i, m. A wedge. See p. 128, 8.

Cunicŭlus, i, m. A rabbit; burrow, mine; subterranean passage. See p. 65, 24.

Cupĭde, adv. With desire, eagerly, keenly.

Cupiditas, ātis, f. Desire, passion, eagerness, thirst for gain, avarice.

Cupĭdus, a, um, adj., (*cupio.*) Desirous, fond, eager, ardent.

Cupiens, tis, part. and *adj.* Desiring, wishing, eager.

Cupio, ĕre, īvi, (ii,) ītum. To covet, desire, wish, long for.

Cur, adv. Why? wherefore? to what purpose?

Cūra, ae, f. Care, diligence, attention; trouble, sorrow, grief; thought, management.

Cūro, āre, āvi, ātum. To take care of, see, provide, regard, attend to. *With a fut. pass. part.,* to cause, order.

Curro, ĕre, cucurri, cursum. To run, flow.

Currus, ûs, m. A chariot, car, wagon

Cursus, ûs, m., (*curro.*) A running, race, speed, course, voyage.

Cuspis, ĭdis, f. The point of a weapon; a spear, javelin.

Custōdia, ae, f. The act of keeping, guarding, care, charge, guard.

Custodio, īre, īvi, ītum. To keep, guard, watch, observe.

Custos, ōdis, m. and *f.* A keeper, preserver, guardian, watch, spy.

D.

D. for *Decimus.*

Damno, āre, āvi, ātum. To condemn, doom, sentence.

Damnum, i, n. Loss, damage, injury.

De, prep. with *ablat.* Of, from, concerning; out of, from among; on account of; by, by virtue of; after.

Debeo, ēre, ui, ĭtum. To owe, be in debt. *Pass.*, to be due, become due. *Debet*, it behooves, ought.

Decēdo, ĕre, essi, essum. To depart, go away, withdraw, retire, retreat.

Dĕcem, num. adj., indecl. Ten.

Decerno, ĕre, crēvi, crētum. To think, judge, deliberate, resolve, decide, decree; fight, contend, engage.

Decerto, āre, āvi, ātum. To contend, strive, fight for, dispute.

Decessus, ūs, m., (decedo.) A going away, departure.

Decĭdo, ĕre, ĭdi, —, (de, cado.) To fall from, fall down.

Decimānus. See *Decumanus.*

Decĭmus, a, um, adj., (decem.) The tenth.

Decĭpio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, (de, capio.) To deceive, beguile.

Declāro, āre, āvi, ātum. To show, declare, evince, manifest, proclaim.

Declīvis, is, e, adj., (de, clivus.) Bending downward, steep, sloping.

Declivitas, ātis, f. A declivity, descent.

Decrētum, i, n., (decerno.) A decree, act, statute.

Decrētus, a, um. See *Decerno.*

Decumānus, a, um, (decimus.) Of *or* belonging to the tenth. See p. 18, 24.

Decurio, ōnis, m., (decuria.) The commander of a *decuria, or* ten horsemen. See p. 24, 1.

Decurro, ĕre, curri, (cŭcurri,) cursum. To run down, run, hasten.

Dedĕcus, ŏris, n., (de, decus.) Disgrace, dishonor, shame, infamy; shameful action

Dĕdi. See *Do.*

Dedĭdi. See *Dedo.*

Dedĭtio, ōnis, f., (dedo.) A yielding up, surrender, capitulation.

Dedititius, (dediticius.) One who has surrendered. See p. 25, 32.

Dedo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum. To give, give up, deliver; surrender, submit; devote one's self.

Dedūco, ĕre, xi, ctum. To bring *or* pull down, convey, conduct, remove, withdraw; to conduct *a bride to her husband,* to marry; to accompany; deprive; bring, lead, move, induce; reduce. *Deducere naves* = to launch.

Deest. See *Desum.*

Defatīgatio, ōnis, f. A wearying, tiring; weariness, fatigue.

Defatīgo, āre, āvi, ātum. To weary, tire out, fatigue.

Defectio, ōnis, f., (deficio.) A failing, failure, want; revolt.

Defendo, ĕre, di, sum. To keep off, keep away, repel; defend, keep, protect.

Defensio, ōnis, f. A defending, defence

Defensor, ōris, m., (*defendo.*) One who wards off, a defender, advocate.

Defĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum. To carry down, carry, convey; produce; offer, give; tell, narrate, inform.

Defessus, a, um, adj. Weary, tired, fatigued.

Defĭcio, ĕre, fēci, fectum, (*de, facio.*) To fail, be wanting; grow feeble, perish, end.

Defīgo, ĕre, xi, xum. To fix in the ground, plant; fix, plunge, thrust, fasten.

Definio, īre, īvi, ītum. To terminate, limit, bound, determine; resolve, explain, express; prescribe.

Defixus, a, um. See *Defigo.*

Defŏre, defect. To be about to be wanting.

Deformis, is, e. Deformed, ugly, misshapen, unsightly.

Defŭgio, ĕre, ūgi, ŭgĭtum. To shun, avoid, decline.

Defui. See *Desum.*

Deinceps, adv., (*dein, capio.*) Successively, besides, after that, moreover.

Deinde, adv., (*de, inde.*) Then, after that, afterwards, next in order.

Dejectus, ūs, m., (*dejicio.*) A throwing down; a declivity, steep place, descent.

Dejectus, a, um, part. and *adj.* Thrown down, hurled down; precipitated.

Dejĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, (*de, jacio*) To throw down, overthrow, kill, slay.

Delābor, i, lapsus sum, depon. To fall down, slip *or* slide down, fall.

Delātus, a, um, part. from *defero.*

Delecto, āre, āvi, ātum, (*de, lacto.*) To allure, invite, please, delight.

Delectus, ūs, m., (*deligo.*) A choosing, selecting; levy of soldiers.

Delectus, a, um. See *Deligo;* chosen, selected, levied.

Deleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum. To blot out, efface, overthrow, destroy.

Delĭbero, āre, āvi, ātum. To consult, deliberate, advise, consider, determine.

Delībro, āre, āvi, ātum, (*de, liber.*) To peel off the bark, peel, bark.

Delictum, i, n., (*delinquo.*) A fault, offence, crime, sin.

Delĭgo, āre, āvi, ātum, (*de, ligo.*) To bind, tie, make fast.

Delĭgo, ĕre, ēgi, ectum, (*de, lego.*) To select, choose, pick out, cull; levy, detach.

Delitesco, ĕre, ui, —, (*de, latesco.*) To lie hid, be concealed, skulk, lurk.

Dementia, ae, f. Madness, folly. See p. 74, 11.

Demessus, a, um. See *Demeto.*

Demĕto, ere, essui, essum. To mow, reap, cut down, pluck, gather.

Demĭgro, āre, āvi, ātum. To remove, migrate, emigrate; go away, depart, flee.

Deminuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum. To diminish, lessen, abate, withdraw, break.

Demissus, a, um. See *Demitto.*

Demitto, ĕre, īsi, issum. To send down, cast, thrust, hang down, let fall, lower.

Demo, ĕre, mpsi, mptum, (*de, emo.*) To take away, take off, remove.

Demonstro, āre, āvi, ātum. To show, point out, demonstrate; declare, name, mention, state.

Demŏror, āri, ātus sum. To delay, tarry, wait for, stop, abide, remain; hinder.

Demŏveo, ĕre, ōvi, ōtum. To remove, displace, dislodge.

Demptus, a, um. See *Demo.*

Demum, adv. At length, in fine, lastly.

Denĕgo, āre, āvi, ātum. To deny, refuse, not suffer.

Dēni, ae, a, adj., (decem.) Ten by ten, ten.

Denique, adv. In fine, at last, finally.

Densus, a, um, adj. Thick, close, frequent.

Denuncio, āre, āvi, ātum. To denounce, intimate, declare, foretell, forewarn; denounce, enjoin, order.

Depello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum. To drive *or* thrust down; drive away. expel, remove.

Dependo, ĕre, di, sum. To weigh; pay, spend.

Deperdo, ĕre, didi, ditum. To lose.

Depereo, ire, ii, —. To perish, be lost, go to ruin, be undone.

Depōno, ĕre, sui, situm. To lay *or* put down, lay aside, place, station, lose, give up.

Depopulor, āri, ātus sum. To lay waste, pillage, ravage, plunder.

Deporto, āre, āvi, ātum. To carry down, transfer from one place to another.

Deposco, ĕre, pŏposci, —. To require, demand, request earnestly.

Depositus, a, um. See *Depono.*

Deprāvo, āre, āvi, ātum. To deprave, spoil, corrupt, impair, mar.

Deprecator, ōris, m. An intercessor. See p. 17, 12.

Deprĕcor, āri, ātus sum. To pray for, supplicate, beseech, beg; deprecate, excuse.

Deprehendo, ĕre, di, sum. To seize, catch, detect, discover, perceive.

Deprimo, ĕre, essi, essum, (de, premo.) To press down, depress, sink.

Depugno, āre, āvi, ātum. To fight eagerly, fight it out, contend.

Depulsus, a, um. See *Depello.*

Derelinquo, ĕre, iqui, ictum. To abandon, forsake, desert.

Derigo, ĕre, exi, ectum, (de, rego.) To make straight.

Derivo, āre, āvi, ātum. To drain, *or* convey water from its regular course.

Derŏgo, āre, āvi, ātum. To take away, repeal, abate, diminish, lessen.

Descendo, ĕre, di, sum, (de, scando.) To go *or* come down, descend; resort.

Deseco, āre, āvi, ātum. To cut off.

Desĕro, ĕre, ui, tum. To leave, abandon, forsake, desert.

Desertor, ōris, m., (desero.) One who leaves *or* forsakes, a deserter.

Desertus, a, um., adj. and *part.* Deserted, desert, lonely, uninhabited.

Desidero, āre, āvi, ātum. To desire, long for; miss, need, regret.

Desidia, ae, f. Sloth, idleness, inactivity.

Designo, āre, āvi, ātum. To mark, mark out; signify, denote, designate.

Desilio, ire, ilui, ultum, (de, salio.) To leap *or* jump down, alight.

Desino, ĕre, ivi, itum. To cease, leave off, desist, end.

Desisto, ĕre, stiti, stitum. To stand still, give over, leave off, discontinue.

Despectus, a, um. See *Despicio.*

Despectus, ûs, m., (despicio.) A looking down upon, a view from an elevated place; an elevation, height.

Desperatio, ōnis, f. A despairing, despair.

Despero, āre, āvi, ātum. To despair of, be without hope, despond.

Despicio, ĕre, exi, ectum, (de, specio.)

To look down upon, despise, overlook, disregard, disdain.

Despŏlio, āre, āvi, ātum. To spoil, plunder, strip, deprive of.

Destĭno, āre, āvi, ātum. To fasten, tie, destine, resolve, determine, appoint, send.

Destĭti. See *Desisto*

Destĭtuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, (de, statuo.) To leave destitute, forsake, abandon.

Destrictus, a, um. See *Destringo.*

Destringo, ĕre, inxi, ictum. To strip, tear off, pluck; draw, unsheath.

Desum, deesse, defui. To fail, be wanting *or* lacking.

Desŭper, adv. From above.

Deterior, or, us, adj. Worse, inferior.

Deterreo, ēre, ui, ĭtum. To deter, frighten, hinder, prevent.

Detestor, āri, ātus sum, depon. To imprecate, execrate; curse, detest.

Detĭneo, ēre, ui, entum, (de, teneo.) To detain, stay, stop, hinder.

Detracto, āre, āvi, ātum. To decline, refuse.

Detractus, a, um. See *Detraho.*

Detrăho, ĕre, xi, ctum. To draw or drag down, pull off, take away, remove.

Detrimentōsus, a, um. Attended with harm *or* loss, detrimental. See p. 144, 25.

Detrimentum, i, n., (detero.) Detriment, disadvantage, loss, harm.

Detŭli. See *Defero.*

Deturbo, āre, āvi, ātum. To tumble, beat, cast down, overthrow, demolish, drive away, force.

Deūro, ĕre, ussi, ustum. To set on fire, burn.

Deus, i, m. A god, deity, divinity.

Deustus, a, um. See *Deuro.*

Devĕho, ĕre, xi, ctum. To carry down, convey; transport, remove.

Devĕnio, īre, ēni, entum. To come *or* go down, descend, come, arrive, reach.

Devexus, a, um, (devĕho.) Inclining downwards, sloping.

Devictus, a, um. See *Devinco.*

Devincio, īre, inxi, inctum. To bind, tie; oblige, gain over, bind fast.

Devinco, ĕre, īci, ictum. To conquer, vanquish, subdue.

Devŏco, āre, āvi, ātum. To call down. *In dubium non devocaturum,* will not involve in danger, (VI. 7.)

Devōtus, a, um, part. and *adj.* Devoted, doomed, destined, attached.

Devŏveo, ēre, ōvi, ōtum. To vow; devote to destruction, curse; promise, doom.

Dexter, tĕra, tĕrum, adj. On the right hand, right. *Subst. dextra, ae, f.* scil. *manus,* the right hand.

Dĭco, āre, āvi, ātum. To give, offer, dedicate, consecrate, vow.

Dīco, ĕre, dixi, dictum. To speak, say, tell; recount, relate, chant, celebrate; appoint, name, determine, agree to, promise; mention; harangue.

Dictio, ōnis, f., (dico.) A speaking *or* uttering; a word, saying; phrase, speech, discourse; defence.

Dictum, i, n., (dico.) A word, saying, remark, command. *Dicto audiens,* obedient.

Didici. See *Disco.*

Didūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, (dis, duco.) To draw aside, separate, sever, divide, set open.

Dies, ei, m. and *f.* A day; time, length of time. *Diem dicere,* to

appoint a day. *In dies*, daily. *Diem ex die*, from day to day.

Diffĕro, ferre, distŭli, dilatum, (*dis, fero.*) To carry hither and thither, spread, scatter, disperse, tear in pieces; defer, put off; to be different, differ.

Difficile, adv. Difficultly, with difficulty.

Difficilis, is, e, adj. Hard, difficult, hard to please, morose, surly.

Difficultas, ātis, f. Difficulty, trouble.

Diffīdo, ĕre, fīsus sum, neut. pass., (*dis, fido.*) To distrust, mistrust, despair, fear.

Diffīsus, a, um. See *Diffīdo.*

Diffluo, ĕre, xi, xum, (*dis, fluo.*) To flow apart, flow away *or* any whither, run over.

Diffundo, ĕre, ūdi, ūsum, (*dis, fundo.*) To pour out, spread out, scatter, diffuse, extend.

Digĭtus, i, m. A finger; a toe.

Dignĭtas, ātis, f. Merit, dignity, rank, honor, excellence, worth.

Dignus, a, um, adj. Worthy, deserving; meet, fit, suitable, proper.

Dii, &c. See *Deus.*

Dijudĭco, āre, āvi, ātum. To judge between, distinguish, decide, determine.

Diligenter, adv. Diligently, carefully, punctually, earnestly, accurately.

Diligentia, ae, f. Diligence, carefulness, attention, industry, caution.

Dilĭgo, ĕre, exi, ectum, (*dis, lego.*) To love, esteem; choose, select.

Dimensus, a, um. Having measured; measured, *or* being measured.

Dimetior, tiri, mensus sum, depon., (*dis, metior.*) To measure; dispose, arrange.

Dimicatio, ōnis, f., (*dimĭco.*) A fight, skirmish, struggle; risk, danger.

Dimĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, (*dis, mico.*) To fight, skirmish, encounter, contend, fight.

Dimidium, i, n. The half.

Dimidius, a, um, adj., (*dis, medius.*) Halved, half.

Diminuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum. To diminish, lessen, abate, withdraw, detract.

Dimitto, ĕre, īsi, issum. To send different ways, send away, dispatch, dismiss, discharge, let go, leave off, reject, leave, abandon, lose, let slip, let go, free.

Directo, adv. Directly, straightway.

Directus, a, um, adj. Straight, level, plain; directed, ordered, right; precipitous, headlong, steep.

Dirĭgo, ĕre, exi, ectum, (*dis, rego.*) To make straight, place straight; direct, point, guide, steer, measure, regulate.

Dirĭmo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum, (*dis, emo.*) To part, divide; interrupt, break off.

Dirĭpio, ĕre, ĭpui, eptum, (*dis, rapio.*) To snatch different ways, tear asunder; plunder, spoil, pillage.

Dis, Ditis, m. Pluto, the god of the lower regions. See p. 119, 17.

Dis, dītis, m. and *f.*; *dīte, is, n.* Rich, opulent.

Discēdo, ĕre, essi, essum, (*dis, cedo.*) To part, divide, open, depart, go away, leave, set out.

Disceptator, ōris, m. An arbitrator, judge, mediator.

Discepto, āre, āvi, ātum, (*dis, capto.*) To contend with words, dispute, debate, reason; judge, decide.

Discerno, ĕre, crēvi, crētum. To separate, distinguish, judge, determine.

Discessus, ûs, m., (*discedo.*) A separation, opening, chasm; departure.

Disciplina, ae, f., (*disco.*) Instruction, learning, discipline, skill, art, system.

Discludo, ĕre, si, sum, (*dis, claudo.*) To separate, open, set apart.

Disco, ĕre, didici, —. To learn, study, understand, be informed of, know.

Discrimen, inis, n., (*discerno.*) Separation, difference, distinction, decision; danger, risk, hazard.

Discurro, ĕre, cucurri and *curri, cursum.* To run different ways, run about; run through *or* over.

Discussus, a, um. See *Discutio.*

Discutio, ĕre, ussi, ussum, (*dis, quatio.*) To strike asunder, shatter, destroy; remove, put away.

Disjectus, a, um, part. Dispersed, routed, discomfited.

Disjicio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, (*dis, jacio.*) To throw *or* cast asunder, destroy, scatter, overthrow, rout, put to flight.

Dispar, ăris, adj., (*dis, par.*) Unequal, unlike, different.

Disparo, āre, āvi, ātum. To separate.

Dispergo, ĕre, si, sum, (*dis, spargo.*) To scatter on all sides, scatter, disperse.

Dispōno, ĕre, ŏsui, ŏsitum. To place in order, distribute, arrange, station.

Disputatio, ōnis, f. A disputation, reasoning, debate, investigation.

Dispŭto, āre, āvi, ātum. To debate, argue, discuss, reason.

Dissensio, ōnis, f. Disagreement, difference, variance, strife.

Dissentio, ire, si, sum. To differ in sentiment, dissent, disagree.

Dissĕro, ĕre, sēvi, ĭtum. To sow, plant, put into the ground.

Dissimŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum. To dissemble, cloak, disguise, conceal.

Dissipo, āre, āvi, ātum, (*dis, sipo.*) To throw asunder, scatter, dissipate.

Dissolvo, ĕre, olvi, ŏlūtum. To dissolve, loose, disjoin, untie; destroy.

Dissuadeo, ēre, si, sum. To dissuade, advise to the contrary.

Distendo, ĕre, di, tum. To stretch out, extend.

Distineo, ēre, tĭnui, tentum, (*dis, teneo.*) To keep separate, separate, divide, distract, hinder, prevent, detain, stop.

Disto, āre, (*dis, sto.*) To be distant or apart, to differ.

Distraho, ĕre, xi, ctum. To draw apart, divide, disjoin, separate.

Distribuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum. To divide, distribute.

Distringo, ĕre, nxi, ctum. To bind fast.

Distŭli. See *Differo.*

Disturbo, āre, āvi, ātum. To throw down, overthrow, destroy.

Ditio, ōnis, f. Rule, power, domination, authority.

Ditior and *ditissimus, comp.* and *superl.* of *dis.*

Diu, adv. In the daytime, by day; long, for a long time.

Diurnus, a, um, (*dies.*) In the daytime, by day, of the day, daily.

Diutinus, a, um, adj., (*diu.*) Long, lasting, of long duration, continual.

Diverto, ĕre, ti, sum, (*dis, verto.*) To turn aside, separate.

Diversus, a, um, adj. and *part.,* (*diverto.*) Turned from one to another, turned different ways, separated, facing a different way, different, remote.

Divĭdo, ĕre, isi, isum. To divide, part, separate, cut asunder.

Divīnus, a, um, (divus.) Divine, heavenly; excellent.

Divulgo, āre, āvi, ātum. To make common to all, publish, divulge.

Do, dăre, dĕdi, dătum. To give, bestow, grant; cause, occasion, make; procure, perform, concede. *Dare poenas,* to suffer punishment: *hostes infugam dederunt,* they put the enemy to flight, (II. 23.)

Doceo, ēre, ui, ctum. To show, point out, tell, declare, acquaint, teach.

Documentum, i, n., (doceo.) An example, pattern, proof, instance, specimen, essay, trial.

Doleo, ēre, ui, ĭtum. To grieve, sorrow, be sorry, be in pain, lament, regret.

Dolor, ōris, m., (doleo.) Grief, pain, distress, sorrow, anguish; anger, mortification, offence, indignation.

Dolus, i, m. Deceit, a trick, stratagem.

Domestĭcus, a, um, adj., (domus.) Of a house *or* family, domestic, private.

Domicilium, i, n., (domus.) A dwelling, a house, settlement, lodging.

Dominatio, ōnis, f. Dominion, rule, authority, power; usurpation, tyranny, domination, despotism.

Dominor, āri, ātus sum, depon. To be lord and master, rule, bear rule, domineer.

Dominus, i, m., (domus.) A master, proprietor, owner, lord, ruler.

Domus, ûs and *i, f.* A house, home, habitation, dwelling; family. *Domi,* at home.

Dono, āre, āvi, ātum, (donum.) To give freely, give up; remit, forgive, pardon; yield.

Donum, i, n., (do.) A gift, free gift, present, reward, offering.

Dorsum, i, n. The back of a man *or* beast. *Dorsum jugi,* the ridge *or* summit of the hill, (VII. 44.)

Dos, dōtis, f., (do.) A marriage-portion, a dowry.

Dubitatio, ōnis, f., (dubito.) Doubt, uncertainty, hesitation.

Dubito, āre, āvi, ātum. To doubt, be in doubt, hesitate, scruple.

Dubius, a, um, adj. Doubting, doubtful, uncertain, hesitating. *Subst. dubium, i, n.,* doubt, uncertainty.

Ducenti, ae, a, num. adj. Two hundred.

Duco, ere, duxi, ductum. To lead, conduct, draw, attract, acquire, get, raise, build, make; think, consider, account; protract, defer, put off; induce. *Ducere uxorem,* see p. 17, 15.

Ductus, ûs, m. A leading, command.

Dum, adv. Whilst, until, so long as.

Duo, ae, o, num. adj. Two.

Duodecim, ind. num. adj. Twelve.

Duodecimus, a, um, adj. The twelfth.

Duodēni, ae, a, adj. Twelve by twelve, twelve.

Duodeviginti, ind. num. adj., (duo, de, viginti.) Eighteen.

Duplex, ĭcis, adj., (duo, plico.) Double, twofold, consisting of two parts; false, deceitful, crafty.

Duplĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, (duplex.) To double, increase, enlarge.

Dure, adv., (durus.) Hard, stiffly, harshly, roughly.

Duritia, ae, f., (durus.) Hardness, roughness, insensibility, severity.

Duro, āre, āvi, ātum, (dūrus.) To harden, make hard *or* strong; hold out, bear up; last, continue.

Durus, a, um, adj. Hard, solid, firm; harsh, sour; toilsome, laborious; heavy, disagreeable; rough, rude; unfeeling, cruel.
Dux, dŭcis, m. and *f.* A leader, guide, conductor, general, captain.
Duxi. See *Duco.*

E.

E. or *ex, prep.* with *ablat.* *E* is used before consonants only; *ex* before vowels or consonants. Out of, from; of, among; after; on account of; in accordance with; in, on; instead of, in place of, from being.
Ea. See *Is.*
Ea, adv. That way, through that place.
Edĭco, ĕre, xi, ctum. To declare publicly, speak out, make known, relate; command, order.
Edictum, i, n., (edico.) An edict, proclamation, charge.
Edisco, ĕre, didĭci, —. To learn thoroughly, learn by heart, commit to memory.
Edĭtus, a, um, part. and *adj.* Published; raised, elevated, lofty.
Edo, ĕre, ĭdi, ĭtum, (e, do.) To put forth, utter, emit, give out, show; relate, publish; use *or* exercise.
Edoceo, ēre, ui, ctum. To teach carefully; tell, show, make known.
Edūco, ĕre, xi, ctum. To lead out *or* forth, lead away; draw, bring; raise, rear, maintain, educate.
Effarcio, īre, si, tum, (ex, farcio.) To stuff, cram, fill up.
Effemino, āre, āvi, ātum. To make delicate *or* effeminate, enervate.
Effĕro, ferre, extŭli, ēlātum. To bring forth; bear, produce; publish, proclaim; raise, exalt.
Efficio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, (ex, facio.) To bring to pass, effect, fulfil, complete, make, form, construct, obtain, procure; render, occasion; prove.
Effŏdio, ĕre, ōdi, ossum. To dig out, dig up; hollow or tear out.
Effossus, a, um. See *Effodio.*
Effugio, ĕre, ūgi, ūgitum, (ex, fugio.) To flee, flee away, escape; shun, avoid.
Effundo, ĕre, ūdi, ūsum. To pour out, empty, spill; scatter, consume; hurl, discharge; slacken, loosen; overthrow, expel.
Egens, tis, part. and *adj., (egeo.)* Needing; in want, needy, poor.
Egi. See *Ago.*
Egeo, ēre, ui, —. To want, need, be without, lack.
Egestas, ātis, f. Want, beggary, poverty.
Ego, pron. I.
Egomet. I myself; *nosmet,* we ourselves.
Egredior, i, essus sum, depon., (e, gradior.) To go out, come out, depart from; go beyond, violate; surpass; digress; ascend, climb.
Egregie, adv. Remarkably, excellently, nobly.
Egregius, a, um, adj. Excellent, remarkable, distinguished, rare.
Egressus, ûs, m., (egredior.) A going out, departure, landing.
Ejectus, a, um. See *Ejicio.*
Ejicio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, (e, jacio.) To cast *or* force out, expel, banish.
Ejus. See *Is.*
Ejusmŏdi. Of that sort *or* nature; such, so, in such a case.
Elabor, i, lapsus sum, depon. To slide *or* slip away; fall out, escape; climb, ascend.
Elapsus, a, um. See *Elabor.*
Elātus, a, um. See *Effero.*

Electus, a, um, part. from *eligo.* Chosen, picked out, select, excellent.

Elephantus, i, m. and *f.* An elephant.

Elicio, ĕre, ĭcui, ĭcitum, (*e, lacio.*) To draw out, entice, decoy, elicit, investigate, find out.

Elĭgo, ĕre, ēgi, ectum, (*e, lego.*) To select, choose, elect.

Eloquor, i, cūtus (*quūtus*) *sum, depon.* To speak out, declare, utter, tell.

Emigro, āre, āvi, ātum. To remove from a place, migrate.

Eminens, tis, part. and *adj.* Projecting, marked, eminent, lofty, conspicuous.

Emineo, ĕre, ui, —. To stand *or* project out, run out, be prominent, be conspicuous, excel.

Emĭnus, adv., (*e, manus.*) From a distance, from afar, at a distance.

Emitto, ĕre, ĭsi, issum. To send out, let go, produce; dispatch; sling, hurl, throw, discharge.

Emo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum. To buy, purchase, take, get, gain.

Emolumentum, i, n. Effort, trouble, labor, difficulty. In *Bk.* I. 34, some read for *emolumentum, emolimentum,* from *emolior,* to accomplish.

Enim, conj. For, indeed; but, now.

Enĭtor, i, ĭsus and *ixus sum, depon.* To struggle out, toil, make efforts; mount, reach by climbing.

Enumero, āre, āvi, ātum. To reckon up, enumerate, count over.

Enuncio, āre, āvi, ātum. To divulge, declare, announce, proclaim, reveal.

Eo, īre, īvi, (*ii,*) *ĭtum.* To go, pass, walk, march, proceed.

Eo, adv., (*is.*) Thither, to that place, there, so far, to such a pitch *or* extent; on this account, therefore.

Eodem, adv., (*idem.*) To the same place *or* purpose; just thither, just there.

Ephippiatus, a, um, adj., (*ephippium.*) Using a horsecloth *or* saddle; saddled.

Ephippium. A horsecloth, saddle. See p. 70, 21.

Epistola, ae, f. An epistle, letter.

Epŭlae, ārum, f. Food, victuals; feast.

Eque = *e* or *ex* and *que.*

Eques, ĭtis, m. and *f.,* (*equus.*) A horseman, a knight. *Equites,* knights, the second order or estate at Rome, between the patricians and plebeians.

Equester, tris, tre, (*eques.*) Pertaining to horsemen, of a horse, equestrian.

Equitatus, ûs, m., (*equus.*) Cavalry, horse, bodies of cavalry; the horses belonging to the cavalry.

Equus, i, m. A horse, steed.

Erectus, a, um, (*erigo.*) Elevated, erect.

Erga, prep. with *acc.* Towards.

Ergo, conj. Therefore, then.

Erĭgo, ĕre, exi, ectum, (*e, rego.*) To raise up, set up, erect, build, elevate.

Erĭpio, ĕre, ui, eptum, (*e, rapio*) To tear out, tear away, pull *or* drag out, take away, intercept; free, liberate, rescue, extricate.

Erro, āre, āvi, ātum. To miss one's way, wander up and down, stray, mistake, go wrong.

Erumpo, ĕre, ūpi, uptum, (*e, rumpo.*) To break forth, rush forth, sally forth.

Eruptio, ōnis, f., (*erumpo.*) A burst-

ing forth, breaking out; sally, excursion.

Essedărius, i, m., (*essedum.*) One who fought from a war-chariot, an essedarius, IV. 24; V. 15, 19.

Essĕdum, (*esseda*,) *i, n.* A war-chariot. See p. 79, 19.

Et, conj. And, even, also, and also. *Et .... et*, both .... and.

Etiam, conj. Also, likewise, besides; yet, still, withal; even; nay.

Etsi, conj. Though, although.

Evādo, ĕre, si, sum. To go out, get clear, escape; ascend, climb, mount, shun, evade; happen, occur.

Evello, ĕre, elli and *ulsi, ulsum.* To tear out, eradicate, remove; tear away.

Evenio, īre, ēni, entum. To come out, proceed; happen, fall out; appear.

Eventus, ûs, m., (*evenio.*) An issue, result, end, effect, consequence.

Evinco, ĕre, vici, victum. To overcome, conquer; prevail; evince.

Evocatus, a, um, part. Called out, summoned. See p. 159, 3.

Evŏco, āre, āvi, ātum. To call out *or* forth; summon, invite; induce, elicit.

Evŏlo, āre, āvi, ātum. To fly out *or* forth, to rush forth, sally out; avoid, escape.

Ex. See *E.*

Exactus, a, um. See *Exigo.*

Exaequo, āre, āvi, ātum. To make equal, to equal; to make smooth *or* level.

Exagĭto, āre, āvi, ātum. To drive out, harass, vex, agitate, disturb.

Examĭno, āre, āvi, ātum, (*examen.*) To examine, weigh, consider, try.

Exanimatus, a, um. See p. 50, 24.

Exanimo, āre, āvi, ātum. To put out of breath, exhaust; kill, slay, terrify.

Exardesco, ĕre, arsi, arsum. To grow hot, be inflamed, burn, blaze.

Exaudio, īre, īvi, ītum. To hear, hear perfectly; obey, listen to, regard.

Excēdo, ĕre, essi, essum. To depart, retire, withdraw; advance, go beyond.

Excello, ĕre, ui, —. To be high; excel, surpass, be eminent.

Excepto, āre, āvi, ātum, (*excĭpio.*) To take.

Excīdo, ĕre, cīdi, cisum, (*ex, caedo.*) To cut out, hew down; overthrow, destroy.

Excĭpio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, (*ex, capio.*) To take *or* draw out; receive, take, catch; undertake, incur, meet; surprise; sustain, undergo, support; follow.

Excĭto, āre, āvi, ātum. To rouse, excite, stimulate, cause. See p. 102, 6.

Exclūdo, ĕre, si, sum, (*ex, claudo.*, To shut out, exclude; prevent, hinder; separate, except.

Excōgĭto, āre, āvi, ātum. To consider thoroughly, devise, invent.

Excrucio, āre, āvi, ātum. To torture, torment, harass, fret, vex.

Excūbĭtor, ōris, m. A guard, sentinel.

Excūbo, āre, ui, (*āvi*,) *ĭtum.* To lie out of doors; to watch, be vigilant.

Exculco, āre, āvi, ātum, (*ex, calco.*) To tread *or* beat out; tread firm *or* close.

Excursio, ōnis, f., (*excurro.*) A running out, excursion, sally, attack, inroad.

Excusatio, ōnis, f. An excusing *or* excuse, defence.

Excūso, āre, āvi, ātum, (*ex, causa.*) To excuse, plead in excuse; defend.

Exemplum, i, n., (eximo.) An example, instance; copy, design, model; manner, way; punishment, exemplary punishment.

Exeo, ire, ivi, (ii,) itum. To go out *or* away; shun, avoid, escape; end.

Exerceo, ēre, ui, itum, (ex, arceo.) To exercise, labor, work; agitate, vex, trouble.

Exercitatio, ōnis, f. Exercise, practice.

Exercitātus, a, um, part. and *adj.* Exercised, practised, trained; accustomed.

Exercito, āre, āvi, ātum. To exercise, practise.

Exercitus, ûs, m., (exerceo.) An army.

Exhaurio, ire, si, stum. To draw out, drain, remove, carry away.

Exigo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, (ex, ago.) To drive out; lead out, send forth; exact, require, compel; spend, lead; finish.

Exigue, adv., (exiguus.) Sparingly, scantily, hardly.

Exiguitas, ātis, f., (exiguus.) Paucity, scarcity, poverty.

Exiguus, a, um, adj. Small, little, mean, few, scanty, slight.

Eximius, a, um, adj., (eximo.) Choice, select, excellent, remarkable.

Existimatio, ōnis, f. An opinion, judgment, belief; reputation, character.

Existimo, āre, āvi, ātum, (ex, aestimo.) To judge, think, judge of, esteem; decide, determine.

Exitus, ûs, m., (exeo.) A going out, departure; issue, result, end, close, purport.

Exŏrior, iri, ortus sum, depon. To rise, spring up, arise, appear.

Expedio, ire, ivi, (ii,) itum, (ex, pes.) To free, disentangle, extricate; dispatch, expedite, accomplish, settle; explain, relate; get ready, prepare.

Expeditus, a, um, part. and *adj.* Freed, liberated, unencumbered, light-armed, equipped, disengaged, unoccupied. See p. 38, 5.

Expello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum. To drive out *or* away, banish, eject, expel.

Experior, iri, ertus sum, depon. To try, prove, make trial of, test; engage *or* contend with any one, dispute.

Expio, āre, āvi, ātum. To cleanse, purge, expiate, atone for, avert.

Expleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum. To fill up, fill full; satisfy, complete, repair, supply.

Explorator, ōris, m. A spy, scout.

Exploro, āre, āvi, ātum. To search diligently, pry into, examine; seek out, reconnoitre, spy out; try.

Expōno, ĕre, pŏsŭi, pŏsitum. To put out, set forth, expose; disembark, land; explain, tell, relate, declare.

Exporto, āre, āvi, ātum. To carry out, convey, export.

Exposco, ĕre, poposci, —. To ask earnestly, beg, entreat, pray.

Exprimo, ĕre, essi, essum, (ex, premo.) To press *or* squeeze out; extort, elicit, constrain; express, declare; pronounce; raise, elevate. See p. 28, 28.

Expugnatio, ōnis, f. A taking a place by storm *or* assault, storming.

Expugno, āre, āvi, ātum. To take *or* carry by storm *or* siege; to vanquish, overcome, force.

Exquiro, ĕre, sivi, situm, (ex, quaero.) To search diligently, investigate, explore, expect, seek out.

Exsequor, i, cūtus (quūtus) sum, depon. To follow, pursue, chase; avenge, prosecute, carry out, relate, tell.

Exsĕro, ĕre, ui, tum. To thrust forth, bare, uncover, reveal.

Exsertus, a, um. See *Exsero.*

Exsisto, ere, stiti, —. To come forth *or* out, appear, arise; be, become.

Exspecto, āre, āvi, ātum. To look out, wait for, wish for, expect; delay.

Exstinguo, ĕre, nxi, nctum. To put out, extinguish; cut off, destroy, kill, extirpate.

Exsto, āre, stiti, —. To stand out *or* forth, project; appear; be extant, remain, survive, exist.

Exstruo, ĕre, xi, ctum. To build up, raise, rear; heap *or* pile up, accumulate.

Exsul, ŭlis, m. and *f., (ex, solum.)* An exile, wanderer.

Extendo, ĕre, di, sum and *tum.* To stretch out, extend, increase, enlarge; advance, proceed; lay prostrate.

Exterior, or, us, adj., (comp. of *exter.)* Outer, outward, exterior.

Exterreo, ĕre, ui, ĭtum. To terrify, frighten, intimidate.

Exterus or *exter, a, um, adj.* Of another country, foreign, outward, external.

Extimesco, ĕre, mui, —. To be greatly afraid, fear.

Extollo, ĕre, extŭli, ēlātum. To lift *or* hold up, raise up; increase; defer.

Extorqueo, ēre, si, tum. To twist *or* wrench out, twist; pull off, tear, extort, wrest.

Extra, adv. and *prep.* with *acc.* Without, outside of, out of, not in, except, besides.

Extrăho, ĕre, xi, ctum. To draw out, extract; free, rescue, liberate; protract, defer, prolong, consume, pass away, waste.

Extrēmus, a, um, adj., (superl. of *exterus.)* Extreme, last, latest, remotest, in the rear, hindmost, the end *or* close of. *Agmen extremum,* the rear-guard, the rear.

Extrūdo, ĕre, ūsi, ūsum. To thrust out, drive away, exclude, drive off.

Extŭli. See *Effero* and *Extollo.*

Exuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum. To strip off, put off; strip, deprive, take away; put away, lay aside.

Exūro, ĕre, ussi, ustum. To burn up, burn.

Exustus, a, um, (exuro.) Burnt up, burnt.

Exūtus, a, um, (exuo.) Stripped, deprived of.

F.

Faber, bri, m. One who works in wood, iron, brass, &c., a smith, an artificer.

Facile, adv., (facilius, facillime.) Easily, readily, willingly, certainly.

Facilis, is, e, adj., (facio.) Easy, ready, without labor, prosperous, prompt, mild, gentle, courteous.

Facĭnus, ŏris, n. An action, deed; bad action, wickedness, guilt, crime.

Facio, ĕre, fēci, factum. To make, do, act; form, create, elect; perform; cause, render; give, furnish. *Facere verba,* to speak; *finem,* to make an end of, finish; *copiam,* furnish a supply; *potestatem,* to grant an opportunity; *castra,* to pitch a camp; *fidem,* to make to believe; pledge one's faith, promise.

Factio, ōnis, f., (facio.) A making, doing; a faction, party, side, sect. See p. 27, 11.

Factum, i, n., (*facio.*) A deed, act, conduct, achievement, exploit.

Factus, a, um. See *Facio.*

Facultas, ātis, f., (*facilis.*) Power, ability; opportunity, means, abundance, resources.

Fagus, i, f. A beech-tree.

Fallo, ĕre, fĕfelli, falsum. To deceive; remain concealed, escape notice; cheat, beguile, mislead.

Falsus, a, um, (*fallo.*) False, deceitful, treacherous, untrue, unfounded.

Falx, cis, f. A sickle, reaping-hook, scythe. See p. 62, 24; 140, 6.

Fama, ae, f. Fame, report, rumor; reputation, character, renown.

Fămes, is, f. Hunger, fasting; meagerness.

Familia, ae, f., (*famulus.*) The slaves of a household, a family, clan; vassals, serfs. See p. 15, 15.

Familiaris, is, e, adj., (*familia.*) Relating to a household; familiar, intimate. *Res familiaris*, private estate *or* property. *Subst.* A friend, intimate, acquaintance.

Familiaritas, ātis, f., (*familiaris.*) Familiarity, amity, intimacy, acquaintance.

Fas, indecl. subst. Divine law, what is just *or* right by the rules of religion, justice, equity, right, lawful. See p. 38, 24.

Fastigātus, a, um, part. and *adj.*, (*fastigo.*) Narrowed gradually to a sharp point, sloping, inclining, steep; ascending.

Fastigium, i, n. An eminence, height, top of a building; steepness, declivity, slope, descent.

Fastigo, āre, āvi, ātum. To narrow gradually to a sharp point, sharpen at the top, elevate.

Fātum, i, n., (*for.*) Oracle, prediction; fate, destiny, a decree.

Faux, cis, f. Gullet, throat, jaws; narrow passage.

Faveo, ēre, fāvi, fautum. To favor, advance, promote, assist.

Fax, făcis, f. A torch, taper, firebrand.

Felīcitas, ātis, f., (*felix.*) Fruitfulness, felicity, happiness, success.

Felīcĭter, adv. Happily, fortunately.

Fēlix, īcis, adj. Fertile, rich, happy, fortunate, blessed, propitious.

Fĕmen, ĭnis, n., same as *femur, ŏris, n.* The thigh. *The nominative does not occur.*

Femĭna, ae, f. A woman, female.

Femur, ŏris, n. The thigh.

Fĕra, ae, f. A wild beast.

Ferax, ācis, adj., (*fero.*) Fruitful, fertile, abundant.

Fere, adv. Almost, well nigh, commonly.

Ferme. Same as *fere.*

Fĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum. To carry, bear, bring; produce, yield; bear, support, endure; say, report, tell; get, receive, obtain; lead, conduct. *Signa ferre*, to advance the standards, to march; *quam fert consuetudo*, than custom authorized, than was usual *or* customary, (VI. 7.)

Ferramentum, i, n., (*ferrum.*) An iron instrument, an edged *or* pointed weapon.

Ferraria, ae, f., (scil. *fodina.*) An iron mine.

Ferreus, a, um, adj., (*ferrum.*) Of iron, iron; cruel, hard, heavy.

Ferrum, i, n. Iron, an iron instrument, a sword, javelin.

Fertĭlis, is, e, adj., (*fero.*) Fertile, fruitful, abundant, copious, rich.

Fertilitas, ātis, f., (*fertilis.*) Fertility, fruitfulness, abundance.

Fĕrus, a, um, adj. Wild, uncivil-

ized, rude, fierce, harsh, hard, unfeeling.

Fervĕfăcio, ĕre, fēci, factum. To make hot, heat, make red-hot.

Fervens, tis, part. and *adj.* Boiling, heated, hot, burning.

Ferveo, ēre, vi and *bui*, —. To be hot, boil, burn, glow.

Fibula, ae, f. A clasp, brace, pin, nail, peg. See p. 76, 17.

Fictus, a, um, (fingo.) Formed, fashioned; fictitious, feigned, false.

Fidēlis, is, e, adj., (fides.) Faithful, sincere, trusty, sure.

Fides, ĕi, f. Confidence, faith, fidelity, honesty, promise, assurance, credit, alliance. *Dare fidem*, to pledge one's faith, (I. 3;) *fidem facere*, to make credible; *in fidem recipere*, to receive into favor *or* under protection, (II. 15.)

Fidūcia, ae, f. Trust, confidence, courage, boldness, hope, assurance.

Figūra, ae, f., (fingo.) A figure, form, shape, fashion, image.

Filia, ae, f A daughter.

Filius, i, m. A son.

Fingo, ĕre, finxi, fictum. To form, fashion, frame, make; devise, contrive, feign, dissemble. *Fingere vultum*, (I. 39,) said of persons who assumed looks at variance with the real state of their feelings.

Finio, ire, ivi, itum. To confine in limits; limit, finish, terminate, end; determine, assign.

Finis, is, m. and *f.* Limit, boundary; territory, country; frontier; end *or* conclusion.

Finitimus, a, um, adj., (finis.) Neighboring, adjoining, bordering upon; like.

Fio, fiĕri, factus sum, irreg. pass. of *facio.* To be made *or* done, become, occur, happen, fall out, come to pass. *Certior fieri*, to be informed; *factum est* or *fiebat*, it came to pass.

Firmiter, adv. Firmly, resolutely.

Firmitudo, inis, (firmus.) Firmness, constancy, strength, vigor.

Firmo, āre, āvi, ātum. To make firm *or* fast; strengthen, invigorate, recruit, secure, confirm.

Firmus, a, um, adj. Firm, constant, steady, strong, powerful, efficient.

Fistūca, ae, f. A mallet *or* rammer, pile-driver. See p. 76, 10.

Flagito, āre, āvi, ātum. To ask with importunity, earnestly solicit. See p. 20, 19.

Flamma, ae, f. Flame, blaze; love, passion.

Flecto, ĕre, xi, xum. To bend, turn, direct, guide; persuade, touch.

Fleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum. To weep over, lament, bewail.

Flētus, ûs, m., (fleo.) Weeping, lamentation.

Flo, āre, āvi, ātum. To blow; breathe.

Florens, tis, part. and *adj.* Flourishing, prosperous, successful, bright, beautiful.

Flos, flōris, m. A flower, blossom.

Fluctus, ûs, m., (fluo.) A flowing, a wave, surge, billow; the sea.

Flūmen, inis, n., (fluo.) A river, stream. *Flumine secundo ... adverso*, down *or* along ... against the stream. (VII. 58, 60.)

Fluo, ĕre, xi, xum. To flow.

Fodio, ĕre, fōdi, fossum. To dig, dig out, pierce, stab, goad; torment, irritate.

Foedus, ĕris, n. An alliance, league, treaty, union, compact.

Fons, fontis, m. A fountain, spring; source.

Forem, fore, &c., defect.; the same

in meaning as *essem, futurus esse*, &c. *Also*, to happen, occur.
Foris, adv. Without, out of doors, abroad.
Forma, ae, f. A form, shape, image, picture.
Fors, fortis, f., (fero.) Chance, luck, fortune. *Forte*, by chance, accidentally.
Fortasse, adv. Perhaps.
Fortis, is, e. Brave, gallant, courageous, firm, daring, bold.
Fortĭter, adv. Bravely, gallantly, stoutly.
Fortĭtūdo, ĭnis, f., (fortis.) Fortitude, courage, bravery, resolution.
Fortior, fortius. Compar. of *fortis, fortiter.*
Fortuĭto, adv. By chance, peradventure.
Fortūna, ae, f., (fors.) Fortune, chance, good fortune *or* bad fortune; *in plur.*, property, possessions, effects.
Fortunātus, a, um, adj. Happy, fortunate, blest; rich, opulent.
Forum, i, n., (foris.) A marketplace, public place for buying and selling, administering justice, and transacting business.
Fossa, ae, f. A ditch, trench, moat.
Fovea, ae, f. A deep hole in the ground to catch wild beasts in, a pitfall, pit.
Fractus, a, um. See *Frango.*
Frango, ĕre, frēgi, fractum. To break, break in pieces, subdue; dishearten, discourage, depress.
Frāter, tris, m. A brother.
Fraternus, a, um, adj., (frater.) Brotherly, fraternal.
Fraudo, āre, āvi, ātum. To cheat, defraud, deceive; deprive of.
Fraus, fraudis, f. Fraud, deceit, guile, treachery, dishonesty; fault, offence; punishment, loss.
Fremĭtus, ûs, m. A murmuring, loud noise, clamor; raging, roaring.
Frĕquens, tis, adj. Often, frequent; much frequented, crowded, numerous.
Frētus, a, um, adj. Trusting to, relying on.
Frĭgĭdus, a, um, adj., (frigeo.) Cold, frigid.
Frigus, ŏris, n. Cold, coolness, frost.
Frons, tis, f. The forehead, front.
Fructuōsus, a, um, adj. Bearing fruit, fruitful, fertile, profitable.
Fructus, ûs, m., (fruor.) Use, enjoyment; fruits of the earth, produce, profit, interest.
Frumentarius, a, um, adj. Relating to corn, of corn. *Res frumentaria*, corn, provisions.
Frumentatio, ōnis, f. A providing *or* procuring corn; a foraging.
Frumentor, āri, ātus sum, depon. To collect or provide corn, forage.
Frumentum, i, n., (fruor.) Corn, grain.
Fruor, i, fruĭtus and *fructus sum, depon.* To enjoy, be delighted with, have the use of.
Frustra, adv. In vain, to no purpose.
Fŭga, ae, f. Flight, exile. *Fugam capere, petere*, to flee, take to flight; *ex fuga se recipere*, to take breath, recover one's self. (II. 12.)
Fugio, ĕre, fūgi, fugĭtum. To flee *or* fly; escape, elude; shun, avoid.
Fugitivus, a, um, adj. Fugitive, running away, in flight; a deserter.
Fŭgo, āre, āvi, ātum. To put to flight, rout.
Fūmo, āre, āvi, ātum. To smoke, fume.
Fūmus, i, m. Smoke, fume.
Funda, ae, f. A sling.

Funditor, ōris, m., (*funda.*) A slinger, one that fights with a sling.

Fundo, ĕre, fūdi, fūsum. To pour, pour out, shed; fuse, melt; scatter, rout.

Fungor, gi, functus sum, depon. To do, execute, discharge, perform.

Funis, is, m. A rope *or* cable.

Fūnus, ĕris, n. A funeral, death. *In plur.*, funeral rites. See p. 120, 8.

Furor, oris, m., (*furo.*) Madness, fury.

Furtum, i, n. A theft, robbery; device, stratagem, ambuscade.

Fusilis, is, e, adj., (*fundo.*) That may be poured out *or* melted, fusible; molten.

Futūrus, ā, um, part. from *sum;* about to be, future.

G.

Gaesum, i, n. A Gallic dart *or* javelin, made of iron, and heavy. See p. 57, 39.

Galea, ae, f. A helmet. See p. 50, 9.

Gallīna, ae, f. A hen.

Gaudeo, ĕre, gāvisus sum. To rejoice, be glad; be delighted with.

Gāvisus, a, um. See *Gaudeo.*

Gener, ĕri, m. A son-in-law.

Generātim, adv. By nations *or* tribes, by sorts, generally.

Gens, tis, f. A tribe, nation, clan, *among the Romans.*

Gĕnus, ĕris, n. A race, family, stock; kind, sort, class; nature, manner.

Gĕro, ĕre, gessi, gestum. To bear, conduct, carry on, manage, wage, perform.

Gestus, a, um. See *Gero.*

Gladius, i, m. A sword.

Glans, dis, f. An acorn, chesnut, &c.; a ball, bullet. See p. 103, 10.

Gleba, ae, f. A clod *or* lump of earth; a lump *or* ball, little ball.

Gloria, ae, f. Glory, renown, fame.

Glorior, āri, ātus sum, depon. To glory, boast, vaunt.

Grandis, is, e, adj. Great, large.

Gratia, ae, f. Pleasantness, favor, influence, popularity; service, obligation. *Gratias agere*, to give thanks, thank, (I. 41;) *referre gratiam*, to recompense, remunerate; *gratia*, for the sake of, on account of.

Gratulatio, ōnis, f. Rejoicing, congratulation; joy.

Gratūlor, āri, ātus sum, depon. To congratulate, wish one joy, rejoice, thank.

Grātus, a, um, adj. Pleasing, acceptable, agreeable, grateful, thankful.

Grăvis, is, e, adj. Heavy, weighty; eminent, important; severe, difficult, oppressive, sore, bitter, calamitous. *Gravioris aetatis*, of more advanced years. (III. 16.)

Gravitas, ātis, f., (*gravis.*) Heaviness, weight, importance, severity.

Graviter, adv. Heavily, deeply, strongly; ill, seriously, grievously, unwillingly.

Gravo, āre, āvi, ātum, (*gravis.*) To burden, load, weigh down; oppress, aggrieve, displease.

Gubernator, ōris, m., (*guberno.*) A pilot, steersman; ruler, director.

Gusto, āre, āvi, ātum. To taste; enjoy.

H.

Hăbeo, ĕre, ui, ĭtum. To have, hold, keep, possess, enjoy, consider, esteem, account, think, believe. *Mihi persuasum habeo*, I

am persuaded; *habeo redemptum,* I have purchased *or* farmed; *habere in se,* to contain; *habere iter,* to travel, journey; *quo se reciperent non haberent,* they knew not where to go, whither to betake themselves.

Habĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, (*habeo.*) To have, hold often; inhabit, live in, abide.

Hac, adv., (*abl.* of *hic, haec, hoc,* scil. *parte* or *via.*) Here, by this place, this way.

Haesĭto, āre, āvi, ātum. To stick, adhere; hesitate, be at a loss.

Hāmus, i, m. A hook.

Harpăgo, ōnis, m. A hook, grappling-hook. See p. 166, 28.

Haud, adv. Not.

Haeredĭtas, ātis, f. Inheritance, heirship.

Hiberna, ōrum, n., (*hibernus.*) Winter-quarters. See p. 40, 6; 107, 37.

Hic, haec, hoc, pron. This, that, it, the latter, the same, such. *Hoc,* on this account; *hoc,* before a comparative, the more, the.

Hic, adv. Here, here in this place;

Hiĕmo, āre, āvi, ātum. To winter, pass the winter.

Hiems, mis, f. Rainy, stormy weather; storm, tempest; winter, wintry season.

Hinc, adv. Hence, from this place; thence.

Hoc. See *Hic.*

Hodie, adv., (*hoc, die.*) To-day, to this day.

Hŏmo, ĭnis, m. and *f.* A man *or* woman, a human being, person.

Honestus, a, um, adj. Honorable, eminent, decent, proper, fit.

Honor, ōris, m. Honor, respect, esteem, public office, dignity, magistracy, office.

Honorifĭcus, a, um, adj. Causing honor, honorable.

Hora, ae, f. Time in general; an hour, period, space of time, season. See p. 25, 5.

Horreo, ēre, ui, —. To be rough, shudder at, dread; tremble, shudder with fear.

Horribilis, is, e, adj., (*horreo.*) To be dreaded, dreadful, horrible, terrible.

Horridus, a, um, adj., (*horreo.*) Horrid, dire, hideous; rough, rugged. See p. 91, 38.

Hortor, āri, ātus sum, depon. To exhort, encourage, cheer; move, urge.

Hospes, ĭtis, m., and *f.* A stranger; visiter, guest, host.

Hospĭtium, i, n. A lodging, hospitality, friendship. See p. 27, 23; 37, 12.

Hostis, is, m. and *f.* An enemy, open enemy.

Huc, adv. Hither, to this place; thither, to this *or* this thing.

Hujusmŏdi, pron., (*gen.* of *hic* and *modus.*) Of this kind *or* sort, such.

Humanĭtas, ātis, f., (*humanus.*) Humanity, civilization, kindness, politeness, refinement.

Humānus, a, um, adj., (*homo.*) Human, humane, civilized, polished.

Humĕrus, i, m. The upper part of the arm, the shoulder.

Humĭlis, is, e, adj., (*humus.*) Not high, low, near the earth; humble, poor; base, abject, vile.

Humilĭtas, ātis, f., (*humilis.*) Lowness, weakness, meanness, insignificance.

I.

Ibi, adv. There, in that place; then.

Ictus, ûs, m., (ico.) A blow, stroke, hit.

Idcirco, adv. On that account, therefore.

Idem, eadem, idem, pron., (is, dem.) The same, just that, just then. *Idem ac, atque, qui, quod, &c.,* the same as.

Identĭdem, adv. Now and then, at intervals.

Ideo, adv. Therefore, on that account.

Idōneus, a, um, adj. Fit, suitable, proper.

Idus, uum, f. The ides of a month.

Igĭtur, conj. Therefore, then.

Ignis, is, m. Fire.

Ignobĭlis, is, e, adj. Unknown, obscure, humble, mean, of low birth.

Ignominia, ae, f., (in, nomen.) Disgrace, ignominy, dishonor, infamy.

Ignōro, āre, āvi, ātum, (ignarus.) Not to know, be ignorant of.

Ignosco, ĕre, nōvi, nōtum. To pardon, forgive, remit, excuse, overlook.

Ignōtus, a, um, (ignosco.) Unknown.

Illatus, a, um. See *Infero.*

Ille, a, ud, pron. That, he, she, that man, that woman, that thing.

Illic, adv. There, in that place.

Illĭgo, āre, āvi, ātum, (in, ligo.) To bind, fasten, tie, bind together.

Illo, adv. Hither, to that place; there, to that purpose *or* thing.

Illustris, is, e, adj. Light, clear, bright, luminous; evident, plain; illustrious.

Imbecillitas, ātis, f., (imbecillus or *imbecillis.)* Weakness, feebleness, imbecility

Imber, bris, m. A shower of rain.

Imitor, āri, ātus sum, depon. To imitate, copy after, resemble, counterfeit.

Immānis, is, e. Wild, savage, cruel; huge, vast, enormous.

Immĭneo, ĕre, ui, —, (in, mineo.) To project, hang over; be at hand, near.

Immissus, a, um. See *Immitto.*

Immitto, ĕre, īsi, issum, (in, mitto.) To send *or* let in, put in, introduce; cast, throw, hurl, let loose upon

Immŏlo, āre, āvi, ātum, (in, mola.) To immolate, sacrifice

Immortalis, is, e, adj. Immortal, eternal, everlasting.

Immūnis, is, e, (in, munus.) Exempt, free from charge; without, free from.

Immunitas, ātis, f., (immunis.) Exemption, freedom, immunity.

Impar, ăris, adj., (in, par.) Uneven, unequal, unequally sustained.

Imparātus, a, um, adj., (in, paratus.) Unprepared, not ready.

Impedimentum, i, n. Impediment, burden; *plur.*, baggage, luggage. See p. 48, 14.

Impedio, īre, īvi, (ii,) ītum, (in, pes.) To entangle, hamper, embarrass, perplex, bind, tie; impede, obstruct, hinder.

Impedītus, a, um, part. and *adj.* Impeded, embarrassed, entangled; difficult.

Impello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum. To push, drive, press, urge, impel, induce, move.

Impendeo, ĕre. To overhang, impend, threaten.

Impensus, a, um, (impendo,) part. and *adj.* Expended; large, great.

Imperator, ōris, m., (impero.) Lead-

er *or* general; commander-in-chief.

Imperatum, i, n. A command, order.

Imperfectus, a, um, adj. Imperfect, unfinished.

Imperītus, a, um, adj., (in, peritus.) Unacquainted, ignorant, unskilled, rude, inexperienced.

Imperium, i, n., (impero.) Command, power, sway, empire, government. See p. 15, 4.

Impĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, (in, paro.) To command, order, enjoin; demand.

Impĕtro, āre, āvi, ātum, (in, patro.) To bring about, accomplish; obtain, cause.

Impĕtus, ūs, m., (impeto.) Attack, assault, onset; force, impetuosity, zeal; extent, space, size.

Impius, a, um, adj., (in, pius.) Impious, wicked, irreligious, ungodly.

Implĭco, āre, āvi and *ui, ātum* and *ĭtum, (in, plico.)* To infold, involve, entangle, intwine; unite, join.

Implōro, āre, āvi, ātum. To call upon with tears, beseech, implore, entreat.

Impōno, ĕre, pŏsui, pŏsitum, (in, pono.) To place *or* lay in *or* upon; to set over; impose, impose upon.

Importatitius, a, um, adj., (importo.) Imported.

Importo, āre, āvi, ātum, (in, porto.) To carry *or* bring in, import.

Imprŏbus, a, um, adj., (in, probus.) Not good, bad, wicked, poor, miserable, vile, depraved.

Improviso, adv. Unexpectedly.

Improvisus, a, um, adj. Unforeseen, unexpected, sudden.

Imprūdens, tis, adj. Not foreseeing, unawares, ignorant, unsuspecting, imprudent.

Imprudentia, ae, f., (imprudens.) Ignorance, thoughtlessness, indiscretion.

Impūbes, ĕris, adj., (in, pubes.) Not yet of marriageable age, chaste.

Impugno, āre, āvi, ātum. To fight against, attack, oppose, charge, invade.

Impulsus, a, um. See *Impello.*

Impulsus, ūs, m., (impello.) A movement, impulse; instigation, excitement.

Impūne, adv. Without punishment, safely, with impunity.

Impunĭtas, ātis, f. Impunity, freedom from punishment; full license.

Imus. See *Inferus.*

In, prep. with *acc.* and *ablat.* *With accus.*, in, into, to, unto, towards, against; *with ablat.*, in, upon, in time of, among, with, by, at, over, concerning.

Inānis, is, e, adj. Empty, void; useless, vain, idle.

Incaute, adv. Unwarily, inconsiderately.

Incautus, a, um, adj., (in, cautus.) Unwary, heedless, inconsiderate, off one's guard.

Incēdō, ĕre, essi, essum. To go, go along *or* on; march, advance, approach.

Incendium, i, n. A fire, conflagration, burning.

Incendo, ĕre, di, sum, (in, candeo.) To kindle, set on fire, burn; illumine; inflame, stir up.

Incertus, a, um, adj., (in, certus.) Uncertain, doubtful, not sure, not to be relied on.

Incĭdo, ĕre, ĭdi, —, (in, cado.) To fall into *or* upon, to come upon unexpectedly, meet, happen, occur

Incīdo, ĕre, cīdi, īsum, (*in, caedo.*) To cut, cut into, cut in pieces; engrave.

Incĭpio, ĕre, ēpi, eptum, (*in, capio.*) To take in hand, begin, commence; attempt, undertake.

Incĭto, āre, āvi, ātum. To urge, spur, excite, raise; incite, encourage. *Incitato equo,* putting spurs to his horse, at full speed. (IV. 12.)

Inclūdo, ĕre, si, sum, (*in, claudo.*) To shut up, confine, enclose, surround.

Incognĭtus, a, um, adj., (*in, cognitus.*) Unclaimed, unknown.

Incŏlo, ĕre, cŏlui, cultum. To abide *or* dwell in a place; inhabit.

Incolumis, is, e, adj. Unimpaired, safe, sound, whole, uninjured, without loss.

Incommŏde, adv. Inconveniently, unluckily, disadvantageously.

Incommŏdum, i, n. Disadvantage, loss, defeat, harm.

Incommŏdus, a, um, adj., (*in, commodus.*) Inconvenient, troublesome, unsuitable, hurtful.

Inconsulte, adv., (*inconsultus.*) Inconsiderately, unadvisedly, rashly.

Incredibilis, is, e, adj. Incredible, astonishing, strange, wonderful.

Increpito, āre, āvi, ātum. To chide, upbraid, blame, reproach, taunt.

Incrĕpo, āre, āvi, ātum, and *ui, ĭtum.* To sound, resound, make a noise.

Incumbo, ĕre, cŭbui, cŭbĭtum. To lean *or* recline upon; apply one's self to, attend to.

Incursio, ōnis, f., (*incurro.*) An invasion, attack, inroad, incursion.

Incursus, ûs, m., (*incurro.*) Attack, inroad, assault, charge.

Incūso, āre, āvi, ātum, (*in, causa.*) To accuse, blame, find fault with.

Inde, adv. Thence, from that place; then, next, thenceforth.

Indicium, i, n., (*index.*) A discovery, proof, information; mark, token.

Indīco, ĕre, xi, ctum, (*in, dico.*) To denounce, declare, proclaim, appoint.

Indĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, (*in, dico.*) To discover, declare, reveal, show, tell.

Indictus, a, um, adj. Not said, unsaid.

Indigeo, ēre, ui, —, (*in* or *indu, egeo.*) To want, need, require.

Indigne, adv. Unworthily, basely, shamefully.

Indignitas, ātis, f. Unworthiness; meanness, baseness; an insult, indignity.

Indignor, āri, ātus sum, depon. To scorn, disdain, be enraged *or* indignant at, angry with.

Indignus, a, um, adj. Unworthy, unbecoming, base, indecent.

Indiligens, tis, adj. Negligent, careless, heedless.

Indiligenter, adv. Carelessly, negligently.

Indiligentia, ae, f. Negligence, carelessness.

Induciae, ārum, f., (*induo.*) A truce, an armistice.

Indūco, ĕre, xi, ctum. To bring in, introduce; put on, cover, induce.

Indulgentia, ae, f. Indulgence, courtesy, favor, complaisance.

Indulgeo, ēre, si, tum, (*in, dulcis.*) To be complaisant, indulgent; indulge, grant, honor.

Induo, ĕre, ui, ūtum. To put on, clothe; cover, furnish with. *Se induere,* to fall into *or* upon, to be entangled in.

Industrie, adv. Industriously, diligently, eagerly.

Ineo, īre, ivi, or *ii, ĭtum.* To go

into, enter, enter upon, begin. *Inire rationem*, to form a plan, to make an estimate, (VII. 24;) *gratiam*, to get into *or* stand in favor with, (VI. 43.)

Inermis, is, e, adj., (*in, arma.*) Unarmed, defenceless, without arms.

Inermus, a, um. See *Inermis.*

Iners, tis, adj., (*in, ars.*) Without art *or* skill; indolent, slothful, cowardly.

Infamia, ae, f. Ill fame, disgrace, dishonor, infamy.

Infans, tis, adj., (*in, fans.*) That cannot speak; young, little, infant.

Infectus, a, um, adj., (*in, factus.*) Not having happened, not done; unfinished, unaccomplished.

Infĕro, ferre, intŭli, illātum. To bring *or* carry into, bring on, inflict; introduce, interpose. *Inferre bellum*, to wage war, make war, (I. 2; II. 15;) *signa*, to advance the standards, to attack.

Inferus, a, um, adj., comp. *inferior*, sup. *infĭmus* and *īmus.* Below, beneath, low. *Inferior*, lower, inferior; *imus*, the lowest, last; *ab infimo*, from below, at the bottom.

Infestus, a, um, adj. Insecure; hostile to, inimical, troublesome, dangerous.

Infĭcio, ĕre, fēci, fectum, (*in, facio.*) To stain, dye, color, tinge, paint.

Infidēlis, is, e, adj. Unfaithful, treacherous, perfidious, false.

Infīgo, ĕre, xi, xum. To fix *or* fasten in, thrust in.

Infĭmus. See *Inferus.*

Infinītus, a, um. Infinite, endless, immense, boundless, vast.

Infirmitas, ātis, f. Weakness, infirmity, illness; imbecility, inconstancy.

Infirmus, a, um, adj. Weak, feeble.

Inflecto, ĕre, xi, xum. To bend in, curve, crook, bow.

Influo, ĕre, xi, xum. To flow into, discharge, empty.

Infŏdio, ĕre, fōdi, fossum. To dig in, dig, bury in the earth.

Infra, adv. Below, beneath, underneath.

Ingens, tis, adj. Very great, large, huge.

Ingratus, a, um, adj. Unpleasant, unacceptable, unthankful, ungrateful.

Ingredior, i, gressus sum, (*in, gradior.*) To enter, go into, advance, proceed; begin.

Inimicitia, ae, f. Enmity, hostility.

Inimīcus, a, um, (*in, amicus.*) Unfriendly, hostile, inimical to. See p. 96, 6.

Iniquitas, ātis, f. Inequality, unevenness; injustice, unfavorableness.

Inīquus, a, um, adj., (*in, aequus.*) Unequal, uneven, unjust, cruel, hurtful.

Inītium, i, n., (*ineo.*) A going in, commencement, beginning; the elements.

Injĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, (*in, jacio.*) To throw *or* put in, throw upon, lay over, infuse; occasion, cause.

Injungo, ĕre, xi, ctum. To join into, unite, attach to; lay *or* impose on; inflict.

Injuria, ae, f. Injury, wrong, injustice, damage, hurt, insult.

Injussu, ablat., (*injussus, ûs, m.*) Without command, without leave.

Innascor, i, natus sum, (*in, nascor.*) To grow in, spring up *or* be born; arise in.

Innatus, a, um. See *Innascor.*

Innītor, i, nixus sum, depon. To lean *or* rest upon, recline upon.

Innixus, a, um. See *Innitor.*

Innŏcens, tis, adj. That does no harm, innocent, faultless, guiltless.

Innocentia, ae, f. Harmlessness, honesty, integrity, disinterestedness.

Inopia, ae, f., (*inops.*) Want, poverty, scarcity.

Inopīnans, tis, adj. Not expecting, unawares, unexpected.

Inquam, is, it, defect. To say.

Insciens, tis, adj. Not knowing, without thinking, ignorant, not aware.

Inscientia, ae, f., (*insciens.*) Ignorance, inexperience, want of knowledge.

Inscius, a, um, adj., (*in, scio.*) Ignorant; unskilful, rude.

Insequor, i, cūtus (*quūtus*) *sum, depon.* To follow after, pursue, ensue; harass, persecute, press upon.

Insĕro, ĕre, ui, ertum. To sow *or* put in, insert, ingraft.

Insidiae, ārum, f. Snares, ambush, ambuscade, treachery.

Insidior, āri, ātus sum. To lie in wait, lie in ambush, lay snares for, plot against.

Insigne, is, n. Mark, sign, badge of honor. See p. 23, 23; 50, 8.

Insignis, is, e, adj., (*in, signum.*) Remarkable, distinguished, marked, adorned; noted, famous.

Insĭlio, īre, silui, (*silii,*) *sultum,* (*in, salio.*) To leap into *or* upon.

Insimulo, āre, āvi, ātum. To charge, accuse, blame.

Insinuō, āre, āvi, ātum. To work in, insinuate, introduce.

Insisto, ĕre, stĭti, stĭtum. To tread, step, stand firm; stop, stand upon; begin, pursue; urge, adopt.

Insolenter, adv. Contrary to custom; insolently, haughtily, proudly.

Insolitus, a, um, adj. Unaccustomed to, not inured to; unusual, strange.

Inspecto, are, avi, atum. To behold, observe attentively.

Instabilis, is, e, adj. Unsteady, tottering, not firm, variable, uncertain.

Instar, n. indecl. Image, likeness, resemblance. *Instar muri,* (i. e. *ad instar muri,*) like a wall. (II. 17.)

Instīgo, āre, āvi, ātum. To instigate, incite, stimulate, rouse.

Instĭtuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum, (*in, statuo.*) To set, put *or* place in; appoint, determine, arrange, procure, erect; begin; teach, train, instruct.

Institūtum, i, n., (*instituo.*) A purpose, object; custom, law, practice, way.

Insto, āre, ĭti, ātum. To stand in *or* upon, be at hand, press on, threaten, attack.

Instrumentum, i, n. Furniture, utensils, instrument. See p. 123, 29.

Instruo, ĕre, xi, ctum. To put in order, arrange, prepare, erect, build, equip.

Insuefacio, ere, fēci, factum. To accustom, habituate, inure.

Insuetus, a, um, adj. Unaccustomed to; unusual, unwonted.

Insŭla, ae, f. An island.

Insŭper, adv. Above, upon; besides, moreover, but, however.

Intĕger, gra, grum, adj. Entire, whole, uninjured, vigorous, unimpaired; upright, chaste, virtuous.

Intĕgo, ĕre, xi, ctum. To cover, clothe.

Intellĭgo, ĕre, xi, ctum, (*inter, lego.*) To understand, know, perceive, see.

Intendo, ĕre, di, tum and *sum.* To stretch out, aim, endeavor, fix.

Intentus, a, um, part. and *adj.*, (*intendo.*) Stretched, intent upon, fixed, attentive.

Inter, prep. with *accus.* Between, among, amid; during.

Intercēdo, ĕre, essi, essum. To go *or* come between, intervene, occur; withstand, oppose; hinder, prevent.

Intercĭpio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, (*inter, capio.*) To catch, seize, intercept, take by surprise; cut off.

Interclūdo, ĕre, si, sum, (*inter, claudo.*) To shut *or* block up, prevent, hinder, take away, intercept.

Interdīco, ĕre, xi, ctum. To forbid, interdict, prohibit, exclude, charge.

Interdiu, adv. In the daytime.

Interdum. Sometimes, occasionally, in the mean time, meanwhile.

Intereā, adv. In the mean time, meanwhile.

Intereo, īre, ivi, (*ii,*) *ĭtum.* To perish, go to ruin, be annihilated, be destroyed, die.

Interesse. See *Intersum.*

Interfĭcio, ĕre, fēci, fectum, (*inter, facio.*) To destroy, kill, slay, murder.

Interim, adv. In the mean time, meanwhile.

Interior, ōris, adj. Interior, inner, more within.

Interĭtus, ûs, m. Destruction, death, ruin.

Interjectus, a, um. See *Interjicio.*

Interjĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, (*inter, jacio.*) To put *or* throw between, interpose, intermix.

Intermitto, ĕre, isi, issum. To give over for a time, leave off, discontinue, interpose, intercept, delay, neglect; cease, stop. *Vento intermisso,* the wind having died away, (V. 8.)

Internĕcio, ōnis, f., (*interneco.*) A massacre, carnage, slaughter, destruction.

Interpello, āre, āvi, ātum, (*inter, pelloloquor.*) Interrupt, disturb, prevent.

Interpōno, ĕre, ŏsui, ŏsitum. To put in between, interpose, insert; introduce, propose.

Interpres, ĕtis, m. and *f.* An interpreter, expounder; mediator *or* negotiator.

Interprĕtor, āri, ātus sum, depon. To interpret, expound, explain.

Interrŏgo, āre, āvi, ātum. To ask, question, demand, inquire; charge, accuse.

Interrumpo, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum. To break down *or* asunder; interrupt.

Interscindo, ĕre, idi, issum. To cut asunder, cut down.

Intersum, esse, fui. To be in the midst, come *or* lie between; differ; be present; engage, be employed in. *Interest,* it concerns *or* is of importance. See p. 117, 15.

Intervallum, i, n. The space between the stakes of the rampart of a camp; an interval, distance, space.

Intervenio, īre, ēni, entum. To come between *or* upon, intervene, be present, happen, occur, meet with.

Interventus, ûs, m. Intervention, interposition, interruption, interference.

Intexo, ĕre, xui, xtum. To weave into, interweave, weave.

Intoleranter, adv. Intolerably, excessively, immoderately.

Intra, adv. and *prep.* with *accus.* Within, in.

Intrītus, a, um, adj. Not rubbed *or* worn, perfect, complete.

Intro, āre, āvi, ātum. To go into, enter.

Introdūco, ĕre, xi, ctum. To bring *or* lead in, introduce.

Introeo, īre, īvi, (ii,) ītum. To go into, enter.

Introĭtus, ûs, m., (introeo.) A going *or* coming in, an entrance, passage.

Intromitto, ĕre, isi, issum. To let in, send in, admit, allow to enter, introduce.

Introrsus, adv. Inwards, inwardly, within.

Introrumpo, ĕre, ūpi, uptum. To break *or* burst into, enter by force, rush in.

Intueor, ēri, itus sum, depon. To look at *or* upon, regard, behold, mark.

Intus, adv. Within.

Inusitatus, a, um, adj. Unusual, uncommon, strange, extraordinary.

Inutilis, is, e, adj. Useless, vain, unprofitable, needless, hurtful.

Invādo, ĕre, si, sum. To go *or* come into, to enter, fall upon, attack, invade.

Invĕnio, īre, ēni, entum. To find, meet with; find out, discover; devise, invent; gain.

Inventor, ōris, m. An inventor.

Inveterasco, ĕre, āvi, (invetero.) To grow old, continue too long, prevail.

Invicem, adv. By turns, one after another, alternately.

Invictus, a, um, adj. Unconquered, unsubdued; invincible.

Invideo, ēre, īdi, īsum. To envy, hate, grudge.

Invidia, ae, f. Envy, grudging, jealousy, spite, malice.

Inviolatus, a, um. Inviolate, unhurt, uncorrupted, pure, unbroken.

Invīsus, a, um, adj. Unseen; odious, hated, hateful, offensive, disliked.

Invīto, āre, āvi, ātum. To invite, ask, entice, allure.

Invītus, a, um, adj. Unwilling, reluctant, involuntary.

Ipse, a, um, pron. Himself, herself, itself; he, she, it. *Ego ipse,* I myself, &c.

Ira, ae, f. Anger, displeasure, wrath, passion.

Iracundia, ae, f. Quickness of temper, wrath, rage, passion.

Iracundus, a, um, adj. Choleric, irascible, passionate, angry. See p. 28, 9.

Irrideo, ēre, si, sum, (in, rideo.) To laugh at, ridicule, mock.

Irridicŭle, adv. Unpleasantly, without wit *or* humor.

Irrumpo, ĕre, ūpi, uptum, (in, rumpo.) To break *or* rush in by force, burst into, rush on.

Irruptio, ōnis, f., (irrumpo.) A breaking *or* bursting in, irruption, inroad.

Is, ea, id, pron. He, she, it; that, the same, such. *Eo,* on that account, for this reason.

Ita, adv. So, thus, even so, to such a degree; accordingly.

Ităque, conj. Therefore, and so, and thus.

Item, adv. Also, likewise.

Iter, itinĕris, n. A going along, a way, a journey, march, road. *Iter facere,* to go, advance, march, (I. 7.)

Iterum, adv. Again, a second time.

Itūrus, a, um. See *Eo.*

J.

Jacens, tis, adj. and *part.* Lying, extended, prostrate.

Jaceo, ēre, ui, itum. To lie, lie down, lie prostrate, relieve, lie dead.

Jacio, ĕre, jēci, jactum. To throw, cast, fling, hurl, throw *or* cast up; lay, place, erect, raise; publish.

Jacto, āre, āvi, ātum, (jacio.) To throw, cast, hurl; toss, toss about; utter, speak, relate; talk about, discuss.

Jactūra, ae, f., (jacio.) The throwing of goods overboard in a storm; loss, damage; expense, presents, gifts. See p. 116, 23.

Jacŭlum, i, n., (jacio.) A javelin, dart.

Jam, adv. Now, at this time, directly, already, accordingly.

Jubeo, ēre, jussi, jussum. To order, command, decree, enjoin.

Judicium, i, n., (judex.) Judgment; a trial, sentence, decision; opinion, belief; court of justice; choice, power of judging, discernment.

Judĭco, āre, āvi, ātum, (jus, dico.) To examine judicially, give sentence, decide, determine; pronounce, declare.

Jugum, i, n. A yoke, harness, a ridge of hills, a height. *Sub jugum,* under the yoke, (I. 7, 12.) See p. 16, 26.

Jumentum, i, n. A beast of burden, packhorse; ox, horse.

Junctūra, ae, f., (jungo.) A joining, uniting, coupling; joint.

Jungo, ĕre, xi, ctum. To join, unite, connect, couple, yoke.

Junior. See *Juvenis.*

Juro, āre, āvi, ātum. To swear, take an oath, swear by.

Jus, jūris, n. Right, law, justice; power, authority, privileges. See p. 42, 24.

Jusjurandum, i, n. An oath.

Jussu, ablat., (jussus, ûs, m.) By the order *or* command

Justitia, ae, f. Justice, equity; uprightness; mercy, clemency.

Justus, a, um. adj., (jus.) Just, upright, right, proper, sufficient. *Justa funera,* (VI. 19.) See p. 120, 1.

Juvĕnis, adj., comp. *junior.* Young, youthful. *Juniores,* the young men who were of sufficient age to do military duty, (VII. 1.)

Juventus, ūtis, f., (juvenis.) Youth, the age of youth, (from about twenty to forty years;) youth, young people.

Juvo, āre, jūvi, jūtum. To help, assist, aid, succor; please, delight.

Juxta, prep. with *accus.* By, close to, next to: *adv.*, hard by, nigh, by.

K.

Kalendae, ārum, f. See *Calendae.*

L.

L. 1) Lucius; 2) = fifty.

Lābor, i, lapsus sum, depon. To glide down, slip down, fall down, fall; err, mistake; perish.

Lăbor, ōris, m. Toil, fatigue, labor, distress, trouble, misfortune.

Labōro, āre, āvi, ātum, (labor.) To labor, endeavor, strive; be in want *or* distress.

Labrum, i, n. A lip. *Labra,* the lips; the edge, rim, brink, margin.

Lac, tis, n. Milk.

Lacesso, ĕre, īvi, ītum, (lacio.) To provoke, irritate, excite; attack, assail, harass.

Lachryma, lacryma, lacrima, ae, f. A tear.

Lachrymo, lacrimo, āre, āvi, ātum To weep, lament.

Lăcus, ûs, m. A lake.
Laedo, ĕre, si, sum. To strike *or* dash against; injure, hurt, trouble, annoy.
Laetatio, ōnis, f. Rejoicing, joy. See p. 107, 25.
Laetitia, ae, f., (laetus.) Joy, gladness, mirth, exultation.
Laetus, a, um, adj. Glad, joyful, pleased; acceptable, grateful; fertile.
Languide, adv. Faintly, feebly, carelessly, languidly.
Languidus, a, um, adj. Weak, faint, feeble, languid.
Languor, ōris, m., (langueo.) Faintness, languor, sickness, inactivity.
Lapis, idis, m. A stone.
Laqueus, i, m. A noose, halter, snare.
Largior, iri, itus sum, depon., (largus.) To give abundantly, lavish; grant, bestow; give, impart; concede.
Largĭter, adv. Largely, plentifully, liberally, profusely.
Largitio, ōnis, f. Bestowing liberally, liberality; bribery.
Lassitūdo, inis, f., (lassus.) Weariness, fatigue, faintness, lassitude.
Late, adv. Widely, extensively.
Latebra, ae, f. A hiding-place, covert, den, recess, retreat.
Lateo, ēre, ui, itum. To lurk, lie hid, be concealed, skulk.
Latitūdo, inis, f., (latus.) Breadth, width, extent, size.
Latro, ōnis, m. One who serves for hire; a robber, highwayman, bandit.
Latrocinium, i, n. Robbery.
Lātus, a, um, adj. Broad, wide, spacious, extensive, ample.
Lătus, ĕris, n. The side, flank, ribs; side of a camp, hill, &c.
Laudo, āre, āvi, ātum, (laus.) To praise, commend.
Laus, dis, f. Praise, commendation, glory, honor, good report.
Lăvo, āre, āvi, ātum, and *ĕre, lāvi, lautum* and *lōtum.* To wash, bathe, bedew, moisten.
Laxo, āre, āvi, ātum, (laxus.) To enlarge, loosen, widen, let out; relieve, lighten.
Legatio, ōnis, f. An embassy, deputation, legation, lieutenancy; the office of an ambassador.
Lēgātus, i, m., (lego.) An ambassador, envoy, legate, lieutenant, deputy. See p. 17, 29.
Lĕgio, ōnis, f., (lego.) A legion, body of foot-soldiers. See p. 16, 18.
Legionarius, a, um, adj., (legio.) Of a legion, legionary.
Lĕgo, ĕre, lēgi, lectum. To gather, collect, read, peruse, choose.
Lēnis, is, e, adj. Soft, smooth, gentle, mild.
Lenitas, ātis, f., (lenis.) Smoothness, mildness, gentleness.
Leniter, adv. Mildly, gently, timidly, softly, gradually.
Lente, adv., (lentus.) Slowly, calmly, coolly, indifferently.
Lĕpus, ŏris, m. A hare.
Lĕvis, is, e, adj. Light, of little weight; trifling, small, slight.
Levitas, ātis, f. Lightness, agility, swiftness, levity, inconstancy, fickleness, caprice.
Lĕvo, āre, āvi, ātum. To lighten, alleviate; raise, elevate, encourage, liberate; lessen, impair.
Lex, lēgis, f. A law, ordinance, statute, resolve, decree. See p. 42, 24.
Libenter, adv. Gladly, willingly, cheerfully.
Līber, ĕra, ĕrum, adj. Free, unrestrained; frank, open.
Liberalitas, ātis, f. Generosity,

affability, bounty, liberality, bribery.

Liberaliter, adv. Liberally, obligingly, kindly, graciously, profusely.

Libere, adv. Ingenuously, fully, frankly.

Lĭberi, ōrum, m., (liber.) Children, (freeborn, not slaves,) free children.

Libero, āre, āvi, ātum. To set at liberty, free, set free.

Libertas, ātis, f. Freedom, liberty; permission, license.

Librīlis, is, e, (libra.) Of a pound; with *saxa* understood, stones of a pound weight. See p. 166, 37.

Licens, tis, (liceor.) Bidding *or* offering a price for. See p. 21, 21.

Licentia, ae, f., (licens.) Freedom, liberty, license; power; licentiousness.

Liceor, ēri, licitus sum. To bid money *or* offer a price for. See p. 21, 21.

Licet, impers. It is lawful, right, permitted; one may *or* can.

Licet, conj. Though, although.

Lignatio, ōnis, f. A cutting down *or* fetching of wood.

Lignator, ōris, m. One sent to get *or* fetch wood, *especially a soldier.*

Lilium, i, n. A lily; a kind of fortification. See p. 162, 31.

Linea, ae, f. A thread, line, cord, string.

Lineus, a, um, adj. Of flax *or* lint; linen.

Lingua, ae, f. The tongue; language, speech.

Lingŭla, ae, f., (lingua.) A little tongue; a tongue of land.

Linter, tris, f. A bark, boat, small boat.

Linum, i, n. Flax, lint; linen; thread *or* string.

Lis, lītis, f. Strife, contention, dispute, quarrel; lawsuit.

Lĭtĕra, or *Littera, ae, f.* A letter *of the alphabet. Plur.,* letters, writings, documents; literature, letters. See p. 26, 14; 105, 27.

Litus, (littus,) ŏris, n., (lino.) The sea-shore, strand, shore, coast.

Lŏcus, i, m., (plur. *loci, m.* and *loca, n.*) A place, region, station; place, room, cause, pretext; condition, state, family, rank, degree; point *or* particular. *Loca aliena, loca sua.* See p. 20, 8.

Longe, adv. Long, to a great length; far, far off; very much. *Comp., longius, sup., longissime.*

Longinquus, a, um, adj., (longus.) Far off, remote, distant; foreign, strange.

Longitūdo, inis, f., (longus.) Length, longitude.

Longurius, i, m. A rod, long pole.

Longus, a, um, adj. Long, distant, of long duration.

Loquor, i, locūtus (loquutus) sum, depon. To speak, tell, say, declare, talk.

Lorīca, ae, f., (lorum.) A coat of mail, cuirass, corslet. See p. 162, 5.

Lūna, ae, f. The moon. *Luna nova,* see p. 38, 24.

Lutum, i, n. Clay, mire, dirt.

Lūx, lūcis, f. Light, daylight, day.

Luxuria, ae, f., (luxus.) Luxury, excess, extravagance, dissipation.

M.

M. for *Marcus.*

Maceria, ae, f. A wall. See p. 160, 29.

Machinatio, ōnis, f. Mechanical device, contrivance, skill; machine, engine.

Magis, adv. More, rather.

Magistratus, *ûs*, *m*. Magistracy, civil office; a magistrate.

Magnificus, *a*, *um*, *adj*. Splendid, magnificent, stately, great; rich.

Magnitudo, *ĭnis*, *f*., (*magnus*.) Greatness, bulk, magnitude; extent, importance; multitude.

Magnopere, (*magno*, *opere*,) *adv*. Very much, much, greatly, strongly.

Magnus, *a*, *um*, *adj*. Great, large; much, considerable; mighty, powerful. *Comp. major; sup. maximus.*

Majestas, *ātis*, *f*., (*majus*.) Greatness, majesty, dignity; supreme power.

Major. See ***Magnus***.

Malacia, *ae*, *f*. A calm at sea. See p. 63, 2.

Male, *adv*. Badly, ill, wrongly, wickedly. *Comp. pejus; sup. pessime.*

Maleficium, *i*, *n*., (*maleficus*.) A bad action, misdeed, wickedness, hurt, harm.

Mālo, *malle*, *malui*, (*magis*, *volo*,) *irreg*. To choose rather, prefer, be more willing.

Malum, *i*, *m*. An evil; misfortune, calamity.

Mālus, *i*, *m*., (*malum*.) An apple-tree; a mast of a ship; a long pole.

Mandatum, *i*, *n*., (*mando*.) A commission, command, order, charge, mandate.

Mando, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*. To commit to one's charge, commission, bid, order, command, intrust, commend, consign.

Māne, *n*., *indecl*. The morning, morn.

Maneo, *ēre*, *si*, *sum*. To remain, stay, abide, sojourn, lodge; wait, stop, cease; last, endure, continue.

Manipularis, *is*, *e*, *adj*., (*manipulus*.) Of a maniple *or* company; *milites*, soldiers belonging to the same maniple, (VII. 47.)

Manipulus, *i*, *m*. A handful, bundle, *as of grass, hay, &c.;* a band of soldiers, company, maniple. *The standard of a maniple was anciently a bundle of hay on the top of a pole.*

Mansuefīo, *ĕri*, *factus sum*. To grow tame, tractable, gentle.

Mansuetūdo, *ĭnis*, *f*., (*mansuetus*.) Gentleness, softness, mildness, clemency.

Mănus, *ûs*, *f*. A hand; art, application of art, labor, industry; a body, multitude, troop, band of men. *In manibus esse*, to be near by *or* close at hand, (II. 19.)

Mare, *is*, *n*. The sea.

Maritimus, *a*, *um*, *adj*. Of the sea, on *or* adjoining the sea, maritime.

Mas, *maris*, *m*. A male.

Matara, *ae*, *f*. A javelin. See p. 25, 9.

Mater, *tris*, *f*. A mother. ***Matres familiae***, see p. 38, 21.

Materia, *ae; materies*, *ei*, *f*. Matter, stuff, material; wood, timber, beams.

Materior, *āri*, *depon*., (*materia*.) To fell *or* provide wood *or* timber.

Matrimonium, *i*, *n*., (*mater*.) Marriage, wedlock, matrimony.

Mature, *adv*. In time, seasonably, early, quickly, soon, speedily.

Maturesco, *ĕre*, *rui*, (*maturus*.) To ripen, grow ripe, come to maturity.

Matūro, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*. To ripen, grow ripe, make ripe, mature; to hasten, accelerate, dispatch.

Maturus, *a*, *um*, *adj*. Ripe, mature; seasonable; early.

Maxime, *adv*., (sup. of ***magis***.) Very

greatly, most of all; chiefly, especially.

***Maximus**, a, um, adj., sup.* of *magnus.*

***Medeor**, ēri, depon.* To cure, heal, remedy, relieve.

***Mediocris**, is, e, adj., (medius.)* Middling, moderate, tolerable; calm.

***Mediocrĭter**, adv.* Ordinarily, moderately, tolerably.

***Mediterraneus**, a, um, adj., (medius, terra.)* Inland, remote from the sea.

***Medius**, a, um.* Mid, midst, middle, in the middle of; moderate.

***Melior**, comp.* of *bonus.*

***Membrum**, i, n.* A member, limb.

***Memĭni**, isse, defect.* To remember, recollect, call to mind, bear in mind.

***Memor**, ŏris, adj.* Mindful, remembering.

***Memoria**, ae, f., (memor.)* Memory, remembrance; account, relation, report, story.

***Mendacium**, i, n., (mendax.)* A lie, falsehood.

***Mens**, tis, f.* Mind, disposition; heart, soul; thought. See p. 64, 35.

***Mensis**, is, m.* A month.

***Mensūra**, ae, f., (metior.)* A measuring; a measure. ***Mensura ex aqua**,* a water measure, a clepsydra, (V. 13.)

***Mentio**, onis, f., (memini.)* A mention, speaking of.

***Mercator**, ōris, m., (mercor.)* A merchant, trader.

***Mercatūra**, ae, f., (mercor.)* The trade of a merchant, traffic, commerce.

***Merces**, ēdis, f., (mereo.)* Hire, wages, pay, reward, income.

***Mereo**, ēre, ui, ĭtum,* and *mereor, ēri, merĭtus sum, depon.* To deserve, merit, earn, gain, acquire.

***Merīdiānus**, a, um, adj.* Of midday, pertaining to noon, meridian.

***Merīdies**, ei, m.* Midday, noon; the south.

***Merito**, adv.* Deservedly, with reason.

***Merĭtum**, i, n., (mereo.)* Merit, reward, benefit, kindness, favor; blame.

***Merĭtus**.* See *Mere*

***Metior**, īri, mensus sum, depon.* To mete, measure, take measure of, survey; measure out; value, estimate.

***Meto**, ĕre, messui, messum.* To mow, reap, gather; cut, cut down, slay.

***Metus**, ûs, m.* Fear, dread, apprehension, care, concern.

***Meus**, a, um, pron., (mei, gen.* of *ego.)* Belonging to me, mine, my, my own.

***Miles**, ĭtis, m.* and *f.* A soldier, a warrior; the soldiery, band of soldiers. ***Milites tumultuarii**.* See p. 130, 3.

***Militaris**, is, e, adj., (miles.)* Of or belonging to a soldier, military, warlike.

***Militia**, ae, f.* Military service, warfare; a campaign, war.

***Mille**, num. indecl. adj.* A thousand. Plur., *millia.*

***Minime**, adv., (sup.* of *parum.)* Least of all, very little; not at all, by no means.

***Minimum**, adv.* Least, the least.

***Minimus**, a, um, adj., (sup.* of *parvus.)* The least, smallest, very little.

***Minor**, āri, ātus sum, depon.* To menace, threaten.

***Minor**, ōris, adj., (comp.* of *parvus.)* Smaller, less, inferior.

***Minuo**, ĕre, ui, ūtum, (minor.)* To lessen, make less, diminish, abate.

***Minus**, adj.* See *Minor.*

***Minus**, adv., (comp. of parum.)* Less, not. *Quo minus*, the less.

***Miror**, āri, ātus sum, depon.* To wonder, marvel, think strange, admire.

***Mirus**, a, um, adj.* Wonderful, strange, marvellous, extraordinary.

***Miser**, era, erum, adj.* Wretched, miserable, distressed, unfortunate; bad.

***Misericordia**, ae, f.* Mercy, compassion, pity.

***Miseror**, āri, atus sum, depon.* To deplore, lament, mourn over, commiserate, compassionate, pity.

***Missus**, ûs, m., (mitto.)* A sending, dispatching, deputing.

***Mite**, adv.* Gently, mildly.

***Mitis**, is, e, adj.* Tender, soft, ripe, mellow, mature.

***Mitto**, ĕre, misi, missum.* To send, dispatch, throw; produce, yield; inform, send word; dismiss, let go; omit, waive, pass over; release, throw away, throw, hurl, cast.

***Mobilis**, is, e, adj.* Easy to be moved, moveable, light; inconstant, fickle.

***Mobilitas**, ātis, f.* Mobility, moveableness, fickleness, inconstancy.

***Mobiliter**, adv.* Moveably, quickly, rapidly, easily.

***Moderor**, āri, ātus sum, depon., (modus.)* To moderate, restrain, rule, guide, check.

***Modestia**, ae, f.* Moderation, modesty, decency. See p. 153, 13.

***Modo**, adv.* Only, but, just now, lately; at present; merely, simply; alone.

***Mŏdus**, i, m.* Measure, manner, way, method, fashion; rule, mode; quantity; time; bounds, limits; order.

***Moenia**, ium, n. plur., (munio.)* The wall of a town. See p. 44, 5.

***Moestus**, a, um, adj.* Sad, sorrowful, mourning, afflicted.

***Moles**, is, f.* A mass, mole, pile; burden, difficulty, distress.

***Moleste**, adv.* Grievously, ill, with trouble, offensively.

***Molimentum**, i, n., (molior.)* A great undertaking, attempt, endeavor; exertion, struggle.

***Molĭtus**, part.* from *molo.* Ground.

***Mollio**, īre, īvi, (ii,) ītum.* To make pliant *or* flexible; ease, alleviate.

***Mollis**, is, e, adj.* Soft, mild, gentle; pliant, flexible, supple; effeminate, easy.

***Mollities**, ei, f.* Effeminacy, softness; flexibleness, suppleness.

***Mŏlo**, ĕre, ui, ĭtum.* To grind.

***Momentum**, i, n., (for movimentum, moveo.)* A motion *or* impulse, movement; weight, turn, decision, influence; a moment.

***Moneo**, ēre, ui, ĭtum.* To remind, put in mind, admonish, advise; tell.

***Mons**, tis, m.* A mountain; high hill.

***Mora**, ae, f.* A delay, stay, stop, hindrance, obstacle.

***Morbus**, i, m.* A disease, distemper, malady, sickness.

***Morior**, mori, mortuus sum, depon.* To die, expire.

***Moror**, āri, ātus sum, depon.* To delay, tarry, stay, linger; retard, detain.

***Mors**, mortis, f.* Death.

***Mos**, mōris, m.* Manner, custom, way, practice, usage.

***Motus**, ûs, m., (moveo.)* A moving, motion, movement; commotion, sedition, mutiny; anger.

Mŏveo, ēre, mōvi, mōtum. To move, stir, put in motion, shake; remove.

Mulier, ĕris, f. A woman.

Mulio, ōnis, m. A muleteer.

Multitudo, inis, f., (multus.) A great number, multitude, crowd; the rabble, populace.

Multo, (mulcto,) āre, āvi, atum. To deprive of, punish, fine.

Multum, adv. Much, very much, greatly, often, far, long.

Multus, a, um, adj. Comp. *plus, (pluris.)* Sup. *plurimus.* Many, much, numerous, frequent. *Multo,* (with comparatives, &c.,) by much, much, far, by far, a great deal.

Mulus, i, m. A mule.

Mundus, i, m. The universe; the heavens, world; ornament.

Munimentum, i, n. A fortification, defence, rampart, bulwark.

Munio, īre, īvi, (ii,) ītum. To fortify, defend, secure, protect.

Munitio, ōnis, f., (munio.) A fortifying, defending; rampart, bulwark.

Munus, ĕris, n. A gift, present; office, function, charge.

Muralis, is, e, adj. Of a wall, mural.

Murus, i, m. A wall of a city, &c.

Musculus, i, m. A little mouse; a warlike machine. See p. 168, 1.

Mutilus, a, um, adj. Maimed, mutilated.

N.

Nactus, a, um. See *Nanciscor.*

Nam, conj. For; but.

Namque, conj. For, for certainly; but.

Nanciscor, i, nactus sum, depon. To meet with, find; reach, get, gain, obtain.

Nascor, i, natus sum, depon. To be born, come into the world, arise, be produced.

Natalis, is, e, adj., (natus.) Natal, native.

Natio, ōnis, f., (nascor.) A being born; race, nation, people, country.

Natīvus, a, um, adj., (natus.) That is born; native, natural.

Natu, m, ablat. of *natus, ûs, m.*; by birth, in age.

Natūra, ae, f., (nascor.) Nature, natural situation *or* property; disposition, natural feeling, instinct; genius.

Natus, a, um, (nascor.) Born; arisen; produced; born to *or* fitted for.

Nauta, ae, m. A sailor, mariner. See p. 59, 36.

Nauticus, a, um, adj. Of *or* belonging to ships, naval, nautical.

Navālis, is, e, adj. Of *or* belonging to ships, naval.

Navicula, ae, f., (navis.) A little ship *or* boat.

Navigatio, ōnis, f., (navigo.) A sailing, navigation, voyage.

Navigium, i, n. A ship, vessel, boat.

Navĭgo, āre, āvi, ātum, (navis, ago.) To steer *or* navigate a ship, sail over, navigate.

Navis, is, f. A ship, bark, vessel, galley, boat. *Navis longa,* a ship of war, (III. 9; IV. 21;) *navis oneraria,* a ship of burden, (IV. 22, 25;) *navis actuaria,* see *Actuarius.* See p. 59, 34.

Nāvo, āre, āvi, ātum. To perform vigorously *or* diligently.

Nĕ, adv. and *conj.* Not, lest; that ... not, in order not. *Ne quidem,* not even.

Nĕ, interrog. enclit. particle. Whe-

ther. *It is often omitted in translating.*

Nec or *neque*, *conj.* and *adv.* Neither, nor, and not, but not. Cf. p. 139, 5.

Necessario, *adv.* Necessarily, of necessity.

Necessarius, *a*, *um*, *adj.* Necessary, inevitable, urgent, needful; friendly. *Subst.*, relation, friend, client.

Necesse, *ind. adj. n.* Necessary, of necessity.

Necessitas, *ātis*, *f.*, (*necesse.*) Necessity, force, compulsion, constraint; fate.

Necessitudo, *ĭnis*, *f.* Necessity; need, want; natural connection, intimacy.

Necne, or *nec ne.* Or not, or no.

Nĕco, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum.* To kill, destroy, slay.

Necŭbi, *adv.* Lest anywhere, that nowhere.

Nefarius, *a*, *um*, *adj.* Wicked, impious, base, abominable.

Nefas, *n.*, *ind.*, (*ne*, *fas.*) Not lawful, unlawful, criminal; a crime, impiety, villainy.

Neglĭgo, *ĕre*, *xi*, *ctum*, (*nec*, *lego.*) To neglect, slight, not regard.

Nĕgo, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum.* To deny, refuse, affirm that a thing is not so.

Negotior, *āri*, *ātus sum*, *depon.* To trade, traffic, negotiate. See p. 131, 29.

Negotium, *i*, *n.* A business, employment, occupation; matter, thing, fact; difficulty.

Nemo, *ĭnis*, *m.* and *f.*, (*ne*, *homo.*) No one, nobody, no man.

Nequaquam, *adv.* In no wise, by no means.

Neque. See *Nec.*

Nequidquam, *adv.* In vain, to no purpose.

Nequis, or *ne quis*, *a*, *od* or *id*, *pron.* Lest any one, that no one.

Neuquis. See *Nequis.*

Nervus, *i*, *m.* A nerve, muscle; force, vigor, strength.

Neu or *neve*, *conj.* Nor, neither, and not.

Neuter, *tra*, *trum*, *adj.*, (*ne*, *uter.*) Neither of the two, neither.

Nex, *nĕcis*, *f.* Death, violent death, murder.

Nihil, *n.*, *ind.* Nothing, nought; not at all, in no respect, no.

Nihĭlum, *i*, *n.* Nothing, nought. *Nihilo*, (*ablat.*) Not at all, in nothing, no.

Nil for *nihil.*

Nĭmis, *adv.* Too much, overmuch, too, extremely, exceedingly.

Nimius, *a*, *um*, *adj.* Too much, too great, immoderate, excessive.

Nisi, *conj.*, (*ne*, *si.*) If not, except, unless; but, and yet, however.

Nītor, *i*, *nīsus* and *nixus sum*, *depon.* To strive, endeavor, attempt, exert one's self; depend upon, trust to.

Nix, *nĭvis*, *f.* Snow.

Nobilis, *is*, *e*, *adj.*, (*nosco.*) Known, noted, famous, illustrious, noble.

Nobilitas, *ātis*, *f.* Fame, reputation, renown; worth, nobleness.

Nocens, *tis*, *adj.* Hurtful, pernicious, bad, wicked.

Noceo, *ēre*, *ui*, *ĭtum.* To hurt, harm, injure.

Noctu, (*nox*,) *f.*, *ablat.* By night, in the night time.

Nocturnus, *a*, *um*, *adj.* Of night, nocturnal.

Nodus, *i*, *m.* A knot, tie, bond; joint.

Nōlo, *nolle*, *nōlui*, *irreg.*, (*non*, *volo.*) To be unwilling; not to wish well to, dislike.

Nomen, *ĭnis*, *n.*, (*nosco.*) A name,

appellation; family, nation; pretence, excuse, account, reason.

Nominatim, adv. By name, expressly.

Nomino, āre, āvi, ātum. To name, call by name; nominate, appoint.

Non, adv. Not, no. *Non modo*, not only, *followed by sed.*

Nonae, ārum, f., (nonus.) The nones, i. e. the ninth day before the ides.

Nonaginta, ind. num. adj. Ninety.

Nondum, adv. Not yet, not as yet.

Nonnihil, or *non nihil.* Something, somewhat.

Nonnullus, a, um, adj. Some.

Nonnunquam, adv. Sometimes, now and then.

Nonus, a, um, adj., (novem.) The ninth.

Nosco, ĕre, nōvi, nōtum. To know, become acquainted with, understand, learn, comprehend.

Noster, tra, trum, adj., pron., (nos.) Our, ours, our own. *Nostri*, our men, our friends, our troops, &c.

Notitia, ae, f. Knowledge, notion, conception, idea.

Notus, a, um, part. and *adj.* Known, well known, manifest, notorious.

Novem, num. adj. ind. Nine.

Novitas, ātis, f. Newness, novelty, strangeness.

Novus, a, um, adj. New, fresh, recent, novel, uncommon, unusual.

Nox, noctis, f. Night, night time, the night.

Noxa, ae, f. Hurt, harm, damage; offence, fault.

Nubo, ĕre, nupsi, nuptum. To cover, veil; marry, be married. See p. 17, 15.

Nudo, āre, āvi, ātum. To make naked, strip bare, uncover, strip, spoil, deprive; leave destitute.

Nudus, a, um, adj. Naked, bare, uncovered; unprotected.

Nullus, a, um, adj. Not any one, no, none, nobody.

Num, adv. interrog. Whether.

Numen, inis, n., (nuo.) A nod; the will, will of the gods, majesty, authority; deity, divinity, god.

Numerus, i. m. A number, quantity, measure; crowd, multitude.

Nummus, i, m. A piece of money, coin, money.

Nunc, adv. Now, at present.

Nuncio, āre, āvi, ātum. To announce, bring news, tell, report, inform, warn.

Nuncius, i, n. News, tidings, advice, a message, an order; a messenger.

Nuncupo, āre, āvi, ātum. To name, call, express.

Nunquam, adv. At no time, never.

Nuntio, nuntius. See *Nuncio* and *Nuncius.*

Nuper, adv. Lately, not long ago, of late.

Nutus, ûs, m., (nuo.) A nod, beck; will, command, pleasure; weight, gravity.

O.

Ob, prep. with *accus.* For, on account of, instead of, before. *In composition, usually*, before, over, against, &c.

Obaeratus, a, um, adj., (ob, aes.) Overwhelmed *or* involved in debt; a debtor.

Obduco, ĕre, xi, ctum. To lead *or* conduct against *or* to, draw around, induce.

Obeo, ire, ii, (ivi,) itum. To go *or* come to, go to meet, go against, run up and down; perform, execute, do.

Obitus, ûs, m., (obeo.) Death. See p. 53, 18.

Objectus, a, um, part. and *adj.* Lying before *or* opposite; exposed, open to; offered, presented.

Objicio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, (ob, jacio.) To throw *or* put before, throw to, offer, present, give; expose, risk.

Oblatus, a, um. See *Offero.*

Oblīque, adv. Sidewise, obliquely.

Oblīquus, a, um, adj. Oblique, slanting, sidewise.

Oblīviscor, i, oblītus sum, depon. To forget, lose all recollection of.

Obsecro, āre, āvi, ātum, (ob, sacro.) To entreat, beseech, implore, supplicate.

Obsequentia, ae, f. Compliance, obsequiousness.

Observo, āre, āvi, ātum. To watch, mind, heed, attend to; obey, regard.

Obses, ĭdis, m. and *f.* A hostage, a pledge.

Obsessio, ōnis, f., (obsideo.) A siege.

Obsĭdeo, ēre, ēdi, essum, (ob, sedeo.) To besiege, blockade.

Obsĭdio, ōnis, f. A siege, blockade.

Obsigno, āre, āvi, ātum. To seal, seal up; seal, execute, make.

Obsisto, ĕre, stĭti, stĭtum. To oppose one's self, resist, withstand, stop, hinder.

Obstinate, adv. Obstinately, stubbornly, firmly.

Obstringo, ĕre, inxi, ictum. To tie about *or* fast, bind, fetter; oblige.

Obstruo, ĕre, xi, ctum. To build against, block up, barricade, stop up.

Obtempĕro, āre, āvi, ātum. To comply with, follow, submit to, obey.

Obtestor, āri, ātus sum, depon. To call solemnly to witness, protest; beseech, adjure, supplicate.

Obtĭneo, ēre, ui, entum, (ob, teneo.) To hold, have, keep, retain, obtain, get, effect, accomplish.

Obtuli. See *Offero.*

Obvĕnio, īre, ēni, entum. To meet *or* come in the way, befall, happen, occur.

Obviam, adv. In the way, so as to meet *or* fall in with.

Occasio, ōnis, f., (occĭdo.) A happening *or* chance, opportunity, fit season.

Occāsus, ûs, m. Downfall, destruction, end; setting of the heavenly bodies.

Occidens, tis, (occido.) A falling *or* setting, sunset, the west.

Occīdo, ĕre, īdi, īsum, (ob, caedo.) To beat severely; kill, slay, cut down.

Occĭdo, ĕre, ĭdi, casum, (ob, cado.) To fall, fall down, perish, go down, set.

Occultatio, ōnis, f. A hiding *or* concealing, concealment.

Occulte, adv. Secretly, privately.

Occulto, āre, āvi, ātum. To hide, conceal, secrete, cover.

Occultus, a, um, adj., (occulo.) Hidden, secret, concealed, obscure.

Occupatio, ōnis, f. A seizing, occupying, occupation, business.

Occŭpo, āre, āvi, ātum. To lay hands on, occupy, take up, invade; prevent, anticipate; employ.

Occurro, ĕre, curri, (cucurri,) cursum. To go, come *or* run to meet, meet, fall in with, encounter; oppose, resist. See p. 137, 16.

Occurso, āre, āvi, ātum. To run to meet, rush on, attack.

Ocius, adv. More quickly, sooner, earlier; *used for posit.* quickly, swiftly.

Oceănus, i, m. The ocean.

Octingenti, ae, a, num. adj. Eight hundred.

Octo, num. adj. ind. Eight.

Octodĕcim, num. adj. ind. Eighteen.

Octoginta, num. adj. ind. Eighty.

Octoni, ae, a, num. adj. Eight each, eight by eight, eight.

Oculus, i, m. The eye; eyesight, sight.

Odi, (or *osus sum,*) *defect.* To hate, detest.

Odium, i, n. Hatred, hate, detestation, ill-will, dislike.

Offendo, ĕre, di, sum. To hit *or* run against, take offence at; offend, give offence, blame; err, do amiss; light upon, find; meet with ill success. See p. 126, 38.

Offensio, ōnis, f. A striking against, stumbling; hurt, harm; offence.

Offĕro, ferre, obtŭli, oblatum, (*ob, fero.*) To bring to meet, bring before, present, offer, give; promise; expose.

Officium, i, n. A duty, service, good turn; deference, honor, respect; subjection, obedience; office, public employment.

Omitto, ĕre, isi, issum, (*ob, mitto.*) To let go, let pass, omit, lay aside, slight, postpone, cease.

Omnīno, adv. Wholly, entirely, altogether, utterly; in all, of all; but, only, just.

Omnis, is, e, adj. All, every, the whole, of every kind, of all kinds.

Onerārius, a, um, adj., (*onus.*) Fitted for burdens. *Navis oneraria,* see *Navis.*

Onero, āre, āvi, ātum. To load, lade, fill.

Onus, ĕris, n. A burden, load, lading, freight, cargo; engagement, trouble.

Onustus, a, um, adj., (*onus.*) Laden, loaded, full of, filled with.

Opĕra, ae, f., (*opus.*) Work, labor, endeavor, exertion; help, assistance.

Opīnio, ōnis, f. Opinion, conjecture, supposition, belief; fame, rumor, repute.

Oportet, uit, ĕre, impers. It must needs be, it ought, it behooves, it is necessary.

Oppidanus, a, um, adj. Of *or* belonging to a town.

Oppīdum, i, n. A town, city, walled town; a fortified wood. See Bk. V. 21.

Oppono, ĕre, ŏsui, ŏsĭtum, (*ob, pono.*) To place against *or* opposite, oppose; station, place.

Opportune, adv. Conveniently, fitly

Opportunitas, ātis, f. Fitness, convenience; opportunity, the right time, a lucky chance.

Opportunus, a, um, adj. Commodious, fit, convenient, suitable, proper.

Oppositus, a, um. See *Oppono.*

Oppressus, a, um. See *Opprimo.*

Opprĭmo, ĕre, essi, essum, (*ob, premo.*) To press down, suppress, put down; overpower, overthrow, prostrate, subdue, fall upon suddenly, take by surprise, catch; rout, slay, kill, conquer.

Oppugnatio, ōnis, f. A fighting against, assaulting; mode of assault.

Oppugno, āre, āvi, ātum. To fight against, assail, attack, beset, assault.

Ops, ŏpis, f. Power, strength, resources; aid, assistance, succor; authority, interest, influence.

Optatus, a, um, part. and *adj.* Wished, desired, pleasing, acceptable.

Optĭme, adv., (*sup.* of *bene.*) Best most excellently, right well.

Optimus, a, um, adj., (*sup. of bonus.*) Best, most excellent, very good.

Opus, ĕris, n. A work, labor, transaction, art, deed, business; fortifications, military works.

Opus, ind. subst. and *adj.* Need, necessity; necessary, needful. *Opus est*, it is necessary, profitable, useful, suitable, &c.

Ora, ae, f. The outside, edge, margin, border, extremity; coast, shore; region.

Oratio, ōnis, f. Speaking, language, words, expression, oration, harangue.

Orbis, is, m. A circle, ring, globe; the earth, a region of country; a body of troops drawn up in circular form. See p. 84, 6.

Ordo, ĭnis, m. Order, row, series; disposition, method, arrangement; a rank *or* file of soldiers, battalion, band, company. See p. 32, 9.

Oriens, tis, (*orior.*) Rising. *Oriens sol,* the rising sun, the east.

Orior, īri, ortus sum, depon. To rise, arise, appear, grow up, spring; begin.

Ornamentum, i, n., (*orno.*) Apparatus, ornament, embellishment; honor.

Ornatus, a, um, part. and *adj.* Fitted out, adorned, ornamented.

Orno, āre, āvi, ātum. To fit, furnish, adorn, ornament, deck; honor.

Oro, āre, āvi, ātum. To speak, beg, ask, crave, beseech, pray.

Ortus, ûs, m., (*orior.*) A rising, springing up, origin, rise; birth, nativity.

Os, ōris, n. The mouth; face, countenance.

Ostendo, ĕre, di, sum and *tum,* (*ob, tendo.*) To show, display, manifest, tell, menace, threaten.

Ostentatio, ōnis, f. A showing, displaying, showing off, vain parade, pomp.

Ostento, āre, āvi, ātum. To show, point out, display vainly *or* ostentatiously; make show of, promise.

Otium, i, n. Leisure, inactivity, freedom from business, idleness, rest, quiet, repose.

Ovum, i, n. An egg.

P.

P. for *Publius.*

Pabulatio, ōnis, f., (*pabulor.*) A feeding, foddering; foraging.

Pabulator, ōris, m. A forager.

Pabulor, āri, ātus sum, (*pabulum.*) To feed, graze; forage.

Pabulum, i, n. Food for cattle, grass, pasture, fodder, forage.

Pacatus, a, um, part. and *adj.* Pacified, subdued; peaceable, peaceful, quiet, calm, serene, still.

Păco, āre, āvi, ātum. To bring into a state of peace, tranquillize, subdue, conquer.

Pactum, i, n. Bargain, agreement, engagement, rule, condition.

Paene or *pene, adv.* Almost, nearly, well nigh, all but.

Pagus, i, m. A village, town, canton, district. See p. 30, 34.

Palam, adv. Openly, manifestly, publicly; before.

Palma, ae, f. The palm of the hand, the hand; the paddle of an oar; the palm-tree; victory. See p. 122, 11.

Pălus, ūdis, f. A marsh, morass, bog, fen.

Paluster, tris, tre, adj. Marshy, boggy, swampy, growing in marshy places.

Pando, ĕre, di, passum and *pansum.* To open, throw open, spread out.

Par, păris, adj. Equal, even, like, similar, equally strong, great, &c. *Followed by et, ac, atque, quam,* the same as, (I. 28; V. 13; &c.)

Paratus, a, um, part. and ***adj.*** Prepared, ready, furnished, fitted, provided.

Parce, adv. Sparingly, frugally, moderately.

Parco, ĕre, pĕperci, and ***parsi, parcitum*** and ***parsum.*** To cease, give over, omit, forbear, spare, refrain from hurting, keep, preserve, regard.

Parens, tis, m. and ***f., (pario.)*** A parent.

Parento, āre, āvi, ātum. To perform the funeral rites of parents *or* near relations; avenge, appease. See p. 137, 39.

Pareo, ĕre, ui, itum. To appear, be seen, be in attendance; obey, submit to.

Paries, ĕtis, m. The wall of a house; fence.

Pario, ĕre, pĕpĕri, partum and ***paritum.*** To bear *or* bring forth, travail; beget, produce, yield; occasion, make; gain.

Pariter, adv., (par.) Equally, alike, at the same time.

Păro, āre, āvi, ātum. To make *or* get ready, provide, order, dispose, prepare, furnish; get, procure; purchase, buy.

Pars, tis, f. A part, portion, share; country, region, quarter, place; party, side.

Particeps, ipis, adj., (pars, capio.) Partaking of, sharing in; associate, accomplice, companion.

Partim, adv. Partly, some, some part, in part.

Partio, ire, ivi, itum. See ***Partior.***

Partior, iri, itus sum, depon. To part, share, distribute, divide.

Partus, a, um. See ***Pario.***

Parum, adv. Little, not much, too little, not enough. Comp. ***minus,*** sup. ***minime.***

Parvulus, a, um, adj. Very small, little, puny, petty, tiny.

Parvus, a, um, adj. Little, small, puny, slight. Comp. ***minor,*** sup. ***minimus.***

Pasco, ĕre, pāvi, pastum. To feed, graze, pasture; nourish.

Passim, adv. Here and there, at random, everywhere, every way.

Passus, ûs, m., (pando.) A pace, step; a measure of five Roman feet. ***Mille passus,*** a mile.

Passus, a, um. See ***Pando.***

Passus, a, um. See ***Patior.***

Patefacio, ĕre, fēci, factum, (pateo, facio.) To open, lay open, throw open; disclose, discover. ***Patefacere iter, vias,*** (III. 1; VII. 8.)

Patefio, ĕri, factus sum., irr. pass. See ***Patefacio.***

Patens, tis, part. and ***adj., (pateo.)*** Open, lying open; accessible.

Pateo, ĕre, ui, —. To be open, stand *or* lie open, be accessible, be exposed; be clear, evident *or* known.

Pater, tris, m. A father, sire, ancestor.

Patienter, adv., (patiens.) Patiently, contentedly, calmly.

Patientia, ae, f. A bearing, suffering, enduring, patience.

Patior, i, passus sum, depon. To bear, undergo, suffer, endure, submit to; permit, allow.

Patrius, a, um, adj. Of *or* belonging to a father, fatherly, paternal, native.

Patrōnus, i, m., (pater.) Protector, defender, patron.

Patruus, i, m. An uncle by the father's side, a father's brother.

Pauci, ae, a, adj. Few, a few.

Paucitas, ātis, f. Fewness, scarcity, paucity.

Paulātim, adv., (*paulus.*) By little and little, by degrees, gradually, leisurely.

Paulisper, adv., (*paulus.*) For a little while, a little while.

Paulŭlum, adv., (*paulus.*) A little, somewhat.

Paulum, adv., (*paulus.*) A little, little.

Paulus, a, um, adj. Little, small.

Pax, pācis. f. An agreement, peace, quiet.

Pecco, āre, āvi, ātum. To sin, offend, transgress, mistake; injure.

Pectus, ŏris, n. The breast.

Pecunia, ae, f., (*pecus.*) Property, wealth, riches, money.

Pecus, ŏris, n. Sheep, cattle, oxen, horses, swine, &c.

Pedālis, is, e, adj., (*pes.*) Of a foot, a foot long *or* broad.

Pedes, itis, m., (*pes.*) One who goes on foot; infantry, foot-soldiers.

Pedester, tris, tre, adj., (*pes.*) On foot, going on foot, pedestrian; on land. *Pedestres copiae,* infantry, (II. 17.)

Peditatus, ûs, m., (*pedes.*) The infantry *or* foot of an army.

Pejor, (*comp.* of *malus.*) Worse.

Pejus, adv., (*comp.* of *male.*) Worse.

Pellis, is, f. The skin *or* hide of a beast. See p. 68, 19.

Pello, ĕre, pĕpŭli, pulsum. To drive away, expel, dispossess; discomfit, rout.

Pendo, ĕre, pependi, pensum. To weigh, weigh in one's mind, think upon, consider; pay, undergo.

Pĕnes, prep. with *acc.* Near, with, in the power of.

Penitus, adv. Inwardly, within, deeply, fully, utterly, altogether.

Per, prep. with *acc.* Through, through the midst of; during, throughout; by, by reason of, on account of; in, with

Perago, ĕre, ēgi, actum, (*per, ago.*) To drive, agitate, go through with, accomplish, finish, spend.

Perangustus, a, um, adj. Very small, strait, *or* narrow.

Percipio, ĕre, ēpi, eptum, (*per, capio.*) To take up wholly; possess, invade, occupy; gather; get, obtain, receive; perceive, feel; know, understand.

Percontatio, ōnis, f. An asking, inquiry.

Perculsus, a, um, (*percello,*) *part.* Struck down, overthrown, overturned; surprised, astonished, amazed.

Percurro, ĕre, cucurri and *curri, cursum.* To run through *or* over, traverse.

Percussus, a, um. See *Percutio.*

Percutio, ĕre, cussi, cussum, (*per, quatio.*) To strike, hit, beat, knock, pierce.

Perdisco, ĕre, didici, —. To learn thoroughly, learn by heart.

Perditus, a, um, part. and *adj.* Lost, ruined, desperate, abandoned, profligate.

Perdo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum. To destroy, ruin.

Perdūco, ĕre, xi, ctum. To bring through, lead, convey, accompany; draw out, bring *or* draw over, persuade, promote, advance; smear, anoint.

Perendĭnus, a, um, adj. The day after to-morrow, the third day hence.

Pereo, ire, ii, (*ivi,*) *itum.* To perish, be lost *or* ruined; to die.

Perequito, āre, āvi, ātum. To ride through, round, *or* all over.

Perexiguus, a, um, adj. Very small, very little.

Perfacĭlis, is, e, adj. Very easy.

Perfero, ferre, tŭli, lātum. To bear *or* carry through, bear, carry, convey, bring; support, suffer, endure, bear; announce, bring news, report.

Perfĭcio, ĕre, fēci, fectum, (per, facio.) To finish, complete, accomplish, effect, cause, perfect, obtain, gain.

Perfidia, ae, f. Perfidy, treachery, falsehood.

Perfringo, ĕre, frēgi, fractum, (per, frango.) To break through, dash in pieces, shatter; overcome; violate, infringe.

Perfŭga, ae, m. A deserter. See p. 64, 4.

Perfugio, ĕre, ūgi, ūgĭtum. To fly *or* flee for succor, take refuge; desert.

Perfugium, i, n. A refuge, shelter, asylum.

Pergo, ĕre, perrexi, perrectum. To go, proceed, advance; persevere.

Perīclĭtor, āri, ātus sum, depon., (periculum.) To try, prove, essay, test; be in danger, endanger, risk, hazard.

Perīculōsus, a, um, adj. Dangerous, full of danger *or* risk, perilous.

Perīculum, i, n. Experiment, trial; hazard, risk, danger.

Perītus, a, um, adj. Experienced in, practised, skilled in, expert.

Perlātus, a, um. See *Perfero.*

Perlectus, a, um. See *Perlego.*

Perlego, ĕre, ēgi, ectum. To read through *or* over.

Perluo, ĕre, ui, ūtum. To wash, bathe.

Permagnus, a, um, adj. Very great *or* large, very important.

Permaneo, ēre, mansi, mansum. To remain to the end, endure, continue, hold out, persist.

Permisceo, ēre, iscui, istum or *ixtum.* To mix together, mingle, blend, confuse.

Permitto, ĕre, isi, issum. To send; commit, intrust; grant, allow, permit, suffer; concede.

Permōtus, a, um. See *Permoveo.*

Permŏveo, ēre, ōvi, ōtum. To move through; stir up well; move, affect, prevail upon; move to pity, anger, terror, &c.; excite, stir up.

Permulsus, a, um, (permulceo.) Soothed, charmed, pleased, calmed.

Pernicies, ei, f., (perneco.) Destruction, ruin, disaster, calamity.

Pernicitas, ātis, f. Nimbleness, agility, fleetness, celerity.

Perpauci, ae, a, adj. A very few, very few.

Perpendiculum, i, n. A plumb line, a plummet.

Perpĕtior, i, pessus sum, depon., (per, patior.) To suffer patiently, endure, bear; allow, permit.

Perpetuo, adv. Continually, perpetually.

Perpetuus, a, um, adj. Perpetual, continual, constant, permanent, complete, entire.

Perquīro, ĕre, sivi, sītum, (per, quaero.) To seek *or* search for diligently, to ask, inquire; investigate.

Perrumpo, ĕre, ūpi, uptum. To break through, break to pieces; burst through, enter forcibly, force one's way into.

Perscrībo, ĕre, psi, ptum. To write, write down *or* fully.

Persequor, i, secūtus (sequūtus)

sum, depon. To follow, follow after; pursue, follow close, press upon; revenge, avenge; perform, accomplish; relate, recount.

Persevēro, āre, āvi, ātum. To persevere, persist, continue.

Persolvo, ĕre, solvi, solūtum. To solve, unravel; pay, pay completely. *Persolvere poenas*, to suffer punishment, (I. 12.)

Perspicio, ĕre, exi, ectum, (per, specio.) To see through, look through, perceive plainly, ascertain, prove, explore.

Persto, āre, iti, ātum. To stand fast, persist, continue, persevere, hold out.

Persuādeo, ēre, si, sum. To persuade, advise, teach, inculcate. *Aliquid alicui persuadere*, to convince *or* persuade one of the truth of a thing. *Sibi persuasum habere*, (III. 2,) see p. 57, 20.

Perterreo, ēre, ui, itum. To frighten greatly, terrify.

Pertimesco, ĕre, mui, —. To fear greatly, be in fear, fall into fear.

Pertinācia, ae, f. Obstinacy, stubbornness, frowardness, perversity.

Pertineo, ēre, ui, —, (per, teneo.) To reach, extend, stretch; have an aim *or* tendency, tend; relate to, concern, pertain, belong to.

Pertŭli. See *Perfero.*

Perturbatio, ōnis, f. A confusing, disturbing, confusion, disorder, trouble.

Perturbo, āre, āvi, ātum. To disturb greatly, confuse, embroil, trouble.

Pervăgor, āri, ātus sum, depon. To wander through, wander over, rove about, overrun.

Pervĕho, ĕre, xi, ctum. To bear *or* carry through, carry, convey, conduct.

Pervĕnio, īre, ēni, entum. To come to, arrive at, reach, come, arrive.

Pes, pĕdis, m. The foot; foot of a table, bench, &c.; foot in measure. *Pedem referre*, to draw back, retreat, retire, (IV. 25.)

Pĕto, ĕre, ivi, itum. To ask, seek, request, desire, entreat; solicit office, seek after, covet; fall upon, attack, assail; repair to, travel to.

Phalanx, gis, f. A phalanx, squadron, troop. See p. 24, 18.

Piĕtas, ātis, f. Piety, devotion, performance of duty. See p. 97, 10.

Pignus, ŏris, n. A pawn, pledge, gage, mortgage; a wager; proof, assurance.

Pīlum, i, n. A pestle *or* pounder; javelin, dart. See p. 24, 23; 102, 14.

Pīlus, i, m. A company of the triarii, a company of soldiers armed with the pilum. See *Primopilus.*

Pinna, ae, f. A feather, a wing; a battlement; pinnacle. See p. 102, 15.

Piscis, is, m. A fish.

Pix, pĭcis, f. Pitch.

Placeo, ēre, ui, ĭtum. To please, give satisfaction, delight, humor.

Placĭde, adv. Softly, gently, mildly.

Plăco, āre, āvi, ātum. To appease, satisfy, soothe, calm, assuage, mitigate.

Plane, adv. Plainly, clearly, distinctly, entirely, totally.

Planities, ēi, f. A plane *or* even surface, level ground, a plain.

Planus, a, um, adj. Plain, even, flat, level; plain, manifest.

Plēbes, ĕi, f. The common people. See *Plebs.*

Plebs, plēbis, f. The common people *or* plebeians. *At first, all but*

the senators, afterwards the third of the orders in the state. The populace, the rabble.

Plēne, adv. Fully, completely, totally, quite.

Plēnus, a, um, adj. Full, filled, replete.

Plerumque, adv. For the most part, commonly.

Plerusque, ăque, umque, adj. Most, the most. *Pl., plerique, pleraeque, pleraque*, almost all, many, very many.

Plumbum, i, n. Lead. *Plumbum album*, tin. See p. 91, 7.

Plurĭmum, adv., (*sup.* of *multum.*) Most of all, especially, very, exceedingly.

Plurĭmus, a, um, adj., (*sup.* of *multus.*) Very many *or* much, most, the greatest part.

Plus, adv., (*comp.* of *multum.*) More.

Plus, plūris, adj., (*comp.* of *multus.*) More, many, several.

Pluteus, i, m. It is a term used of boards or other things joined together to make a cover or defence; a parapet *or* moveable breastwork; a shelter, a gallery, under which the besiegers were screened from the missiles of the enemy.

Pocŭlum, i, n. A cup *or* drinking bowl.

Poena, ae, f. Satisfaction, atonement, expiation, punishment, a penalty.

Poenĭteo, ĕre, ui, —. To repent, be sorry, regret. *Me poenitet hujus rei*, it repents me, *i. e.*, I repent, am sorry, &c.

Pollex, ĭcis, m The thumb.

Pollĭceor, ĕri, cĭtus sum, depon. To offer one's self for, promise.

Pollicitatio, ōnis, f. A free *or* voluntary promise.

Pondus, ĕris, n., (*pendo.*) A weight, weight, heaviness, load, burden; value, power.

Pōno, ĕre, pŏsui, posĭtum. To put, place, set, lay; erect, build; lay down, assert, state; post, station; repose.

Pons, tis, m. A bridge.

Poposci. See *Posco.*

Populātio, ōnis, f. A laying waste, depopulating, ravaging, pillaging, plundering.

Popŭlor, āri, ātus sum, depon. To depopulate, ravage, pillage, spoil, plunder.

Popŭlus, i, m. A people, state, nation.

Porrectus, a, um. See *Porrigo.*

Porrĭgo, ĕre, rexi, rectum, (*porro, rego.*) To stretch, spread out, extend; offer, hold out.

Porro, adv. Afar off, far; afterwards; then, moreover, besides, next.

Porta, ae, f. A gate, the gate of a camp *or* city; a door, portal, port.

Porto, āre, āvi, ātum. To carry, bear, convey, conduct, bring.

Portōrium, i, n. The tax *or* duty on imports, customs, tolls. See p. 56, 6.

Portus, ûs, m. A port, harbor, haven; a place of refuge, asylum, shelter, rest.

Posco, ĕre, pŏposci, —. To ask, call for, demand, importune.

Posĭtus, a, um. See *Pono.*

Possessio, ōnis, f. A possessing, possession, property; an estate.

Possĭdeo, ĕre, ēdi, essum. To possess, have, hold, own, enjoy.

Possum, posse, potui, irreg. neut., (*potis, sum.*) To be able, have power; to be able to do *or* effect, have weight, influence, efficacy.

Post, adv. Afterwards, after, behind.

***Post**, prep.* with *acc.* After, since, next after, behind, below, beneath.

***Postea**, adv.* Afterwards, after this, hereafter, besides.

***Posteâquam**, adv.* After that, after.

***Posterus**, a, um, adj.* Coming after, following, next, ensuing. *Sup., postrēmus* *Posteri, orum,* posterity.

***Posthabeo**, ēre, ui, ĭtum.* To postpone, esteem less, neglect.

***Postpōno**, ĕre, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum.* To postpone, value less, neglect, disregard.

***Postquam**, conj.* After, after that, when, as soon as.

***Postrēmo**, adv.* Lastly, at last, finally.

***Postremus**, a, um, adj.*, (*sup.* of *posterus.*) The last, hindmost.

***Postrĭdie**, adv.* The day after, day following.

***Postulatum**, i, n.* A demand, request.

***Postulo**, āre, âvi, ātum.* To demand, ask, desire, require, beg.

***Potens**, tis, adj.* Able, having power, capable; potent, powerful, strong, rich.

***Potentātus**, ûs, m.* Power, dominion, rule, command.

***Potentia**, ae, f.* Power, faculty, ability, capacity, efficacy; dominion, rule, empire.

***Potestas**, ātis, f.* Power *or* ability; dominion, rule; virtue, efficacy, effect; license, leave, opportunity.

***Potior**, īri, ītus sum, depon.* To become master of, gain, acquire, obtain, take.

***Potius**, adv.* Rather.

***Prae**, prep.* with *ablat.* For, through, by reason of, on account of, in comparison with.

***Praeacūtus**, a, um, part.* and *adj.* Sharpened, pointed, made sharp.

***Praebeo**, ēre, ui, ĭtum.* To hold out, proffer, offer, show, exhibit, furnish, supply.

***Praecăveo**, ēre, cāvi, cautum.* To take care *or* beware, be on one's guard.

***Praecēdo**, ĕre, essi, essum.* To go before, precede; excel, surpass, be superior to.

***Praeceps**, cĭpĭtis, adj.*, (*prae, caput.*) Headlong, swift, precipitate, rash, sudden, steep.

***Praeceptum**, i, n.* A direction, precept, rule, maxim, advice, counsel.

***Praecĭpio**, ĕre, ēpi, eptum,* (*prae, capio.*) To take *or* receive before, anticipate, admonish, advise, tell, teach, direct.

***Praecĭpĭto**, āre, āvi, ātum,* (*praeceps.*) To precipitate, throw headlong, plunge.

***Praecipue**, adv.* Especially, chiefly.

***Praecipuus**, a, um, adj.* Particular, peculiar, special; noted, distinguished.

***Praeclūdo**, ĕre, si, sum,* (*prae, claudo.*) To shut, hinder, stop, impede.

***Praeco**, ōnis, m.* A public crier, beadle.

***Praecurro**, ĕre, cŭcurri* and *curri, cursum.* To run before, go before, precede, surpass, outstrip, excel.

***Praeda**, ae, f.* Booty, plunder, spoil, pillage.

***Praedīco**, āre, āvi, ātum.* To publish, proclaim, spread abroad; say, tell, affirm; command.

***Praedor**, āri, ātus sum, depon.* To make booty, rob, plunder, spoil, ravage.

***Praedūco**, ĕre, xi, ctum.* To draw, make *or* put before.

***Praefectus**, i, m.* An overseer, director, commander. See p. 59, 8.

***Praefĕro**, ferre, tŭli, lātum.* To bear *or* carry before; prefer, give the preference to; show, discover, indicate.

***Praefĭcio**, ĕre, ēci, ectum, (prae, facio.)* To set over, preside over, constitute, delegate, depute.

***Praefīgo**, ĕre, xi, xum.* To fix *or* fasten before, set up in front; tip, head.

***Praefixus**, a, um.* See *Praefigo.*

Praefui. See *Praesum.*

***Praemetuo**, ĕre, ui, —.* To fear beforehand.

***Praemitto**, ĕre, isi, issum.* To send *or* dispatch before.

***Praemium**, i, n.* A reward, recompense, utility, advantage, profit.

***Praeoccŭpo**, āre, āvi, ātum.* To take possession of, seize beforehand, preoccupy.

***Praeopto**, āre, āvi, ātum.* To wish rather, choose rather, prefer.

***Praepăro**, āre, āvi, ātum.* To prepare, get ready beforehand, provide.

***Praepōno**, ĕre, pŏsui, pŏsitum.* To put *or* set before, place first, prefer; set over, appoint.

***Praerumpo**, ĕre, rūpi, ruptum.* To break *or* tear off, break in pieces.

***Praeruptus**, a, um, part.* and *adj.* Broken *or* torn off; steep, craggy, rugged.

***Praescrībo**, ĕre, psi, ptum.* To write before, prescribe, order, appoint, dictate.

***Praescriptum**, i, n.* An order, prescript, rule, precept.

***Praesens**, tis, adj.* Present, in person, at hand; prompt, resolute.

***Praesentia**, ae, f.* Presence.

***Praesentio**, īre, sensi, sensum.* To see beforehand, foresee, presage, foreknow.

***Praesepio**, īre, psi, ptum.* To secure in front, block up, barricade.

***Praesertim**, adv.* Especially, chiefly.

***Praesidium**, i, n.* Defence, protection, help, assistance; guard, escort, reserve, security.

***Praesto**, āre, iti, itum.* To stand before, be superior to, excel, surpass; show, prove, exhibit, evince, do.

***Praesto**, adv.* Present, here, ready at hand.

***Praesum**, esse, fui.* To be before, be set over, preside over, rule over.

***Praeter**, prep.* with *acc.* Close by, near, along, except, beyond, contrary to.

***Praeterea**, adv.* Besides, moreover.

***Praetereo**, īre, īvi, (ii,) itum.* To go *or* pass by, pass along, omit, leave out.

***Praeterĭtus**, a, um, part.* and *adj.* Past, gone by.

***Praetermitto**, ĕre, isi, issum.* To let pass, pass over, omit, neglect.

***Praeterquam**, adv.* Besides, beyond, save.

***Praetervĕho**, ĕre, xi, ctum.* To carry, convey, *or* lead past *or* by. *Pass., praetervĕhi,* to be carried past *or* by, ride *or* sail past.

***Praetor**, ōris, m.* A leader, chief, commander, magistrate. *Cf.* p. 23, 9.

***Praetorius**, a, um, adj.* Of *or* belonging to a general, praetorian.

***Praeuro**, ĕre, ussi, ustum.* To burn before, burn at the end *or* point.

***Praeverto**, ĕre, ti, sum.* To prefer, get the start of, anticipate, prevent.

***Prāvus**, a, um, adj.* Crooked, not straight, distorted; wrong, bad, depraved, wicked.

***Precor**, āri, ātus sum, depon.* To pray, entreat, beg, request, desire.

Prehendo, ĕre, di, sum. To take, lay hold of, grasp, seize.

Prĕmo, ĕre, pressi, pressum. To press, press upon; press *or* squeeze out, strain, press close; charge, harass, pursue, oppress, urge.

Prendo. See *Prehendo.*

Prĕtium, i, n. Worth, value, price, reward, punishment.

Prex, (allied to *precor,*) *prĕcis, f.* A prayer, entreaty. *Plur. preces,* a prayer, curse, imprecation.

Prīdie, adv. On the day before.

Primipilus, i, m. See *Primopilus.*

Prīmo, adv. At first, in the first place.

Primopīlus, i, m. The chief centurion of the triarii. See p. 51, 26.

Primum, adv. In the beginning, first, in the first place. *Quam primum,* as soon as possible: *ut* or *ubi,* or *quum primum,* as soon as.

Prīmus, a, um, adj., (*sup.* of *prior.*) The first, foremost, principal, excellent, illustrious; in front, in the van.

Princeps, ĭpis, m. and *f.* The first, most noble, prince, leader, chief, ruler.

Principātus, ûs, m. The first place, pre-eminence, sovereignty, rule. See p. 14, 36.

Prior, ōris, adj. Former, previous, prior, first, foremost.

Pristīnus, a, um, adj. Ancient, old, wonted, pristine, original.

Prius, adv. Before, sooner, rather.

Priusquam, adv. Before that, before.

Privātim, adv. Privately, in private.

Privātus, a, um, adj. A private person, private, belonging to an individual.

Pro, prep. with *ablat.* Before, in front of, right opposite to; in, on; for, according to; on account of, by reason of, in favor of.

Prŏbo, āre, āvi, ātum. To approve, be satisfied with; try, examine; prove, show, demonstrate.

Procēdo, ĕre, essi, essum. To go before, proceed, advance, go forth.

Proclīno, āre, āvi, ātum. To incline *or* bend forward, incline.

Proconsul, ŭlis, m. A proconsul. See p. 65, 3.

Prŏcul, adv. Far, far off, at a distance.

Procumbo, ĕre, cubui, cubĭtum. To fall forward, sink, fall down, lean.

Procurator, ōris, m. An agent, governor, manager, procurator.

Procūro, āre, āvi, ātum. To take care of, attend to, look after.

Procurro, ĕre, cucurri, (*curri,*) *cursum.* To run forth, project out, extend.

Prodeo, īre, īvi, (*ii,*) *ĭtum,* (*pro, eo.*) To go *or* come forth, go out, advance, proceed.

Proditio, ōnis, f. A discovery; treachery.

Proditor, ōris, m. A traitor, betrayer.

Prodo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum. To give *or* bring forth, discover, disclose, manifest; relate, report, write, hand down; betray, desert, abandon, forsake.

Prodūco, ĕre, xi, ctum. To lead *or* bring forth, lead out; draw out, protract, make long, lengthen, prolong.

Proelior, āri, ātus sum, depon. To fight, join battle, combat, contend.

Proelium, i, n. A fight, battle, engagement, conflict. See p. 13, 12; 38, 20.

Profectio, ōnis, f. A going away, departure, journey, march, voyage.

Profecto, adv. Certainly, surely, in truth.

Profectus, a, um, part., 1) *proficiscor:* 2) *proficio.*

Profĕro, ferre, tŭli, latum. To bring forth, produce, say; put off, defer.

Proficio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, (pro, facio.) To advance, gain ground, increase, effect, obtain; be of use or advantage, help.

Proficiscor, i, fectus sum. To set out, go, travel, march; depart, leave.

Profiteor, ēri, fessus sum, (pro, fateor.) To profess, own, acknowledge, offer.

Profligo, āre, āvi, ātum. To throw *or* dash down, overthrow, defeat, rout.

Profluo, ĕre, xi, xum. To flow forth, flow; rise, take its rise.

Profugio, ĕre, ūgi, ĭtum. To flee, fly, run away, escape; flee for succor

Profui. See *Prosum.*

Profundo, ĕre, fūdi, fūsum. To shed copiously, pour forth *or* out.

Prognatus, a, um, (prognascor.) Descended, sprung from.

Progrĕdior, i, gressus sum, depon., (pro, gradior.) To come forth, go on, advance, proceed.

Prohibeo, ēre, ui, ĭtum, (pro, habeo.) To keep off, hinder, impede, stop, restrain; defend, protect. See p. 116, 2.

Proinde, adv. Hence, therefore, on that account.

Projĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, (pro, jacio.) To throw forth *or* before, throw down, fling away, fling, cast, lay down; neglect, give up, yield, renounce.

Promĭneo, ēre, ui, —. To stand *or* jut out, project, hang over.

Promĭnens, tis, part. That projects, a prominence; projecting, leaning forwards.

Promiscue, adv. In common, promiscuously, at random, confusedly

Promissus, a um. See *Promitto*

Promitto, ĕre, īsi, issum. To let hang down, let grow, suffer to grow long.

Promontorium, i, n. A promontory, cape, headland.

Promŏveo, ēre, ōvi, ōtum. To move forwards, make to advance, impel, advance.

Promptus, a, um, adj. Visible, manifest, ready, at hand, prepared, active, bold.

Pronuncio, āre, āvi, ātum. To publish, proclaim, announce; say, tell, relate.

Prōnus, a, um, adj. Inclined *or* leaning forward, prone, headlong.

Prŏpe, adv. Near, nigh, by, beside, near to, close by; almost. Comp., *propius;* sup., *proxime.*

Propello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum. To drive before *or* forth, repel, drive out, repulse, ward off; propel.

Propĕro, āre, āvi, ātum. To make haste, hasten, be quick.

Propinquĭtas, ātis, f. Nearness, vicinity, proximity, neighborhood; relationship. See p. 42, 37.

Propinquus, a, um, adj. Neighboring, near, at hand. *Subst.*, a kinsman, relation.

Propius, adv. Nearer, more nearly, nearly to.

Propōno, ĕre, ŏsui, ŏsĭtum. To set out to view, set forth, expose, present, offer; tell, show, declare, report, relate, appoint, propose.

Propositum, i, n. A design, purpose, resolution.

Proprius, a, um, adj. Peculiar, special, private, proper, not com-

mon. *Subst., proprium, i, n.,* one's own, property, characteristic.

Propter, prepos. with *acc.,* and *adv.* Near, close to, for, on account of, by reason of.

Propterea, adv. Therefore, on that account. *Propterea quod,* because.

Propugnator, ōris, m. A defender. See p. 141, 30.

Propulso, āre, āvi, ātum. To drive back, repel, ward off.

Prōra, ae, f. The prow of a vessel.

Proripio, ĕre, ipui, eptum, (pro, rapio.) To snatch *or* drag forth, snatch away. *Se proripere,* to hasten forth, rush out.

Proruo, ĕre, ui, ūtum. To rush against, cast forward, overthrow, overturn.

Prosĕquor, i, secūtus (sequūtus) sum. To follow after, follow, go with, accompany.

Prospectus, ûs, m. A looking forward, view, prospect, sight.

Prospĭcio, ĕre, exi, ectum. To look forward, see, take care, provide, consult.

Prosterno, ĕre, strāvi, strātum. To strew forth, throw down, overturn, prostrate.

Prosum, prodesse, profui. To do good, profit, avail, conduce.

Protego, ĕre, xi, ctum. To cover before, cover, defend, protect; hide.

Proterreo, ēre, ui, ĭtum. To frighten, terrify, scare.

Protĭnus, adv. Before one's self, forward, onward, again, further, hereupon.

Proturbo, āre, āvi, ātum. To drive *or* push away, repel, repulse.

Provectus, a, um. See *Provĕho.*

Provĕho, ĕre, xi, ctum. To carry *or* conduct forth, conduct, carry forward.

Provĕnio, īre, ēni, entum. To come forth, appear, spring forth, turn out.

Proventus, ûs, m. A coming forth, growth, increase, issue, event, success, good fortune.

Provĭdeo, ēre, īdi, īsum. To look forward, foresee, see to, prevent, guard against, provide, prepare; discern, perceive.

Provincia, ae, f. A province. *Provincia nostra, citerior, ulterior.* See p. 13, 1; 17, 36.

Provincialis, is, e, adj. Of *or* belonging to a province, provincial.

Provŏlo, āre, āvi, ātum. To fly out, fly forward, run forth, rush, hasten.

Proxime, adv. Very near, lately, last.

Proximus, a, um, adj., (sup. of *propior.)* Very near, neighboring, nearest, next, last.

Prudentia, ae, f. Foresight, prudence, good sense, discretion, sagacity.

Pubes, puber, ĕris, adj. Arrived at the age of puberty, adult, of ripe years.

Publice, adv. Publicly, by public authority, on the public behalf, with regard to the state *or* community.

Publico, āre, āvi, ātum. To make public property of, confiscate, proscribe.

Publĭcus, a, um, adj. Belonging to the state *or* community, common, public, general. *Publicus, i, m.,* a magistrate, public officer.

Pudeo, ēre, ui, ĭtum. To be ashamed. *Impers., pudet, puduit,* &c.

Pudor, ōris, m. A being ashamed, regard, respect, reverence, bashfulness, modesty, shame, disgrace.

Puer, ĕri, m. A boy, a lad.
Puerilis, is, e, adj. Of a boy *or* child, childish, boyish, youthful.
Pugna, ae, f. A battle, fight, encounter.
Pugno, āre, āvi, ātum. To fight, combat, engage, contend.
Pulcher, chra, chrum, adj. Fair, beautiful, handsome, illustrious.
Pulsus, a, um. See *Pello.*
Pulsus, ûs, m. A pushing, beating, striking, impulse.
Pulvis, ĕris, m. Dust.
Punctum, i, n. A point.
Puppis, is, f. The stern of a vessel.
Purgo, āre, āvi, ātum. To make clean, cleanse, purge, purify; excuse, justify, expiate.
Puto, āre, āvi, ātum. To lop, prune, adjust, reckon, imagine, suppose, consider, think, esteem, value.
Pyrenaeus, a, um, adj. Pyrenaean. *Montes Pyrenaei,* (I. 1.)

Q.

Q. for *Quintus.*
Quā, adv., (scil. *via* or *parte.*) Where, how, in what way, on that side where.
Quadragēni, ae, a, num. adj. Forty each, forty.
Quadraginta, num. adj. Forty.
Quadringenti, ae, a, num. adj., (*quatuor, centum.*) Four hundred.
Quaero, ĕre, sīvi, situm. To seek, seek after, look for, ask, inquire, investigate, search, examine into.
Quaestio, ōnis, f. A seeking, inquiring, investigation, question, trial, prosecution.
Quaestor, ōris, m. A quaestor. See p. 38, 39.
Quaestus, ûs, m. A trade, employment, occupation, profession; gain, profit.
Quālis, is, e, adj. Of what kind *or* sort, what; as, such as, like as.
Quam, conj. and *adv.* How, how much; *tam . . . quam,* so . . . as; much, very. With the *superl.,* as possible; *quam primum,* as quickly as possible.
Quamdiu, adv. How long, as long as.
Quamobrem, conj. Why, wherefore, on what account, therefore.
Quamplures or *quam plures, adj.* Very many.
Quamplurimum or *quam plurimum, adv.* As much as possible.
Quamprimum or *quam primum, adv.* See *Quam.*
Quamvis, adv. As much as you will; although, albeit, though, however.
Quando, adv. When. *Si quando,* if ever, (III. 12.)
Quantŏpere or *quanto opere, adv.* How greatly, how much.
Quantum, adv. As much as, how much.
Quantus, a, um, adj. How great, how many, how much, as great as.
Quantusvis, ăvis, umvis, adj. As great as you please, how great soever, any.
Quāre, conj. For what reason, wherefore, why, to the end that, that, so that.
Quartus, a, um, num. adj. The fourth.
Quăsi, conj. As if, just as if, as it were.
Quatuor, num. adj. Four.
Quatuordecim, num. adj. Fourteen.
Que, conj. enclitic. And. *Que . . . et, et . . . que,* both . . . and.
Quemadmodum, adv. In what manner, how; as, like as, just as.

Quĕror, i, questus sum, depon. To lament, complain, bewail.

Questus, ûs, m. A complaining, lamentation.

Qui, quae, quod, rel. pron. Who, which, what, that. *Qui = ut is*, (I. 15, 20, 24;) *quo minus*, the less; *qui = qualis*, (II. 4, VII. 54;) *ut qui*, as one who, as if he, &c.

Quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pron. Whosoever, whatsoever, whoever, whatever; every, all.

Quīdam, quaedam, quoddam and ***quiddam, pron.*** A certain one, some one, one.

Quĭdem, conj. Indeed, at least, of a truth, assuredly. *Ne quidem*, not even.

Quies, ētis, f. Rest, repose, quiet, ease.

Quiētus, a, um, adj. At rest, quiet, calm, tranquil, easy, undisturbed.

Quin, conj. That not, that ... not, as if ... not, not that ... not; yet, however, nay, but; why not?

Quinam. See *Quisnam.*

Quincunx, uncis, m., (quinque, uncia.) Amounting to five twelfths; the five spots on dice. *In quincuncem*, after the manner of these spots, (VII. 73.)

Quindĕcim, num. adj. Fifteen.

Quinetiam, adv. Nay even, moreover.

Quingenti, ae, a, num. adj. Five hundred.

Quini, ae, a, num. adj. Five each, five.

Quinquaginta, num. adj. Fifty.

Quinque, num. adj. Five.

Quintus, a, um, num. adj. The fifth.

Quis (qui) quae, quid (quod,) interrog. pron. Who? which? what? *Quid*, what? why? wherefore? *Indef. pron. = aliquis, aliqua, aliquid*, any one, one; somebody, something; with *ne, si, nisi*, &c.

Quisnam, quaenam, quidnam, and ***quinam quaenam, quodnam, interrog. pron.*** Who? which? what? (stronger than *quis.*)

Quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam, (quidpiam,) pron. Any *or* some, any one, some one *or* thing.

Quisquam, quaequam, quidquam, (quicquam,) pron. Any, any one, any thing.

Quisque, quaeque, quodque and ***quidque, pron.*** Every, every man, every one, all, any.

Quisquis, quaequae, quidquid, (quicquid,) pron. Whoever, whosoever, whatever.

Quivis, quaevis, quidvis, or ***quodvis, pron.*** Any you please, any one, every, every one, whoever, whosoever.

Quo, adv. and ***conj.*** Whither, to which *or* what place, to which *or* what, to whom; where, how far, any whither; to what end *or* purpose, why; wherefore, on which account; that, in order that, that by this means.

Quoad, conj. As long as, as, till, until.

Quod, conj. That, why, because, in that, as touching that, as to this, that, though; therefore, wherefore. *Quod si*, if now, but if, but; in that, because; *quod nisi*, but unless, but if not; *quod ubi = ubi*, when.

Quomĭnus, (quo, minus,) conj. That not, *after verbs of hindering, restraining, &c.*, for not, from.

Quoniam, conj. Since, since now, as, indeed.

Quŏque, conj. Also, likewise, too, as well.

Quoquo, adv. Whithersoever, to whatever part.

Quoquoversus, adv. In every direction, to every quarter, every way, on every side.

Quot, indecl. adj. How many, as many as.

Quotannis, adv. Every year, yearly.

Quotidianus, a, um, adj. Daily, happening every day, done, used, &c. every day; ordinary, usual.

Quotīdie, adv. Every day, daily, day by day.

Quŏties, adv. How often, how many times? as often as, as.

Quum, (or *cum,*) *conj.* When, while, at which time; since, as, because, seeing that, although. *Quum* .... *tum,* not only .... but also, both .... and, as .... so also; *quum primum.* See *Primum.*

R.

Radix, īcis, f. A root, the root, *i. e.* foot *or* base of a mountain, hill, &c.

Rādo, ĕre, si, sum. To shave, scrape, make smooth, polish.

Rāmus, i, m. A branch, bough.

Rapiditas, ātis, f. Swiftness, velocity.

Rapīna, ae, f. Robbery, rapine, plundering.

Rarus, a, um, adj. Rare, thin, not dense, thinly scattered, few, uncommon.

Ratio, ōnis, f., (*reor.*) A reason, plan, art, policy, transaction; account, reckoning; method, scheme, artifice; matter, affair; respect, regard, care; wisdom, prudence.

Ratis, is, f. A raft, a ship. See p. 17, 5.

Ratus, a, um, adj. and *part,* (*reor.*) Thinking, deeming; reckoned, computed, firm, established, sure, fixed.

Rebellio, ōnis, f. Renewal of war, revolt.

Recēdo, ĕre, essi, essum. To go back, retire, retreat, recede, give ground, depart.

Recens, tis, adj. Fresh, new, recent; raw, inexperienced.

Recenseo, ēre, ui, ĭtum. To go through, review, inspect, examine, muster, count, tell.

Receptaculum, i, n. A receptacle, storehouse, magazine; retreat, place of refuge.

Receptus, ûs, m., (*recipio.*) A retiring, falling back, retreat, place of shelter *or* refuge. *Receptui canere,* see p. 151, 3.

Receptus, a, um. See *Recipio.*

Recessus, ûs, m., (*recedo.*) A retiring, retreat.

Recĭdo, ere, cĭdi, cāsum, (*re, cado.*) To fall back, recoil; fall, light, come to *or* upon.

Recĭpio, ĕre, ĕpi, eptum, (*re, capio.*) To take back, receive, get again, recover. *Se recipere,* to betake one's self, withdraw, retreat, return, recover one's self; regain, bring off, rescue; allow, suffer; take.

Recĭto, āre, āvi, ātum. To read off, read aloud.

Reclīno, āre, āvi, ātum. To bend back, lean, lean upon, recline.

Recte, adv. In a straight line, rightly, properly, well.

Rectus, a, um, adj. Right, straight, direct, not crooked; right, good, reasonable.

Recupĕro, āre, āvi, ātum. To get again, get back, recover.

Recuso, āre, āvi, ātum, (*re, causa.*)

To refuse, deny, object, to be unwilling *or* reluctant.

Redditus, a, um, part. Restored, rendered.

Reddo, ĕre, didi, dĭtum, (*re, do.*) To give again, restore, deliver, make, render.

Redemptus, a, um, part., (*redĭmo.*) Ransomed, redeemed.

Redeo, ire, ii, ĭtum, (*re, eo.*) To return, come back; to be brought.

Redigo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, (*re, ago.*) To drive *or* bring back; reduce, constrain, compel. See p. 36, 18.

Redĭmo, ĕre, ēmi, emptum, (*re, emo.*) To repurchase, redeem, recover, liberate; acquire, procure.

Redintegratus, a, um, part. Renewed.

Redintegro, āre, āvi, ātum, (*re, integro.*) To renew, begin again, refresh, restore; recruit, revive; complete.

Reditio, ōnis, f., (*redeo.*) Return, a returning.

Reditus, ûs, m., (*redeo.*) A return.

Redūco, ĕre, xi, ctum. To bring *or* lead back, conduct back, draw back, remove.

Reductus, a, um, part., (*re, dūco.*) Brought *or* led back.

Refĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum. To bring *or* carry again; to return, restore; refer, attribute; tell, relate.

Refĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, (*re, facio.*) To make again, repair, rebuild; fill up, recruit, supply; recover.

Refractus, a, um, part. Broken, broken open.

Refringo, ĕre, ēgi, actum, (*re, frango.*) To break, break open *or* off; check, weaken, repress.

Refŭgio, ĕre, ūgi, ugitum. To flee *or* fly away, run back, recede; retire, retreat.

Regio, ōnis, f., (*rego.*) Region, territory, country, district.

Regius, a, um, adj., (*rex.*) Kingly, princely, royal.

Regno, āre, āvi, ātum. To reign, govern, rule.

Regnum, i, n. Kingdom, regal government; empire, dominion, sovereignty.

Rego, ĕre, xi, ctum. To manage, rule, guide.

Regrĕdior, i, essus sum, dep., (*re, gradior.*) To go back, return.

Regressus, a, um, part. Returned.

Rejĭcio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, (*re, jacio.*) To cast *or* fling back, throw in return; repel; reject, disapprove.

Relanguesco, ĕre, gui. To become weak again, relapse; to grow languid *or* feeble.

Relātus, a, um, part., (*refero.*) Brought back, brought.

Relēgo, āre, āvi, ātum. To send away, remove.

Relictus, a, um, (*relinquo.*) Left behind, left.

Religio, ōnis, f., (*relĕgo.*) Religion, devotion, piety; religious *or* superstitious feelings. See p. 88, 10; 127, 15.

Relinquo, ĕre, līqui, lictum To leave behind.

Reliquiae, arum, f. The remains; remainder, the rest.

Relĭquus, a, um, adj., (*relinquo.*) Remaining, rest, residue, other.

Remăneo, ēre, ansi, ansum. To stay, continue; hold out, last, endure.

Remedium, i, n., (*re, medeor.*) Remedy, cure.

Remex, ĭgis, m. A rower. See p. 59, 35.

Remĭgo, āre, āvi, ātum, (*remex.*) To row.

Remigro, āre, āvi, ātum. To go back, return.

Reminiscor, i, dep. To remember, recollect.

Remissus, a, um, part. and *adj.* Sent back, let loose; relaxed, careless, remiss.

Remitto, ĕre, misi, missum. To send back, return, slacken, let loose; remit, abate; give back; leave off, intermit, cease.

Remollesco, ĕre. To grow *or* become soft; to become effeminate *or* enervated.

Remōtus, a, um, part. and *adj.* Removed, withdrawn; remote, afar off.

Removeo, ēre, ōvi, ōtum. To remove, withdraw; draw off, take away.

Remunĕror, āri, ātus sum, dep. To remunerate, reward, return a kindness.

Remus, i, m. An oar.

Remus, i, m. One of the Remi.

Renŏvo, āre, āvi, ātum. To remake, renew.

Renuntiātus, a, um, part. Reported, declared.

Renuntio, āre, āvi, ātum. To bring *or* carry word back; report, declare, announce.

Repello, ĕre, pŭli, pulsum. To drive *or* beat back, repel.

Repente, adv., (repens.) Suddenly, unawares.

Repentīnus, a, um, adj. Unexpected, sudden.

Repĕrio, ire, pĕri, pertum. To find, find out; perceive, observe, learn; invent; acquire.

Repertus, a, um, part., (reperio.) Found out, discovered.

Repĕto, ĕre, ivi, itum. To ask *or* demand back.

Repleo, ēre, ēvi, ētum, (re, pleo.) To replenish, restore, furnish.

Replētus, a, um, part. Filled, replenished, provided.

Reporto, āre, āvi, ātum. To bring back, relate, carry back, report.

Reposco, ĕre, (re, posco.) To demand back, to ask; exact, require.

Repraesentō, āre, āvi, ātum, (re, praesento.) To represent.

Reprehendo, ĕre, di, sum, (re, prehendo.) To catch again, lay hold of; reprove, censure, rebuke, find fault with.

Repressus, a, um, part. Repressed, restrained.

Reprīmo, ĕre, essi, essum, (re, premo.) To repress, check, restrain, curb; hinder, prevent.

Repudio, āre, āvi, ātum, (repudium.) To reject, refuse, cast off, disown.

Repugno, āre, āvi, ātum. To fight against, resist, oppose.

Repŭli. See *Repello.*

Repulsus, a, um, part. Driven back, repelled.

Requīro, ĕre, sivi, situm, (re, quaero.) To seek again, seek after; require, demand, need; look in vain for, miss.

Res, rei, f. A thing, affair, matter; reality, deed, truth; circumstance; act, measure; purpose; point; business; a state, empire, government; interest; event, occurrence; circumstances, condition. See p. 26, 18.

Rescindo, ĕre, idi, issum. To cut, cut off, destroy; annul, make void.

Rescisco, ĕre, ivi, itum, (re, scisco.) To learn, find out.

Rescrībo, ĕre, psi, ptum, (re, scribo.) To write back, write word back, write again. See p. 34, 18.

Reservatus, a, um, part. Reserved.

Reservo, āre, āvi, ātum. To reserve, keep, restrain.

Resideo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, (re,

sedeo.) To sit; to remain behind, remain.

***Resido**, ere, sēdi, sessum, (re, sido.* To seat one's self, sit down; subside, abate, settle; be appeased.

***Resistens**, tis, part.* and *adj.* Halting; resisting; persevering, firm.

***Resisto**, ĕre, stiti, stitum.* To stand still, halt, continue; withstand, resist; hold out against, oppose.

***Respicio**, ĕre, exi, ectum, (re, specio.)* To look back, regard, consider, have respect to; recollect.

***Respondeo**, ēre, di, sum.* To promise in return, answer, reply.

***Responsum**, i, n.* A reply.

***Respublica**, ae, f., (res* and *publicus.)* The commonwealth, republic, government, politics.

***Respuo**, ĕre, ui, ūtum, (re, spuo.)* To spit out, reject, repel, refuse, be averse to, disapprove.

***Restinctus**, a, um, part.* Extinguished.

***Restinguo**, ĕre, nxi, nctum.* To extinguish, quench, put out.

Restiti. See *Resisto.*

***Restituo**, ĕre, ui, ūtum, (re, statuo.)* To replace; repair, rebuild, renew; reinstate, restore.

***Restitutus**, a, um, part.* Replaced, repaired, restored, renewed.

***Retineo**, ēre, tinui, tentum, (re, teneo.)* To hold back, keep in, detain; preserve; check; repress.

***Retraho**, ĕre, xi, ctum.* To draw back, pull back; bring back, recover.

Retuli. See *Refero.*

***Revello**, ĕre, velli, vulsum.* To pluck away, pull *or* tear up.

***Reversus**, a, um, part.* See *Reverto.*

***Reverto**, ĕre, ti, sum.* To turn back, turn over; come back.

***Revertor**, i, sus sum, dep.* To return.

***Revincio**, īre, vinxi, vinctum.* To tie, bind fast.

***Revocatus**, a, um, part.* Recalled, called back.

***Revoco**, āre, āvi, ātum.* To recall; turn away.

***Rex**, rēgis, m.* A king, sovereign, monarch.

***Rheda**, ae, f.* A coach.

***Rheno**, ōnis, m.* A reindeer. See p. 120, 24.

***Ripa**, ae, f.* The bank of a river.

***Rivus**, i, m.* A brook, rivulet, rill.

***Robur**, ŏris, n.* Hard oak. *Fig.*, strength of body, vigor.

***Rogātus**, a, um, part.* Asked, desired, requested.

***Rogo**, āre, āvi, ātum.* To ask, desire, request; demand, inquire.

***Romānus**, a, um, adj.* Of *or* belonging to Rome, Roman.

***Rostrum**, i, n., (rodo,* to gnaw.) The beak *or* bill of a bird; the beak of a ship. See p. 62, 2.

***Rota**, ae, f.* A wheel.

***Rubus**, i, m.* The bramble, blackberry-bush.

***Rumor**, ōris, m.* A rumor, popular report; fame.

***Rupes**, is, f.* A rock, crag, cliff.

***Rursus**, adv.* Backwards; again, on the other hand; again, a second time, afresh, anew.

S.

***S.** abbreviation,* thus *S. P. R. Senatus populi Romani,* the senate of the Roman people; *and again S. P. Q. R., senatus populusque Romanus,* the senate and Roman people.

***Sacerdos**, ōtis, m.* and *f.* A priest *or* priestess.

Sacramentum, i, n. An oath. See p. 111, 6.

Sacrificium, i, n., (sacrifico.) A sacrifice.

Saepe, adv. Often, oftentimes, many times, frequently. Comp., *saepius;* superl., *saepissime.*

Saevio, īre, ii, ītum. To rage, be fierce *or* cruel, to vent one's rage.

Sagitta, ae, f. An arrow, dart.

Sagittārius, i, m. An archer, bowman.

Sagŭlum, i, n. A thick, short upper garment *or* cloak, a soldier's cloak.

Saltus, ûs, m. A leaping, leap; forest, wood where cattle pasture; a narrow pass.

Salum, i, n. The sea, the deep.

Salus, ūtis, (salvus, safe.) Safety, health, preservation.

Sancio, īre, xi, ctum. To decree, ordain, fix, establish.

Sanctus, a, um, part. and *adj.* Holy, divine, sacred.

Sanguis, ĭnis, m. Blood.

Sanĭtas, ātis, f. Soundness of body, health; soundness of mind, sound judgment, good sense, reason, discretion, sanity.

Sano, āre, āvi, ātum, (sanus.) To heal, cure, restore to health; repair, restore.

Sanus, a, um, adj. Sound in health, in a good state of body, healthy, well, whole; sane, sober, wise, discreet.

Sanxi. See *Sancio.*

Sapio, ĕre, ivi. To taste *or* have a taste *or* relish; to be wise, circumspect, discreet.

Sarcĭna, ae, f., (sarcio.) A bundle, burden; load, pack; baggage, luggage. See p. 48, 17.

Sarcio, īre, sarsi, sartum. To mend, repair; make whole, make good, to make amends, to compensate. See p. 111, 10.

Sarmentum, i, n. A twig, a sere branch cut off.

Satis, adv. and *adj.* Sufficiently, enough, well enough; enough, sufficient.

Satisfăcio, ĕre, ēci, actum. To discharge *or* perform one's duty, give satisfaction, satisfy; to satisfy by an excuse, to make an apology.

Satisfactio, ōnis, f. A satisfaction, a satisfying by payment; amends, reparation; justification, excuse, apology.

Saucius, a, um, adj. Wounded, hurt, injured.

Saxum, i, n. A rock, a large stone.

Scalae, ārum, f., (scando.) A ladder, stair.

Scapha, ae, f. A skiff, bark, boat, small vessel.

Scelerātus, a, um, adj. Wicked, bad, impious, vicious.

Scelus, ĕris, n. Crime, enormity; misdeed, sin.

Scientia, ae, f., (sciens.) Knowledge, science; skill, expertness.

Scindo, ĕre, scidi, scissum. To cut, tear, rend; split, divide; to destroy, overthrow, raze.

Scio, ire, ivi, itum. To know, understand.

Scopŭlus, i, m. A high rock, cliff, crag. See p. 62, 4.

Scorpio, ōnis, m. A scorpion, an engine for throwing stones, darts, &c. See p. 141, 26.

Scribo, ĕre, psi, ptum. To engrave, imprint, mark, write.

Scrobis and *scrobs, bis, m.* and *f.* A ditch, furrow, hole. See p. 162, 23.

Scutum, i, n. A buckler, shield, target.

Se. See *Sui.*

Sebum, i, n. Tallow, suet.

Secius. See *Secus.*

Secludo, ĕre, si, sum, (*se, claudo.*) To shut up apart, *or* in a separate place; to seclude, separate, confine.

Seclusus, a, um, part., (*secludo.*) Secluded, shut out.

Seco, āre, cui, ctum. To cut, cut off.

Secrēto, adv. Separately, apart, secretly, privily.

Sectio, ōnis, f., (*seco.*) A cutting, cutting off; section, division; booty, spoils. See p. 54, 38.

Sector, āri, ātus sum, dep., (*sequor.*) To follow, follow after; attend, accompany; to pursue, chase, hunt after.

Sectūra, ae, f. A cutting, the act of cutting. See p. 65, 26.

Secum. See *Sui.*

Secundo, adv. Secondly, in the second place, favorable.

Secundum, adv. and *prep.* After, immediately after, behind. *Prep.* with *acc.*, nigh, near, just by, close to.

Secundus, a, um, adj. Following; the second, second; favoring, favorable.

Secūris, is, f. An axe, a hatchet. See p. 165, 18.

Secus, comp., *secius, adv.* Not so, otherwise, differently.

Secutus, a, um, part. See *Sequor.*

Sed, conj. But; now. See p. 159, 3.

Sedĕcim, Sexdecim, num. adj. Sixteen.

Sedes, is, f., (*sedeo.*) A seat, place to sit on; a seat, abode, dwelling place, mansion, residence; settlement; place, spot.

Seditio, ōnis, f., (*sedeo,* to sit.) Dissension, discord, strife; a popular commotion *or* insurrection; civil discord, sedition.

Seditiōsus, a, um, adj. Turbulent, tumultuous, seditious; treasonable, factious.

Seges, ĕtis, f. Standing corn, growing corn, a crop; land that is sown.

Semel, adv. Once, a single time.

Sementis, is, f., (*semen,* seed.) A sowing.

Semĕta, ae, f. A narrow way, path, footpath.

Semper, adv. Always, forever, continually.

Senātor, ōris, m., (*senex,* old.) A senator, member of the senate.

Senātus, ûs, m., (*senex.*) A senate; the senate of Rome.

Senatusconsultum, i, n. An act, ordinance *or* decree of the senate.

Senex, senis, adj. Old, aged. *Subs.* An old man, *or* woman.

Seni, ae, a, um, num. adj., (*sex.*) Six; *distributively,* six each.

Sententia, ae, f., (*sentio.*) Opinion, idea, thought; a vote, judgment, sentence; resolution; intention, purpose, design.

Sentio, ĕre, nsi, nsum. To discern by the senses, be sensible of, perceive; to see, perceive, notice, observe, discover; to think, judge, imagine, suppose.

Sentis, is, m. A brier, bramble, thorn.

Separātim, adv. Separately, apart, severally.

Separātus, a, um, adj. Separate, distinct.

Sepăro, āre, āvi, ātum, (*se,* apart, and *paro.*) To sever, separate, part, disjoin, divide.

Sepes, is, f. A hedge, any enclosure.

Septem, num. adj. Seven.

Septemtriōnes, um, m. pl. The seven stars which form the constellation called Arctos, the Bear,

Charles's Wain; the North Pole, the north.

Septimus, a, um, num. adj. The seventh.

Septingenti, ae, a, num. adj. Seven hundred.

Septuaginta, num. adj. Seventy.

Sepultūra, ae, f., (*sepelio,* to bury.) The act of burying; burial, interment; a funeral; funeral rites, obsequies. See p. 25, 16.

Sequanus, a, um, adj. Of the Sequani, Sequanian. *Noun,* a Sequanian.

Sequor, i, cūtus sum, dep. To go *or* come after, to walk behind, to follow; to accompany, attend; to pursue, follow after; to seek for, to seek to attain, to aim at.

Sermo, ōnis, m. A discourse, talk, speech; conversation, discourse.

Sero, adv. Late, too late. Comp. *serius,* superl. *serissime.*

Sero, ĕre, sēvi, sătum. To sow, plant.

Servīlis, e, adj. Of *or* pertaining to a slave, slavish, servile. See p. 32, 23.

Servio, īre, īvi, ītum. To be a slave, to serve in the capacity of a servant *or* slave, to be subject to, to devote one's self to.

Servitus, ūtis, f. Slavery, servitude, bondage, subjection.

Servo, āre, āvi, ātum. To save, preserve; to observe, keep, maintain; to guard, watch, observe.

Servus, i, m. A slave, bondman, servant.

Sese. See *Sui.*

Sesquipedālis, e, adj., (*sesqui,* half as much, *pedālis.*) Sesquipedal, of a foot and a half.

Seu, conj., (*sive.*) Whether. *Seu* .... *seu* or *sive,* whether .... or either .... or.

Severitas, ātis, f. Gravity, seriousness, severity, harshness, rigor, strictness, austereness.

Sevŏco, āre, āvi, ātum. To call apart *or* aside, to draw aside; to separate, remove.

Sevum, i, n. See *Sebum.*

Sex, num. adj. Six.

Sexaginta, num. adj. Sixty.

Sexcenti, ae, a, num. adj. Six hundred.

Sexdĕcim, sedĕcim, num. adj. Sixteen.

Si, conj. If, if indeed; since, because, inasmuch as; whether if, if perchance; if, although, even though.

Sibi. See *Sui.*

Sic, adv. So, thus, after this fashion, in this way; thus, in this shape *or* form. Followed by *ut,* so that; so as.

Siccĭtas, ātis, f. Dryness, want of moisture; drought, dry weather, want of rain.

Sicut, sicŭti, adv., (*sic ut; sic uti.*) So as, just as, as it were, as if

Sidus, ĕris, n. A constellation, cluster of stars; a star.

Signĭfer, ĕra, ĕrum, adj., (*signum, fero.*) Bearing a mark, sign, figure, *or* image. *Noun,* a standard-bearer, ensign.

Significatio, ōnis, f. Intimation, expression, declaration; meaning, signification, sense, import.

Significo, āre, āvi, ātum, (*signum, facio.*) To give *or* make a sign, to give notice *or* warning; to signify, indicate, show, declare, manifest.

Signum, i, n. A mark, sign; signal, watchword; standard, ensign. See p. 49, 24.

Silentium, i, n., (*sileo,* to be silent.)

A being silent, silence, quietness, stillness.

Silva, ae, f. A wood *or* forest, woody ground.

Silvester, silvestris, e, adj. Full of woods, woody.

Similis, e, adj. Like, resembling, similar.

Similitūdo, ĭnis, f. Likeness, resemblance, similarity; affinity.

Simul, adv. Together, at once; at the same time; as soon as.

Simulăcrum, i, n, (simulo.) The likeness *or* representation; an image, picture, figure, effigy.

Simulatio, ōnis, f., (simulo.) A pretending to be what one is not, a show, seeming; a counterfeiting; pretence, color, disguise; insincerity, hypocrisy, deceit.

Simulatque. As soon as.

Simŭlo, āre, āvi, ātum. To simulate, counterfeit, feign, pretend.

Simultas, ātis, f. Secret grudge, dissembled animosity *or* hatred; grudge; hatred; jealousy, rivalry.

Sin, conj. But if, if however. *Sin autem*, but if.

Sincēre, adv. From one's heart, sincerely, plainly, frankly, openly, ingenuously, without disguise.

Sine, prep. with *ablat.* Without.

Singillātim, adv. See *Singulatim.*

Singulāris, e, adj. One only, single; one of its kind, one and no more; extraordinary, excellent, remarkable, singular.

Singulātim, adv. Singly, one by one, piece by piece, man by man.

Singŭlus, a, um, num. adj. Single, one separate from another; one, one to each; each, every.

Sinister, tra, trum, adj. Left, on the left, on the left hand *or* side; sinister, adverse, contrary; baleful, pernicious, bad.

Sinistrorsus, adv. Towards the left hand, on the left.

Sino, ĕre, sivi, situm. To permit, suffer, allow, give one leave, let one do a thing.

Si quando, adv. If ever, if at any time.

Situs, ûs, m. Site, situation, local position.

Sive, conj. Or if, or, whether; if either, or whether.

Sŏcer, ĕri, m. A father-in-law.

Sociĕtas, ātis, f. Any connection of one person *or* thing with another; union, company, conjunction; a league, alliance, confederacy.

Socius, a, um, adj. Connected, united, associated. *A noun*, a companion, an associate, a partner.

Sol, sōlis, m. The sun.

Solatium, i, n. Comfort, consolation, assistance, relief.

Soldurii, ōrum, m. A kind of vassals or retainers in Gaul, who devoted themselves to the service of some great man. See p. 65, 32.

Soleo, ēre, ĭtus sum. To be accustomed *or* wont.

Solertia, ae, f. Ingenuity, sagacity, quickness; shrewdness, skill.

Solitūdo, ĭnis, f., (solus.) A lonely *or* solitary place; a desert, wilderness; solitude, retirement.

Sollicitātio, ōnis, f. A troubling, disturbing, trouble, care; an instigating, instigation.

Sollicitatus, part. Moved, tempted, instigated.

Sollicĭto, āre, āvi, ātum, (solo, cieo.) To move, stir, remove; tempt, urge, rouse; allure, entice, invite.

Sollicitūdo, ĭnis, f., (sollicitus, anxious.) Anxiety, disquiet, trouble, uneasiness.

Solum, i, n. The ground, basis;

soil, land, country; a bottom, floor.

***Solum**, adv.* Only, alone.

***Solus**, a, um, adj.* Alone, only; unaccompanied, lonely, solitary.

***Solvo**, ĕre, solvi, solūtum.* To loose, unloose, unbind.

***Somnus**, i, m.* Sleep, slumber, repose.

***Sonĭtus**, ûs, m.* A sound, noise, din.

***Sono**, āre, ui, ĭtum.* To sound, make a noise, resound.

***Sonus**, i, m.* A sound, noise, din.

***Soror**, ōris, f.* A sister.

***Sors**, tis, f., (sero.)* Lot, chance, fortune. See p. 38, 22.

***Spatium**, i, n., (pateo,* to be open.) A course, race, interval, distance, space, length, extent.

***Species**, ĕi, f., (specio,* to see.) A form, figure, fashion, shape, appearance; a sight, spectacle; semblance, pretence.

***Specto**, āre, āvi, ātum, (specio.)* To look, see; observe; intend, endeavor, tend; try, examine, prove; to look *or* be turned towards; to belong, concern; expect, wait for.

***Speculātor**, ōris, m.* Spy, scout, messenger. See p. 46, 5.

***Speculatorius**, a, um, adj.* Belonging to spying.

***Specŭlor**, āri, ātus sum, dep.* To see, look around; espy, reconnoitre; watch, observe, wait for; explore.

***Spero**, āre, āvi, ātum.* To hope, trust, expect.

***Spes**, spĕi, f.* Hope, expectation, confidence.

***Spirĭtus**, ûs, m.* Wind, air; spirit, soul; elevation of mind, courage, pride, energy; haughtiness, arrogance.

***Spoliatus**, a, um, part.* Plundered, despoiled.

***Spolio**, āre, āvi, ātum, (spolium,* spoil.) To strip, rob, plunder, spoil, deprive.

***Spolium**, i, n.* The stripped skin of an animal; booty, spoil, plunder.

***Spons**, tis, f.* Will.

***Stabilio**, īre, īvi, ītum, (stabilis,* firm.) To make steadfast, firm, stable *or* sure; to prop, support, settle, fix, establish.

***Stabilĭtas**, ātis, f.* Firmness, stability.

***Statim**, adv.* Immediately, forthwith, straightway; firmly, immoveably; constantly.

***Statio**, ōnis, f., (sto.)* The act of standing; a stay, sojourn; a station, outpost, picket.

***Statīvus**, a, um, adj.* Standing, standing still.

***Statuo**, ĕre, ui, ūtum.* To set up, raise, erect; determine, decide, give sentence, pass judgment; maintain, judge, think, conclude.

***Statūra**, ae, f.* Stature, size, height of body.

***Status**, ûs, m.* A standing, state, condition, station; circumstances.

***Stimŭlus**, i, m.* A prickle, any thing sharp-pointed, such, *for example*, as were concealed under the surface of the ground, in order to annoy an enemy, especially his cavalry; incitement, spur.

***Stipendiarius**, a, um, adj.* Tributary, stipendiary. See p. 26, 35.

***Stipendium**, i, n., (stips,* a contribution, *pendo.)* The pay of soldiers, a tax, tribute, a contribution.

***Stipes**, ĭtis, m.* A stake, post; trunk of a tree.

***Stirps**, pis, f.* The root *or* trunk of a tree; the stock, family, tribe, race.

Sto, stāre, stĕti, stātum. To stand, stand firm; to stand still, not to move; to maintain one's rank, dignity *or* power; to stand to, abide by.

Stramentum, i, n., (sterno, to spread.) Straw, thatch; a covering, coverlet.

Strepĭtus, ûs, m. Confused noise, rustling, rattling, clashing, din.

Stringo, ĕre, inxi, ictum. To draw tight, to press together, to hold fast.

Struo, ĕre, xi, ctum. To build, erect, rear, fabricate, construct.

Studeo, ĕre ui. To attend to, apply the mind to, to study, cultivate; to desire, wish, to be anxious.

Studiōse, adv. Carefully, attentively, studiously, sedulously, eagerly.

Studium, i, n. Eagerness, zeal; fondness, desire, inclination; endeavor, exertion; study; employment, pursuit.

Stultitia, ae, f., (stultus, foolish.) Folly, foolishness, imprudence.

Sub, prep. with *acc.* or *abl.* Under, beneath, at the foot of, at, by, during, towards, about, on.

Subactus, a, um, part., (subigo.) Kneaded; subdued, constrained.

Subdŏlus, a, um, adj. Cunning, crafty, deceitful, sly, subtle.

Subdūco, ĕre, xi, ctum, (sub, duco.) To draw from under, draw away, withdraw; draw off, lead away; haul to land, draw ashore.

Subductio, ōnis, f. The act of drawing up. See p. 85, 6.

Subeo, īre, ivi, ii, ĭtum, (sub, eo.) To go under, enter, advance, approach; encounter, undergo.

Subfossus, a, um, part. See *Subfodio,* or *Suffodio.*

Subĭgo, ĕre, ēgi, actum. To force, compel, constrain, oblige; to drive; to reduce, subdue.

Subĭto, adv. Suddenly, on a sudden; hastily, quickly.

Subitus, a, um, adj. Sudden, unexpected.

Subjectus, a, um, part. Put, placed below, subjected.

Subjĭcio, ĕre, jēci, jectum, (sub, jacio.) To throw, put, lay *or* set under *or* below; to expose, subject, make liable.

Sublatus, a, um, part. and *adj.*, ***(sustollo.)*** Lifted up; proud, haughty; taken away.

Sublĕvo, āre, āvi, ātum. To lift, raise *or* hold up, lift from the ground, support; lighten, lessen, diminish; ease, relieve.

Sublica, ae, f. A stake, pile. See p. 76, 22.

Subluo, ĕre, ui, ūtum. To wash underneath, rinse, bathe.

Subministrātus, a, um, part. Furnished, supplied.

Subministro, āre, āvi, ātum. To furnish, afford, supply.

Submitto, ĕre, isi, issum, (sub, mitto.) To send privily, send after, furnish, send, dispatch.

Submōtus, a, um, part. Displaced, sent away, dismissed.

Submoveo, ēre, ōvi, ōtum. To remove, displace, remove out of the way, drive back.

Subruo, ĕre, ui, ŭtum, (sub, ruo.) To dig under, undermine, pull down, overturn, demolish.

Subsecūtus, a, um, part. See *Subsequor.*

Subsequor, i, cūtus sum, dep. To follow forthwith, soon, *or* near after; to come after.

Subsidĕo, ēre, ēdi, essum, (sub, sedeo.) See *Subsido.*

Subsidium, i, n., (subsideo, to sit

below.) A body of troops in reserve; help, reinforcement; defence; remedy.

Subsido, ĕre, idi and *ēdi, essum.* To sink down, remain, stay, stay behind.

Subsisto, ĕre, stiti. To stop, stay, remain, abide; stand still, halt; withstand.

Subsum, esse, fui. To be under, near, near at hand.

Subtrăho, ĕre, xi, ctum, (sub, traho.) To take away, take away below *or* secretly; remove, withdraw.

Subvectio, ōnis, f. A carrying, conveying.

Subvĕho, ĕre, xi, ctum. To carry, bring up, convey.

Subvĕnio, ire, ēni, entum. To come on, *or* after; assist, relieve, aid, succor.

Succēdo, ĕre, essi, essum, (sub, cedo.) To go into, enter; approach, advance; succeed, come after; be attended with success, prosper; supply the place of.

Succendo, ĕre, di, sum, (sub, cando.) To set fire to, set on fire, kindle, burn.

Succensus, a, um, part., (succendo.) Set on fire, lighted, burnt.

Successus, ûs, m. An advancing, approaching; success, prosperity, good fortune.

Succisus, a, um, part., (succīdo, to cut down.) Felled, cut down.

Succumbo, ere, cubui, cubĭtum, (sub, cumbo.) To sink under, faint, yield.

Succurro, ĕre, cucurri and *curri, cursum, (sub, curro.)* To run, go near, hasten to; succor, aid, assist, help, relieve.

Sudes, is, f. A thick stake, pile driven into the ground in fortifications.

Sudor, ōris, m. Sweat; toil, exertion.

Suevus, a, um, adj. Of *or* belonging to the Suevi; Suevian.

Sufficio, ĕre, ēci, ectum, (sub, facio.) To substitute; supply; be sufficient *or* able.

Suffŏdio, ĕre, ōdi, ossum, (sub, fodio.) To dig under, undermine; stab below.

Suffossus, a, um, part., (suffodio.)

Suffragium, i, n., (sub, frango.) A vote, *or* suffrage.

Suggestus, ûs, m., (suggero, to put under.) An elevated place See p. 112, 28.

Sui, pro. Of himself, herself, itself *or* themselves. *Sese; secum.*

Sum, esse, fui. To be; exist, live; stay, remain, continue.

Summa, ae, f. The sum *or* aggregate; the whole; management.

Summum, i, n. Top *or* summit.

Summus, a, um, adj., (superl. of *superus.)* Highest, uppermost; chief, supreme; most important; the summit of.

Sumo, ĕre, mpsi, mptum, (sub, emo.) To take, take up; procure; undertake, begin; arrogate, assume.

Sumptuōsus, a, um, adj. Expensive, costly, sumptuous, splendid.

Sumptus, ûs, m., (sumo.) Charge, expense, cost.

Sumptus, a, um, part., (sumo.) Taken, assumed.

Super, adv. and *prep.* with *acc.* or *abl.* Above, over, upon.

Superatus, a, um, part., (supero.) Conquered, vanquished, overcome.

Superbe, adv. Proudly, haughtily, insolently.

Superfui. See *Supersum.*

Superior, us, adj. Higher, upper; past, former, superior.

Supĕro, āre, āvi, ātum, (super

above.) To outdo, surpass, excel, overcome; vanquish, subdue; prevail; climb over; remain.

Supersedeo, ēre, sēdi, sessum, (super, sedeo.) To sit upon; omit, forbear, cease.

Supersum, esse, fui, (super, sum.) To remain, be left behind; survive.

Supĕrus, a, um, adj., (comp., *superior;* superl., *supremus* or *summus.*) Above, upper, on high.

Suppĕto, ĕre, īvi, ītum, (sub, peto.) To occur; be near at hand, be in store.

Supplementum, i, n., (*suppleo,* to fill up.) A supply, filling up; reinforcement; recruits.

Supplex, ĭcis, adj., (*sub, plico,* to fold.) Suppliant, humble, prostrate.

Supplicatio, ōnis, f., (*supplico,* to supplicate.) Supplication. See p. 55, 15.

Suppliciter, adv., (*supplex.*) Suppliantly, humbly, submissively.

Supplicium, i, n., (*supplex.*) A supplication, supplicatory sacrifice; punishment, torture.

Supporto, āre, āvi, ātum, (sub, porto.) To carry, convey, import, bring.

Supra, adv. and *prep.* Above, over, upon; before.

Suscĭpio, ĕre, cēpi, ceptum, (sub, capio.) To take *or* lift up; receive, catch; undertake.

Suspectus, a, um, adj., (*suspicio.*) Suspicious, that excites suspicion.

Suspĭcio, ĕre, pexi, pectum, (sub, specio.) To look up; suspect.

Suspicio, ōnis, f. Suspicion, distrust; cause *or* ground of suspicion.

Suspĭcor, āri, ātus sum, dep. To suspect, apprehend, fear, mistrust.

Sustentātus, a, um, part. Upheld, sustained; withstood.

Sustento, āre, āvi, ātum. To uphold, maintain, support; nourish; withstand, oppose, hold out, endure.

Sustĭneo, ēre, tinui, tentum, (sursum, teneo.) To sustain, support; check, restrain; endure, support; withstand.

Sustollo, ĕre, tŭli, sublātum, (sub, tollo.) To raise *or* lift up; take away; bear.

Suus, a, um, poss. and *reflexive pro.* One's own; belonging *or* relating to him, her, it *or* them.

T.

Tabernacŭlum, i, n. A tent.

Tabŭla, ae, f. A board, plank; painting, picture; tablet covered with wax for writing on; register; writing book. See p. 126, 14.

Tabulatio, ōnis, f., (*tabulo.*) A covering with boards *or* planks; a planking, flooring; a boarded floor.

Tabulātium, i, n., (*tabulo,* to cover with boards.) A story in a building; a boarded floor.

Taceo, ēre, ui, ĭtum. To be silent, hold one's peace, say nothing; to be silent with regard to any thing, keep secret.

Tacĭtus, a, um, adj. Silent, saying nothing.

Talea, ae, f. Any piece cut off; stake fixed in the ground. See p. 91, 5.

Talis, e, adj. Such, of this *or* that kind, such like.

Tam, adv. So, so much, so very.

Tamen, conj. Notwithstanding, nevertheless, yet, however; at least.

Tametsi, conj. Though, although, albeit.

Tandem, adv. At length, at last, finally.

Tango, ĕre, tetigi, tactum. To touch, border upon, be contiguous to.

Tantopĕre, adv. So much, so greatly, to such a degree.

Tantŭlus, a, um, adj. So little, so small, so trifling.

Tantum, adv. So much, so far; only, alone, merely.

Tantummŏdo, adv. Only, if only.

Tantundem, adv. So much, so far.

Tantus, a, um, adj. So great, so much, such; so little, so small.

Tardātus, a, um, part., (tardo.) Retarded, stopped, delayed, checked.

Tarde, adv. Slowly, tardily. Comp., *tardius; s., tardissime.*

Tardo, āre, āvi, ātum. To tarry, delay, linger, loiter; impede, hinder.

Tardus, a, um, adj. Slow, tardy, sluggish, slack.

Taurus, i, m. A bull.

Taxus, i, f. The yew-tree.

Te. See *Tu.*

Tectum, i, n. The covering *or* roof of a house; a house, dwelling.

Tectus, a, um, part. and *adj.* Covered; protected, defended, safe.

Tegimentum, i, n. A covering. See p. 50, 9.

Tego, ĕre, texi, tectum. To cover; conceal, disguise; defend, protect.

Telum, i, n. A missile weapon; dart, spear, javelin. See p. 50, 4.

Temerarius, a, um, adj. Imprudent, inconsiderate, rash, headstrong.

Temere, adv. Without reason; at random, thoughtlessly; easily, readily.

Temerĭtas, ātis, f. Inconsiderateness, imprudence, temerity.

Temo, ōnis, m. The pole *or* draught-tree of a chariot.

Temperantia, ae, f. Moderation, temperance, abstinence, self-control.

Temperātus, a, um, adj. Temperate, moderate, sober, mild.

Tempero, āre, āvi, ātum, (tempus, time.) To mingle in due proportion, temper; moderate, restrain; abstain, forbear, refrain from; mitigate, soften, mollify.

Tempestas, ātis, f. Time; a period, season; weather; stormy, rough, *or* boisterous weather; a storm, tempest.

Tempus, ŏris, n. Time, part of time, a season.

Tendo, ĕre, tetendi, tensum and *tentum.* To stretch, stretch out, extend; go, advance. See p. 127, 5.

Tenebrae, ārum, f. Darkness, obscurity, gloom.

Teneo, ēre, tenui, tentum, (tendo.) To hold, hold fast, keep, have; to possess, occupy, gain possession of; keep on, continue; defend, keep possession of; detain, keep back.

Tener, ĕra, ĕrum, adj., (teneo.) Soft, tender, pliant, yielding, young.

Tentātus, a, um. Tried, proved.

Tento, āre, āvi, ātum. To feel, examine, try, endeavor, attempt; prove, put to the test; attack, assail; tamper with, entice to revolt.

Tenuis, e, adj. Thin, slender, fine, tender; small, slight, trifling, mean, poor.

Tenuĭtas, ātis, f. Thinness, fineness, rarity; poverty, slenderness of means.

Tenuĭter, adv. Thinly, slenderly, finely.

Ter, adv. Three times, thrice.

Teres, ĕtis, adj. Slender, smooth; long, round and smooth *or* even.

Tergum, i, n. The back of men *or* animals.

Terni, ae, a, adj. Three, three each.

Terra, ae, f. The earth, a country, region. See p. 26, 29.

Terrēnus, a, um, adj. Of earth, earthy.

Terreo, ēre, ui, ĭtum. To affright, frighten, alarm, terrify, deter.

Terrĭto, āre, āvi, ātum. To terrify often *or* much.

Terror, ōris, m., (terreo.) Terror, affright, great fear.

Tertio, adv. For the third time, in the third place.

Tertius, a, um, num. adj., (ter.) Third, the third.

Testamentum, i, n., (testor, to testify.) A testament, last will.

Testimonium, i, n. Testimony, proof, evidence.

Testis, is, c. A witness.

Testūdo, ĭnis, f. A tortoise; a wooden covering *or* shed, under which the besiegers stood, and applied the battering-ram; a covering of shields. See p. 44, 7.

Texi. See *Tego.*

Tibi. See *Tu.*

Tignum, i, n. A beam *or* piece of timber for building, building timber.

Timeo, ēre, ui. To fear, be afraid of, apprehend, dread.

Timĭde, adv. Fearfully, timidly.

Timĭdus, a, um, adj., (timeo.) Timid, fearful, cowardly, afraid.

Timor, ōris, m., (timeo.) Fear, apprehension; dread, anxiety, alarm.

Tolĕro, āre, āvi, ātum. To bear, bear patiently, support, tolerate, endure; maintain, nourish; keep, hold

Tollo, ĕre, sustŭli, sublātum. To raise, lift *or* take up; set up, send up; take away, remove.

Tormentum, i, n., (torqueo, to twist.) A warlike engine for throwing stones, darts, and other missiles; the missile itself; rope, cord; torment, torture.

Torreo, ēre, torrui, tostum. To dry, parch, singe, bake, roast.

Tot, num. adj. So many.

Totidem, num. adj., (tot, idem.) As many, just so many.

Totus, a, um, adj. The whole, all, the entire.

Trabs, trabis, f. A beam, rafter.

Tractus, a, um, part., (traho.) Dragged, drawn, drawn away.

Tractus, ûs, m. A drawing *or* dragging; tract, region, country, clime.

Tradĭtus, a, um, part. Given, delivered, surrendered; handed down.

Trado, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum, (trans, do.) To give, consign, deliver; pass from hand to hand; give up; surrender; recommend, commend; narrate, relate.

Tradūco. See *Transduco.*

Tragŭla, ae, f. A sort of missile weapon *or* javelin. See p. 25, 9.

Traho, ĕre, traxi, ctum. To draw, draw away, drag; draw out, spin out, protract, detain, put off.

Trajĭcio, ere, jēci, jectum, (trans, jacio.) To throw *or* cast over; transport across, convey across; thrust *or* pierce through, transfix.

Tranquillĭtas, ātis, f. Stillness *or* calmness of the sea, a calm; calmness, stillness; quiet, rest, tranquillity.

Trans, prep. with *acc.* On the farther side of, over, beyond.

Transalpīnus, a, um, adj. That lies beyond the Alps, Transalpine.

Transcendo, ĕre, di, sum, (*trans, scando.*) To climb *or* mount over, surmount, pass, cross.

Transdo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum. See *Trado.*

Transdūco, ĕre, xi, ctum. To carry *or* bring over, transfer, transport, lead.

Transeo, īre, ii, ĭtum. To go, *or* pass over, *or* beyond; cross, pass.

Transfĕro, ferre, tŭli, lātum. To carry *or* bring over; transfer, transport.

Transfigo, ĕre, xi, ixum. To run *or* thrust through; transfix, pierce, perforate.

Transfixus, a, um, part., (*transfigo.*) Pierced, transfixed.

Transfŏdio, ĕre, ōdi, ossum. To run *or* thrust through; pierce through, transfix.

Transfūga, ae, m. A deserter. See p. 64, 4.

Transgrĕdior, ĕdi, gressus sum, dep., (*trans, gradior.*) To go *or* pass over, cross.

Transĭtus, ûs, m. A passing *or* going over, a passage, crossing.

Transjectus, ûs, m. A passing over, passage.

Transjĭcio, ĕre, jēci, jectum, (*trans, jacio.*) See *Trajicio.*

Transmarīnus, a, um, adj. Beyond sea, coming from beyond sea, transmarine.

Transmissus, a, um, part., (*transmitto.*) Sent *or* passed over, transported.

Transmissus, ûs, m. A passing over, passage.

Transmitto, ĕre, isi, issum, (*trans, mitto.*) To send over, transmit.

Transnato, āre, āvi, ātum, (*trans, nato.*) To cross by swimming, swim over.

Transporto, āre, āvi, ātum, (*trans, porto.*) To carry, convey, *or* bring over from one place to another, to transport.

Transrhenānus, a, um, adj. On the other *or* north side of the Rhine.

Transrhenāni, ōrum, m. Those living beyond the Rhine.

Transtrum, i, n. A bench *or* seat for rowers. See p. 61, 30.

Transvĕho, ĕre, exi, ectum. To carry, convey, *or* bring over, transport.

Transversus, a, um, adj. Athwart, crosswise, transverse, oblique.

Trecenti, ae, a, num. adj., (*tres, centum.*) Three hundred.

Trepĭdo, āre, āvi, ātum, (*trepidus,* fearful.) To hurry with alarm, be in a state of trepidation and alarm, run up and down in fear and confusion, hasten about, to be agitated, be alarmed.

Tres, tria, num. adj. Three.

Trevir, tri, m. One of the Treviri. *Adj.,* Trevirian.

Tribūnus, i, m. A tribune. See p. 31, 27.

Tribuo, ĕre, ui, ūtum. To give, present, bestow, impart; ascribe, impute, attribute, assign; concede, grant, yield, give up to; pay great regard *or* deference to.

Tribus, ûs, f. A tribe.

Tribus. See *Tres.*

Tribūtum, i, n. Tax, contribution, tribute, impost.

Triduum, i, n. The space of three days.

Triennium, i, n., (*tres, annus.*) The space of three years.

Trini, ae, a, num. adj. Three each, three.

Tripartīto, adv., (*tripartitus,* from *tres, partior.*) In three parts, into three parts.

Triplex, *icis*, *adj*., (*tres*, *plico*, to fold.) Threefold, triple.

Triquĕtrus, *a*, *um*, *adj*. Having three corners *or* angles, three-cornered, triangular.

Tristis, *e*, *adj*. Sad, sorrowful; dejected, melancholy.

Tristitia, *ae*, *f*. Sadness, sorrow, grief.

Truncus, *i*, *m*. The trunk, stock, *or* body of a tree.

Tu, *tui*, *subst*. *pron*., *m*. and *f*. Thou, you; *pl*. *vos*, *vestrum*, or *vestri*, you.

Tuba, *ae*, *f*. The tuba, a trumpet. See p. 49, 26.

Tueor, *ēri*, *tuitus* and *tutus sum*, *dep*. To see, view, behold; take care of, protect, defend; support, keep, maintain.

Tuli. See *Fero*.

Tum, *adv*. and *conj*. Again, besides, moreover, next, in the next place; at that time, then; and, so, also.

Tumultuo, *āre*, *āvi*, *ātum*. To make a bustle, tumult, *or* disturbance.

Tumultuōse, *adv*. Tumultuously, in a disorderly manner.

Tumultus, *ûs*, *m*. A tumult, broil; bustle, disturbance, uproar; sedition, insurrection, mutiny. See p. 32, 23.

Tumŭlus, *i*, *m*. A hill, hillock, mound.

Tunc, *adv*. Then, at that time.

Turma, *ae*, *f*. A division of Roman cavalry, consisting of thirty men, (according to Veget. thirty-two;) a troop *or* squadron of horse.

Turpis, *e*, *adj*. Ugly, deformed, unseemly, unsightly; shameful, base, dishonorable, infamous, scandalous.

Turpĭter, *adv*. In an ugly *or* unsightly manner, basely, shamefully, disgracefully, ingloriously.

Turpitūdo, *inis*, *f*. Deformity, ugliness; baseness, dishonor, disgrace, infamy.

Turris, *is*, *f*. A tower; a moveable tower, principally of wood, used in besieging cities. See p. 46, 33; 102, 15.

Tute and ***Tuto***, *adv*. Safely, securely, without danger.

Tutus, *a*, *um*, *adj*. Safe, secure, protected, out of danger.

Tuus, *a*, *um*, *pron*. Thine, yours.

U.

Ubi, *adv*. and *conj*. Where, in what *or* which place; when, as soon as.

Ulciscor, *i*, *ultus sum*, *dep*. To revenge, avenge.

Ullus, *a*, *um*, *adj*. Any, any one.

Ulterior, *us*, *adj*. Farther, on the farther side; more remote, distant.

Ultimus, *a*, *um*, *adj*. Farthest, most distant, most remote.

Ultra, *adv*. and *prep*. Beyond, past, farther.

Ultro, *adv*., with *citro*. On one side and the other, on both sides, this way and that, to and fro; of one's own accord, voluntarily, spontaneously.

Ultus, *a*, *um*, *part*., (*ulciscor*.) Having revenged.

Ululātus, *ûs*, *m*. A howling *or* yelling; a shout.

Una, *adv*., (*unus*.) Together, in company with *or* along with; at the same time.

Unde, *adv*. Whence? from what place? from whom, from which, *of a person, place or thing*.

Undĕcim, *num*. *adj*. Eleven.

Undecimus, *a*, *um*, *num*. *adj*. The eleventh.

Undequadraginta, num. adj., (*unus, de, quadraginta.*) Thirty-nine.

Undique, adv., (*unde, que.*) From all parts, sides *or* places; from every part, from all quarters; on all sides.

Universus, a, um, adj., (*unus, versus.*) Whole, entire, all together.

Unquam, adv., (*unus, quam.*) Ever, at any time.

Unus, a, um, adj. One, a single, one alone, one only, alone; only one; the same, one and the same.

Urbānus, a, um, adj. Of *or* pertaining to the city.

Urbs, urbis, f. A city, the city, (Rome.)

Urgeo, ēre, ursi. To press upon, press hard *or* close upon, urge, drive, impel; press hard, bear down, weigh down, oppress.

Urus, i, m. A kind of wild ox. See p. 122, 27.

Usitatus, a, um, adj. Usual, accustomed, ordinary, common, customary.

Usque, adv. Even, quite, as far as. With *eo*, so far, to such a degree.

Usus, ûs, m. Use, exercise, experience, practice, expertness, skill; need, necessity, occasion; utility, advantage, profit, benefit; case, chance, hap, accident.

Ut, uti, adv. and *conj.* As, like *or* just as, even as; when, as soon as; as being, inasmuch as; that, namely; although. See p. 60, 34.

Uter, utra, utrum, adj. Which, which *or* whether of the two.

Uterque, utrăque, utrumque, adj. Both the one and the other, both, each. *In utramque partem*, in either case, on both sides.

Utĭlis, e, adj., (*utor.*) Useful, profitable, advantageous.

Utĭlĭtas, ātis, f., (*utilis.*) Usefulness, profit, advantage.

Utor, i, usus sum, dep. To use, make use of; enjoy.

Utrimque, utrinque, adv. On *or* from both sides, *or* parts, on the one side and the other.

Utrum, adv., (*uter.*) *In double questions, followed in the second question by an or ne, or by anne*, or, *necne, annon*, or not. *In direct interrogation, it may be omitted in the translation.*

Uxor, ōris, f. A wife, wedded wife, spouse.

V.

Vacatio, ōnis, f. Cessation, exemption, respite, immunity.

Vaco, āre, āvi, ātum. To be empty, free from, without, vacant, without a possessor.

Vacuus, a, um, adj., (*vaco.*) Void, empty, free from; without a possessor.

Vadum, i, n. A shallow place in a river, lake *or* sea; a ford, shallow.

Vagīna, ae, f. The scabbard *or* sheath of a sword.

Vagor, āri, ātus sum, dep., (*vagus*, wandering.) To range about *or* up and down, wander, roam, ramble, move here and there.

Valeo, ēre, ui. To be well *or* in health, enjoy health; to have strength *or* power, be strong, able; to have weight, interest *or* influence.

Valetūdo, inis, f., (*valeo.*) Health, either good or bad; good health; ill health, sickness, indisposition, disease.

Vallis, valles, is, f. A valley, vale.

Vallum, i, n. A fortification of sharp

stakes *or* palisades, the palisades, a rampart, bulwark, intrenchment.

Vallus, i, m. A stake; palisade; a rampart.

Varietas, ātis, f. Diversity, variety in respect to colors, variety.

Varius, a, um, adj. Of divers colors, party-colored, variegated; various, different, diverse.

Vastātus, a, um, part. Laid waste, desolate.

Vasto, āre, āvi, ātum. To lay waste, devastate, ravage, desolate.

Vastus, a, um, adj. Great, huge, ample, enormous, immense, vast.

Vaticinatio, ōnis, f. A foretelling, prophesying, divination, prophecy, prediction.

Ve, conj. Or.

Vectigal, ālis, n. Money paid for freight *or* carriage; what is paid to the state—tax, impost, duty, revenue.

Vectigālis, e, adj. Subject to *or* bound to pay taxes; tributary.

Vectorius, a, um, adj. For carrying *or* transportation.

Vehementer, adv. Vehemently, impetuously, ardently, mightily, eagerly, strenuously, very much.

Vel, conj. Or, even; *vel . . . . vel,* either . . . . or.

Veles, ĭtis, m. A light-armed soldier, skirmisher. See p. 51, 1.

Velim. See *Volo.*

Velle. See *Volo.*

Velocĭtas, ātis, f. Swiftness, fleetness, velocity.

Velocĭter, adv. Swiftly, quickly, speedily, nimbly.

Velox, ōcis, adj. Swift, quick, fleet, rapid.

Velum, i, n. A sail.

Velut, adv., (*vel, ut.*) As, like as, as if.

Venatio, ōnis, f., (*venor,* to hunt.) A hunting, the chase.

Venātor, ōris, m. A hunter, huntsman.

Vendo, ĕre, dĭdi, dĭtum. To sell, vend, expose to sale.

Venetĭcus, a, um, adj. Of *or* pertaining to the Veneti, Venetian.

Venia, ae, f. Favor, indulgence, leave, permission, license; pardon, forgiveness; kindness.

Venio, īre, veni, ventum. To come, arrive.

Ventito, āre, āvi, ātum. To come often, be in the habit of going.

Ventus, i, m. The wind.

Ver, veris, n. The spring.

Verbum, i, n. A word, expression, saying, remark.

Vere, adv. Truly, in truth.

Vereor, ēri, ĭtus sum, dep. To fear with reverential awe, look up to with reverence *or* respect, reverence, respect, revere, fear.

Vergo, ĕre, si. To incline, direct *or* turn towards, lie towards, tend towards, verge towards.

Verisimĭlis, e, adv. Like the truth, likely, probable.

Vero, adv. and *conj.* Certainly, in deed, in truth, truly; with reason; but.

Versātus, a, um, part., (*verso* and *versor.*) Turned; practised; living, dwelling.

Verso, āre, āvi, ātum. To turn often, turn, twist, change; change, exercise, agitate; examine, weigh, reflect, ponder.

Versor, āri, ātus sum. To frequent; remain, dwell, stay; be associated with; occupied, exercised.

Versum, versus, adv. and *prep.* Towards, toward. See p 124, 34.

Versus, ûs, m. A line, verse.

Verto, ĕre, ti, sum. To turn, turn round; change, transform, alter.

Verus, a, um, adj. True, real, genuine.

Verūtum, i, n. A kind of spear *or* javelin, having an iron head.

Vesper, vesperus, ĕri, m. The evening star; the planet Venus; the evening.

Vester, tra, trum, adj. Your, yours; of you.

Vestigium, i, n. The print of a footstep; a trace, track; spot, place; moment, instant, point.

Vestio, īre, ivi, itum. To clothe, cover, dress, array, attire.

Vestis, is, f. A garment, vestment, clothes, dress.

Vestītus, ûs, m. Clothing, clothes, dress, apparel.

Veterānus, a, um, adj. Old, veteran.

Veto, āre, ui, itum. To dissuade, forbid, prohibit, prevent.

Vetus, ĕris, adj. Old, former, of former days.

Vexatus, a, um, part. Agitated, shaken, harassed.

Vexillum, i, n. Ensign, standard, banner; flag unfurled, displayed from the general's tent, as a signal for the soldiers to prepare for the battle.

Vexo, āre, āvi, ātum. Harass, distress, molest, annoy, trouble, injure, agitate.

Via, ae, f. A way, road, passage. See p. 106, 18.

Viātor, ōris, m. A traveller.

Vicēni, ae, a, num. adj. Twenty.

Vicesimus, a, um, num. adj. The twentieth.

Vici. See *Vinco.*

Vicies, adv. Twenty times. *Vicies centum,* two thousand.

Vicinitas, ātis, f., (vicinus, near.) Neighborhood, vicinity; the neighbors.

Victima, ae, f., (vinco.) A sacrifice, victim.

Victor, ōris, m., (vinco.) Conqueror, vanquisher; *adj.,* victorious.

Victoria, ae, f. Victory.

Victus, ûs, m. [illegible], sustenance, victuals, provisions.

Vicus, i, m. A village.

Video, ēre, vidi, visum. To see, behold, look at; see, perceive, understand, discern, learn.

Videor, ēri, visus sum, dep. To seem, appear, seem good *or* fit.

Vigilia, ae, f. A watching, being awake; soldier's watch, guard by night. See p. 18, 23.

Viginti, num. adj. Twenty.

Vimen, inis, n. A twig, osier.

Vinco, ĕre, vici, victum. To conquer, vanquish, overcome, subdue; succeed, prevail.

Vinctus, a, um, part., (vincio, to bind.) Bound, tied; fastened.

Vincŭlum, i, n. A bond, band; *in pl.,* fetters, cords, chains; the place of confinement.

Vindico, āre, āvi, ātum. To lay claim to, assert, maintain; free, set free, liberate, rescue; avenge, revenge; punish, inflict punishment, chastise.

Vinea, ae, f. A vineyard, arbor formed by a vine, *hence* defensive machine, roof, shed *or* mantelet. See p. 46, 28.

Vinum, i, n. Wine.

Viŏlo, āre, āvi, ātum. To injure, sully, violate, hurt, maltreat; mar, lay waste.

Vir, viri, m. A man; husband; a genuine man, one who acts and thinks as a man, a magnanimous man, a brave man, a man of fortitude.

Vires, ium, pl. of vis. Force, strength, power, vigor.

Virgo, ĭnis, f. A virgin, maid, damsel.

Virgultum, i, n. A shrub, bush.

Viritim, adv. Severally, singly, individually, among all.

Virtus, ūtis, m. Manhood, manliness, bravery, firmness, constancy, merit, virtue, excellence.

Vis, vis, f. Force, vigor, strength, might, power; force, violence; effect, efficiency, influence; quantity, number, multitude, abundance.

Visus, a, um, part., (video.) Seen, beheld.

Vita, ae, f. Life.

Vito, āre, āvi, ātum. To shun, avoid, beware of, escape.

Vitrum, i, n. Glass; woad. See p. 91, 37.

Vivo, ĕre, xi, ctum. To live, have life, be alive; to live, be maintained; to live upon.

Vivus, a, um, adj. Living, alive.

Vix, adv. Scarcely, hardly, with much ado, with difficulty.

Vobis. See *Tu.*

Voco, āre, āvi, ātum. To call; call together; summon, cite; name.

Volo, velle, volui. To will *or* be willing, purpose, intend; wish, desire, choose; command, ordain, appoint.

Voluntarius, a, um, adj. Voluntary, willing, spontaneous.

Voluntas, ātis, f. Will, inclination, wish, desire; good will, affection, love, favor; intention, purpose, design; approbation, consent. *Voluntate,* willingly, voluntarily, of one's will *or* accord.

Voluptas, ātis, f. Pleasure, enjoyment, delight.

Vos. See *Tu.*

Voveo, ĕre, vovi, votum. To vow, promise sacredly *or* devote any thing.

Vox, vōcis, f. Voice, word, saying, speech.

Vulgo, āre, āvi, ātum. To make common, spread among the people; publish, spread abroad, divulge, disclose.

Vulgo, adv. Commonly, generally, universally, everywhere.

Vulgus, i, m. and *n.* The multitude, common people, populace.

Vulnĕro, āre, āvi, ātum. To hurt, wound.

Vulnus, ĕris, n. A wound, hurt; damage, injury, disaster.

Vultus, ûs, m. Countenance, features, looks, expression, mien, aspect.

I. HISTORICAL INDEX.

A.

Acco, ōnis. A general of the Gauls, who was at the head of the confederacy formed against the Romans by the Senŏnes, Carnūtes, and Treviri. He was condemned by a general assembly convened by Caesar, and put to death.

Adcantuannus. Chief of the Sotiātes. With six hundred followers, he endeavored to escape from their town, when attacked by Crassus, but was driven back and obliged to surrender.

Aemilius, L. An officer in Caesar's army, who commanded a part of the Gallic cavalry.

Ambiŏrix, igis. The king of one-half of the Eburōnes, as Cativolcus was of the other. He had an inveterate hatred of the Romans, though he had received many favors at their hands. He entrapped and defeated Titurius and Cotta. His country was ravaged, but after many near escapes, he finally evaded Caesar's pursuit.

Antebrogius. A man of great influence among the Remi, who was sent ambassador to Caesar in the second year of the Gallic war.

Antistius, Rheginus C. One of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul, appointed to levy troops, in the sixth year of the Gallic war.

Antonius, M. His undaunted courage and martial abilities procured him the friendship and esteem of Caesar, in whose army he served as lieutenant during the war in Gaul.

Ariovistus. King of the Germans. He invaded Gaul, conquered a considerable part of that country, and subjected the inhabitants to the most cruel and oppressive treatment. He was totally defeated by Caesar, and escaped with only a few of his followers into Germany.

Aristius, M. A military tribune under Caesar, in the Gallic war.

Arpinēius, C. A Roman knight, whom Cotta and Titurius sent along with Q. Junius, to hold converse with Ambiorix, after that prince had made an attack on their camp.

Atrius, Q. An officer to whom Caesar gave the command of the fleet, which had carried him and his army to the coast of Britain, while he himself marched into the interior.

Aurunculēius. See *Cotta.*

B.

Baculus, Sextius P. A centurion of the first rank in Caesar's army, who distinguished himself by his valor.

Balventius, T. A centurion of the first rank; a man of distinguished courage, who had both his thighs pierced with a dart, in the attack which Ambiorix made on the legions which he had deceitfully persuaded to leave their camp.

Boduognātus. The commander of the Nervii, at the time they attacked the Roman army under Caesar.

Brutus, Decimus. A young Roman officer, intrusted with the command of the fleet, in the war with the Veneti, whom he defeated. He served also conspicuously otherwise.

C.

Cabūrus, Valerius C. A Gallic chieftain, holding the supreme command among the Helvii.

Caesar, Julius C. See his Life, at the beginning of this work.

Caesar, L. One of Caesar's lieutenants.

Camulogēnus. A Gallic chieftain of the Aulercan nation, who, though of advanced age, on account of his splendid military talents was requested by the Parisii, to take command of their forces against Labienus. His effort was unsuccessful, and he fell after a brave resistance.

Carvilius. One of the four kings of Cantium, (Kent,) Britain, who, at the command of Cassivellaunus, made an attack on Caesar's naval camp, in which attack they were repulsed with great carnage.

Cassivellaunus. One of the British kings, whose territories lay on the north bank of the Tamesis, towards the mouth of that river. On the arrival in Britain of the Roman forces under Caesar, he was, by common consent, appointed commander-in-chief. After making some attempts to check the progress of the enemy, he was obliged to submit, and accept of such terms as Caesar chose to offer.

Cassius, L. A Roman consul defeated and slain by the Helvetii. His army was compelled to submit to the ignominy of passing under the yoke.

Casticus. A chief of the Sequani, whom Orgetorix persuaded to seize on the sovereignty of the state, which his father, Catamantalis, had formerly held.

Cativolcus. King of one-half of the Eburōnes, as Ambiŏrix was of the other. He was the associate of the latter, when they defeated Titurius and Cotta. When Caesar defeated his countrymen, he destroyed himself by poison.

Cavarillus. One of the three noblemen of the first distinction among the Aedui, who were taken prisoners in the battle in which Vercingetorix

was totally routed, and brought before Caesar. He commanded the infantry, after the revolt of Litavicus.

Cavarinus. A nobleman whom Caesar, to the prejudice of his brother, Moritasgus, reigning sovereign, appointed king over his countrymen, the Senones; an honor his ancestors had long enjoyed. He saved himself from an intended assassination on the part of the Senones, by flying to the camp of Caesar.

Cicĕro, Q. The brother of M. Tullius Cicero, the celebrated orator. He displayed much courage and ability on many trying occasions, especially in defending his winter-quarters among the Nervii.

Cimberius. The brother of Nasŭa. They headed a large body of the Suevi who were encamped on the Rhine, intending to cross that river and effect a junction with Arĭovistus.

Cingetŏrix. A nobleman who headed that party in the state of the Trevĭri, which was formerly attached to Caesar. In consequence of his fidelity to the Romans, he was declared a public enemy and his estate confiscated, through the agency of his father-in-law, Indutiomarus. He was, however, restored by Caesar.

Clodius, P. A Roman of noble birth and great talents, but of the most licentious life, and most depraved morals. He died by assassination. See p. 130, 2.

Commius. A chief of the Atrebates. Caesar made him king over that people, in return for some important services. Sent by the Roman general into Britain, to induce the states in that island—yielding to the Roman power—to form an alliance with Caesar, he finally joined the confederate Gauls and fought against the Romans. Though unsuccessful, he afterwards renewed the contest as one of the leaders of the Bellovaci. Subsequently, he narrowly escaped with his life. Finally, he was defeated and obliged to submit to Antonius.

Conetodūnus. A nobleman of the most daring resolution, who, along with Cotuātus, a man of equal intrepidity, headed their countrymen, the Carnūtes; when they put to the sword all the Roman citizens, who had settled at Genabum for the purpose of trade, seizing, at the same time, their property.

Considius, P. An officer in Caesar's army of great experience in military affairs, having served under Sylla and Crassus. Sent by Caesar, in the war with the Helvetii, to report the movements of the enemy, his fears prevented his rendering the needed assistance.

Convictolitānis. A young nobleman of the Aedui, who disputed with Cotus for the supreme power. The Aedui referred the matter to the decision of Caesar, who confirmed the election of Convictolitānis. Being gained over by the Arverni, he afterwards induced his countrymen to revolt. Commander of the Aeduan cavalry, he was taken prisoner in battle.

Cotta, Auruncŭlĕius L. A lieutenant of Caesar's, in Gaul. "When Ambiŏrix was seeking to entice him and his colleague Sabinus from

winter-quarters, Cotta was opposed to leaving the encampment, but finally yielded to the wishes of the other. This compliance cost him his life. The Roman army was drawn into an ambuscade, Cotta and Sabinus were both slain, and but few of the private soldiers escaped."

Cotuātus. A man of desperate resolution. See *Conetodunus.*

Cotus. A nobleman of an ancient family, among the Aedui. See *Convictolitania.*

Crassus, P. One of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul, whom he dispatched with one legion against the Veneti and other maritime nations. He subdued them under the Roman yoke. Equal success attended him in the following year, when he had command of the troops sent to Aquitania.

Critognātus. A nobleman of the first rank among the Arverni. He urged, in the council at Alesia, that "the garrison should subsist on the bodies of the weak, and those that were useless for the war."

D.

Divico. A nobleman of great influence among the Helvetii. He commanded the army in the war against Crassus, and was at the head of the embassy sent by that state to Caesar, after three-fourths of their forces had crossed the Arar, the remainder having been routed and almost destroyed.

Divitiăcus. A nobleman of the Aedui, who had great influence with Caesar, on account of his firm and constant attachment to the Romans and their interests. See p. 22, 10.

Druides. The Priests of the ancient Britons, Gauls, and Germans. Besides supreme authority in all matters of religion, their power extended to all public and private differences; and, what is of much greater consequence, to making, explaining, and executing the laws. This exorbitant jurisdiction was necessarily attended with every mark of power. They were exempted from taxes and military service, and their persons were held sacred and inviolable. Among the Gauls there were only two classes or conditions in life, of any note, the Druides and Equites. That of the Druids was, every way, the more honorable and illustrious. See p. 117, 14.

Dumnŏrix. A noble of the Aedui, and brother of Divitiacus. "He was of an ambitious turn, and united with Orgetorix for purposes of self-aggrandizement. He afforded, also, to the Helvetii, by interceding for them, a passage through the territory of the Sequani. Dumnorix was accused before Caesar by Liscus, but obtained pardon through the entreaties of Divitiacus." He persuaded the noblemen of Gaul not to go with Caesar into Britain, withdrew privately from the Roman camp, and was killed by the soldiers who were sent in pursuit of him, in consequence of his obstinacy in refusing to return. See p. 21, 17.

E.

Eporedirix. A chief of the Aedui. Before the arrival of Caesar in Gaul, he commanded their forces against the Sequani. He exhorted his countrymen to take up arms against the Romans. He was taken prisoner in that engagement, in which Vercingetorix was totally subdued.

Eporedorix. A chief of the Aedui.

Eratosthĕnes. A native of Cyrene. A man of learning and ability. See p. 121, 25.

F.

Fabius, Maximus Q. A Roman consul who defeated the Arverni. See p. 16, 3; 36, 17.

Fabius, C. A lieutenant of Caesar's, in Gaul.

Fabius, L. A centurion of valor.

G.

Galba. The king of the Suessiones, at the time Caesar invaded Gaul.

Galba S. One of Caesar's lieutenants in Gaul.

Gobănitio. A leading man among the Arverni, who, with the other principal men of the state, banished his own nephew from Gergovia, for exciting his dependents and followers to rebel against the Romans.

I.

Iccius. A nobleman of the Remi, sent, with Antebrogius, as an ambassador to Caesar in the second year of the Gallic war.

Imanuentius. A Briton, the father of Mandubratius, and king of the Trinobantes. He was killed by Cassivellaunus.

Indutiomărus. Father-in-law to Cingetorix, and a chief among the Treviri. He attacked Labienus, but was repulsed and slain.

Junius, Q. A Spaniard, sent, on the part of the Romans, to treat with Ambiorix.

L.

Labiēnus, T. One of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war. In the beginning of the civil war, he deserted to Pompey, escaped from the battle of Pharsalia, and was killed in that of Munda. See p. 17, 28; 23, 9.

Liscus. The supreme magistrate of the Aedui, who, along with Divitiacus and other chiefs of that nation, was in Caesar's camp in the Gallic war, and informed him of the conduct and plans of Dumnorix.

Litavicus. A nobleman of great influence and authority among the Aedui. Attempting to revolt against the Romans, he was thwarted and compelled to flee.

Lucterius. One of the nation of the Cadurci, hence called *Cadurcus;* a man of great intrepidity, whom Caesar sent against the Ruteni.

M.

Mandubratius. One of the nation of the Trinobantes, who, on his father being killed by Cassivellaunus, fled from Britain to Caesar, then in Gaul, who took him and the state under his protection.

Mettius, M. A man allied to Ariovistus, by the rights of hospitality, whom Caesar joined in commission with C. Valerius Procillus, on an embassy to Ariovistus. He was retained by the Germans, until their defeat by the Romans.

Minucius, Basilus L. One of Caesar's officers. To C. Fabius and L. Minucius Basilus, Caesar gave the joint command of two legions, which were stationed among the Remi.

Moritasgus. The king of the Senones at the time of the arrival of Caesar in Gaul.

Munatius, Plaucus L. One of Caesar's lieutenants, who, with M. Crassus and C. Trebonius, had the command of three legions, which were stationed, during the winter, in Belgium.

N.

Nameius. A nobleman of the Helvetii, who, with Verudoctius, was at the head of the embassy which that nation sent to Caesar.

Nasüa. The brother of Cimberius, who commanded the one hundred cantons of the Suevi, who had encamped on the bank of the Rhine with the intention of crossing that river.

O.

Orgetŏrix. A nobleman of the Helvetii. By far the richest and most illustrious among them. Prompted by ambitious motives, he formed a confederacy, composed of the chief men of the nation, who persuaded the people, through motives likewise of ambition, to quit in a body their country. The whole management of the preparations was consigned to Orgetorix, and two years were allowed for these preparations, the people obliging themselves by law to leave on the third year. Engaged in intrigue in regard to the Sequani and Aedui, and being of an insatiable ambition, he brought himself under the charge of a conspiracy, with an attempt to subdue all Gaul. His punishment, if guilty, would have been, to be burnt alive. By means, however, of his clients and debtors, his slaves and domestics, he rescued himself out of

the hands of his judges. While the people were preparing to revenge this contempt of their laws, Orgetorix died, as is supposed, by his own hands.

P.

Pedĭus, Q. Grandson of one of Julius Caesar's sisters, and one of Caesar's lieutenants in the Gallic war. He was appointed in Caesar's will co-heir with Octavius, who had Pedius for his colleague in his first consulship.

Petrēius, M. A centurion of the eighth Roman legion, who was killed, while fighting bravely, at the siege of Gergovia.

Petrosidĭus, L. A standard-bearer of the army, which, under the command of Sabinus and Cotta, wintered among the Eburones.

Piso, L. Caesar's father-in-law, who was consul with A. Gabinius Paulus, B. C. 112. He was slain by the Tigurini. See p. 18, 36.

Plancus, L. A lieutenant in Caesar's army, to whom Caesar gave the joint command, with C. Trebonius, of three legions cantoned in Gallia Belgica. See *Munatius.*

Pompēius, Cn. A Roman, who acted as interpreter.

Pulfio, T. A Roman centurion, of distinguished valor, who, to decide a dispute with L. Varenus, another centurion, respecting superiority of courage, rushed forth from the camp, when attacked by the Nervii, and displayed great bravery outside of the fortifications.

R.

Roscĭus, L. One of Caesar's lieutenants, to whom Caesar gave in command the third legion; with which legion he was to march into the territories of the Essui.

S.

Sabinus, Titurius Q. One of the lieutenants of Caesar's army. By an artful stratagem he engaged and defeated the Unelli and their confederates. His prudence and military judgment seemed, at the last, to have deserted him, for he was wilily circumvented and cut off with his whole army by Ambiorix.

Seduliue. The prince and commander of the Lemovices, who was slain during the siege of Alesia, in the attack on the part of the Gauls.

Segŏnax. One of the four kings who reigned in Cantium, at the time Caesar invaded Britain.

Sertorius, Q. See p. 66, 14.

Sextius. A centurion of the first rank in Caesar's army during the Gallic war. See *Baculus.*

Silĭus, T. An officer whom Crassus sent among the Veneti to procure

corn: but who was seized and detained by them, in the hopes, through this measure, of regaining the hostages they had given.

Spartăcus. A gladiator of some considerable, though unenviable reputation. He escaped from the school at Capua, where he was in training, and at the head of bandits, outlaws and others, menaced even Rome itself. He was, however, defeated by Crassus, B. C. 71.

Sulpicius, P. One of Caesar's lieutenants. He had charge, with a strong garrison to maintain it, of the harbor of the Merini, where Caesar embarked for Britain. He was afterwards placed among the Aedui, to attend to the supplies of corn.

T.

Tasgetius. A nobleman of the Carnutes, whose forefathers had possessed the sovereignty of that state. He was raised to the same high station by Caesar, who rewarded him thus for the many signal services rendered to himself. In the third year of his reign, however, he was grossly assassinated.

Taximagŭlus. One of the four kings or princes who reigned over Cantium at the time of Caesar's arrival. They seem to have been all under the power of Cassivellaunus.

Terrasidius, T. One of Caesar's lieutenants, sent by Caesar into the territory of the Esubii for the sake of obtaining corn, but detained by them.

Tentomărus. King of the Nitobriges. He joined Vercingetorix, with a great number of cavalry.

Titurius. One of Caesar's lieutenants, killed by Ambiorix. See *Sabinus.*

Trebius, Gallus M. An officer sent by Caesar to the Curiosolites, to procure provisions.

Trebonius, C. A tribune, by whom the first triumvirate were enabled to get the law passed which granted, for five years, Gaul to Caesar, Syria to Crassus, and Spain and Africa to Pompey. He served as lieutenant under Caesar, in the Gallic war. He joined with the conspirators, who succeeded in assassinating Caesar. See p. 92, 39.

Trebonius, C. A Roman knight, who headed the veterans, and fought bravely when Cicero's winter-quarters were attacked by the German horse.

V.

Valerius, Caburus. A Gallic chieftain. See *Caburus.*

Valerius, Procillus. Son of C. Valerius Caburus; a person of eminence in the Roman province. For his unimpeachable integrity, and great skill in the language of the Gauls, he was sent, with M. Mettius, by Caesar, on an embassy of considerable importance, to Ariovistus. Ariovistus, however, impliedly charging them as spies, put them in irons. He was

recovered by Caesar in person, on the flight and discomfiture of the German monarch.

Varĕnus, L. A centurion in the legion commanded by Q. Cicero, which was stationed among the Aedui. The rival of Pulfio. See *Pulfio*.

Vercingetŏrix. A chieftain among the Arverni. He was head of the army of Gallic confederates, and displayed great ability and sagacity. He was at last obliged to surrender, with the town Alesia, which he defended.

Vergasillaunus. A chieftain of the Arverni, and related to Vercingetorix. He was appointed one of the commanders of the confederate forces for the relief of Alesia. He was unsuccessful, and made prisoner.

Vergobrĕtus. The title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui.

Vertĭco. A nobleman of the Nervii, who was in Cicero's camp when it was attacked by the Eburones. He prevailed upon a slave of his to convey a letter to Caesar, communicating to him information of what had occurred, and asking for his assistance.

Verudoctius. One of the Helvetii, sent with Nameius at the head of an embassy to Caesar, to request for the Helvetii an unobstructed march through the Roman province.

Viridomărus. One of the Aedui, more distinguished by political influence than for noble birth. Caesar, at the request of Divitiacus, raised him to the highest dignity in the state. He revolted from Caesar, and set fire to Noviodunum. He was appointed one of the commanders of the confederate forces for the relief of Alesia.

Viridŏrix. The leading chief among the Unelli. He headed a powerful force in an attack on Sabinus, (one of Caesar's lieutenants, then stationed among the Unelli,) but was defeated.

Volcatius, Tullus. A young officer, left in charge of the fort and garrison which protected the bridge over the Rhine, when Caesar set out on his expedition against Ambiorix.

Volusĕnus, C. A Roman officer, whom Caesar sent with a galley to survey the coast of Britain, opposite Gaul; and to acquire as correct information as he could, respecting the harbors and landing places, previous to his own expedition against it.

II. GEOGRAPHICAL INDEX.

A.

Admagetobria, Admagetobria, a city of Gaul.

Aduatŭca, a place in the country of the Eburones, afterwards Tungri, now Tongern.

Aduatŭci, a German people dwelling between the Mosa (Meuse) and the Scaldis (Scheld) from the time of the Cimbric war.

Aedui, a Gallic people between the Ligeris (Loire) and the Arar, (Saône.) See p. 18, 50; 23, 36.

Aetolia, a country of Greece, lying upon the north side of the Corinthian gulf.

Agendĭcum, the capital of the Senones; now Sens.

Alesia, a strongly fortified town of the Mandubii, west of Dijon; now Alise.

Allobrŏges, a Gallic people, bounded on the north and west by the Rhodanus, (Rhone,) south by the Isara, (Isère,) and extending eastward to the Alps. See p. 16, 3.

Alpes, the Alps generally.

Ambarri, a Gallic people east of the Arar, (Saône,) between the Aedui and the Allobroges. See p. 18, 8.

Ambiāni, a Gallic people in the neighborhood of Amiens.

Ambibāri, a Gallic people in Normandy.

Ambiliāti, a Gallic people, whose situation is unknown.

Ambivarĕti, a Gallic people, dependents or clients of the Aedui.

Ambivarĭti, a Gallic people, probably on the left bank of the river Mosa, (Meuse.)

Anartes, a German people on the Theiss, in Hungary. The Hercynian Forest extended to their boundaries.

Ancalĭtes, a people in the southeast of Britain.

Andes, a Gallic people north of the Ligeris, (Loire,) in Anjou.

Aquilēia, a town in the north of Italy.

Aquitani, the Aquitanians.

Aquitania, one of the three great divisions into which Caesar divides Gaul, bounded on the north by the Garumna, (Garonne,) and on the south by the Pyrenees.

C.

Cabillōnum, a town of the Aedui on the river Arar; now Châlons-sur-Saône.
Cadurci, a people in the south of Gaul, in le Pays de Quercy.
Caeraesi, originally a people of Germany, dwelt in Gallia Belgica, in the neighborhood of Liege.
Calētes, a Gallic people in the northeast of Normandy, in the neighborhood of Caux.
Cantăbri, a people of Spain, in Biscay.
Cantium, a district in the southeast of Britain; now Kent.
Carcăso, a town in the south of Gaul, on the Atax, (Aude,) and on the road between Narbo Martius and Tolosa; now Carcasonne.
Carnūtes, a Gallic people in Orleans.
Cassi, a people in the southeast of Britain.
Caturiges, a Gallic people in Dauphiné.
Cebenna, mountains in the southeast of Gaul; now the Sévennes.
Celtae, Celts. See p. 13, 3; 26, 25.
Cenimagni, a people in Britain, in the counties of Suffolk, Norfolk, and Cambridgeshire.
Cenomani. See Aulerci.
Centrōnes. 1. A people in the neighborhood of the Alps. 2. A people in Gallia Belgica, in Western Flanders.
Ceutrones, a people of Belgic Gaul.
Cevenna, Cevennes, a range of mountains in the Gallic province west of the Rhone, separating the Arverni from the Helvii.
Cherusci, a people of Germany, between the Visurgis (Weser) and the Albis, (Elbe.)
Cimbri, a people originally inhabiting the north of Germany, or, according to others, Jütland. See p. 29, 12.
Cocosates, a people in the south of Gaul, in Gascony.
Condrūsi, a Germanic people in Gallia Belgica, on the right bank of the Mosa, (Meuse.)
Curiosolitae, one of the Armoric states of Gaul, in modern Brittany.

D.

Daci, the inhabitants of Dacia, a country comprising the modern Transylvania, Moldavia, and Wallachia.
Danubius, the river Danube.
Decetia, a town in an island in the Ligeris, (Loire;) now Decise.
Diablintes. See Aulerci.
Dubis, the Doubs, a river which comes from Mount Jura and falls into the Arar, (Saône.)
Durocortŏrum, afterwards Remi, a town of the Remi; now Rheims.

E.

G.

H.

I.

Illyricum, a country on the eastern shores of the Adriatic.

Italia, Italy.

Itius Portus, a port in Gaul opposite the coast of Britain. Some suppose it to be Calais, others Whit-Sand.

J.

Jura Mons, a chain of mountains from the Rhodanus to the Rhenus.

L.

Latobrigi, or *Latobriges*, a German people, who invaded Gaul with the Helvetii.

Lemănis portus, now Lymne, a harbor of Britain.

Lemannus Lacus, the Lake of Geneva. See p. 14, 19.

Lemŏnum, or *Limonum*, afterwards Pictavi, a town in Gaul; now Poitiers.

Lemovices, a Gallic people in Limosin.

Lepontii, an Alpine people in the neighborhood of the Nantuates, in the valley of the Tessino.

Leuci, a Gallic people in Lorraine and Champagne.

Levăci, a people in Gallia Belgica, on the west side of the Scaldis, (Scheld.)

Lexovii, a Gallic people in Normandy.

Liger, or *Ligĕris*, the Loire.

Lingŏnes, a Gallic people in the neighborhood of Langres.

Lutetia, a town of the Parisii, in an island of the Sequana, (Seine;) now Paris. See p. 112, 25.

M.

Magetobria, a place in Gaul; its position is unknown.

Mandubii, a Gallic people in Burgundy, whose chief town was Alesia.

Marcomanni, a people of Germany, whose position in the time of Caesar is uncertain.

Matisco, a town of the Aedui on the Arar, (Saône;) now Maçon.

Matrŏna, the river Marne.

Mediomatrici, on the Mosella, (Moselle,) in the north of Lorraine, and in the neighborhood of the town of Metz.

Meldae, or *Meldi*, a Gallic people in the neighborhood of Maux on the Marne. See p. 87, 29.

Melodūnum, a town of the Senones; now Melun.

Menapii, a Germanic people, dwelt on both banks of the Rhenus, (Rhine,) in the northern part of its course.

Metiosedum, a town of the Parisii on the Sequana, (Seine.)

Mona, the Isle of Man, or Anglesea, between Great Britain and Ireland.

R.

Rauraci, a people on the south bank of the Rhenus, (Rhine,) extending from the mouth of the Aar to Basle; chief town, Augusta Rauracorum; now Augst, near Basle.

Remi, a people in Belgic Gaul, between the rivers Matrona (Marne) and Axona, (Aisne,) in the district of Rheims.

Rhedŏnes, a people in the district of Rennes, in Bretagne.

Rhēnus, the river Rhine.

Rhŏdănus, the river Rhone.

Rutēni, a people in the district of Albigeois and Rovergue; chief town, Segodunum; now Rhodez.

S.

Sabis, the river Sambre.

Samarobriva, a town of the Ambiani; now Amiens. See p. 95, 18.

Santŏnes, a people on the west coast of Gaul, north of the river Garumna, (Garonne.) See p. 17, 23.

Saruntes, a people in Helvetia, in the canton of St. Gallen.

Scaldis, the river Scheld. See p. 124, 37.

Sedūni, a people in the canton of Wallis; now Sion or Sitten.

Sedusii, a German people about Selz, near the Rhine.

Segni, a people in Belgic Gaul, near Namur.

Segontiăci, a people in South Britain.

Segusiani, a people between the Ligeris (Loire) and the Rhodanus, (Rhone.)

Senŏnes, a people in the district of Sens; their capital, Agendicum.

Sequăna, the river Seine.

Sequăni, a tribe bounded on the west by the Arar, (Saône,) on the east by the Jura and the Rhenus, (Rhine,) on the north by Mount Vogesus, and extending southwards towards the Rhodanus, (Rhone;) chief town, Vesontio, (Besançon.)

Sesuvii, a people on the left bank of the river Charente, in the district of Soubise.

Sibusātes, a people in the southwest of Gaul, at the foot of the Pyrenees.

Sigambri, a German people, extending, on the east of the Rhine, from the river Sieg to the Ruhr.

Sotiătes, a people in the southwest of Gaul, on the Garumna.

Suessiōnes, a people on the river Axena, (Aisne,) in the district about St. Soissons.

Suevi, the general name of a large German tribe, which embraced a number of separate tribes between the Weichsel and the Elbe, extending towards the Rhenus, (Rhine;) they reached also northwards to the Baltic, (Mare Suevicum.) The name still remains in Schwaben, Suabia.

T.

Tamĕsis, the river Thames.
Tarbelli, a people in the southwest of Gaul, from the Adour to the Pyrenees.
Tarusātes, a people in the southwest of Gaul.
Tencteri, a German people between the Lippe, the Ruhr, and the Rhine.
Tergestīni, a people about Trieste.
Teutŏni, a German people, who originally inhabited the country on the Baltic, from the Trave to the Oder. See p. 29, 12.
Tigurīnus Pagus, in the west of Helvetia, perhaps in Freyburg and Waatland. See p. 18, 28.
Tolosātes, a Gallic people about Toulouse.
Trevĭri, originally a German people between the Mosa (Meuse) and the Rhenus, (Rhine.) Chief town, Augusta Trevirorum; now Trier or Treves.
Tribocci, a German people in the north of Alsace, in the district of Strassburg.
Trinobantes, a people in the southeast of Britain. See p. 93, 38.
Tulingi, a people in the north of Helvetia.
Turŏnes, a people in Celtic Gaul.

U.

Ubii, a German people in Caesar's time, on the right bank of the Rhenus, (Rhine,) under Augustus removed to the left bank, in the neighborhood of Cologne.
Unelli, a people in the northwest of Normandy, one of the Armoric states.
Usipĕtes, a German people between the Berkel and the Lippe.

V.

Văhălis, an arm of the Rhenus, (Rhine;) now the Waal.
Vangiŏnes, a German people on the left bank of the Rhenus, (Rhine,) in the district of Worms.
Velauni, a people in the Sevennes; now Velay.
Vallaūnodūnum, a town of the Senones; probably Château Landon, between Sens and Orleans.
Velocasses, a people in Normandy, north of the Sequana, (Seine.)
Venĕti, a people in Vannes, in Bretagne.
Verăgri, a people in the canton of Wallis.
Veromandui, a people in Belgic Gaul, about Vermand or St. Quentin.
Vesontio, a town of the Sequani; now Besançon.
Vienna, a town of the Allobroges: now Vienne in Dauphiné.

III. INDEX TO THE NOTES.